Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249

Mario Mandalà
Emanuela Romano *Editors*

Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy

Springer

Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology

Volume 249

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/164

Mario Mandalà • Emanuela Romano
Editors

Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy

Springer

Editors
Mario Mandalà
Department of Oncology and Hematology
Papa Giovanni XXIII Hospital
Bergamo, Italy

Emanuela Romano
Department of Oncology, INSERM Res Unit 932
Institut Curie
Paris Cedex 05, France

ISSN 0171-2004 ISSN 1865-0325 (electronic)
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology
ISBN 978-3-030-10506-8 ISBN 978-3-030-10507-5 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-10507-5

Library of Congress Control Number: 2018966536

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

The remarkable advances in precision medicine and the development of targeted cancer treatments have generated significant optimism based on the assumption that a better knowledge of genetic or molecular features sustaining cancer growth could determine long-term control of many types of cancer and potentially cure the majority of patients. After several years of basic and translational research, the oncology community has tempered this optimism by the recognition that in only a minority of patients cure can be achieved by innovative strategies such as targeted therapies, immunotherapy and cytotoxic agents. In the vast majority of cancer patients, cancer wins the battle, and the reason for this failure is drug resistance. Ultimately, advanced cancer patients die because some or all of their tumour cells exhibit or develop resistance to available therapeutic strategies. The challenge of drug resistance therefore represents an important barrier that hinders the ultimate goal of cure or at least long-term control of cancer.

As a corollary of this, response rates in the setting of tumour progression/relapse are dismal. Despite the considerable importance of drug resistance to cancer therapies, our understanding of their biological mechanisms – and plausible therapeutic avenues to intercept them – remains highly incomplete.

Knowledge of specific resistance mechanisms can inform novel therapeutic approaches to counter this phenomenon, and improvement of our understanding of key driver genes could guide new therapeutics approaches capable of eliciting meaningful tumour responses in patients with advanced malignancies.

As previously reported with chemotherapy, it is reasonable to suppose that a combination of multiple targeted therapies and immunotherapy strategies as well as planned sequence of treatments will be necessary to effectively prevent and/or treat drug-resistant cancers. The potential number of therapeutic combinations is immense; thus, new preclinical paradigms are needed to prioritize high-yield combinations and define the genetic or molecular contexts in which they would most likely be efficacious. To improve outcome of patients a strict collaboration between academia and industry will be needed so that the appropriate resources and innovation may be brought to bear on this challenge. The goal to achieve durable control of many cancer subtypes will likely require dedicated, multidisciplinary teams of preclinical and clinical experts that work together guided by rigorous translational and analytical science.

With the increasing armamentarium of anticancer agents and the advent of powerful high-throughput screening techniques, there are now unprecedented opportunities to understand and overcome drug resistance through the clinical assessment of rational therapeutic drug combinations and the use of predictive and prognostic biomarkers to enable patient stratification and tailor treatments.

The main aim of this book is to offer to the readers an updated overview on the possible reasons of failure of new and promising therapeutic opportunities.

The first part of the book covers the basic mechanisms of such hot topics. The other chapters cover specific pathways of resistance that from the knowledge of basic mechanisms translate this information in clinical routine or in translational clinical research.

Readers will discover diverse perspectives of the contributing authors (such as basic scientists, clinical pharmacologists and clinicians) and extensive discussions of issues including pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic mechanisms of resistance, alterations in the drug target, activation of prosurvival pathways, ineffective induction of cell death and plasticity of microenvironment.

This book will be of interest to scholars and researchers, biologists, pharmacologists, medical oncologists, haematologists and immunologists.

Bergamo, Italy — Mario Mandalà
Paris Cedex 05, France — Emanuela Romano

Contents

Molecular and Pharmacological Mechanisms of Drug Resistance: An Evolving Paradigm 1
Benedetta Colmegna, Lavinia Morosi, and Maurizio D'Incalci

Major Physiological Signaling Pathways in the Regulation of Cell Proliferation and Survival 13
Huifang Tang and Gongda Xue

Immune-Mediated and Hypoxia-Regulated Programs: Accomplices in Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies 31
Diego O. Croci, Santiago P. Mendez-Huergo, Juan P. Cerliani, and Gabriel A. Rabinovich

Mechanisms of Resistance to Target Therapies in Non-small Cell Lung Cancer 63
Francesco Facchinetti, Claudia Proto, Roberta Minari, Marina Garassino, and Marcello Tiseo

Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Melanoma 91
Matthew Winder and Amaya Virós

Mechanisms of Resistance to Immune Checkpoint Antibodies 109
Rodrigo N. Ramos, Eliane Piaggio, and Emanuela Romano

Immunotolerance as a Mechanism of Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Melanoma 129
Mario Mandalà and Daniela Massi

Plasticity of Resistance and Sensitivity to Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Inhibitors in Metastatic Colorectal Cancer 145
Andrea Sartore-Bianchi and Salvatore Siena

Targeting DNA Repair 161
Giuseppe Curigliano

Resistance to Hormonal Therapy in Prostate Cancer 181
Alfredo Berruti and Alberto Dalla Volta

Mechanism of Resistance in Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumors 195
E. Tamborini

Mechanisms of Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia 203
Francesca Arruga and Silvia Deaglio

Mechanisms of Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Chronic Myeloid Leukemia 231
Federico Lussana, Tamara Intermesoli, Paola Stefanoni, and Alessandro Rambaldi

Mechanisms of Resistance in Multiple Myeloma 251
Athanasios Papadas and Fotis Asimakopoulos

Cancer Evolution as the New Frontier of Precision Medicine 289
Giuseppe Curigliano

Molecular and Pharmacological Mechanisms of Drug Resistance: An Evolving Paradigm

Benedetta Colmegna, Lavinia Morosi, and Maurizio D'Incalci

Contents

1 Introduction 2
2 Cellular Mechanism of Multidrug Resistance 4
2.1 Drug Activation and Inactivation 4
2.2 Expression of Drug Efflux Pumps 5
2.3 DNA Damage Repair 7
2.4 Deregulation of Apoptosis 8
2.5 Alteration of Drug Target 9
3 Conclusion 10
References 11

Abstract

The high heterogeneity and genomic instability of malignant tumors explains why even responsive tumors contain cell clones that are resistant for many possible mechanisms involving intracellular drug inactivation, low uptake or high efflux of anticancer drugs from cancer cells, qualitative or quantitative changes in the drug target. Many tumors, however, are resistant because of insufficient exposure to anticancer drugs, due to pharmacokinetic reasons and inefficient and heterogeneous tumor drug distribution, related to a deficient vascularization and high interstitial pressure. Finally, resistance can be related to the activation of anti-apoptotic and cell survival pathways by cancer cells and often enhanced by tumor microenvironment.

B. Colmegna • L. Morosi • M. D'Incalci (✉)
Department of Oncology, IRCCS 'Mario Negri', Institute for Pharmacological Research, 20145 Milan, Italy
e-mail: maurizio.dincalci@marionegri.it

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_20

Keywords
Apoptosis • Drug distribution • Mass spectrometry imaging • Multidrug resistance • Pharmacokinetics

1 Introduction

Although significant improvement of the therapy of several human malignancies have been achieved in the last two decades with the use of small molecules or antibodies designed to hit cancer-specific molecular targets, for the majority of solid human tumors at advanced stage pharmacological treatments have only a transient antitumor effect with small or no impact on patients' survival. The major reason for this disappointing result is the phenomenon of drug resistance.

Although most recent research has been focused on molecular and cellular mechanism of resistance, it seems likely that in many cases the lack of antitumor activity is related to pharmacokinetic reasons, essentially associated with an insufficient drug concentration in the cancer cells.

The pharmacokinetic factors that can be involved in the failure of treatment can be dependent on the route of administration. For example, in the case of orally administered drugs the variable absorption as well as the first pass effect can be responsible for an insufficient bioavailability. For many anticancer drugs the variable metabolism can be a clinically relevant problem, also in consideration of potential interactions with other drugs interfering with the activity of cytochromes involved in drug biotransformation. These pharmacokinetic factors can be investigated by monitoring plasma drug levels, thus allowing, at least in theory, a dose adjustment or a change in the route of administration.

However, the drug plasma levels that for other classes of drugs predict the drug concentration at the pharmacological target, for anticancer drug are often meaningless. The circulating drug concentrations in fact do not necessarily mirror those present in the neoplastic tissue and its metastases because of tumor architecture and microenvironment (Fuso Nerini et al. 2014).

It is known that the vascularization of solid tumors is often inefficient, as the angiogenic process occurring in growing tumors leads to unorganized capillary network with fenestrated vessels and significant leakage of proteins responsible for an increase in the interstitial pressure. Probably further factors contributing to the high interstitial pressure are the inefficient lymphatic drainage as well as a significant infiltration of inflammatory and mesenchymal cells that represent common features of many solid tumors. This peculiar abnormal vascularization and tissue architecture is responsible for a low and heterogeneous tumor drug distribution (Minchinton and Tannock 2006). The evidence of this heterogeneous distribution of anticancer drugs was already available several years ago by examining different parts of tumors. It was demonstrated that in necrotic or hypovascularized and hypoxic parts of the tumor the drug concentrations were lower than those that were normally perfused by blood.

Recently new powerful technologies have been developed to investigate drug distribution in different parts of the tumor by simultaneous visualization and quantification of the drug levels. Among these new approaches, mass spectrometry imaging (MSI) is an interesting technique to obtain specific information on the spatial distribution of a drug linking qualitative molecular information of compounds to their spatial coordinates and distribution within the investigated tissue (Morosi et al. 2013).

MSI can be applied to visualize potentially every tissue component localizing the molecule of interest on the base of its molecular mass and fragmentation pattern, without the need to label the analyte, a great advantage over other imaging techniques such as fluorescence microscopy, positron emission tomography, magnetic resonance spectroscopy, and autoradiography (Sugiura and Setou 2010).

MSI was applied to localize drug distribution and penetration inside solid tumors, thanks to its superior spatial resolution (20–100 μm) and specificity allowing the detection of parent compound and metabolites simultaneously (Buck et al. 2015; Connell et al. 2015).

MSI can also provide the quantitative amounts of target compounds in well-defined region of interest of the examined tissue, ideally in a single pixel. This goal is extremely challenging depending on the technical possibilities and limitations of the MSI instrument hardware, but equally on the chosen calibration/standardization strategy (Giordano et al. 2016a; Rzagalinski and Volmer 2016).

MSI has also some limitation: it is only applicable to molecules that are ionizable, the selection of optimal matrix is arduous and driven by empirical results, moreover the interpretation of quantitative data is often complex especially because of ion suppression effect and the chemical noise from the matrix ions covering the drug ion signal and finally, the sensitivity is quite limited (Prideaux and Stoeckli 2012).

By applying this methodology it has become clear that drug distribution in tumors is very heterogeneous comparing different tumor models having different histopathological characteristics (Giordano et al. 2016b). Figure 1 shows the intratumor distribution of the anticancer drug paclitaxel by MSI. The drug distribution is homogeneus only in the ovarian cancer model while it is highly irregular in the other exemples of tumor types. As you can see in other models such as sarcoma or breast cancer, areas of the tumor where the drug is highly concentrated and areas where it is almost absent can be observed at the same time. Broad parts of the tumor where the drug is not present at all are present especially in mesothelioma xenograft. This aspect surely contributes to explain tumor resistance. Torok et al. recently correlate the antitumor activity of several antiangiogenic drugs with their intratumoral distribution data obtained by MSI (Torok et al. 2017). Moreover, Cesca et al. observed an enhancement in paclitaxel activity combined with bevacizumab associated with the improvement of its intratumor distribution (Cesca et al. 2016).

The possibility to superimpose MSI molecular images with histological and immune-histological evaluation could help understanding the factors that impair drug penetration. Finally, this technology could be used in future to evaluate the

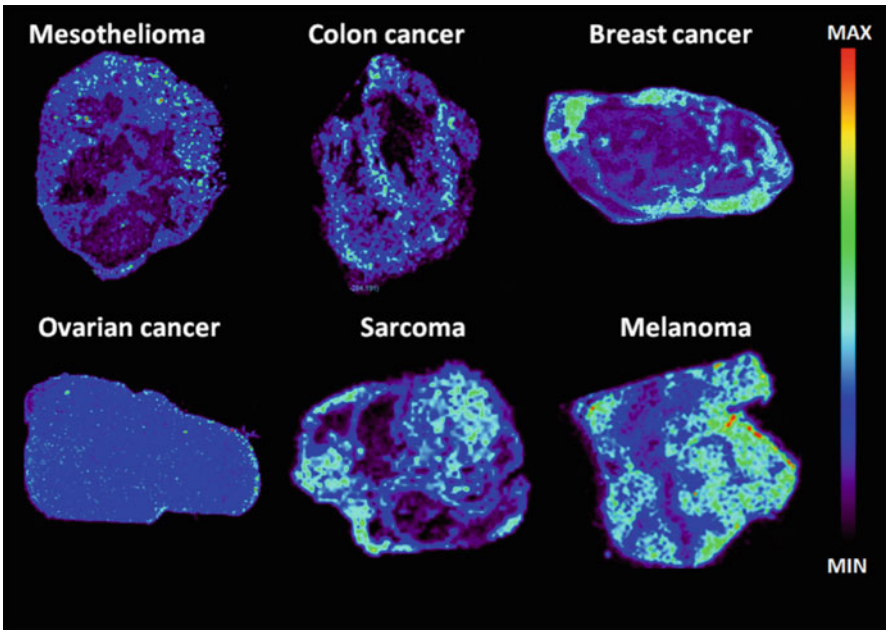


Fig. 1 Paclitaxel distribution in different cancer models analyzed by MALDI mass spectrometry imaging. *Light blue* and *green* mark the drug presence on the basis of the color scale on the right

effect of therapeutic strategies aimed at modifying tumor microenvironment or altering drug properties to facilitate drug uptake and intratumor distribution.

2 Cellular Mechanism of Multidrug Resistance

The hallmarks of cellular anticancer drug resistance fall into distinct categories:

2.1 Drug Activation and Inactivation

Altered local drug metabolism and detoxification are key resistance mechanisms highly specific for each class of drugs. Lack of prodrug activation or epigenetic silencing – by promoter methylation – of genes involved in drug processing are examples of potential cause of resistance and are frequently tumor-specific. Classical examples could be the inactivation of platinum drugs by the thiol glutathione (Meijer et al. 1992) or metallothioneins (Amable 2016), or by epigenetic mechanisms, e.g., silencing – by methylation – of gene encoding for thymidine phosphorylase, an enzyme involved in the conversion of capecitabine (prodrug) to 5-fluorouracil (active drug) (Longley et al. 2003). For many DNA interacting agents, e.g., alkylating agents, anthracyclines, and platinum drugs, an important

mechanism of inactivation is related to the overexpression of Glutathione–S–Transferases (GSTs) that metabolizes the drugs into inactive molecules (Kauvar et al. 1998).

2.2 Expression of Drug Efflux Pumps

Plasma membrane transport proteins are key players in the uptake of nutrients, such as sugars, amino acids, nucleosides, and inorganic ions and the efflux of xenobiotic toxins, including many anticancer drugs. Transport proteins can be classified into two major families, the solute carrier (SLC) and the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters and can affect drug absorption, distribution, and excretion conferring sensitivity or resistance to anticancer drugs.

The importance of ABC transporters in cancer therapy has been well documented while the impact of the solute carriers (SLC) on cancer therapy has not been extensively characterized (Table 1).

So far, the most characterized transporters belong to ABC family and include ABCB1 (also known as MDR1 or P-glycoprotein), ABCC1 (MRP1), and ABCG2 (BCRP or MXR).

Table 1 Reports the transporters whose activity has been associated with drug resistance

Transporters	Chemotherapeutic drugs effluxed
P-gp/MDR1	Anthracyclines, taxanes, vinca alkaloids, imatinib, etoposide
MRP1	Anthracyclines, methotrexate, camptothecins, etoposide, glutathione conjugates
MRP2	Doxorubicin, methotrexate, cisplatin, vincristine
MRP3	Methotrexate, etoposide
MRP4	Methotrexate, camptothecins, thiopurines
MRP5	Methotrexate, thiopurines
MRP6	Etoposide
MRP8	5-Fluorouracil
BCRP/MXR	Doxorubicin, mitoxantrone, topotecan, flavopiridol, SN-38
LRP	Doxorubicin, cisplatin, vincristine, etoposide, paclitaxel, melphalan
Human nucleoside transporters (hENT, hCNT)	Cytarabine, gemcitabine, fludarabine, clofarabine
Copper transporters (Ctr1, Ctr2, ATP7A, ATP7B)	Cisplatin
Multidrug extrusion transporter1 (MATE1)	Cisplatin
Organic cation transporter (OCT1, -2, -3)	Platinum drugs, SN-38, mitoxantrone, melphalan
Organic anion transporter (OAT1, -2, -3)	Methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, paclitaxel

The ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters superfamily is a large group of membrane proteins that are responsible for the translocation of various cytotoxic molecules out of the cell reducing their intracellular concentration and thus their cytotoxicity. ABC transporters are codified by 48 genes (divided into 7 subfamilies) and characterized by a conserved quaternary structure containing 2 transmembrane domains (TMDs) and 2 nucleotide (ATP)-binding domains (NBDs). Their ATP-dependent activity is involved in the movement of a wide variety of xenobiotics – including drugs – lipids, peptides, and metabolic products across the plasma and intracellular membranes. The ABC transporters tissue distribution reflects the complex physiological network of these proteins and reveals their important role in absorption, excretion, and distribution of drugs.

P-glycoprotein (P-gp) is a 170 kDa glycoprotein coded by ABCB1 gene mapped to chromosome 7q21.1. Its presence in normal tissue (as liver, kidney, brain, intestine, etc.) reveals the ability of modulating bioavailability and transport of wide range of substrates, especially organic molecules containing aromatic groups, and suggests its role in determining multidrug resistance (MDR) phenotype. P-gp is overexpressed in many tumors (thus causing intrinsic drug resistance) and the expression of P-gp can also be induced by chemotherapy (thus resulting in the acquired development of MDR) (Thomas and Coley 2003). Expression of P-gp fluctuates with elevated expression level in untreated cancer into higher level upon relapse after chemotherapy and undetectable or low level in the expression in drug sensitive tumors. P-gp expression has been reported in 40% of breast cancer (Kao et al. 2001), 20% of ovarian cancer (Baekelandt et al. 2000), and in more than 50% of patients with acute myelogeneous leukemia experiencing relapse (Leith et al. 1999) and is now associated with treatment failure in kidney, liver, and colon cancer (Ambudkar et al. 2003). It confers the strongest resistance to the widest variety of compounds including vinca alkaloids, anthracyclines, and taxanes contributing to the failure of chemotherapy (Szakács et al. 2006). Recent reports have suggested that molecularly targeted therapies, such as some kinases inhibitors, are also substrates for drug efflux proteins (Shervington and Lu 2008).

MRP1 is a transporter involved in glutathione-linked organic compound transport and is normally expressed in the basolateral membrane of cells from testis, kidney, oropharyngeal mucosa, etc. Recently the overexpression of MRP1 has been correlated with chemoresistance in prostate, lung, and breast cancer (Holohan et al. 2013) and confers resistance to several hydrophobic compounds that are also P-gp substrates.

Screens carried out with the NCI60 cell panel indicate that there is a strong correlation between the expression of several transporter (including ABC superfamily) and decrease in chemosensitivity.

The goal of reversing MDR in the clinic through the pharmacological inhibition of ABC transporter has been pursued for years and different generation of inhibitors have been developed. Only P-gp inhibitors have been evaluated in clinical studies. However, the results of clinical trials using modulators of P-gp have been disappointing mainly because of the required marked reduction of the anticancer drug doses. In addition it is now very clear that resistance is not only due to the

overexpression of P-gp, but also to many other mechanisms, thus making unrealistic to reverse tumor resistance by pump inhibition.

The resistance of tumors originating from tissues expressing high levels of P-gp (such as colon, kidney, or the adrenocortex) often extends to drugs that are not subject to P-gp-mediated transport, suggesting that "intrinsically resistant" cancer is also protected by non-Pgp-mediated mechanisms (Szakács et al. 2006).

Evidence linking P-gp expression with poor clinical outcome is more conclusive for breast cancer, sarcoma, and certain types of leukemia. P-gp expression in patients with AML has consistently been associated with reduced chemotherapy response rates and poor survival (Pallis and Russell 2004), in contrast with MRP1 whose expression is not a significant factor in drug resistance in AML (Leith et al. 1999).

The expression of these transporters as a mechanism of acquired resistance after a specific treatment is also responsible for the phenomenon of cross-resistance that must be taken into account especially for a clinical perspective.

2.3 DNA Damage Repair

The cellular response to DNA damage involves several mechanisms aimed at repairing the damage, thus restoring DNA integrity or alternatively activating cell death pathways.

Many chemotherapeutic drugs induce DNA damage either directly (for example, platinum-based drugs) or indirectly (for example, topoisomerase inhibitors). Without repair, this damage can result in genetic instability, acquisition of further mutations, and cytotoxic effects (Holohan et al. 2013). The different sensitivity to DNA damaging agents can be due to a different ability to repair drug-induced damage. For example, cancer cells deficient in Homologous Recombination (HR), e.g., because of mutations of BRCA1 or BRCA2 genes, are very sensitive to DNA damage caused by platinum drugs. HR deficient cancers are very sensitive to PARP inhibitors that cause an accumulation of DNA single strand breaks. In HR proficient cells, DNA single strand breaks generate DNA double strand breaks during DNA replication that are repaired before mitosis. Instead in HR deficient cells the inhibition of base excision repair by PARP inhibitors leads to unrepairable DNA double strand breaks with consequent cell death. This is the concept of synthetic lethality whose application has shown promising results in patients with breast and ovarian tumors (Farmer et al. 2005). Even in this case resistance can occur because of the acquisition of secondary mutations restoring HR normal function (Ashworth 2008).

Other pathways involved in DNA repair that have been reported to be relevant for drug resistance are nucleotide-excision repair (NER) and mismatch repair (MMR). The first one is required for the repair of DNA damage caused by many DNA-damaging drugs, such as platinum-based drugs. High expression of a key component, excision repair cross-complementing 1 (ERCC1), has been linked with poor responses to chemotherapy in non-small-cell lung carcinoma (NSCLC),

gastric, and ovarian cancer (Kirschner and Melton 2010). Notably, testicular cancers, which are very sensitive to cisplatin treatment, have very low levels of ERCC1 (Usanova et al. 2010).

The mismatch repair (MMR) system, whose key players are MLH1 and MSH2 genes, is crucial for maintaining genomic integrity, and its deficiency has been linked to high mutation rate of a large number of genes including those involved in immunogenicity and drug sensitivity. This explains why hypermethylation of MLH1 causes resistance to cisplatin and carboplatin (Fink et al. 1998). More recently, a synthetic lethal interaction between MSH2-targeted short interfering RNA (siRNA) and methotrexate was identified in MMR-deficient cancer cells; methotrexate caused the accumulation of oxidative lesions such as 8-oxoguanine (8-oxoG) in MSH2-deficient cells, which resulted in a loss of viability through apoptosis. This has led to an on-going Phase II clinical trial with methotrexate in patients with MSH2-deficient metastatic colorectal cancer using measurement of 8-oxoG lesions as a biomarker (Holohan et al. 2013).

Another DNA protein involved in resistance is *O*-6-methylguanine-DNA-methyl transferase (MGMT), whose overexpression is responsible for the resistance to methylating agents such as temozolomide. The hypomethylation of the promoter of the MGMT gene has been associated with resistance of human glioblastoma to temozolomide (Thomas et al. 2017).

2.4 Deregulation of Apoptosis

The resistance to anticancer drugs can be due to the fact that in cancer cells, apoptotic pathways are frequently dysfunctional. Numerous intrinsic adaptive responses can be triggered and promote survival of cancer cells exposed to DNA-damaging agents. Anti-apoptotic BCL-2 family members, inhibitor of apoptosis proteins (IAPs), and the caspases are key proteins of this mechanism. Mutations, amplifications, chromosomal translocations, and overexpression of the genes encoding for these proteins have been associated with various malignancies and linked to resistance to chemotherapy and targeted therapies.

BCL-2 family proteins have a pivotal role in dictating cell fate following chemotherapy treatment. The balance between the anti-apoptotic BCL-2 family members (such as BCL-XL and MCL1) and pro-apoptotic family members (such as BAX, BAD, and BAK, as well as various BH3-only proteins) is critical in determining the activation or not of a common pathway generally stimulated from all cytotoxic drugs that causes the mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization (MOMP) and finally cell death. Overexpression of one or more anti-apoptotic proteins or underexpression of one or more pro-apoptotic proteins or a combination of both dysregulate apoptosis. For example, the overexpression of Bcl-2 protected prostate cancer cells from apoptosis while led to inhibition of TRAIL-induced apoptosis in neuroblastoma, glioblastoma, and breast carcinoma cells. In colorectal cancers bax(G)8 frameshift mutations could contribute to resistance of cells to anticancer treatments. In the case of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), the

malignant cells have an anti-apoptotic phenotype with high levels of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 and low levels of pro-apoptotic proteins such as Bax (Wong 2011). The IAPs are a group of structurally and functionally similar proteins that regulate apoptosis by inhibiting caspase activity and promoting degradation of active caspases. Dysregulated IAP expression has been reported in many cancers. For example, drug resistance correlated with the expression of cIAP-2 in pancreatic cells while Apollon was found to be upregulated in gliomas and was responsible for cisplatin and camptothecin resistance (Chen et al. 1999).

The caspases are a large group of proteins that play a central role in apoptosis. As they work at two levels, *initiator caspases* (e.g., caspase-2, -8, -9, and -10) responsible for the initiation of the apoptotic pathway and *effector caspases* (caspase-3, -6, and -7) responsible in the actual cleavage of cellular components during apoptosis. Therefore low levels of these proteins or impairment function can decrease apoptosis thus contributing to resistance.

The p53 protein, also called tumor protein 53 (or TP 53), is one of the best known tumor suppressor proteins whose mutation acquired oncogenic property. Defects in the p53 tumor suppressor gene have been linked to more than 50% of human cancers (Bai and Zhu 2006) because it is not only involved in the induction of apoptosis but it is also a key player in cell cycle regulation, development, differentiation, gene amplification, DNA recombination, chromosomal segregation, and cellular senescence. A recent study reported that some target genes of p53 involved in apoptosis and cell cycle regulation are aberrantly expressed in melanoma cells and possibly related to resistance (Avery-Kiejda et al. 2011).

Several abnormalities in the death signaling pathways that can lead to evasion of the extrinsic pathway of apoptosis have been identified. Death receptors such as Fas, DR3, Trail-1, Trail-2, and ligands of the death receptors are key players in the regulation of extrinsic pathway of apoptosis. Downregulation or impairment of receptor function, abnormal expression of decoy receptors, as well as a reduced level in the death signals can contribute to impaired signaling and hence a reduction of apoptosis and acquisition of drug resistance.

2.5 Alteration of Drug Target

One of the most common drug resistance mechanisms involves genetic alterations of drug target such as mutations or changes in expression levels. These modifications could exist at low levels before drug treatment and undergo positive selection during exposure to chemotherapy. In oncology, genomic characterization of cancer has highlighted the importance of driver somatic mutations that give rise to an unusual reliance of cancer cells on a particular molecular pathways and their specific oncogenic kinases. These proteins are targets for many drugs and can be altered by different mechanisms.

Main categories of this type of resistance could be:

- Downregulation of gene expression (e.g., effect of doxorubicin on topoisomerase IIα) (Di Nicolantonio et al. 2005)
- Gene amplification (e.g., BCR-ABL amplification detected both in vitro and in imatinib-resistant CML specimens) (Gorre et al. 2001)
- Mutations in *gatekeeper residue* (e.g., EGFR-T790M in NSCLC after treatment with tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI) gefitinib and erlotinib (Bell et al. 2005); BCR-ABL T315 in CML patient treated with imatinib) (Gorre et al. 2001)
- Mutations that alter the conformation (e.g., mutations in ALK – F1174L, C1156Y, and L1152R – confer an increase in ATP affinity and clinical resistance to the ALK inhibitor crizotinib) (Choi et al. 2010)
- Alternative spliced form (e.g., $p61BRAF^{V600E}$ detected in both vemurafenib in vitro-resistant cells and from resistant patient tumor biopsies produces enhanced dimerization with other RAF family members and resistance to vemurafenib but not MEK inhibitors) (Poulikakos et al. 2011).

A possible consequence of the inhibition of specific target is also the activation of a so-called bypass signaling mechanism. This results in the activation of a critical downstream signaling effector – normally activated by the kinase and extinguished by a kinase inhibitor – through a parallel mechanism that is indifferent to the kinase-directed therapy. An illustrative example of bypass-mediated resistance has been described in EGFR-mutant NSCLC. The bypass resistance mechanisms may also involve the modulation of positive or negative feedback loops and an example could be the augmentation of AKT signaling by MEK inhibitors (Garraway and Jänne 2012).

3 Conclusion

This review article shortly summarizes the main mechanisms of resistance to anticancer drugs. In order to define possible strategies to counteract resistance mechanisms, it can be useful to divide them in *pre-target*, *target related*, and *post-target* mechanisms.

As far as *pre-target* mechanisms – that can also be classified as pharmacokinetics mechanisms – we envisage the possibility to circumvent them by increasing drug doses and improving drug delivery testing combinations with modulators of drug transport and of tumor microenvironment.

On the other side, a deeper and deeper knowledge of *target related* mechanisms, e.g., target mutations, downregulation, amplification, is instrumental to identify alternative drugs, equally effective against cancer cells, to circumvent these types of resistance.

Finally as regards *post-target* mechanisms, the modulation of apoptosis appears to be a potentially feasible approach as recently demonstrated by Croce and Reed (2016).

References

Amable L (2016) Cisplatin resistance and opportunities for precision medicine. Pharmacol Res 106:27–36. doi:10.1016/j.phrs.2016.01.001

Ambudkar SV, Kimchi-Sarfaty C, Sauna ZE, Gottesman MM (2003) P-glycoprotein: from genomics to mechanism. Oncogene 22:7468–7485. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1206948

Ashworth A (2008) Drug resistance caused by reversion mutation. Cancer Res 68:10021–10023. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-2287

Avery-Kiejda KA, Bowden NA, Croft AJ et al (2011) P53 in human melanoma fails to regulate target genes associated with apoptosis and the cell cycle and may contribute to proliferation. BMC Cancer 11:203. doi:10.1186/1471-2407-11-203

Baekelandt MM, Holm R, Nesland JM et al (2000) P-glycoprotein expression is a marker for chemotherapy resistance and prognosis in advanced ovarian cancer. Anticancer Res 20:1061–1067

Bai L, Zhu WG (2006) p53: structure, function and therapeutic applications. J Cancer Mol 2:141–153

Bell DW, Gore I, Okimoto RA et al (2005) Inherited susceptibility to lung cancer may be associated with the T790M drug resistance mutation in EGFR. Nat Genet 37:1315–1316. doi:10.1038/ng1671

Buck A, Halbritter S, Späth C et al (2015) Distribution and quantification of irinotecan and its active metabolite SN-38 in colon cancer murine model systems using MALDI MSI. Anal Bioanal Chem 407:2107–2116. doi:10.1007/s00216-014-8237-2

Cesca M, Morosi L, Berndt A et al (2016) Bevacizumab-induced inhibition of angiogenesis promotes a more homogeneous intratumoral distribution of paclitaxel, improving the antitumor response. Mol Cancer Ther 15:125–135. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-15-0063

Chen Z, Naito M, Hori S et al (1999) A human IAP-family gene, apollon, expressed in human brain cancer cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 264:847–854. doi:10.1006/bbrc.1999.1585

Choi YL, Soda M, Yamashita Y et al (2010) EML4-ALK mutations in lung cancer that confer resistance to ALK inhibitors. N Engl J Med 363:1734–1739. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1007478

Connell JJ, Sugihara Y, Török S et al (2015) Localization of sunitinib in in vivo animal and in vitro experimental models by MALDI mass spectrometry imaging. Anal Bioanal Chem 407:2245–2253. doi:10.1007/s00216-014-8350-2

Croce CM, Reed JC (2016) Finally, an apoptosis-targeting therapeutic for cancer. Cancer Res 76:5914–5920. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-16-1248

Di Nicolantonio F, Mercer SJ, Knight LA et al (2005) Cancer cell adaptation to chemotherapy. BMC Cancer 5:78. doi:10.1186/1471-2407-5-78

Farmer H, McCabe N, Lord CJ et al (2005) Targeting the DNA repair defect in BRCA mutant cells as a therapeutic strategy. Nature 434:917–921. doi:10.1038/nature03445

Fink D, Aebi S, Howell SB (1998) The role of DNA mismatch repair in drug resistance. Clin Cancer Res 4:1–6

Fuso Nerini I, Morosi L, Zucchetti M et al (2014) Intratumor heterogeneity and its impact on drug distribution and sensitivity. Clin Pharmacol Ther 96:224–238. doi:10.1038/clpt.2014.105

Garraway LA, Jänne PA (2012) Circumventing cancer drug resistance in the era of personalized medicine. Cancer Discov 2:214–226. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0012

Giordano S, Morosi L, Veglianese P et al (2016a) 3D mass spectrometry imaging reveals a very heterogeneous drug distribution in tumors. Sci Rep 6:37027. doi:10.1038/srep37027

Giordano S, Zucchetti M, Decio A et al (2016b) Heterogeneity of paclitaxel distribution in different tumor models assessed by MALDI mass spectrometry imaging. Sci Rep 6:39284. doi:10.1038/srep39284

Gorre ME, Mohammed M, Ellwood K et al (2001) Clinical resistance to STI-571 cancer therapy caused by BCR-ABL gene mutation or amplification. Science 293:876–880. doi:10.1126/science.1062538

Holohan C, Van Schaeybroeck S, Longley DB, Johnston PG (2013) Cancer drug resistance: an evolving paradigm. Nat Rev Cancer 13:714–726. doi:10.1038/nrc3599
Kao CH, Tsai SC, Liu TJ et al (2001) P-glycoprotein and multidrug resistance-related protein expressions in relation to technetium-99m methoxyisobutylisonitrile scintimammography findings. Cancer Res 61:1412–1414
Kauvar LM, Morgan AS, Sanderson PE, Henner WD (1998) Glutathione based approaches to improving cancer treatment. Chem Biol Interact 111–112:225–238
Kirschner K, Melton DW (2010) Multiple roles of the ERCC1-XPF endonuclease in DNA repair and resistance to anticancer drugs. Anticancer Res 30:3223–3232
Leith CP, Kopecky KJ, Chen IM et al (1999) Frequency and clinical significance of the expression of the multidrug resistance proteins MDR1/P-glycoprotein, MRP1, and LRP in acute myeloid leukemia: a southwest oncology group study. Blood 94:1086–1099
Longley DB, Harkin DP, Johnston PG (2003) 5-fluorouracil: mechanisms of action and clinical strategies. Nat Rev Cancer 3:330–338. doi:10.1038/nrc1074
Meijer C, Mulder NH, Timmer-Bosscha H et al (1992) Relationship of cellular glutathione to the cytotoxicity and resistance of seven platinum compounds. Cancer Res 52:6885–6889
Minchinton AI, Tannock IF (2006) Drug penetration in solid tumours. Nat Rev Cancer 6:583–592. doi:10.1038/nrc1893
Morosi L, Zucchetti M, D'Incalci M, Davoli E (2013) Imaging mass spectrometry: challenges in visualization of drug distribution in solid tumors. Curr Opin Pharmacol 13:807–812. doi:10.1016/j.coph.2013.06.003
Pallis M, Russell N (2004) Strategies for overcoming p-glycoprotein-mediated drug resistance in acute myeloblastic leukaemia. Leukemia 18:1927–1930. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2403511
Poulikakos PI, Persaud Y, Janakiraman M et al (2011) RAF inhibitor resistance is mediated by dimerization of aberrantly spliced BRAF(V600E). Nature 480:387–390. doi:10.1038/nature10662
Prideaux B, Stoeckli M (2012) Mass spectrometry imaging for drug distribution studies. J Proteome 75:4999–5013. doi:10.1016/j.jprot.2012.07.028
Rzagalinski I, Volmer DA (2016) Quantification of low molecular weight compounds by MALDI imaging mass spectrometry – a tutorial review. Biochim Biophys Acta. doi:10.1016/j.bbapap.2016.12.011. pii:S1570-9639(16)30276-X [Epub ahead of print]
Shervington A, Lu C (2008) Expression of multidrug resistance genes in normal and cancer stem cells. Cancer Investig 26:535–542. doi:10.1080/07357900801904140
Sugiura Y, Setou M (2010) Imaging mass spectrometry for visualization of drug and endogenous metabolite distribution: toward in situ pharmacometabolomes. J Neuroimmune Pharmacol 5:31–43. doi:10.1007/s11481-009-9162-6
Szakács G, Paterson JK, Ludwig JA et al (2006) Targeting multidrug resistance in cancer. Nat Rev Drug Discov 5:219–234. doi:10.1038/nrd1984
Thomas H, Coley HM (2003) Overcoming multidrug resistance in cancer: an update on the clinical strategy of inhibiting p-glycoprotein. Cancer Control J Moffitt Cancer Center 10:159–165
Thomas A, Tanaka M, Trepel J et al (2017) Temozolomide in the era of precision medicine. Cancer Res 77:823–826. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-16-2983
Torok S, Rezeli M, Kelemen O et al (2017) Limited tumor tissue drug penetration contributes to primary resistance against angiogenesis. Inhibitors. Theranostics 7(2):400–412. doi:10.7150/thno.16767
Usanova S, Piée-Staffa A, Sied U et al (2010) Cisplatin sensitivity of testis tumour cells is due to deficiency in interstrand-crosslink repair and low ERCC1-XPF expression. Mol Cancer 9:248. doi:10.1186/1476-4598-9-248
Wong RSY (2011) Apoptosis in cancer: from pathogenesis to treatment. J Exp Clin Cancer Res CR 30:87. doi:10.1186/1756-9966-30-87

Major Physiological Signaling Pathways in the Regulation of Cell Proliferation and Survival

Huifang Tang and Gongda Xue

Contents

1 Introduction 14
2 Signaling Pathways Involved in the Regulation of Cell Proliferation 14
2.1 Biological Regulation of Proliferation by mTOR/PI3K/Akt Signaling 15
2.2 Ras/MAPK Signaling-Regulated Cell Proliferation, Differentiation, and Survival ... 17
2.3 JAK/STAT Signaling in the Regulation of Cell Proliferation and Survival 20
3 Signaling Interaction Network Between PI3K/Akt, Ras/MAPK, and JAK/STAT Axes ... 20
4 Output Signals of Integrated Signaling Pathways 22
4.1 Redundant Targeting of Shared Substrates in Cell Growth and Metabolism 22
4.2 Differential Phospho-Regulation of Shared Substrates in Cell Proliferation and Survival 23
5 Impact of Signaling Interaction Network in Clinical Cancer Therapies 23
6 Final Remarks 24
References 25

Abstract

Multiple signaling pathways regulate cell proliferation and survival and are therefore important for maintaining homeostasis of development. The balance between cell growth and death is achieved through orchestrated signal transduction pathways mediated by complex functional interactions between signaling axes, among which, PI3K/Akt and Ras/MAPK as well as JAK/STAT play a dominant role in promoting cell proliferation, differentiation, and survival. In clinical cancer therapies, drug resistance is the major challenge that occurs in almost all targeted therapeutic strategies. Recent advances in research have suggested that the intrinsic

H. Tang (✉)
Department of Pharmacology, Zhejiang University, School of Basic Medical Sciences, Hangzhou 310058, China
e-mail: tanghuifang@zju.edu.cn

G. Xue
Department of Biomedicine, University Hospital Basel, Basel 4031, Switzerland

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_4

pro-survival signaling crosstalk is the driving force in acquired resistance to a targeted therapy, which may be abolished by interfering with the cross-reacting network.

Keywords
Apoptosis • Cell cycle • Drug resistance • JAK/STAT • Lung cancer • Melanoma • mTOR/PI3K/Akt • Proliferation • Ras/MAPK • Signaling crosstalk

1 Introduction

The development of a multicellular eukaryote starts from the division of a zygote that eventually produces many types of functionally specialized cells. Proper tissue formation and growth requires a homeostatic regulation of cell cycle events that control cell proliferation and the cellular metabolism that often associates with apoptosis, a process of programmed cell death that surveils a balanced cell proliferation rate and cell number. Such regulation is usually governed by defined activation and inactivation of individual genes at different developmental stages. The selective pattern of gene expression functionally directs cell proliferation, cell differentiation, cell migration, and cell–cell communication to maintain a developmental integrity of the complex formation of tissues and organs. This phenotypic complexity is precisely mirrored by the genetic control system, an orchestrated signaling network coordinated among a few key evolutionarily conserved pathways. In this chapter, we intend to discuss recent advances of two important pathways, mTOR/PI3K/Akt and mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), whose activation and interaction are critical for development and are the key regulatory elements in pathological circumstances such as malignant transformation of neoplasia and drug resistance in clinical cancer therapy.

2 Signaling Pathways Involved in the Regulation of Cell Proliferation

Cell proliferation is integrated with the overall needs of the organismal development in coordination with cell growth. It is principally mediated by cell cycle, a fundamental process that occurs when a parental cell produces two daughter cells via a series of genetic events (Hartwell and Kastan 1994; Nakayama and Nakayama 2006). Each of the daughter cells theoretically obtains the same copy of the genetic material inherited from the parental cell and are therefore genetically identical and morphologically undistinguishable. Similar to their parent, the mature daughter cells may initiate and complete the cell cycle when triggered by distinct signals in favor of the needs for growth and metabolism. Under physiological conditions, the proliferative cells are generally restricted to cells that supplement the tissue. Most tissues contain a group of multipotent cells, usually called stem cells, which can not only renew themselves but also divide asymmetrically to generate a new stem cell and a progenitor cell. In a context

dependent manner, progenitor cells may undergo further divisions, or enter terminal differentiation with endued specialized functions. Thus, in order to maintain proper tissue development, cell proliferation is programmed to be tightly controlled and its deregulation is a hallmark of malignant transformation found in the clinic (Hanahan and Weinberg 2000, 2011).

Maintenance of an appropriate cell number is also contributed by programmed cell death, apoptosis, which actively eliminates unwanted cells including aged and damaged cells (Elmore 2007; Taylor et al. 2008). Importantly, these two cellular functions are under a variety of stringent controls to ensure tissue homeostasis. Aberrant alterations of each functional node, either hyperactivation of proliferation or deactivation of apoptosis, will ultimately result in uncontrolled cell proliferation and growth that leads to tumor formation.

Mechanistic studies have revealed a number of biological signaling axes important for controlling cell proliferation and apoptosis. These signaling pathways commonly form an integral signaling network through diverse functional interactions, which are mediated by specific feedback signaling loops. Recent advances from clinical studies have shown that therapeutic disruption of the indispensable signaling loops during tumorigenic development is one of the leading causes of drug resistance and is attributed to over-activation of parallel proliferative signaling pathways (Holohan et al. 2013; Wicki et al. 2016).

2.1 Biological Regulation of Proliferation by mTOR/PI3K/Akt Signaling

In response to the stimulation of a variety of extracellular signaling cues, a number of membrane receptors with kinase activities can be activated via oligomerization. Activated membranous kinases subsequently create binding motifs in their intracellular segments that recruit and further activate the essential signal-mediator kinases. One of these intracellular messengers is lipid kinase phosphoinositide 3 kinase (PI3K), an evolutionarily conserved intracellular kinase that can convert Phosphatidylinositol (4,5)-bisphosphate (PIP2) into the secondary messenger molecule Phosphatidylinositol (3,4,5)-trisphosphate (PIP3) on the plasmic membrane (Engelman et al. 2006). This process can be reversed by the phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN), which pairs with PI3K to constitute a functional switch of PIP3-dependent signaling transduction. Membrane-targeted PIP3 recruits certain proto-kinases to the inner surface of cytoplasmic membrane through binding to the pleckstrin homology (PH) domain with elevated affinity. Several important kinases are dependent on PIP3-mediated membrane targeting for activation. Akt and phosphoinositide-dependent kinase 1 (PDK1), two PH-domain-containing kinases, recognize and bind to newly generated and enriched PIP3, resulting in transient membrane anchoring and consequent activation.

Akt, also called protein kinase B (PKB), is a serine/threonine kinase that belongs to the AGC protein kinase family (Pearce et al. 2010). It comprises three isoforms in mammals with a high degree of sequence identity. Although the tissue distribution pattern is slightly different, Akt isoforms are virtually expressed in all cell types and

act as one of the most important signaling nodes to direct proper responses to exogenous or endogenous stimuli (Fayard et al. 2010).

Activation of Akt is a multistep process with characteristic phosphorylation of two key amino acids, threonine 308 (T308) in the "activation loop" and serine 473 (S473) in the "carboxy-terminal hydrophobic motif," both of which are conserved in all three isoforms. T308 phosphorylation is contributed by PDK1 when both proteins are recruited to the plasma membrane by PIP3. Although not exclusively required, it is generally accepted that the full kinase activity of Akt is stimulated upon phosphorylation of S473 by the mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) complex 2 (mTORC2) (Cybulski and Hall 2009). Recent studies have also uncovered another kinase, DNA-dependent protein kinase (DNA-PK), that is capable of phosphorylating Akt on the same amino acid in response to DNA double-strand break (Bozulic et al. 2008; Surucu et al. 2008). Therefore, under physiological or pathological conditions, Akt acts as a direct functional target downstream of PI3K under the stringent control of PDK1 and mTORC2 or DNA-PK, which consolidates the theoretical basis for understanding the current model (Fig. 1). Genetic knockout of each Akt isoform or pharmacological inhibition of its activity results in a universal defect in growth in mouse models, indicating a central role of the Akt family in growth control (Fayard et al. 2010). In consistence with its roles in development, Akt is widely observed to be hyperactivated in a broad panel of cancers (Fruman and Rommel 2014; Vivanco and Sawyers 2002). In this regard, the signaling axis mTOR/PI3K/Akt has become one of the most attractive targeting pathways to restrain cancer cell proliferation. In spite of its three major upstream regulators, other kinases such as serine–threonine kinases IKK (Xie

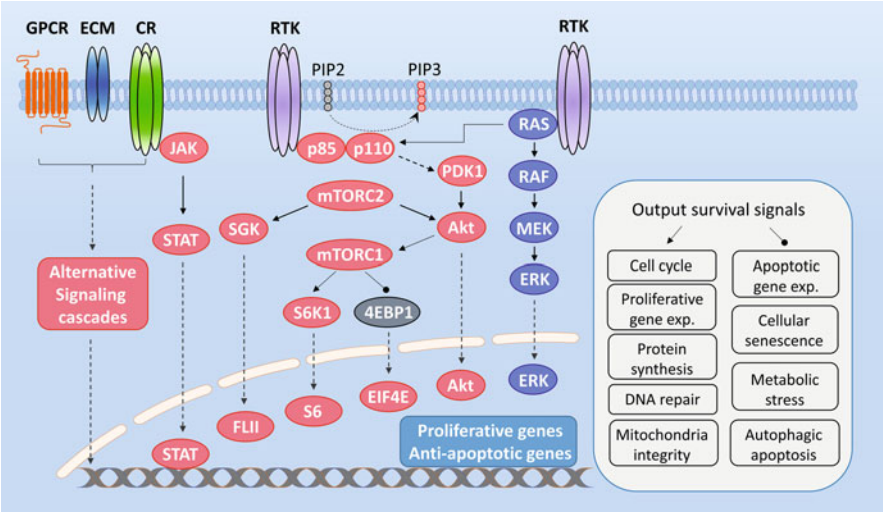


Fig. 1 Introduction to major proliferative signaling pathways. Three major signaling axes, mTOR/PI3K/Akt, Ras/MAPK, and JAK/STAT, are dissected to show their downstream targets that promote cell cycle progression. *RTK* receptor tyrosine kinase, *CR* chemokine receptor, *ECM* extracellular matrix, *GPCR* G-protein-coupled receptor

et al. 2011) and TBK1 (Ou et al. 2011; Xie et al. 2011), together with three tyrosine kinases Src (Chen et al. 2001; Haynes et al. 2003), Ack1/TNK2 (Mahajan et al. 2010; Mahajan and Mahajan 2015), and PTK6 (Zheng et al. 2010), are also reported to modulate Akt activity with distinct regulatory mechanisms. Therefore, Akt appears to be a universal intracellular mediator converged from a number of membrane signaling cascades. Indeed, not only phosphorylation but also many other types of post-translational modification of Akt have been discovered to collaboratively control Akt to maintain cellular homeostasis (Risso et al. 2015).

Akt activation triggers a number of functional events including cell proliferation, growth, survival, protein synthesis, and metabolism. These cellular functions are differentially promoted by multiple downstream targets of Akt, which can be grouped into five categories with functional specificities in regulations of cell cycle: gene synthesis and protein translation, cell survival and anti-apoptosis, developmental progress/stress and metabolism, and crosstalk with other signaling pathways. Akt-regulated cellular functions are preferentially controlled by its specific substrates with distinct roles (Manning and Cantley 2007) (Fig. 2a) as well as a few physical interacting partners that can also regulate its activity.

2.2 Ras/MAPK Signaling-Regulated Cell Proliferation, Differentiation, and Survival

In parallel to the PI3K/Akt axis, another intracellular signaling pathway can be found downstream of membrane-coupled signalosomes; this pathway is the small GTPase-mediated MAPK cascade. The MAPK family is highly conserved throughout mammalian evolution to regulate diverse developmental processes such as cell cycle regulation, differentiation, cell motility, physiological metabolism, stress response, and pro- or anti-apoptosis (Widmann et al. 1999). The mammalian MAPK family contains more than 20 protein kinases characteristically organized into three-tiered kinase cascades (Chang and Karin 2001). Activation of the last tier messenger MAPK proteins is mediated by directed phosphorylation on threonine (Thr) and tyrosine (Tyr) residues within a conserved Thr-X-Tyr motif (X represents glycine, glutamine, or proline) that is located in the activation loop of the kinase domain. Based on the extracellular stimuli and their distinct membrane-associated signaling receptors, the MAPK signaling pathway can be categorized into four major branches characterized by distinct MAPK family members including extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK), c-Jun NH_2-terminal kinases (JNK), p38, and ERK5 (Pearson et al. 2001; Qi and Elion 2005). These MAPK messenger kinases have been shown to implement different cellular functionalities (Fig. 2b).

In response to stimulation of growth factors, conversion of Ras^{GDP} to Ras^{GTP} activates Raf kinase, an MAPK kinase kinase (MAPKKK) that can phospho-activate its downstream target MEK, an MAPK kinase (MAPKK). MEK rapidly phosphorylates ERK1/2 and subsequently stimulates cell proliferation through activating a broad range of substrates of ERK. These substrates include intracellular kinases p90 ribosomal S6 kinases (RSK) (Carriere et al. 2008b), mitogen- and stress-activated kinases

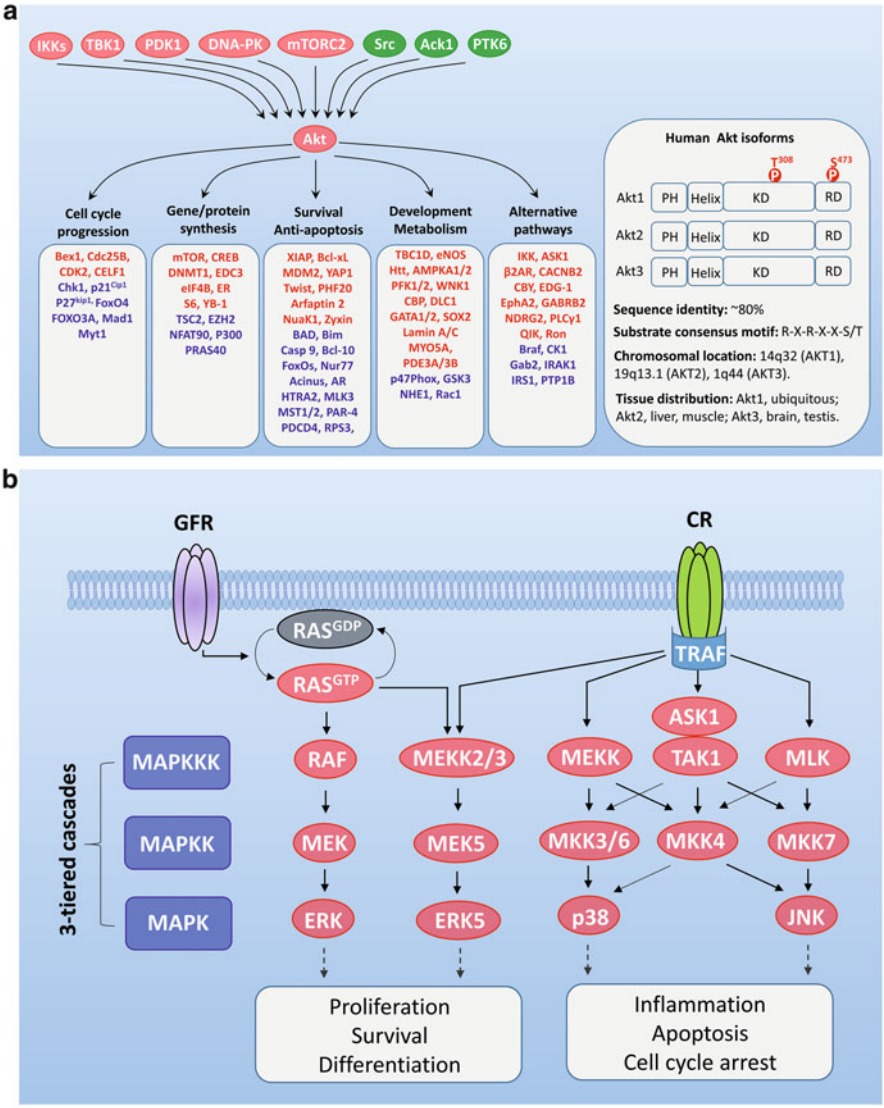


Fig. 2 Mechanistic regulation of cell proliferation by PI3K/Akt and MAPK pathways. (**a**) Up- and downstream targets of Akt that regulate differential gene expression in promoting cell proliferation and survival. Upstream kinases highlighted in *red* represent serine–threonine kinases, while kinases highlighted in *green* are phosphorylating tyrosine residues on Akt. Downstream of Akt are its substrates important in cell growth: the substrates highlighted in *red* are phospho-activated by Akt and subsequently promote cell proliferation and survival, while those highlighted in *blue* are pro-apoptotic and phospho-inactivated by Akt. (**b**) Schematic dissection of MAPK family members and their signaling interaction in regulating and determining cell fate. *GFR* growth factor receptor

(MSK) (Arthur 2008), MAPK-interacting kinases (MNKs) (Waskiewicz et al. 1997), and death-associated protein kinase (DAPK) (Chen et al. 2005). A number of transcriptional factors including NF-AT, STAT3, MEF2, c-Myc, ELK-1, and c-Fos (Cargnello and Roux 2011; Gaestel 2015) are also involved. Basal activation of the ERK1/2 cascade is important for efficient G1-S transition during cell cycle. Therefore, ERK1/2 conventionally acts as a positive regulator of cell cycle progression contributing to cell proliferation under physiological conditions. In fact, this proliferative role of activated ERK is directly reflected in many types of clinical disorders, such as cancer, in which ERK activation is dramatically deregulated to favor an uncontrolled proliferative phenotype of cancer cells.

In contrast to ERK activation in response mainly to growth factors (Ramos 2008), other classes of stimuli like cytokines potently induce JNK and p38 activation through three well-defined signaling routes: MEKKs-MKK3/6-p38, ASK1/TAK1-MKK4-JNK/p38, and MLK-MKK7-JNK. Similar to ERK, JNK and p38 also amplify the transduced signals in response to stimulation of pro-inflammatory factors and environmental stress through their specific substrates including c-Jun, p53, Bax, Tau, ATF-2, HuR, EST1, HSF-1, JunB, cPLA2, GADD153, and MK2/3 in spite of some shared substrates with ERK kinases such as ELK-1, NF-AT, STAT3, c-Myc MNK, MEF2, and MSK. Unsurprisingly, both proliferative and proapoptotic phenotypes can be triggered due to the complexity of these substrates that may induce both apoptosis and survival (Wada and Penninger 2004). Therefore, the cell fate regulated by MAPK signaling pathways is possibly determined by the equilibrium of the input signals of proliferation and apoptosis, where overexpression of either interferes with cellular homeostasis (Royuela et al. 2002). Another branch in the canonical MAPK signaling is mediated by ERK5, previously called BMK1 (big MAPK kinase 1). Knockout of ERK5 in mice induces early embryonic lethality due to impaired angiogenesis and cardiac development. Tissue-specific depletion of ERK5 leads to impaired endothelial cell development and vascular integrity (Hayashi and Lee 2004). Further studies dissect its role in the regulation of cell survival in response to the stimulation of both growth factor and pro-inflammatory pathways (Drew et al. 2012).

Although the canonical MAPK pathway is ubiquitously present, biochemical studies have revealed a set of unique kinases remotely linked to the conventional branches. These kinases fall into three subgroups based on individual messenger MAPKs. It is not clear whether these kinases can be interpreted by the characteristic three-tiered cascades as many of the components have not been identified (or do not exist at all). However, it is demonstrated that the unique messenger MAPKs, such as ERK3/4, ERK7/8, and NLK, do not harbor the same consensus phosphorylation motif Thr-X-Tyr (Coulombe and Meloche 2007). Because of many less-understood observations, it is still too early to review the functional relevance and importance of these atypical MAPKs in physiology, although recent studies have shed some light in this field (Aberg et al. 2009; Al-Mahdi et al. 2015; De la Mota-Peynado et al. 2011; Long et al. 2012; Sirois et al. 2015). Taken together, the complex signaling networks established by MAPKs are capable of generating highly specific signals to induce remarkable diversities of cellular responses to regulate the machinery of cell fate control.

2.3 JAK/STAT Signaling in the Regulation of Cell Proliferation and Survival

The third appreciated intracellular signaling axis is Janus kinase (JAK)/signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) pathway. Notably, recent studies from clinical disorders reveal that JAK/STAT is one of the most deregulated signaling routes in secondary hyperactivation of parallel survival signaling in acquired therapeutic resistance to cancer therapies (Britschgi et al. 2012; Sun and Bernards 2014). Despite that the deregulated activation by RTKs frequently occurred during oncogenic progression (Wicki et al. 2016), JAK kinases are classical non-receptor tyrosine kinases that transduce cytokine-mediated signals. Compared to the MAPK signaling network, the JAK/STAT module seems to be simple; upon binding of individual cytokines to their corresponding receptors, four JAK family members (JAK1–3 and TYK2) can be differentially recruited to cytokine receptors and activated by trans- and/or autophosphorylation. Activated JAK kinases subsequently induce specific tyrosine phosphorylation on the intracellular tail of cytokine receptors that serve as a docking site for inactive cytosolic STAT proteins. To date, seven STAT family members have been identified in mammals. Direct phospho-activation by JAKs leads to oligomerization of STAT proteins, either homo- or heterodimerization, and rapidly translocates into the nucleus to activate distinct transcriptional programs (Levy and Darnell 2002). Several well-studied genes are directly regulated by STAT transcription factors. For example, STAT3 can upregulate MMP2 and MMP9 that increase cell motility, and VEGF, bFGF, and HIF-1α that stimulate angiogenesis. Importantly, activated STATs can directly upregulate anti-apoptotic genes such as Bcl-X_L and cyclin D1, providing an enhanced anti-apoptotic potential to cells under stress conditions, implying a pro-survival role of JAK/STAT-mediated cytokine signaling (Rawlings et al. 2004).

3 Signaling Interaction Network Between PI3K/Akt, Ras/MAPK, and JAK/STAT Axes

Homeostatic development requires a balanced activity of each signaling cascade. Multiple physiological mechanisms have been shown to regulate cell growth and aging. In principle, these mechanisms can be characterized into two categories: autonomous signaling feedback loop and dependent signaling crosstalk loop, both of which can be integrated at transcriptional and translational levels. When this physiological functionality is taken by the cancer cells in clinical treatment, the pharmacologically stressed cancer cells may evolve to neglect the single-pathway-suppression-induced cytotoxicity. If such aptitude is (epi-)/genetically established, the acquired resistance of cancer cells to pathway inhibitors will inevitably be developed. Notwithstanding the well-understood negative self-feedback signaling mediated by the docking proteins insulin receptor substrate (IRS), GRB2-associated binder (GAB), and FoxO along the mTOR/PI3K/Akt axis (Chandarlapaty et al. 2011; Hsu et al. 2011; Laplante and Sabatini 2012; Yu et al. 2011), clinical observations evidently confirm that the interaction network

between PI3K/Akt, Ras/MAPK, and JAK/STAT has been implicated to play a vital survival role in promotion of cancer cells defending apoptotic induction, particularly in the context of therapeutic treatments (Fig. 3).

Signaling crosstalk can be either cross-activation or cross-inhibition. Activation of Akt may directly phospho-inhibit Raf (Moelling et al. 2002; Reusch et al. 2001) to maintain adequate MAPK activity, while preventing from stress-induced apoptosis by phosphorylating ASK1 (Kim et al. 2001; Zhang et al. 2005) and MLK (Figueroa et al. 2003). Meanwhile, Akt can promote its activation by transcriptional reprogramming through its downstream substrates, such as Twist (Cheng et al. 2007; Xue et al. 2012; Yang et al. 2015), that complies a feedforward signaling loop; in contrast, to avoid unwanted hyperactivation, it can suppress mTORC1-directed IRS1/GAB-mediated upstream RTK signalosomes. Moreover, mitogen-activated ERK was also reported to enhance mTORC1 activation through direct phosphorylation of Raptor, a key regulatory subunit of mTORC1 (Carriere et al. 2011), and indirectly through its downstream kinase RSK that may phosphorylate Raptor (Anjum and Blenis 2008; Carriere et al. 2008a). Such cross-activation-resulted enhancement of the mTOR pathway is also reflected by ERK-dependent inactivation of the intrinsic inhibitory Tuberous Sclerosis Complex 2 (TSC2) that behaves similar to the mode of Akt and suppresses mTOR activity (Huang and Manning 2009; Inoki et al. 2002; Ma et al. 2005). Reciprocal elevation of ERK activity can also be triggered by inactivation of GSK3 in an Akt-dependent manner (Ding et al. 2005). Interestingly, in vitro kinase assay revealed that PDK1 is able to promote MAPK activation by phosphorylating MEK1 and MEK2 (Lee et al. 2012).

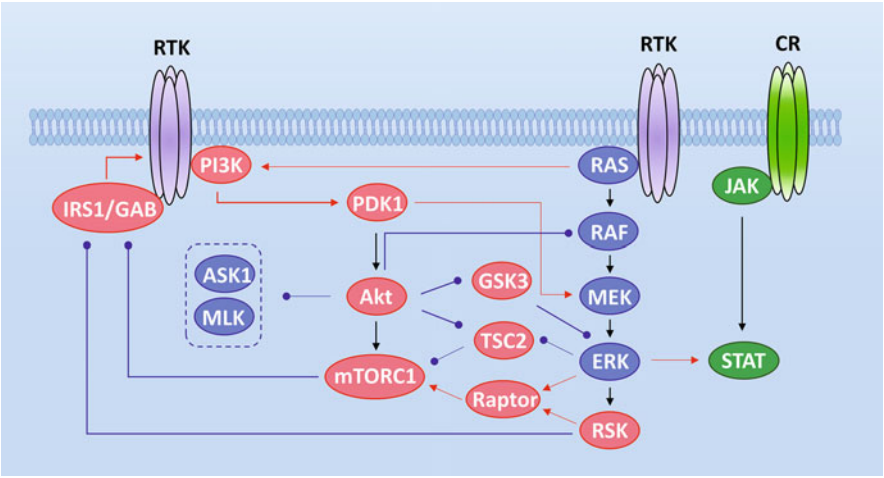


Fig. 3 Molecular interactions between three pathways of PI3K/Akt, Ras/MAPK, and JAK/STAT. The molecules highlighted in *red* are key components in the PI3K/Akt pathway, while in *blue* and in *green* belong to the MAPK and JAK/STAT pathways, respectively. The *arrows* in *red* represent "phospho-activating" and in *blue* represent "phospho-inactivating"

4 Output Signals of Integrated Signaling Pathways

These experimental studies demonstrate that activation of both mTOR/PI3K/Akt and Ras/MAPK reciprocally regulates each other in favor of a physiological response to extracellular cues. Clearly such interplay is strictly maintained in a context dependent manner. This is also supported by molecular modeling that signaling interaction is triggered by the special-temporal expression level of the signaling components such as stimuli, receptors, and effectors (Borisov et al. 2009).

4.1 Redundant Targeting of Shared Substrates in Cell Growth and Metabolism

Interaction of multiple pathways is to enable the cells optimally adapting the developmental conditions to promote their proliferation and/or survival. Signals can vary dramatically: higher level of growth factor stimulation may trigger negative feedback signaling, whereas decrease of one axis activity may stimulate other parallel signaling axes to maintain a balanced signaling altitude to timely determine the cell fate. This is best revealed in cell line-based studies in vitro when one axis is chemically blocked as well as in animal models upon treatment with pharmacological inhibitors. Therefore, crosstalk network rewires the signal transduction path through inducing amplification or attenuation of the activities of effector molecules. Interestingly, the endpoint effector kinases, Akt, S6K and RSK, all are AGC kinase family members (Manning et al. 2002). Of note, the consensus sequences of their substrates are almost identical with a core phosphorylating motif "RXRXXS/T" (Pearce et al. 2010). Unsurprisingly, they are capable of phosphorylating the same substrate characteristically depending on the nature of stimulation and consequence. In fact, the outcome from signaling crosstalk is mirrored by cooperated regulation of a large substrate network. One of the best studied proteins involved in protein synthesis is ribosomal protein S6. S6 participates in activation of a translational initiation complex that promotes cell proliferation (Jastrzebski et al. 2007; Magnuson et al. 2012). Activation of S6 is shown to be regulated by RSK- and S6K-mediated phosphorylation on serine 235/236 and serine 240/244 residues that promote its binding to cap complex (Roux et al. 2007). Another key regulator involved in protein synthesis is the eukaryotic initiation factor 4B (eIF4B), which is required to modulate assembly of the translational initiation complex. Phosphorylation on serine 422 mediated by Akt (van Gorp et al. 2009), RSK (Shahbazian et al. 2006), and S6K (Holz et al. 2005) promotes eIF4B-dependent maturation of pre-initiation complex and subsequently leads to efficient translation. A set of transcription factors directly activating a number of proliferative genes are also co-regulated by Akt, RSK, and S6K kinases. Estrogen receptor (ER) is crucial to drive expression of Myc and Cyclin D1. Similar to S6, ERα activity is also co-regulated by direct phosphorylation on serine 167 by the above three kinases to enhance the transcription of its downstream target genes (Sun et al. 2001; Yamnik and Holz 2010). Similar actions also occur on other transcription factors such as Y-box binding protein 1 (YB1) and Mad1. In contrast, to establish the positive activating loops, Akt, RSK,

and S6K can also phospho-inactivate intracellular proliferation suppressors such as Glycogen synthase kinase 3 (GSK3) which is important in the regulation of cell metabolism and proliferation. In response to different stimuli, serine 9/21 may be phosphorylated by Akt, RSK, and S6K (Cohen and Frame 2001; Cross et al. 1995) which coordinately suppress its function, for example, by activation of its downstream antiproliferative complex TSC2 (Inoki et al. 2006).

4.2 Differential Phospho-Regulation of Shared Substrates in Cell Proliferation and Survival

In spite of phosphorylation on the same amino acids, Akt, RSK, ERK, and S6K can also target different sites on the same substrate to meticulously define its biological output. For example, the transcription factor forkhead box O (FoxO) family actively inhibits cell cycle progression by transcriptionally regulating a number of proapoptotic proteins, such as p21, p27, and p130, that induce cell cycle arrest at G1 phase, and GADD45 and Cyclin G2 at G2 phase, despite that FoxO family members can promote BIM-1, bNIP3, Bcl-6, FasL, and Trail, all of which are directly involved in cell death induction and enhancement (Greer and Brunet 2005). Akt targets FoxO3A on threonine 32 serines 253/315, whereas ERK can phosphorylate FoxO3A on serines 294/344/425, all of which trigger FoxO3A degradation (Tang et al. 1999; Yang et al. 2008). Similar to FoxO proteins, both RSK-mediated phosphorylation of BAD on serine 112 (Shimamura et al. 2000) and S6K-targeted serine 136 (Harada et al. 2001) cooperatively sequester BAD in the cytoplasm in a 14-3-3-dependent manner, which stimulates its apoptotic signaling from mitochondria thus promoting cell survival.

5 Impact of Signaling Interaction Network in Clinical Cancer Therapies

Akt is widely known for its pro-growth/survival roles via a large number of its substrates involved in regulation of many cellular events. mTOR/PI3K/Akt is one of the most deregulated signaling pathways in human malignancies and is often linked to aberrant cellular metabolism (Garcia-Echeverria and Sellers 2008; Hennessy et al. 2005). Under physiological conditions, depletion of each Akt isoform remarkably impairs normal development of mammals, phenotypically exhibiting retarded growth and smaller body size. Akt, being a cross-road signaling node, responds to growth signals and transduces through mTORC1 to direct gene transcription and translation. To avoid out-of-control cell proliferation and growth, physiological activation of protein phosphatases and attenuation of PI3K by lipid phosphatase PTEN are essential to repress excess Akt activity. In many types of cancer cells, PTEN is either genetically absent or inhibited, which results in a constitutive hyperactivation of PI3K/Akt that drives uncontrolled cancer cell proliferation. In addition, gain-of-function (GOF) mutations on PI3K and Akt, or their upstream kinase such as EGFR, are always dominant and contribute to oncogenesis and cancer progression. In non-small cell lung

cancer (NSCLC), in addition to highly deregulated EGFR activation, PTEN protein expression is inhibited in almost 70% of tumors (Marsit et al. 2005) together with oncogenic mutation on PI3K (~10%) (Spoerke et al. 2012) and Akt (~2%) (Scrima et al. 2012). Frequent gene amplification of PI3KCA (30%~50%) (Ji et al. 2011) and overexpression of Akt protein (~35%) (Scrima et al. 2012) are also associated with advanced disease progression. Therefore, inhibitors specifically targeting these components along the PI3K pathway are suggested to provide therapeutic effects. However, due to its extensive interacting network with other pathways, monotherapeutic inhibition of PI3K/Akt activity inevitably induces compensatory activation of crosstalked circuits to favor cancer cell survival. Buparlisib is a pan-PI3K inhibitor that is under investigation in clinic. Although its efficacy was demonstrated in preclinical models, a recent phase II study failed in confirming its benefit in NSCLC patients due to acquired resistance (Vansteenkiste et al. 2015). Even when both PI3K and mTOR are simultaneously inhibited, for example, by BEZ235, which is tested in patients with advanced solid tumors (Mayer and Arteaga 2016), JAK/STAT pathway is activated in parallel to promote cancer cell survival (Britschgi et al. 2012; Jin et al. 2014).

On the other hand, inhibition of oncogenic Ras-driven MAPK activation also frequently elevates PI3K/Akt activity. A current model in clinical first-line therapy is the melanoma harboring an oncogenic BRAF mutation on valine 600. Although therapeutic targeting of mutated BRAF with either dabrafenib or vemurafenib improved clinical benefit compared with conventional pan-DNA-damaging reagent, almost all the melanoma patients developed resistance within 10 months. Many mechanisms have been revealed and widely reported. Of note, all these reactivating mechanisms including Ras mutation and RTK activation converge on hyperactivation of the central node PI3K/Akt, which fuels cancer cells to resist to apoptosis.

6 Final Remarks

These clinical observations indicate an important role of signaling compensation by functional interaction between pathways, especially under stressed conditions. In fact, this is the origin where acquired resistance starts. Subsequently it is hypothesized that simultaneous targeting of two or three oncogenic drivers or key pathways upregulated in resistant tumors theoretically could synergize to kill cancer cells. Based on current understandings of drug resistance, a great number of clinical trials are underway to mechanistically combine different inhibitors in order to overcome tumor relapse. Although more data is needed, a few of the combinatory strategies have proven beneficial. In particular, combined inhibition of PI3K/Akt and Ras/MAPK pathways is shown to induce significant cytotoxicity compared with targeting a single component (Posch et al. 2013; Shi et al. 2011; Will et al. 2014). Therefore, orchestrated signaling crosstalk between PI3K/Akt, Ras/MAPK, and JAK/STAT (Chung et al. 1997) ultimately determines the cell fate with a fine tuned balance between proliferation and apoptosis.

Acknowledgment This work was supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China Grant 381570056.

References

Aberg E, Torgersen KM, Johansen B, Keyse SM, Perander M, Seternes OM (2009) Docking of PRAK/MK5 to the atypical MAPKs ERK3 and ERK4 defines a novel MAPK interaction motif. J Biol Chem 284:19392–19401. doi:10.1074/jbc.M109.023283

Al-Mahdi R, Babteen N, Thillai K, Holt M, Johansen B, Wetting HL, Seternes OM, Wells CM (2015) A novel role for atypical MAPK kinase ERK3 in regulating breast cancer cell morphology and migration. Cell Adh Migr 9:483–494. doi:10.1080/19336918.2015.1112485

Anjum R, Blenis J (2008) The RSK family of kinases: emerging roles in cellular signalling. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 9:747–758. doi:10.1038/nrm2509

Arthur JS (2008) MSK activation and physiological roles. Front Biosci 13:5866–5879

Borisov N, Aksamitiene E, Kiyatkin A, Legewie S, Berkhout J, Maiwald T, Kaimachnikov NP, Timmer J, Hoek JB, Kholodenko BN (2009) Systems-level interactions between insulin-EGF networks amplify mitogenic signaling. Mol Syst Biol 5:256. doi:10.1038/msb.2009.19

Bozulic L, Surucu B, Hynx D, Hemmings BA (2008) PKBalpha/Akt1 acts downstream of DNA-PK in the DNA double-strand break response and promotes survival. Mol Cell 30:203–213. doi:10.1016/j.molcel.2008.02.024

Britschgi A, Andraos R, Brinkhaus H, Klebba I, Romanet V, Muller U, Murakami M, Radimerski T, Bentires-Alj M (2012) JAK2/STAT5 inhibition circumvents resistance to PI3K/mTOR blockade: a rationale for cotargeting these pathways in metastatic breast cancer. Cancer Cell 22:796–811. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2012.10.023

Cargnello M, Roux PP (2011) Activation and function of the MAPKs and their substrates, the MAPK-activated protein kinases. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 75:50–83. doi:10.1128/MMBR.00031-10

Carriere A, Cargnello M, Julien LA, Gao H, Bonneil E, Thibault P, Roux PP (2008a) Oncogenic MAPK signaling stimulates mTORC1 activity by promoting RSK-mediated raptor phosphorylation. Curr Biol 18:1269–1277. doi:10.1016/j.cub.2008.07.078

Carriere A, Ray H, Blenis J, Roux PP (2008b) The RSK factors of activating the Ras/MAPK signaling cascade. Front Biosci 13:4258–4275

Carriere A, Romeo Y, Acosta-Jaquez HA, Moreau J, Bonneil E, Thibault P, Fingar DC, Roux PP (2011) ERK1/2 phosphorylate Raptor to promote Ras-dependent activation of mTOR complex 1 (mTORC1). J Biol Chem 286:567–577. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.159046

Chandarlapaty S, Sawai A, Scaltriti M, Rodrik-Outmezguine V, Grbovic-Huezo O, Serra V, Majumder PK, Baselga J, Rosen N (2011) AKT inhibition relieves feedback suppression of receptor tyrosine kinase expression and activity. Cancer Cell 19:58–71. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2010.10.031

Chang L, Karin M (2001) Mammalian MAP kinase signalling cascades. Nature 410:37–40. doi:10.1038/35065000

Chen R, Kim O, Yang J, Sato K, Eisenmann KM, McCarthy J, Chen H, Qiu Y (2001) Regulation of Akt/PKB activation by tyrosine phosphorylation. J Biol Chem 276:31858–31862. doi:10.1074/jbc.C100271200

Chen CH, Wang WJ, Kuo JC, Tsai HC, Lin JR, Chang ZF, Chen RH (2005) Bidirectional signals transduced by DAPK-ERK interaction promote the apoptotic effect of DAPK. EMBO J 24:294–304. doi:10.1038/sj.emboj.7600510

Cheng GZ, Chan J, Wang Q, Zhang W, Sun CD, Wang LH (2007) Twist transcriptionally upregulates AKT2 in breast cancer cells leading to increased migration, invasion, and resistance to paclitaxel. Cancer Res 67:1979–1987. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-1479

Chung J, Uchida E, Grammer TC, Blenis J (1997) STAT3 serine phosphorylation by ERK-dependent and -independent pathways negatively modulates its tyrosine phosphorylation. Mol Cell Biol 17:6508–6516

Cohen P, Frame S (2001) The renaissance of GSK3. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 2:769–776. doi:10.1038/35096075

Coulombe P, Meloche S (2007) Atypical mitogen-activated protein kinases: structure, regulation and functions. Biochim Biophys Acta 1773:1376–1387. doi:10.1016/j.bbamcr.2006.11.001

Cross DA, Alessi DR, Cohen P, Andjelkovich M, Hemmings BA (1995) Inhibition of glycogen synthase kinase-3 by insulin mediated by protein kinase B. Nature 378:785–789. doi:10.1038/378785a0

Cybulski N, Hall MN (2009) TOR complex 2: a signaling pathway of its own. Trends Biochem Sci 34:620–627. doi:10.1016/j.tibs.2009.09.004

De la Mota-Peynado A, Chernoff J, Beeser A (2011) Identification of the atypical MAPK Erk3 as a novel substrate for p21-activated kinase (Pak) activity. J Biol Chem 286:13603–13611. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.181743

Ding Q, Xia W, Liu JC, Yang JY, Lee DF, Xia J, Bartholomeusz G, Li Y, Pan Y, Li Z, Bargou RC, Qin J, Lai CC, Tsai FJ, Tsai CH, Hung MC (2005) Erk associates with and primes GSK-3beta for its inactivation resulting in upregulation of beta-catenin. Mol Cell 19:159–170. doi:10.1016/j.molcel.2005.06.009

Drew BA, Burow ME, Beckman BS (2012) MEK5/ERK5 pathway: the first fifteen years. Biochim Biophys Acta 1825:37–48. doi:10.1016/j.bbcan.2011.10.002

Elmore S (2007) Apoptosis: a review of programmed cell death. Toxicol Pathol 35:495–516. doi:10.1080/01926230701320337

Engelman JA, Luo J, Cantley LC (2006) The evolution of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinases as regulators of growth and metabolism. Nat Rev Genet 7:606–619. doi:10.1038/nrg1879

Fayard E, Xue G, Parcellier A, Bozulic L, Hemmings BA (2010) Protein kinase B (PKB/Akt), a key mediator of the PI3K signaling pathway. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 346:31–56. doi:10.1007/82_2010_58

Figueroa C, Tarras S, Taylor J, Vojtek AB (2003) Akt2 negatively regulates assembly of the POSH-MLK-JNK signaling complex. J Biol Chem 278:47922–47927. doi:10.1074/jbc.M307357200

Fruman DA, Rommel C (2014) PI3K and cancer: lessons, challenges and opportunities. Nat Rev Drug Discov 13:140–156. doi:10.1038/nrd4204

Gaestel M (2015) MAPK-activated protein kinases (MKs): novel insights and challenges. Front Cell Dev Biol 3:88. doi:10.3389/fcell.2015.00088

Garcia-Echeverria C, Sellers WR (2008) Drug discovery approaches targeting the PI3K/Akt pathway in cancer. Oncogene 27:5511–5526. doi:10.1038/onc.2008.246

Greer EL, Brunet A (2005) FOXO transcription factors at the interface between longevity and tumor suppression. Oncogene 24:7410–7425. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1209086

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2000) The hallmarks of cancer. Cell 100:57–70

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144:646–674. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2011.02.013

Harada H, Andersen JS, Mann M, Terada N, Korsmeyer SJ (2001) p70S6 kinase signals cell survival as well as growth, inactivating the pro-apoptotic molecule BAD. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:9666–9670. doi:10.1073/pnas.171301998

Hartwell LH, Kastan MB (1994) Cell cycle control and cancer. Science 266:1821–1828

Hayashi M, Lee JD (2004) Role of the BMK1/ERK5 signaling pathway: lessons from knockout mice. J Mol Med (Berl) 82:800–808. doi:10.1007/s00109-004-0602-8

Haynes MP, Li L, Sinha D, Russell KS, Hisamoto K, Baron R, Collinge M, Sessa WC, Bender JR (2003) Src kinase mediates phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt-dependent rapid endothelial nitric-oxide synthase activation by estrogen. J Biol Chem 278:2118–2123. doi:10.1074/jbc.M210828200

Hennessy BT, Smith DL, Ram PT, Lu Y, Mills GB (2005) Exploiting the PI3K/AKT pathway for cancer drug discovery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 4:988–1004. doi:10.1038/nrd1902

Holohan C, Van Schaeybroeck S, Longley DB, Johnston PG (2013) Cancer drug resistance: an evolving paradigm. Nat Rev Cancer 13:714–726. doi:10.1038/nrc3599

Holz MK, Ballif BA, Gygi SP, Blenis J (2005) mTOR and S6K1 mediate assembly of the translation preinitiation complex through dynamic protein interchange and ordered phosphorylation events. Cell 123:569–580. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2005.10.024

Hsu PP, Kang SA, Rameseder J, Zhang Y, Ottina KA, Lim D, Peterson TR, Choi Y, Gray NS, Yaffe MB, Marto JA, Sabatini DM (2011) The mTOR-regulated phosphoproteome reveals a mechanism of mTORC1-mediated inhibition of growth factor signaling. Science 332:1317–1322. doi:10.1126/science.1199498

Huang J, Manning BD (2009) A complex interplay between Akt, TSC2 and the two mTOR complexes. Biochem Soc Trans 37:217–222. doi:10.1042/BST0370217

Inoki K, Li Y, Zhu T, Wu J, Guan KL (2002) TSC2 is phosphorylated and inhibited by Akt and suppresses mTOR signalling. Nat Cell Biol 4:648–657. doi:10.1038/ncb839

Inoki K, Ouyang H, Zhu T, Lindvall C, Wang Y, Zhang X, Yang Q, Bennett C, Harada Y, Stankunas K, Wang CY, He X, MacDougald OA, You M, Williams BO, Guan KL (2006) TSC2 integrates Wnt and energy signals via a coordinated phosphorylation by AMPK and GSK3 to regulate cell growth. Cell 126:955–968. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2006.06.055

Jastrzebski K, Hannan KM, Tchoubrieva EB, Hannan RD, Pearson RB (2007) Coordinate regulation of ribosome biogenesis and function by the ribosomal protein S6 kinase, a key mediator of mTOR function. Growth Factors 25:209–226. doi:10.1080/08977190701779101

Ji M, Guan H, Gao C, Shi B, Hou P (2011) Highly frequent promoter methylation and PIK3CA amplification in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). BMC Cancer 11:147. doi:10.1186/1471-2407-11-147

Jin HO, Lee YH, Park JA, Kim JH, Hong SE, Kim HA, Kim EK, Noh WC, Kim BH, Ye SK, Chang YH, Hong SI, Hong YJ, Park IC, Lee JK (2014) Blockage of Stat3 enhances the sensitivity of NSCLC cells to PI3K/mTOR inhibition. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 444:502–508. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2014.01.086

Kim AH, Khursigara G, Sun X, Franke TF, Chao MV (2001) Akt phosphorylates and negatively regulates apoptosis signal-regulating kinase 1. Mol Cell Biol 21:893–901. doi:10.1128/MCB.21.3.893-901.2001

Laplante M, Sabatini DM (2012) mTOR signaling in growth control and disease. Cell 149:274–293. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2012.03.017

Lee H, Khanal Lamichhane A, Garraffo HM, Kwon-Chung KJ, Chang YC (2012) Involvement of PDK1, PKC and TOR signalling pathways in basal fluconazole tolerance in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Mol Microbiol 84:130–146. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2958.2012.08016.x

Levy DE, Darnell JE Jr (2002) Stats: transcriptional control and biological impact. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 3:651–662. doi:10.1038/nrm909

Long W, Foulds CE, Qin J, Liu J, Ding C, Lonard DM, Solis LM, Wistuba II, Qin J, Tsai SY, Tsai MJ, O'Malley BW (2012) ERK3 signals through SRC-3 coactivator to promote human lung cancer cell invasion. J Clin Invest 122:1869–1880. doi:10.1172/JCI61492

Ma L, Chen Z, Erdjument-Bromage H, Tempst P, Pandolfi PP (2005) Phosphorylation and functional inactivation of TSC2 by Erk implications for tuberous sclerosis and cancer pathogenesis. Cell 121:179–193. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2005.02.031

Magnuson B, Ekim B, Fingar DC (2012) Regulation and function of ribosomal protein S6 kinase (S6K) within mTOR signalling networks. Biochem J 441:1–21. doi:10.1042/BJ20110892

Mahajan K, Mahajan NP (2015) ACK1/TNK2 tyrosine kinase: molecular signaling and evolving role in cancers. Oncogene 34:4162–4167. doi:10.1038/onc.2014.350

Mahajan K, Coppola D, Challa S, Fang B, Chen YA, Zhu W, Lopez AS, Koomen J, Engelman RW, Rivera C, Muraoka-Cook RS, Cheng JQ, Schonbrunn E, Sebti SM, Earp HS, Mahajan NP (2010) Ack1 mediated AKT/PKB tyrosine 176 phosphorylation regulates its activation. PLoS One 5:e9646. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0009646

Manning BD, Cantley LC (2007) AKT/PKB signaling: navigating downstream. Cell 129:1261–1274. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2007.06.009

Manning G, Whyte DB, Martinez R, Hunter T, Sudarsanam S (2002) The protein kinase complement of the human genome. Science 298:1912–1934. doi:10.1126/science.1075762

Marsit CJ, Zheng S, Aldape K, Hinds PW, Nelson HH, Wiencke JK, Kelsey KT (2005) PTEN expression in non-small-cell lung cancer: evaluating its relation to tumor characteristics, allelic loss, and epigenetic alteration. Hum Pathol 36:768–776. doi:10.1016/j.humpath.2005.05.006

Mayer IA, Arteaga CL (2016) The PI3K/AKT pathway as a target for cancer treatment. Annu Rev Med 67:11–28. doi:10.1146/annurev-med-062913-051343

Moelling K, Schad K, Bosse M, Zimmermann S, Schweneker M (2002) Regulation of Raf-Akt cross-talk. J Biol Chem 277:31099–31106. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111974200

Nakayama KI, Nakayama K (2006) Ubiquitin ligases: cell-cycle control and cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 6:369–381. doi:10.1038/nrc1881

Ou YH, Torres M, Ram R, Formstecher E, Roland C, Cheng T, Brekken R, Wurz R, Tasker A, Polverino T, Tan SL, White MA (2011) TBK1 directly engages Akt/PKB survival signaling to support oncogenic transformation. Mol Cell 41:458–470. doi:10.1016/j.molcel.2011.01.019

Pearce LR, Komander D, Alessi DR (2010) The nuts and bolts of AGC protein kinases. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 11:9–22. doi:10.1038/nrm2822

Pearson G, Robinson F, Beers Gibson T, Xu BE, Karandikar M, Berman K, Cobb MH (2001) Mitogen-activated protein (MAP) kinase pathways: regulation and physiological functions. Endocr Rev 22:153–183. doi:10.1210/edrv.22.2.0428

Posch C, Moslehi H, Feeney L, Green GA, Ebaee A, Feichtenschlager V, Chong K, Peng L, Dimon MT, Phillips T, Daud AI, McCalmont TH, LeBoit PE, Ortiz-Urda S (2013) Combined targeting of MEK and PI3K/mTOR effector pathways is necessary to effectively inhibit NRAS mutant melanoma in vitro and in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:4015–4020. doi:10.1073/pnas.1216013110

Qi M, Elion EA (2005) MAP kinase pathways. J Cell Sci 118:3569–3572. doi:10.1242/jcs.02470

Ramos JW (2008) The regulation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) in mammalian cells. Int J Biochem Cell Biol 40:2707–2719. doi:10.1016/j.biocel.2008.04.009

Rawlings JS, Rosler KM, Harrison DA (2004) The JAK/STAT signaling pathway. J Cell Sci 117:1281–1283. doi:10.1242/jcs.00963

Reusch HP, Zimmermann S, Schaefer M, Paul M, Moelling K (2001) Regulation of Raf by Akt controls growth and differentiation in vascular smooth muscle cells. J Biol Chem 276:33630–33637. doi:10.1074/jbc.M105322200

Risso G, Blaustein M, Pozzi B, Mammi P, Srebrow A (2015) Akt/PKB: one kinase, many modifications. Biochem J 468:203–214. doi:10.1042/BJ20150041

Roux PP, Shahbazian D, Vu H, Holz MK, Cohen MS, Taunton J, Sonenberg N, Blenis J (2007) RAS/ERK signaling promotes site-specific ribosomal protein S6 phosphorylation via RSK and stimulates cap-dependent translation. J Biol Chem 282:14056–14064. doi:10.1074/jbc.M700906200

Royuela M, Arenas MI, Bethencourt FR, Sanchez-Chapado M, Fraile B, Paniagua R (2002) Regulation of proliferation/apoptosis equilibrium by mitogen-activated protein kinases in normal, hyperplastic, and carcinomatous human prostate. Hum Pathol 33:299–306

Scrima M, De Marco C, Fabiani F, Franco R, Pirozzi G, Rocco G, Ravo M, Weisz A, Zoppoli P, Ceccarelli M, Botti G, Malanga D, Viglietto G (2012) Signaling networks associated with AKT activation in non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC): new insights on the role of phosphatydil-inositol-3 kinase. PLoS One 7:e30427. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0030427

Shahbazian D, Roux PP, Mieulet V, Cohen MS, Raught B, Taunton J, Hershey JW, Blenis J, Pende M, Sonenberg N (2006) The mTOR/PI3K and MAPK pathways converge on eIF4B to control its phosphorylation and activity. EMBO J 25:2781–2791. doi:10.1038/sj.emboj.7601166

Shi H, Kong X, Ribas A, Lo RS (2011) Combinatorial treatments that overcome PDGFRbeta-driven resistance of melanoma cells to V600EB-RAF inhibition. Cancer Res 71:5067–5074. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-0140

Shimamura A, Ballif BA, Richards SA, Blenis J (2000) Rsk1 mediates a MEK-MAP kinase cell survival signal. Curr Biol 10:127–135

Sirois J, Daudelin JF, Boulet S, Marquis M, Meloche S, Labrecque N (2015) The atypical MAPK ERK3 controls positive selection of thymocytes. Immunology 145:161–169. doi:10.1111/imm.12433

Spoerke JM, O'Brien C, Huw L, Koeppen H, Fridlyand J, Brachmann RK, Haverty PM, Pandita A, Mohan S, Sampath D, Friedman LS, Ross L, Hampton GM, Amler LC, Shames DS, Lackner MR (2012) Phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) pathway alterations are associated with histologic subtypes and are predictive of sensitivity to PI3K inhibitors in lung cancer preclinical models. Clin Cancer Res 18:6771–6783. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-2347

Sun C, Bernards R (2014) Feedback and redundancy in receptor tyrosine kinase signaling: relevance to cancer therapies. Trends Biochem Sci 39:465–474. doi:10.1016/j.tibs.2014.08.010

Sun M, Paciga JE, Feldman RI, Yuan Z, Coppola D, Lu YY, Shelley SA, Nicosia SV, Cheng JQ (2001) Phosphatidylinositol-3-OH kinase (PI3K)/AKT2, activated in breast cancer, regulates and is induced by estrogen receptor alpha (ERalpha) via interaction between ERalpha and PI3K. Cancer Res 61:5985–5991

Surucu B, Bozulic L, Hynx D, Parcellier A, Hemmings BA (2008) In vivo analysis of protein kinase B (PKB)/Akt regulation in DNA-PKcs-null mice reveals a role for PKB/Akt in DNA damage response and tumorigenesis. J Biol Chem 283:30025–30033. doi:10.1074/jbc.M803053200

Tang ED, Nunez G, Barr FG, Guan KL (1999) Negative regulation of the forkhead transcription factor FKHR by Akt. J Biol Chem 274:16741–16746

Taylor RC, Cullen SP, Martin SJ (2008) Apoptosis: controlled demolition at the cellular level. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 9:231–241. doi:10.1038/nrm2312

van Gorp AG, van der Vos KE, Brenkman AB, Bremer A, van den Broek N, Zwartkruis F, Hershey JW, Burgering BM, Calkhoven CF, Coffer PJ (2009) AGC kinases regulate phosphorylation and activation of eukaryotic translation initiation factor 4B. Oncogene 28:95–106. doi:10.1038/onc.2008.367

Vansteenkiste JF, Canon JL, Braud FD, Grossi F, De Pas T, Gray JE, Su WC, Felip E, Yoshioka H, Gridelli C, Dy GK, Thongprasert S, Reck M, Aimone P, Vidam GA, Roussou P, Wang YA, Di Tomaso E, Soria JC (2015) Safety and efficacy of buparlisib (BKM120) in patients with PI3K pathway-activated non-small cell lung cancer: results from the phase II BASALT-1 study. J Thorac Oncol 10:1319–1327. doi:10.1097/JTO.0000000000000607

Vivanco I, Sawyers CL (2002) The phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase AKT pathway in human cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 2:489–501. doi:10.1038/nrc839

Wada T, Penninger JM (2004) Mitogen-activated protein kinases in apoptosis regulation. Oncogene 23:2838–2849. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1207556

Waskiewicz AJ, Flynn A, Proud CG, Cooper JA (1997) Mitogen-activated protein kinases activate the serine/threonine kinases Mnk1 and Mnk2. EMBO J 16:1909–1920. doi:10.1093/emboj/16.8.1909

Wicki A, Mandala M, Massi D, Taverna D, Tang H, Hemmings BA, Xue G (2016) Acquired resistance to clinical cancer therapy: a twist in physiological signaling. Physiol Rev 96:805–829. doi:10.1152/physrev.00024.2015

Widmann C, Gibson S, Jarpe MB, Johnson GL (1999) Mitogen-activated protein kinase: conservation of a three-kinase module from yeast to human. Physiol Rev 79:143–180

Will M, Qin AC, Toy W, Yao Z, Rodrik-Outmezguine V, Schneider C, Huang X, Monian P, Jiang X, de Stanchina E, Baselga J, Liu N, Chandarlapaty S, Rosen N (2014) Rapid induction of apoptosis by PI3K inhibitors is dependent upon their transient inhibition of RAS-ERK signaling. Cancer Discov 4:334–347. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-0611

Xie X, Zhang D, Zhao B, Lu MK, You M, Condorelli G, Wang CY, Guan KL (2011) IkappaB kinase epsilon and TANK-binding kinase 1 activate AKT by direct phosphorylation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:6474–6479. doi:10.1073/pnas.1016132108

Xue G, Restuccia DF, Lan Q, Hynx D, Dirnhofer S, Hess D, Ruegg C, Hemmings BA (2012) Akt/PKB-mediated phosphorylation of Twist1 promotes tumor metastasis via mediating cross-talk between PI3K/Akt and TGF-beta signaling axes. Cancer Discov 2:248–259. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-11-0270

Yamnik RL, Holz MK (2010) mTOR/S6K1 and MAPK/RSK signaling pathways coordinately regulate estrogen receptor alpha serine 167 phosphorylation. FEBS Lett 584:124–128. doi:10.1016/j.febslet.2009.11.041

Yang JY, Zong CS, Xia W, Yamaguchi H, Ding Q, Xie X, Lang JY, Lai CC, Chang CJ, Huang WC, Huang H, Kuo HP, Lee DF, Li LY, Lien HC, Cheng X, Chang KJ, Hsiao CD, Tsai FJ, Tsai CH, Sahin AA, Muller WJ, Mills GB, Yu D, Hortobagyi GN, Hung MC (2008) ERK promotes tumorigenesis by inhibiting FOXO3a via MDM2-mediated degradation. Nat Cell Biol 10:138–148. doi:10.1038/ncb1676

Yang L, Hou Y, Yuan J, Tang S, Zhang H, Zhu Q, Du YE, Zhou M, Wen S, Xu L, Tang X, Cui X, Liu M (2015) Twist promotes reprogramming of glucose metabolism in breast cancer cells through PI3K/AKT and p53 signaling pathways. Oncotarget 6:25755–25769. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.4697

Yu Y, Yoon SO, Poulogiannis G, Yang Q, Ma XM, Villen J, Kubica N, Hoffman GR, Cantley LC, Gygi SP, Blenis J (2011) Phosphoproteomic analysis identifies Grb10 as an mTORC1 substrate that negatively regulates insulin signaling. Science 332:1322–1326. doi:10.1126/science.1199484

Zhang R, Luo D, Miao R, Bai L, Ge Q, Sessa WC, Min W (2005) Hsp90-Akt phosphorylates ASK1 and inhibits ASK1-mediated apoptosis. Oncogene 24:3954–3963. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1208548

Zheng Y, Peng M, Wang Z, Asara JM, Tyner AL (2010) Protein tyrosine kinase 6 directly phosphorylates AKT and promotes AKT activation in response to epidermal growth factor. Mol Cell Biol 30:4280–4292. doi:10.1128/MCB.00024-10

Immune-Mediated and Hypoxia-Regulated Programs: Accomplices in Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies

Diego O. Croci, Santiago P. Mendez-Huergo, Juan P. Cerliani, and Gabriel A. Rabinovich

Contents

1 Introduction 32
2 Mechanisms of Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies 33
2.1 Expression of Alternative Pro-angiogenic Mediators 34
2.2 Adaptation to Hypoxia 34
3 Immune-Mediated Mechanisms of Resistance to Anti-angiogenesis 35
3.1 Myeloid Cell-Dependent Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies 36
3.2 Lymphoid Cell-Dependent Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies 40
4 Hypoxia Bridges Immune Tolerance and Angiogenesis in TME 41
5 The Galectin-Glycan Axis: Linking Immunosuppression, Hypoxia, and Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Treatment 44
5.1 Galectins as Extracellular Mediators of Angiogenesis 44
5.2 Galectins as Mechanisms of Resistance to VEGF Blockade 46
5.3 Targeting Gal1-*N*-Glycan Interactions Limits the Efficacy of Anti-VEGF Treatment 46
6 Combinatorial Therapies: Anti-angiogenesis as a Partner of Immunotherapy 48
7 Conclusions and Future Perspectives 49
References 50

D.O. Croci (✉) • S.P. Mendez-Huergo • J.P. Cerliani
Laboratorio de Inmunopatología, Instituto de Biología y Medicina Experimental (IBYME), Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones Científicas y Técnicas (CONICET), 1428 Buenos Aires, Argentina
e-mail: dcrocirusso@gmail.com

G.A. Rabinovich (✉)
Laboratorio de Inmunopatología, Instituto de Biología y Medicina Experimental (IBYME), Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones Científicas y Técnicas (CONICET), 1428 Buenos Aires, Argentina
Departamento de Química Biológica, Facultad de Ciencias Exactas y Naturales, Universidad de Buenos Aires, 1428 Buenos Aires, Argentina
e-mail: gabyrabi@gmail.com

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_29

Abstract

In contrast to mechanisms taking place during resistance to chemotherapies or other targeted therapies, compensatory adaptation to angiogenesis blockade does not imply a mutational alteration of genes encoding drug targets or multidrug resistance mechanisms but instead involves intrinsic or acquired activation of compensatory angiogenic pathways. In this article we highlight hypoxia-regulated and immune-mediated mechanisms that converge in endothelial cell programs and preserve angiogenesis in settings of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) blockade. These mechanisms involve mobilization of myeloid cell populations and activation of cytokine- and chemokine-driven circuits operating during intrinsic and acquired resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies. Particularly, we focus on findings underscoring a role for galectins and glycosylated ligands in promoting resistance to anti-VEGF therapies and discuss possible strategies to overcome or attenuate this compensatory pathway. Finally, we highlight emerging evidence demonstrating the interplay between immunosuppressive and pro-angiogenic programs in the tumor microenvironment (TME) and discuss emerging combinatorial anticancer strategies aimed at simultaneously potentiating antitumor immune responses and counteracting aberrant angiogenesis.

Keywords

Angiogenesis • Anti-angiogenic therapy • Galectins • Hypoxia • Immunotherapy • Resistance

1 Introduction

Vascular programs leading to the development of blood vessels (angiogenesis) and lymphatic vessels (lymphangiogenesis) entail the synchronized action of different cells and the convergence of a complex network of stimulatory and inhibitory factors. Angiogenesis, defined as the formation of new blood vessels from preexisting ones, is a critical process for the establishment of solid tumors. Blood vessels deliver oxygen and nutrients, remove waste, and represent the central traffic route for immune cells (Potente et al. 2011). Early mechanisms of angiogenesis in tumors or in normal tissue (e.g., during wound healing) are similar, involving vessel destabilization, guided endothelial cell (EC) migration, proliferation, and sprouting (Carmeliet and Jain 2000). However, in normal angiogenesis, these events are followed by a stabilization phase of the newly formed vessels in which ECs change their metabolism due to the dominance of negative factors and become quiescent (Stockmann et al. 2014). In contrast, pathological angiogenesis lacks this inhibitory phase, resulting in the generation of a highly dense, aberrant vascular network that generates a hostile microenvironment characterized by low pH, hypoxia, and interstitial leakage. This particular setting, in turn, creates a barrier to immune surveillance, fueling disease progression, metastasis, and resistance to treatments

(Motz and Coukos 2011). Thus, abnormal angiogenesis represents an important target for the development of novel anticancer therapies (Carmeliet and Jain 2011; Croci et al. 2014b). The concept of "anti-angiogenesis" as the elimination of blood vessel formation in tumors was first proposed by Judah Folkman in 1971. Folkman and colleagues put forward the hypothesis that tumor growth relies on the formation of new blood vessels to obtain oxygen and nutrients and for elimination of metabolic waste, while providing gateways for metastasis (Folkman 1971; Ferrara and Adamis 2016). These early observations set the bases for inhibition of angiogenesis as a mean to halt tumor growth and prevent metastatic dissemination.

Although more than 40 molecules have been identified to play key roles in the angiogenesis cascade, most studies have focused on vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) originally discovered by Ferrara's group in 1989 and its receptor signaling pathways (Leung et al. 1989; Jain 2014). In 2004, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the first recombinant humanized anti-VEGF-A monoclonal antibody – bevacizumab – for first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer (Ferrara et al. 2005). Thus far, several therapeutic strategies have been implemented including antibodies that target VEGFR2 (ramucirumab) (Krupitskaya and Wakelee 2009) and receptor tyrosine kinase (RTK) inhibitors (sunitinib, sorafenib, pazopanib, vandetanib, cabozantinib, tivozanib, linifanib, and axitinib) that inhibit VEGFR signaling through direct competition with adenosine triphosphate (ATP) for the intracellular tyrosine kinase-binding domain (Loges et al. 2009; Jeong et al. 2013). In addition, a soluble VEGF receptor 1 (VEGFR1)–VEGFR2 chimeric protein that antagonizes VEGF-A (aflibercept) has been designed (Holash et al. 2002). The aforementioned targeted therapies have improved the clinical outcome of several types of tumors including metastatic colorectal cancer, non-small cell lung carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, and hepatocarcinoma (Ferrara and Adamis 2016). However, whereas preclinical studies targeting pro-angiogenic factors have shown considerable effects on tumor growth, the clinical outcome of most anti-angiogenic modalities is variable, and patients respond with different degrees of sensitivity, with many of them developing progressive resistance (Ellis and Hicklin 2008). These clinical observations suggest that compensatory pathways may contribute to trigger VEGF-independent pro-angiogenic programs during tumor growth (Bergers and Hanahan 2008; Carmeliet and Jain 2011).

2 Mechanisms of Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies

Tumors and their adjoining microenvironment display a variety of mechanisms that thwart anti-angiogenic treatments. Whereas some tumors are inherently refractory to anti-angiogenic therapies (*intrinsic resistance*), most of them transiently respond to angiogenic blockade and further develop compensatory pathways (*evasive resistance*) (Bergers and Hanahan 2008; Sharma et al. 2017). Pathways of evasive resistance could be grouped into three types: (a) expression of alternative angiogenic mediators, (b) mechanisms involving adaptive responses to hypoxia, and

(c) mobilization of angio-competent myeloid cells that preserve vascularization programs. Immune-mediated resistance to anti-angiogenesis therapies will be discussed in detail in Sect. 3.

2.1 Expression of Alternative Pro-angiogenic Mediators

In contrast to mechanisms taking place during resistance to chemotherapies or other targeted therapies (Dobbelstein and Moll 2014), compensatory adaptation to angiogenesis blockade does not imply mutational alterations of genes encoding the drug target or multidrug resistance (MDR) mechanisms but instead involves activation of alternative pro-angiogenic pathways (Bergers and Hanahan 2008). Tumors can evade VEGF blockade by inducing the synthesis of alternative pro-angiogenic factors (Casanovas et al. 2005; Shojaei et al. 2007b; Potente et al. 2011; Croci et al. 2014a; Carbone et al. 2016) that compensate for the absence of VEGF signaling, including fibroblast growth factor-2 (FGF2/bFGF), stromal cell-derived factor-1α (SDF-1α also known as CXCL12) (Batchelor et al. 2007), placental growth factor (PIGF) (Fischer et al. 2007), platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) (Song et al. 2009), interleukin (IL)-8 (Mizukami et al. 2005), IL-17 (Chung et al. 2013), Bv8 (Shojaei et al. 2007b), galectin-1 (Gal1) (Croci et al. 2014a), angiopoietins, and hepatocyte growth factor (HGF)/c-Met (Shojaei et al. 2010), which fuel revascularization programs and limit the efficacy of anti-VEGF treatment. In this regard, pericytes, which are perivascular cells that wrap around blood capillaries, can activate compensatory PDGFR-mediated pro-angiogenic signaling in the absence of VEGF (Song et al. 2009). However, current PDGFR-β inhibitors are neither specific nor sufficient to induce a complete regression of tumor vasculature (Arrondeau et al. 2015). Recently Carbone and colleagues identified interleukin-1 (IL-1), CXC receptor (CXCR)1/2 ligands, and transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) as soluble factors that are overexpressed in anti-VEGF refractory tumors (Carbone et al. 2016).

2.2 Adaptation to Hypoxia

Vessel pruning, a typical hallmark of anti-angiogenic therapies, induces severe hypoxia that in turn favors revascularization programs and promotes tumor growth and metastasis (Paez-Ribes et al. 2009; Ebos et al. 2009). Certainly, in Darwinian terms, hypoxia acts as a selection-pressure mechanism that selects tumor cell variants with increased aggressiveness and lower sensitivity to anti-angiogenic therapy. Hypoxia is the most important stimulus when it comes to inducing secretion of pro-angiogenic factors in the TME but also contributes to tumor escape by favoring growth advantage of cancer stem cells (Semenza 2017). Interestingly, most hypoxic tumors are also refractory to current chemotherapy and radiotherapy approaches as only tumor cell populations surviving in poorly oxygenated niches, such us pro-angiogenic cancer stem cells, are selected under these adverse

conditions (Heddleston et al. 2010; Myszczyszyn et al. 2015). Furthermore, VEGF blockade aggravates hypoxia, which upregulates the production of other pro-angiogenic factors and increases tumor cell invasiveness and metastasis (Paez-Ribes et al. 2009). Tumor cells respond to hypoxia by becoming tolerant and modifying their metabolism to overcome low oxygen levels (Heddleston et al. 2010). Increased tumor hypoxia induces the selection of highly invasive metastatic clones arising from cancer cells that are resistant to anti-angiogenic agents, through the synthesis of pro-migratory proteins, such as SDF1-α, hepatocyte growth factor-scatter factor (HGF-SF), and pro-invasive extracellular matrix proteins (Tan et al. 2004; Ju et al. 2017). Thus, hypoxia generated by angiogenesis inhibitors triggers pathways that make tumors more aggressive and less sensitive to anti-angiogenic treatment. In this regard, Paez-Ribes and colleagues demonstrated enhanced invasiveness and metastasis of tumors following interruption of VEGF signaling in models of pancreatic neuroendocrine carcinoma and glioblastoma (Paez-Ribes et al. 2009). Interestingly, hypoxic colon cancer cells lacking HIF-1α preserved angiogenesis by inducing the synthesis of IL-8, a chemokine implicated in innate immune responses, whose expression is regulated by prolyl hydroxylase 2 (PHD2) in an NF-κB-dependent manner (Mizukami et al. 2005; Chan et al. 2009). In this sense, hypoxia also induced expression of Gal1, an endogenous immunomodulatory lectin, through both HIF-dependent or HIF-1-independent mechanisms involving reactive oxygen species (ROS) and NF-κB signaling pathways (Zhao et al. 2010; Croci et al. 2012). Interestingly, Gal1 interaction with specific *N*-glycans on the surface of endothelial cells has demonstrated to play a key role in linking tumor hypoxia to VEGF-independent angiogenesis in several cancer types (Croci et al. 2014a). These results highlight the central role of tumor hypoxia in modulating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies through multiple mechanisms.

3 Immune-Mediated Mechanisms of Resistance to Anti-angiogenesis

Experimental evidence over the past decade has demonstrated a key role of immune-mediated circuits, including inflammatory cells, cytokines, and growth factors, in promoting angiogenesis and sustaining tumorigenesis and metastasis (Hanahan and Coussens 2012) (Fig. 1). In response to hypoxic conditions and tumor-derived soluble factors, immune regulatory cells are recruited to the tumor microenvironment (TME) and secrete large amounts of pro-angiogenic factors including pro-inflammatory cytokines (IL-1β, IL-6, TNF), chemokines (IL-8, SDF-1α/CXCL12), growth factors (VEGF, bFGF), and metalloproteases (MMP-9), among others (Grunewald et al. 2006; Gabrilovich et al. 2012; Croci et al. 2014b). These cells include $Tie2^{+}$ monocytes (De Palma et al. 2005), Bv8-expressing $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) (Shojaei et al. 2007a), M2-type tumor-associated macrophages, regulatory T cells (Tregs), and NK cells expressing pro-angiogenic mediators such as VEGF, FGF2, TGF-β, and PDGF-α (Murdoch et al. 2008; Facciabene et al. 2011; Bruno et al. 2013).

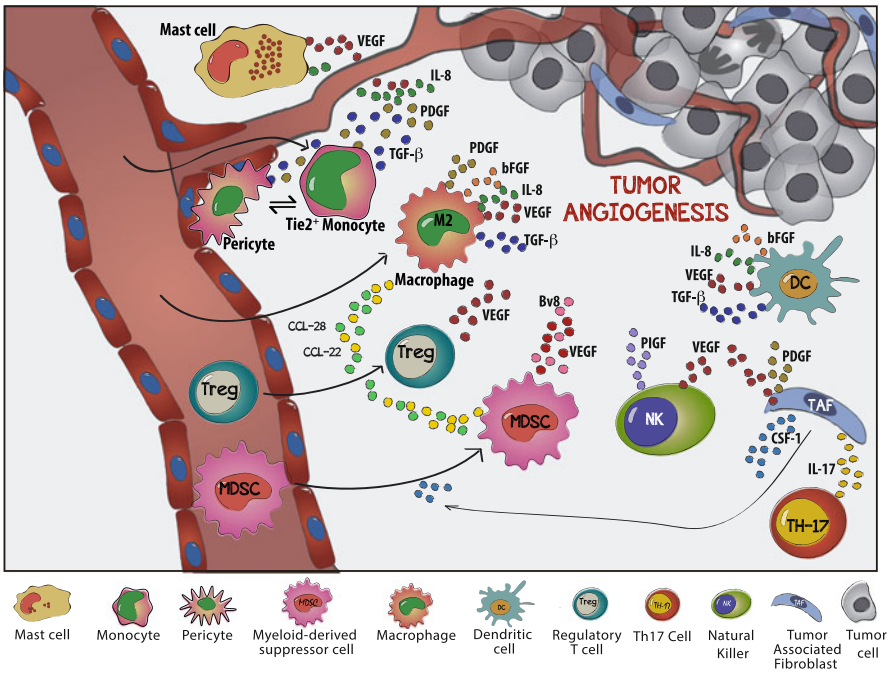


Fig. 1 Immune-mediated mechanisms of tumor angiogenesis. Tumor recruits a variety of regulatory cells to the tumor microenvironment (TME) which not only contribute to generate an immunosuppressive milieu but also promote angiogenesis. Hypoxia favors recruitment of immune cells and release of pro-angiogenic and immunosuppressive cytokines. $Tie2^+$ monocytes, M2-type macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) secrete several pro-angiogenic factors that influence EC signaling. Indeed, these myeloid cells may also interact with lymphoid cells including regulatory T cells (Tregs), regulatory B cells (Bregs), Th17 cells, and natural killer (NK) cells which directly or indirectly contribute to sustain angiogenesis and immunosuppression

3.1 Myeloid Cell-Dependent Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies

Bone marrow-derived myeloid cells, such as immature monocytes and macrophages, dendritic cells (DCs), mast cells (MCs), and neutrophils, have a prominent role in orchestrating and/or resolving innate and adaptive immunity. Solid tumors recruit distinct populations and subsets of myeloid cells which support tumor progression by promoting angiogenesis and suppressing antitumor immune responses (Hanahan and Coussens 2012; Gabrilovich et al. 2012; Stockmann et al. 2014). These immune cells exhibit a remarkable plasticity with selective pro-angiogenic potential displayed at specific differentiation or polarization stages. For example, a population of pro-angiogenic Tie2-expressing monocytes ($Tie2^+$ $CD11b^+$) that are specifically recruited to the TME is also capable of differentiating into mesenchymal progenitors, which serve as a source of pericytes that control

aberrant angiogenesis (De Palma et al. 2005). Moreover, other studies suggest that MDSCs in the TME can differentiate into M2-type macrophages (Gabrilovich et al. 2012). As myeloid cell subpopulations can interconvert into each other quite easily, deeper functional analysis is needed to better discriminate cells that belong to functionally different subsets from those that functionally overlap but express different surface patterns. Here, we will focus on different myeloid subsets that are directly or indirectly involved in tumor angiogenesis.

3.1.1 Pericytes

Pericytes are involved in vascular stability through the release of factors that maintain ECs quiescence such as angiopoietin-1 (Ang-1), a ligand for the Tie2 receptor, and expression of receptors for transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) and platelet-derived growth factor-β (PDGF-β) (von Tell et al. 2006). Several genes encoding immunosuppressive factors have been reported to be upregulated in pericytes by the PDGF-β signaling pathway in the absence of VEGF signaling (Kale et al. 2005), suggesting critical roles for these cells in modulation of both immune and vascular programs. In fact, pericytes have been considered an important immunological component of the mammalian central nervous system (CNS) (Winkler et al. 2011; Barbi et al. 2013). Paradoxically, pericyte depletion in tumor-bearing mice suppressed growth of primary tumors but enhanced metastasis (Cooke et al. 2012), highlighting the complexity of these cells. In this sense, targeted deletion of regulator of G-protein signaling-5 (Rgs5), a master regulator of pericyte function, induced pericyte maturation and vascular normalization, enhancing infiltration of $CD8^+$ T cells into tumor parenchyma and promoting tumor regression (Hamzah et al. 2008). Moreover, tumor-derived pericytes have been shown to negatively control $CD4^+$ T cell activation and proliferation, promoting anergy in an Rgs5- and IL-6-dependent manner (Bose et al. 2013). Interestingly, fully differentiated pericytes maintain their phenotypic plasticity, enabling differentiation into various cell types, including smooth muscle cells, neural cells, neutrophils, adipocytes, fibroblasts, and other mesenchymal stem cells (Birbrair et al. 2013), suggesting multiple physiologic roles for these cells. However, at present, the pathophysiological relevance of this functional plasticity has not been examined in the context of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies.

3.1.2 $CD11b^+Gr1^+$ MDSCs

Myeloid-derived suppressor cells represent a heterogeneous population of myeloid progenitor cells that are reminiscent of immature neutrophils, DCs, and macrophages. These cells exhibit strong immunosuppressive functions, as they can inhibit T-cell and NK-cell activation and proliferation as well as DC maturation (Gabrilovich et al. 2012). Besides their well-known immunosuppressive potential, several studies have demonstrated that $CD11b^+Gr1^+$ MDSCs can also promote tumor growth and angiogenesis (Yang et al. 2004; De Palma et al. 2005) through mechanisms involving the signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) transcription factor (Kujawski et al. 2008). Ferrara and collaborators identified a major role for MDSCs in mediating tumor resistance to VEGF-targeted

therapies (Shojaei et al. 2007a). The authors identified an immunological circuit through which tumor-infiltrating IL-17-producing (Th17) cells promoted recruitment of pro-angiogenic $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ myeloid cells into the TME. Specifically, IL-17 induced expression of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (GCSF) on tumor-associated fibroblast (TAFs) and upregulated secretion of IL-6 and SDF-1α by both TAFs and tumor cells. This cytokine network stimulated the mobilization of vasculogenic $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ myeloid cells from the bone marrow, conferring resistance to VEGF-targeted therapies (Shojaei et al. 2008, 2009; Chung et al. 2013). Interestingly, some tumors intrinsically recruited $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ cells into the TME, while others activated this mechanism only in response to VEGF blocking antibodies (Shojaei et al. 2008). The mechanism underlying the pro-angiogenic activity of $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ MDSCs involves expression of the pro-angiogenic factor Bv8, a protein related to endocrine gland-derived VEGF that facilitates the mobilization of these cells and stimulation of VEGF-independent tumor angiogenesis (Shojaei et al. 2007a). Treatment with anti-Bv8-neutralizing antibodies in preclinical models reduced GCSF-mediated $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ cell mobilization, inhibiting tumor growth and suppressing the vasculogenic phenotype (Shojaei et al. 2007b). Moreover, hypoxia-induced recruitment of myeloid cells promoted resistance to sunitinib treatment in glioblastoma (Piao et al. 2012), metastatic renal cell carcinoma (mRCC), and breast adenocarcinoma (Finke et al. 2011) via suppression of Th1 responses and production of pro-angiogenic factors in the TME. In accordance, depletion of $CD11b^{+}Gr1^{+}$ myeloid cells in preclinical models using a colony-stimulating factor (CSF)-1 signaling inhibitor sensitized tumors to anti-VEGFR2 therapy (Priceman et al. 2010), highlighting the central role of MDSCs in mechanisms of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy.

3.1.3 Macrophages

Macrophages are specialized phagocytic cells that display remarkable plasticity, capable of shaping their phenotype and function in response to environmental variations. These changes can give rise to different macrophage subpopulations with distinct functions (Mosser and Edwards 2008). Depending on their activation status, tissue localization, and polarization profiles, macrophages can display pro-tumoral or antitumor activities. In response to Th1-type cytokines, macrophages are polarized toward an M1 phenotype releasing high amounts of IL-12 and displaying antitumor responses, whereas a Th2 cytokine secretion partner (IL-4, IL-13) endows macrophages with an M2 immunosuppressive potential, leading to enhanced tumor cell invasion, angiogenesis, and metastasis (Siveen and Kuttan 2009; Mantovani et al. 2017).

The selective angio-modulatory role of macrophages under hypoxic conditions has been originally proposed in 1983 by Knighton et al. (1983). Afterward, several studies demonstrated that tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) promote angiogenesis of solid tumors mostly via VEGF secretion (Noy and Pollard 2014). Moreover, studies in human tumors demonstrated a positive correlation between blood vessel density and the number of M2-type, but not M1-type, TAMs in vascularized tumor areas (Jetten et al. 2014). Whereas depletion of TAMs led to

decreased tumor angiogenesis, restoration of macrophage infiltration rescued vessel sprouting (Lin et al. 2006). Recent evidence indicated that this effect was not exclusively mediated by VEGF, as TAMs release a variety of pro-angiogenic factors including PlGF, bFGF, M-CSF, PDGF, TGF-β, and several cytokines including IL-1, IL-8, TNF, and MCP-1 (Rolny et al. 2011; Stockmann et al. 2014).

In spite of the well-established role of macrophages in promoting tumor angiogenesis (Mantovani et al. 2017), there are few direct evidences showing a role for these cells in resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies. Indirect evidence shows that PlGF mediates resistance to anti-VEGF(R) inhibitors by promoting angiogenesis and inducing recruitment of TAMs (Fischer et al. 2007). Moreover, human monocytes cultured with macrophage colony-stimulating factor (M-CSF) increased Tie2 expression and became more pro-angiogenic. In vivo, tumor-bearing mice treated with M-CSF showed expansion of $Tie2^{+}$ macrophages, leading to enhanced tumor angiogenesis (Forget et al. 2014). In the presence of hypoxic microenvironments, TAMs develop metabolic adaptation through upregulation of HIF-1α, an effect that ultimately led to VEGF-dependent angiogenesis and tumor progression (Burke et al. 2002; Lewis and Pollard 2006). Moreover, hypoxia-induced tumor cell apoptosis engages TAMs in an angiogenesis program through a prostaglandin E2 (PGE2)-dependent mechanism (Brecht et al. 2011).

3.1.4 Dendritic Cells

Dendritic cells (DCs) are terminally differentiated myeloid cells specialized in antigen processing and presentation. In spite of their well-established roles in orchestrating adaptive immunity, DCs can also trigger inhibitory circuits that ensure immunological tolerance and promote angiogenesis (Curiel et al. 2004; Murdoch et al. 2008; Ilarregui et al. 2009; Rabinovich and Conejo-Garcia 2016). Due to their remarkable plasticity, these cells respond to a plethora of environmental inputs that signal the occurrence of pathogens, tumors, or tissue inflammation by migrating from peripheral tissues into secondary lymphoid organs to empower T cells with stimulatory or regulatory potential (Cerliani et al. 2016). In addition, DCs have an extraordinary capacity to produce a wide array of pro-angiogenic mediators, including VEGF, bFGF, IL-8, TGF-β, TNF, GM-CSF, CXCL1, CXCL8, and CCL2, among others (Stockmann et al. 2014). This wide spectrum of pro-angiogenic mediators controls vascularization through indirect mechanisms involving hierarchical upregulation of pro-angiogenic growth factors by other cell types (Sozzani et al. 2007). As an example, TNF production by activated DCs induces the synthesis of VEGF in different cell types (including ECs), which influences angiogenesis. In fact, DCs themselves express both VEGFR1 and VEGFR2 (Mimura et al. 2007) and respond to PlGF and VEGF signaling by inhibiting their differentiation into functional DCs (Dikov et al. 2005; Mimura et al. 2007). Tumor-derived VEGF also induces a significant decrease in the number and functionality of spleen and lymph node DCs (Gabrilovich et al. 1996, 1998). These data suggest that DCs may rely on VEGF to promote angiogenesis, suggesting an indirect modulatory role of these cells in controlling anti-VEGF resistance. Supporting this assumption, anti-VEGF therapy enhanced the antitumor

activity of DCs and increased their infiltration in TME (Gabrilovich et al. 1999; Osada et al. 2008).

3.1.5 Mast Cells

In addition to their well-established roles in regulating innate and adaptive immunity, mast cells (MCs) have been recognized as potent inducers of tumor angiogenesis (Hanahan and Coussens 2012). Mobilization of these cells to virally induced squamous cell carcinomas and pancreatic tumors accentuated tumor growth (Coussens et al. 1999; Soucek et al. 2007), whereas impaired MC function inhibited tumor angiogenesis. Mast cells have been shown to act as reservoirs of pro-angiogenic mediators including VEGF, angiopoietin-1 (Ang-1), and IL-8 (Coussens et al. 1999; Marone et al. 2016) which are released to the TME under hypoxic conditions. Thus, MCs play key roles during tumorigenesis and metastasis by modulating tumor-promoting inflammation and vascularization, although evidence is still lacking on the role of these cells in mechanisms of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies.

3.2 Lymphoid Cell-Dependent Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Therapies

Given the crucial role of regulatory lymphoid populations, including regulatory T cells (Tregs), regulatory B cells (Bregs), and different subsets of natural killer (NK) or natural killer T (NKT) cells in tumor-induced immunosuppression, it is likely that these cells may also contribute to tumor progression through nonimmune mechanisms. However, at present, there is no direct evidence implicating tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) in resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies. However, early evidence showed that T cells contributed to sustain tumor angiogenesis by expressing VEGF (Freeman et al. 1995).

Although accumulation of Tregs responsible of suppressing activation of effector T cells has been correlated with the number of blood vessels in cancer (Gupta et al. 2007; Giatromanolaki et al. 2008; Gasparri et al. 2013) and wound healing (D'Alessio et al. 2015), a direct role for these cells in promoting tumor angiogenesis and conferring resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies has not been demonstrated. Nevertheless, it has been shown that human and mouse $CD4^+CD25^+$ Tregs secrete high amounts of VEGF-A in response to hypoxia (Curiel et al. 2004; Facciabene et al. 2011; Gasparri et al. 2013). In turn, depletion of Tregs suppressed VEGF-A expression in the TME and decreased tumor angiogenesis (Facciabene et al. 2011). Interestingly, activated $CD4^+$ T cells may capture neuropilin-1 (NRP1), a VEGF co-receptor from DCs (Bourbie-Vaudaine et al. 2006), thus allowing interactions with VEGF following recruitment by CCL22 and CCL28 (Curiel et al. 2004; Facciabene et al. 2011).

As mentioned above, Ferrara and colleagues identified and dissected an immune-vascular circuitry which controls compensatory angiogenesis. In the TME, secretion of IL-17 led to GCSF production by TAFs and subsequent

recruitment of MDCSs which in turn promoted compensatory angiogenesis and conferred resistance to anti-VEGF therapy (Shojaei et al. 2007a; Chung et al. 2013). Additionally, IL-17 accentuated the pro-angiogenic function of MDSCs through expression of VEGF and Bv8 (Chung et al. 2013), indicating an unexpected role of tumor-infiltrating Th17 cells in facilitating VEGF-independent vascularization.

In contrast to myeloid cells and T cells, limited information is available regarding the angiomodulatory roles of B cells. B cell-derived VEGF has been associated with both lymphangiogenesis and angiogenesis in lymph nodes from healthy mice (Shrestha et al. 2010). Moreover, tumor-associated B cells have been shown to promote angiogenesis via a STAT3-dependent mechanism in melanoma and Lewis lung carcinoma models (Yang et al. 2013). Interestingly, a subpopulation of immature B cells has recently been associated with response to anti-angiogenic treatment (Fagiani et al. 2015). Interfering with VEGF or PDGF signaling regulated the frequency of immature B cells in tumor bearing but not in healthy mice, indicating that a $CD45^{dim}VEGFR1^{-}CD31^{low}$ B-cell subpopulation may serve as a predictor of responses to anti-angiogenic therapies (Fagiani et al. 2015).

Natural killer (NK) cells are prototypical innate lymphoid cells (ILCs) with crucial roles in cancer immunosurveillance. These cells can terminally differentiate in peripheral tissues depending on the presence of stimulatory or inhibitory signals that shape their functionality (Mamessier et al. 2011; Platonova et al. 2011). Accordingly, tumors may release a variety of soluble factors that could influence the ability of NK cells to promote tumor elimination or escape. Tolerogenic NK cells, originally described as decidual NK cells (dNKs) at the fetomaternal interface, play a key role in generating tolerogenic microenvironments and inducing placental angiogenesis by releasing VEGF and IL-8 (Hanna et al. 2006). In this regard, Bruno and colleagues found a tumor-specific subset of $CD56^{+}CD16^{-}$ NK cells that produce functional VEGF, PIGF, and IL-8 (Bruno et al. 2013). The mechanism underlying this pro-angiogenic phenotype resembled that exhibited by decidual NK cells. Supporting this notion, a STAT5-dependent mechanism of VEGF regulation in tumor-associated NK cells has been shown to control tumor angiogenesis (Gotthardt et al. 2016). Yet, there is still no evidence of the role of NK cells in resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies and the cross talk of these cells with other components of the TME. Further studies are needed to further understand the role of innate and adaptive lymphoid populations in regulating EC biology and resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies.

4 Hypoxia Bridges Immune Tolerance and Angiogenesis in TME

In the past few years, most studies have focused on the TME (Hanahan and Coussens 2012), mainly because (1) stromal and inflammatory cells are key players in tumor progression (Quail and Joyce 2013; Coussens et al. 2013); (2) therapies targeting tumor cells have shown limited clinical efficacy (Jain 2014); (3) tumor stroma plays a central role in acquired resistance to targeted therapies (Junttila and

de Sauvage 2013); and (4) new therapies targeting immune, endothelial, or other stromal components of the TME (such as checkpoint blockers, anti-angiogenic agents, or targeted compounds) have demonstrated clinical success in a variety of tumors (Pardoll 2012; Junttila and de Sauvage 2013). In fact, the TME continually changes over the course of cancer progression, and non-transformed cells from the TME coevolve with tumor cells.

Hypoxia emerges as a major driving force that influences both cancer cells and cells of the TME to promote tumor progression and metastasis. Given its central role in angiogenesis, immunosuppression, and resistance to therapies, tumor hypoxia represents one of the most important targets to be exploited for the development of new cancer therapies (Keith et al. 2011; Pan et al. 2012). In spite of significant progress in understanding the molecular components of hypoxia-regulated programs (LaGory and Giaccia 2016), the high plasticity of these responses and the presence of tumor divergence in oxygen-sensing mechanisms make hypoxia-related targets difficult to be identified. Adding complexity to this scenario, the molecular mechanisms coupling tumor hypoxia and compensatory angiogenesis remain poorly understood.

Targeting the vascular compartment of the TME induces an imbalance of pro- and anti-angiogenic factors that impairs tumor blood perfusion. Despite reducing blood supply which generates an apparently unfavorable setting for tumor growth, it may also enhance metastatic potential and generate resistance to radiotherapy, chemotherapy, and targeted therapies, including anti-angiogenic therapies (Jain 2005; Bergers and Hanahan 2008). An explanation of this phenomenon is that reducing oxygen supply generates an abnormal microenvironment characterized by hypoxia and acidosis, a setup that affects several pathways of tumor progression (Jain 2014). In this sense, tumor hypoxia not only promotes reexpression of soluble factors that promote compensatory angiogenesis (Chouaib et al. 2012; Jain 2014) but also downmodulates immune responses contributing to tumor-driven immunosuppression (Hanahan and Coussens 2012; Motz and Coukos 2013). Recently, Shehade and colleagues demonstrated that hypoxia affects T-cell activity by blunting the capacity of Th1 cells to produce IFN-γ through STAT3-dependent regulation of IL-10 expression (Shehade et al. 2015). Moreover, after T-cell receptor (TCR) engagement, HIF-1α deficiency shifts T-cell differentiation toward a pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion profile (Lukashev et al. 2006), suggesting that HIF-1α may serve as a negative regulator of T-cell differentiation. Hypoxia promotes inhibition of antitumor immune responses via induction of $FOXP3^+$ Tregs in gastric cancer (Deng et al. 2013) and glioblastoma (Wei et al. 2011) through common mechanisms involving a TGF-β1/STAT3-regulated pathway. Indeed, supernatants derived from gastric cancer cells cultured under hypoxic conditions induced expression of the FOXP3 transcription factor on T cells through modulation of TGF-β_1 signaling (Deng et al. 2013). In addition, hypoxia has been associated with mobilization of tolerogenic myeloid cells toward the tumor parenchyma in several tumor models. In gastric cancer, tumor hypoxia directly correlated with Treg cell infiltration (Deng et al. 2013). In ovarian tumors, hypoxia recruited Tregs to the TME through induction of the C-C motif chemokine ligand

28 (CCL28) by tumor cells (Facciabene et al. 2011) and CCL22 by TAMs (Curiel et al. 2004). Moreover, tumor cell expression of VEGF contributed to recruit Tregs to the TME in melanoma models (Hansen et al. 2012). Hypoxia and acidosis also endowed tumor-associated myeloid cells with pro-angiogenic and immunosuppressive potential (Murdoch et al. 2008). MDSCs are rapidly differentiated in a hypoxic TME into TAMs or immature DCs through mechanisms mediated by HIF-1α activation (Corzo et al. 2010). Upon differentiation, these cells acquired pro-angiogenic properties while maintaining their immunosuppressive phenotype (Motz and Coukos 2011). Hypoxia further aggravated immunosuppression by attracting macrophages into hypoxic areas via HIF-1α-mediated expression of VEGF, endothelin-1, and CCL2 chemoattractant (Murdoch et al. 2004; Gabrilovich et al. 2012; Kitamura et al. 2015). These TAMs produced several anti-inflammatory mediators including IL-10, TGF-β_1, VEGF, and PGE_2 (Triner and Shah 2016). Interestingly, Colegio and colleagues demonstrated a cross talk between tumor cells and macrophages in which lactic acid produced by tumor cells under anaerobic conditions promoted angiogenesis by inducing HIF-1α-dependent VEGF expression and M2 polarization of TAMs (Colegio et al. 2014). Increased levels of lactate induced adenosine accumulation and lowered pH in the TME, thereby impairing DC migration and function. DCs differentiated in the presence of adenosine and hypoxia had impaired allostimulatory activity and expressed higher levels of immunosuppressive/pro-angiogenic molecules including VEGF, IL-6, IL-8, IL-10, cyclooxygenase 2 (COX2), TGF-β_1, and indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) (Yang et al. 2010; Gabrilovich et al. 2012). In addition, HIF-1α but not HIF2-α activation under hypoxic conditions upregulated PD-L1 expression in MDSCs, TAMs, and DCs, endowing these cells with tolerogenic activity (Noman et al. 2014). These results suggest that simultaneous blockade of inhibitory checkpoints such us PD-L1, CTLA-4, or BTLA-4 along with inhibition of HIF-1α may represent a novel approach for combinatorial cancer immunotherapy.

However, in spite of the well-known pro-angiogenic and anti-inflammatory roles of HIF-1α, other studies revealed that under specific circumstances, this transcription factor may also display pro-inflammatory activity by promoting Th17 cell differentiation through mechanisms involving reprogramming of glycolytic metabolism and mTOR/RORγt activation (Shi et al. 2011; Dang et al. 2011). These apparently controversial data highlight the versatility and the context-dependent roles of hypoxia in inflammation and cancer. Although hypoxia promotes tolerance and angiogenesis by modulating the immune component of the TME, there is still no direct information about the role of hypoxia in generating resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies through immune-mediated mechanisms. Further studies are still needed to better understand the mechanisms by which local immune tolerance and angiogenesis are interconnected and cooperate to sustain tumor resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies.

5 The Galectin-Glycan Axis: Linking Immunosuppression, Hypoxia, and Resistance to Anti-angiogenic Treatment

Galectins (Gals) are evolutionarily conserved proteins that function in the extracellular milieu by interacting with a myriad of glycosylated receptors, or intracellularly by controlling signaling pathways through protein-glycan or protein-protein interactions (Cerliani et al. 2016; Mendez-Huergo et al. 2017). Galectins are defined by a conserved carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD) that recognizes glycans containing the disaccharide *N*-acetyllactosamine [Galβ1-4GlcNAc or LacNAc] (Liu and Rabinovich 2005; Thiemann and Baum 2016). Some galectins (i.e., Gal1 and Gal3) are expressed in a wide range of immune cell types with high expression in macrophages (Rabinovich et al. 1996; Sato and Nieminen 2004), DCs (Ilarregui et al. 2009; Tesone et al. 2016), eosinophils (Ge et al. 2016), and Tregs (Garin et al. 2007), as well as in ECs (Thijssen et al. 2006), whereas others (including Gal7 and Gal12) show more restricted tissue localization (Cerliani et al. 2016). Although binding of galectins to glycans involves low-affinity interactions, multivalency results in high-avidity binding, promoting cross-linking and clustering of surface glycoreceptors, regulating their endocytosis and signaling (Nabi et al. 2015). Particularly within immune and vascular compartments, galectin-glycan complexes control signaling thresholds of relevant receptors including the T-cell receptor (TCR), pre-B-cell receptor (BCR), cytokine receptors like TGF-βR (Rabinovich and Croci 2012), immune checkpoint molecules including lymphocyte-activation gene-3 (LAG-3), cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) and T-cell immunoglobulin domain and mucin domain-3 (TIM-3) (Zhu et al. 2005; Lau et al. 2007; Rangachari et al. 2012; Kouo et al. 2015), tyrosine kinase receptors such as VEGFR2 (Croci et al. 2014a; Markowska et al. 2011), and integrins including $\alpha_1\beta_1$ and $\alpha_5\beta_1$ (Chen et al. 2016). Given their capacity to regulate signaling programs by modulating canonical pathways that govern angiogenic processes (Croci et al. 2014a), together with their roles in regulating immune responses (Cerliani et al. 2016) and their marked expression in the TME (Rabinovich and Conejo-Garcia 2016), galectins have emerged as alternative players bridging tumor vascularization and immunosuppression (Croci et al. 2014b). The critical role of galectins in regulating immune response has been recently revised (Thiemann and Baum 2016; Mendez-Huergo et al. 2017). Here we will focus on the role of galectins in tumor neovascularization and resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies.

5.1 Galectins as Extracellular Mediators of Angiogenesis

An increasing number of studies support the central role of galectins in the control of vascular programs (Thijssen et al. 2013) and tumor immunity (Rabinovich and Croci 2012). Galectins (Gal1, Gal3, Gal8, and Gal9) can influence angiogenesis by cross-linking EC surface glycoproteins and activating distinct signaling pathways (Croci et al. 2014b). In this regard, Gal1 interacts with neuropilin-1 (NRP1) and/or

VEGFR2, where it modulates receptor segregation, internalization, and trafficking through glycan-dependent mechanisms, leading to VEGFR2 phosphorylation and signaling via the Raf/extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK) and Akt (Hsieh et al. 2008; Thijssen et al. 2010; Mathieu et al. 2012; Croci et al. 2012, 2014a; D'Haene et al. 2013). On the other hand, Gal3 acts through binding to *N*-glycans on $\alpha_v\beta_3$ integrin and modulating cell surface retention of VEGFR2 (Nangia-Makker et al. 2000; Markowska et al. 2010; Markowska et al. 2011), whereas Gal8 triggers angiogenesis through binding to the activated leukocyte-cell adhesion molecule (ALCAM, CD166) (Delgado et al. 2011). Interestingly, Gal8 also contributes to pathological lymphangiogenesis through binding to VEGF-C, podoplanin, and integrins $\alpha_1\beta_1$ and $\alpha_5\beta_1$ (Chen et al. 2016). Moreover, Gal9Δ5, a splice variant isoform of Gal9, induces a dose- and context-dependent effect on EC morphogenesis (Heusschen et al. 2014).

Tumor hypoxia, induced in response to anti-angiogenic therapies, upregulates Gal1 expression in different tumor types through HIF-1-dependent or ROS/NF-κB-dependent (Le et al. 2005; Zhao et al. 2010; Croci et al. 2012) mechanisms. Targeting Gal1 expression attenuated vascularization and suppressed growth of several tumors including melanoma (Thijssen et al. 2006; Mathieu et al. 2012; Croci et al. 2014a), Kaposi's sarcoma (Croci et al. 2012), prostate carcinoma (Laderach et al. 2013), lung adenocarcinoma and T-cell lymphoma (Croci et al. 2014a), hepatocarcinoma (Manzi et al. 2016), pancreatic adenocarcinoma (Martinez-Bosch et al. 2014), glioblastoma (Verschuere et al. 2014), and gastric cancer (Tang et al. 2016). Moreover, Gal1 expression correlated with blood vessel density in human prostate adenocarcinoma (Laderach et al. 2013), non-small cell lung adenocarcinoma (NSCLC) (Carlini et al. 2014), and Kaposi's sarcoma (Croci et al. 2012). Interestingly, Gal1-induced angiogenesis appeared to be independent of canonical pro-angiogenic factors including VEGF, FGF2, oncostatin M, angiopoietin-like 4 (ANGPTL4), and platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF)-α (Croci et al. 2012; Laderach et al. 2013) emphasizing the role of this lectin as a main player in VEGF-independent angiogenesis. In contrast, Gal3 acts as a pro-angiogenic factor through mechanisms involving VEGF and TGF-β signaling (Machado et al. 2014). These findings are consistent with the ability of Gal3 to potentiate VEGFR and FGFR-mediated angiogenesis through *N*-glycan-dependent mechanisms (Markowska et al. 2010). Furthermore, LGALS3BP, a protein known to specifically bind Gal3, functions as a pro-angiogenic factor through a dual mechanism involving induction of tumor VEGF and direct stimulation of EC morphogenesis (Piccolo et al. 2013). Moreover, other studies have shown an indirect role of Gal2, Gal4, and Gal8 in modulating angiogenesis programs by inducing the secretion of EC-derived cytokines and chemokines (GCSF, IL-6, MCP-1, and GROα) which in turn stimulate EC signaling (Chen et al. 2014).

5.2 Galectins as Mechanisms of Resistance to VEGF Blockade

Signaling events triggered by Gal1 recapitulated those activated by the canonical cytokine VEGF including VEGFR2, ERK1/2, and Akt phosphorylation (Croci et al. 2014a). At the molecular level, Gal1 preferentially bounds to branched *N*-glycans present in immunoglobulin domains-3, 4, and 7 of VEGFR2, leading to glycosylation-dependent clustering of this receptor on the surface of ECs (Croci et al. 2014a). Interestingly, exposure of ECs to immunosuppressive or hypoxic conditions led to significant changes in the EC glycome, which facilitated Gal1 binding and triggered angiogenesis, suggesting a dynamic interplay between immunosuppression and hypoxia in the regulation of EC signaling. Interestingly, VEGFR2 glycosylation pattern was recently confirmed by structural MS/MS analysis (Chandler et al. 2017), confirming the relevant role of glycosylation in lectin-receptor signaling and angiogenesis.

Given the striking similarities of VEGF and Gal1 signaling, we proposed that glycosylation-dependent binding of Gal1 to VEGFR2 might preserve angiogenesis in settings of VEGF blockade, especially in tumors that are resistant to anti-VEGF treatment. Supporting our in vitro findings, tumors produced high amounts of Gal1 in response to anti-VEGF treatment, while their associated vasculature changed its glycosylation profile facilitating Gal1-VEGFR2 interactions (Croci et al. 2014a). In contrast, vessels associated to anti-VEGF-sensitive tumors displayed glycosylation patterns that prevented Gal1 binding and angiogenesis even in the presence of VEGF blockade. Accordingly, genetic modification of EC glycosylation (lack of β1,6-GlcNAc-branched *N*-glycans) or silencing of tumor-derived Gal1 converted refractory into anti-VEGF-sensitive tumors (Croci et al. 2014a). These findings highlight the critical importance of tumor-derived Gal1 as a potential therapeutic target to overcome anti-VEGF compensatory programs.

5.3 Targeting Gal1-*N*-Glycan Interactions Limits the Efficacy of Anti-VEGF Treatment

Based on the aforementioned evidence, we proposed that selective Gal1-VEGFR2 interactions may serve as an alternative compensatory mechanism that preserves angiogenesis in settings of VEGF sequestration (Croci et al. 2014a) (Fig. 2). This evidence together with the role of Gal1 as an immune modulator (Rubinstein et al. 2004; Juszczynski et al. 2007; Rutkowski et al. 2015; Tesone et al. 2016) highlights the role of Gal1 as an attractive target to attenuate aberrant angiogenesis and circumvent tumor-induced immunosuppression. Blockade of Gal1-*N*-glycan interactions using an anti-Gal1 monoclonal antibody eliminated resistance to anti-VEGF treatment, suppressed the formation of aberrant vascular networks, and enhanced antitumor immunity in several tumor models including melanoma, lung cancer, and T-cell lymphoma (Croci et al. 2014b). Noteworthy, Gal1 blockade induced normalization of blood vessels early after treatment, as shown by reduced vessel diameter, increased pericyte coverage and maturation, and alleviation of

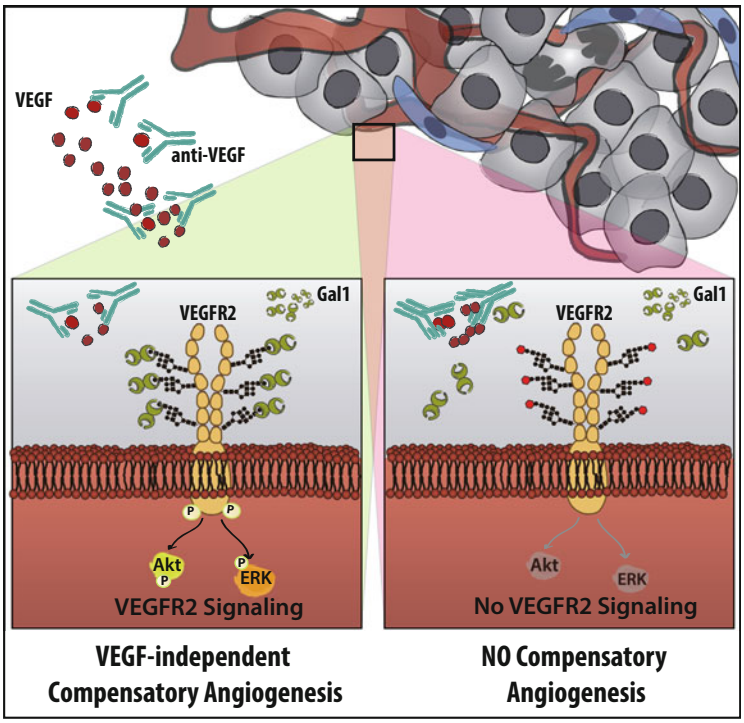


Fig. 2 Resistance to anti-VEGF treatment mediated by Gal1-*N*-glycan interactions. In anti-VEGF resistant tumors, hypoxia generated by VEGF blockade induces Gal1 expression in tumor cells and dynamic remodeling of the repertoire of glycans decorating VEGFR2 in tumor-associated ECs. Interaction between Gal1 and complex branched *N*-glycans lacking α2,6-linked sialic acid promotes VEGFR2 signaling and preserved tumor angiogenesis (*left panel*). In contrast, vessels associated to anti-VEGF-sensitive tumors (*right panel*) exhibit high amounts of α2,6-linked sialic acid, which prevent Gal1 binding and compensatory angiogenesis even in the absence of VEGF signaling

tumor hypoxia; this effect favored mobilization of immune cells and potentiated the antitumor response (Croci et al. 2014a). Supporting these findings, treatment of tumors with both bevacizumab and anginex, an anti-angiogenic peptide that binds to Gal1, normalized tumor vessels, increased oxygenation, and improved responses to radiation therapy (Dings et al. 2007). Moreover, administration of OTX008, an anginex-derived synthetic compound, potentiated the activity of the TKI sunitinib in nude mice inoculated with tumor xenografts (Zucchetti et al. 2013). These results support the use of combination therapies containing Gal1-blocking agents to maximize the efficacy of anticancer treatments.

6 Combinatorial Therapies: Anti-angiogenesis as a Partner of Immunotherapy

Combining anti-angiogenic therapy with immunotherapies is not a new idea, although it recently gained particular attention as clinical evidence revealed a reciprocal paradox: immunotherapy can also lead to anti-angiogenic effects, and anti-angiogenesis can stimulate immune responses (Garber 2014). Over the last 20 years, considerable data has accumulated showing that in addition to its pro-angiogenic role, VEGF also suppresses adaptive immunity (Ferrara and Adamis 2016). In several preclinical models, tumor-derived VEGF was associated with decreased immune cell activity by preventing DC maturation and promoting expression of inhibitory checkpoints (Voron et al. 2015), decreasing recruitment of lymphocytes, and increasing the Treg/CD8 ratio in the TME, thus hampering presentation of tumor antigens (Rabinovich et al. 2007; Melero et al. 2015). On the other hand, low-dose anti-angiogenic therapies have increased immune cell infiltration in TME (Huang et al. 2013). Therefore, normalizing tumor vasculature with low-dose anti-angiogenic therapies (Jain 2014) emerges as a new therapeutic option to improve the efficiency of immunotherapy by promoting infiltration of specific T cells in adoptive T-cell therapies, tumor vaccination approaches, and checkpoint blockade therapies. In this regard, targeting tumor vasculature with low vascular-normalizing doses of DC101 (an anti-VEGFR2 antibody) results in a more homogeneous distribution of functional tumor vessels, polarization of TAMs toward an immune stimulatory M1 phenotype, and higher influx of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells into the tumor parenchyma, events that overall improved cancer vaccination (Huang et al. 2012). Furthermore, targeting RTK signaling with sunitinib not only blocked proliferative signaling in ECs but also inhibited proliferation in tumor cells and reduced accumulation of MDSCs (Huang et al. 2013). Although anti-angiogenic therapy of kidney cancer increased infiltration of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T lymphocytes, it also augmented infiltration of Tregs and enhanced expression of programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) (Liu et al. 2015), suggesting that anti-angiogenic therapy may positively or negatively regulate immune responses.

Detection and destruction of malignant cells by cytolytic T lymphocytes (CTLs) are a hallmark of cancer immunotherapy. Hence, targeting pathways that not only increase T-cell activation but also enhance intratumoral trafficking and persistence of tumor-specific T cells has the potential to become a highly effective antitumor strategy. In a murine cancer model of colon adenocarcinoma, anti-PD-1 and anti-VEGFR2 (DC101) antibodies acted synergistically to inhibit tumor growth (Yasuda et al. 2013). Moreover, in a recent study, Wallin and collaborators explored the mechanisms underlying the therapeutic activity of anti-PD-L1 (atezolizumab) in combination with bevacizumab in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma (mRCC). Despite the small cohort of patients, the authors found an increase of genes and markers associated with Th1-driven chemokines and $CD8^+$ T-cell effectors, as well as natural killer (NK) cell functions following simultaneous administration of both therapeutic antibodies. Additionally, the authors found that anti-VEGF and anti-PD-L1 combination improved antigen-specific T-cell

migration via a CX3CL1-mediated mechanism (Wallin et al. 2016). Increased intratumoral homing of lymphocytes following combination therapy was also observed in other types of tumors (Hughes et al. 2016). The combination of ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4 monoclonal antibody) and bevacizumab in metastatic melanoma showed an increase of activated vessels accompanied by an extensive $CD8^+$ T-cell and $CD163^+$ macrophage infiltration (Hodi et al. 2014). Furthermore, the authors showed an increase of anti-Gal1, Gal3, and Gal9 antibodies in the peripheral blood from patients treated with bevacizumab or bevacizumab plus ipilimumab (Hodi et al. 2014). Moreover, Hodi's group demonstrated that combination of bevacizumab and ipilimumab leads to increased vascular expression of cell adhesion molecules including intercellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM1) and vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM1) and promoted lymphocyte recognition and tumor infiltration via upregulation of circulating CXCL10, IL-1α, TNFα, CXCL1, IFN-α, and IL-8 and downregulation of VEGF (Wu et al. 2016). These studies provided the basis for further investigation of the dual roles of angiogenic factors and immune regulators, suggesting the design of novel combinatorial modalities that strike both the immune and vascular compartments (Manegold et al. 2017). Since most combinatorial strategies are based on modulation of the VEGF-VEGFR axis, further studies should be aimed at exploring other agents capable of generating vascular normalization and facilitating recruitment of immune cells to the tumor parenchyma. In this sense, Gal1-blocking antibodies appear as attractive agents to simultaneously target vascular normalization and reinforce antitumor immune responses, particularly those mediated by Th1, Th17, and $CD8^+$ CTLs (Croci et al. 2014a).

7 Conclusions and Future Perspectives

In this article, we highlight the relevance of hypoxia-regulated programs and immune-mediated circuits that converge in EC signaling to control vascularization and resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies. We underscore the relevance of myeloid and lymphoid subsets as well as cytokine and chemokine networks as potential compensatory angiogenic pathways and discuss the role of galectin-glycan lattices in sustaining angiogenesis in settings of VEGF blockade. Interestingly, galectins not only mediate resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies, but they can also regulate sensitivity to other anticancer modalities including immunotherapy by rituximab (Lykken et al. 2016), targeted therapy with imatinib (Glivec) (Luo et al. 2016), and chemotherapy with paclitaxel and adriamycin (Wang et al. 2017). Given the importance of unleashing tumor immunity to eradicate tumor cells, we also highlighted the bi-directional and reciprocal cross talk between immunosuppression and angiogenesis in the TME. Future studies should be aimed at dissecting the molecular basis involved in this intriguing interplay and to further explore combinatorial strategies aimed at attenuating aberrant angiogenesis, normalizing tumor vasculature, and potentiating antitumor immune responses. Furthermore, innovative structure-function studies are required to further dissect the mechanisms

underlying the therapeutic action of novel and currently available anticancer drugs, to further validate new targets and combinatorial modalities. Finally, identification of biomarkers that could predict responsiveness to different anti-angiogenic treatments and/or acquisition of resistance mechanisms is of critical importance to increase the number of patients who will benefit from vessel-targeting therapies.

Acknowledgments Work in G.A.R's lab is supported by grants from the Argentinean Agency for Promotion of Science and Technology (PICT V 2014-367; PICT 2012-2440), CONICET, University of Buenos Aires, Bunge & Born Foundation and Sales Foundation.

References

Arrondeau J, Huillard O, Tlemsani C, Cessot A, Boudou-Rouquette P, Blanchet B, Thomas-Schoemann A, Vidal M, Tigaud JM, Durand JP, Alexandre J, Goldwasser F (2015) Investigational therapies up to phase II which target PDGF receptors: potential anti-cancer therapeutics. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 24(5):673–687. doi:10.1517/13543784.2015.1005736

Barbi J, Pardoll D, Pan F (2013) Metabolic control of the Treg/Th17 axis. Immunol Rev 252 (1):52–77. doi:10.1111/imr.12029

Batchelor TT, Sorensen AG, di Tomaso E, Zhang WT, Duda DG, Cohen KS, Kozak KR, Cahill DP, Chen PJ, Zhu M, Ancukiewicz M, Mrugala MM, Plotkin S, Drappatz J, Louis DN, Ivy P, Scadden DT, Benner T, Loeffler JS, Wen PY, Jain RK (2007) AZD2171, a pan-VEGF receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, normalizes tumor vasculature and alleviates edema in glioblastoma patients. Cancer Cell 11(1):83–95. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2006.11.021

Bergers G, Hanahan D (2008) Modes of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy. Nat Rev Cancer 8 (8):592–603. doi:10.1038/nrc2442

Birbrair A, Zhang T, Wang ZM, Messi ML, Enikolopov GN, Mintz A, Delbono O (2013) Skeletal muscle pericyte subtypes differ in their differentiation potential. Stem Cell Res 10(1):67–84. doi:10.1016/j.scr.2012.09.003

Bose A, Barik S, Banerjee S, Ghosh T, Mallick A, Bhattacharyya Majumdar S, Goswami KK, Bhuniya A, Banerjee S, Baral R, Storkus WJ, Dasgupta PS, Majumdar S (2013) Tumor-derived vascular pericytes anergize Th cells. J Immunol 191(2):971–981. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1300280

Bourbie-Vaudaine S, Blanchard N, Hivroz C, Romeo PH (2006) Dendritic cells can turn CD4+ T lymphocytes into vascular endothelial growth factor-carrying cells by intercellular neuropilin-1 transfer. J Immunol 177(3):1460–1469

Brecht K, Weigert A, Hu J, Popp R, Fisslthaler B, Korff T, Fleming I, Geisslinger G, Brune B (2011) Macrophages programmed by apoptotic cells promote angiogenesis via prostaglandin E2. FASEB J 25(7):2408–2417. doi:10.1096/fj.10-179473

Bruno A, Focaccetti C, Pagani A, Imperatori AS, Spagnoletti M, Rotolo N, Cantelmo AR, Franzi F, Capella C, Ferlazzo G, Mortara L, Albini A, Noonan DM (2013) The proangiogenic phenotype of natural killer cells in patients with non-small cell lung cancer. Neoplasia 15 (2):133–142

Burke B, Tang N, Corke KP, Tazzyman D, Ameri K, Wells M, Lewis CE (2002) Expression of HIF-1alpha by human macrophages: implications for the use of macrophages in hypoxia-regulated cancer gene therapy. J Pathol 196(2):204–212. doi:10.1002/path.1029

Carbone C, Tamburrino A, Piro G, Boschi F, Cataldo I, Zanotto M, Mina MM, Zanini S, Sbarbati A, Scarpa A, Tortora G, Melisi D (2016) Combined inhibition of IL1, CXCR1/2, and TGFbeta signaling pathways modulates in-vivo resistance to anti-VEGF treatment. Anti-Cancer Drugs 27(1):29–40. doi:10.1097/CAD.0000000000000301

Carlini MJ, Roitman P, Nunez M, Pallotta MG, Boggio G, Smith D, Salatino M, Joffe ED, Rabinovich GA, Puricelli LI (2014) Clinical relevance of galectin-1 expression in non-small cell lung cancer patients. Lung Cancer 84(1):73–78. doi:10.1016/j.lungcan.2014.01.016

Carmeliet P, Jain RK (2000) Angiogenesis in cancer and other diseases. Nature 407 (6801):249–257. doi:10.1038/35025220

Carmeliet P, Jain RK (2011) Molecular mechanisms and clinical applications of angiogenesis. Nature 473(7347):298–307. doi:10.1038/nature10144

Casanovas O, Hicklin DJ, Bergers G, Hanahan D (2005) Drug resistance by evasion of antiangiogenic targeting of VEGF signaling in late-stage pancreatic islet tumors. Cancer Cell 8(4):299–309. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2005.09.005

Cerliani JP, Blidner AG, Toscano MA, Croci DO, Rabinovich GA (2016) Translating the 'sugar code' into immune and vascular signaling programs. Trends Biochem Sci. doi:10.1016/j.tibs.2016.11.003

Chan DA, Kawahara TL, Sutphin PD, Chang HY, Chi JT, Giaccia AJ (2009) Tumor vasculature is regulated by PHD2-mediated angiogenesis and bone marrow-derived cell recruitment. Cancer Cell 15(6):527–538. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2009.04.010

Chandler KB, Leon DR, Meyer RD, Rahimi N, Costello CE (2017) Site-specific N-glycosylation of endothelial cell receptor tyrosine kinase VEGFR-2. J Proteome Res 16(2):677–688. doi:10.1021/acs.jproteome.6b00738

Chen C, Duckworth CA, Fu B, Pritchard DM, Rhodes JM, Yu LG (2014) Circulating galectins-2, -4 and -8 in cancer patients make important contributions to the increased circulation of several cytokines and chemokines that promote angiogenesis and metastasis. Br J Cancer 110 (3):741–752. doi:10.1038/bjc.2013.793

Chen WS, Cao Z, Sugaya S, Lopez MJ, Sendra VG, Laver N, Leffler H, Nilsson UJ, Fu J, Song J, Xia L, Hamrah P, Panjwani N (2016) Pathological lymphangiogenesis is modulated by galectin-8-dependent crosstalk between podoplanin and integrin-associated VEGFR-3. Nat Commun 7:11302. doi:10.1038/ncomms11302

Chouaib S, Messai Y, Couve S, Escudier B, Hasmim M, Noman MZ (2012) Hypoxia promotes tumor growth in linking angiogenesis to immune escape. Front Immunol 3:21. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00021

Chung AS, Wu X, Zhuang G, Ngu H, Kasman I, Zhang J, Vernes JM, Jiang Z, Meng YG, Peale FV, Ouyang W, Ferrara N (2013) An interleukin-17-mediated paracrine network promotes tumor resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy. Nat Med 19(9):1114–1123. doi:10.1038/nm.3291

Colegio OR, Chu NQ, Szabo AL, Chu T, Rhebergen AM, Jairam V, Cyrus N, Brokowski CE, Eisenbarth SC, Phillips GM, Cline GW, Phillips AJ, Medzhitov R (2014) Functional polarization of tumour-associated macrophages by tumour-derived lactic acid. Nature 513 (7519):559–563. doi:10.1038/nature13490

Cooke VG, LeBleu VS, Keskin D, Khan Z, O'Connell JT, Teng Y, Duncan MB, Xie L, Maeda G, Vong S, Sugimoto H, Rocha RM, Damascena A, Brentani RR, Kalluri R (2012) Pericyte depletion results in hypoxia-associated epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and metastasis mediated by met signaling pathway. Cancer Cell 21(1):66–81. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2011.11.024

Corzo CA, Condamine T, Lu L, Cotter MJ, Youn JI, Cheng P, Cho HI, Celis E, Quiceno DG, Padhya T, McCaffrey TV, McCaffrey JC, Gabrilovich DI (2010) HIF-1alpha regulates function and differentiation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in the tumor microenvironment. J Exp Med 207(11):2439–2453. doi:10.1084/jem.20100587

Coussens LM, Raymond WW, Bergers G, Laig-Webster M, Behrendtsen O, Werb Z, Caughey GH, Hanahan D (1999) Inflammatory mast cells up-regulate angiogenesis during squamous epithelial carcinogenesis. Genes Dev 13(11):1382–1397

Coussens LM, Zitvogel L, Palucka AK (2013) Neutralizing tumor-promoting chronic inflammation: a magic bullet? Science 339(6117):286–291. doi:10.1126/science.1232227

Croci DO, Salatino M, Rubinstein N, Cerliani JP, Cavallin LE, Leung HJ, Ouyang J, Ilarregui JM, Toscano MA, Domaica CI, Croci MC, Shipp MA, Mesri EA, Albini A, Rabinovich GA (2012) Disrupting galectin-1 interactions with N-glycans suppresses hypoxia-driven angiogenesis and

tumorigenesis in Kaposi's sarcoma. J Exp Med 209(11):1985–2000. doi:10.1084/jem.20111665

Croci DO, Cerliani JP, Dalotto-Moreno T, Mendez-Huergo SP, Mascanfroni ID, Dergan-Dylon S, Toscano MA, Caramelo JJ, Garcia-Vallejo JJ, Ouyang J, Mesri EA, Junttila MR, Bais C, Shipp MA, Salatino M, Rabinovich GA (2014a) Glycosylation-dependent lectin-receptor interactions preserve angiogenesis in anti-VEGF refractory tumors. Cell 156(4):744–758. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.01.043

Croci DO, Cerliani JP, Pinto NA, Morosi LG, Rabinovich GA (2014b) Regulatory role of glycans in the control of hypoxia-driven angiogenesis and sensitivity to anti-angiogenic treatment. Glycobiology 24(12):1283–1290. doi:10.1093/glycob/cwu083

Curiel TJ, Cheng P, Mottram P, Alvarez X, Moons L, Evdemon-Hogan M, Wei S, Zou L, Kryczek I, Hoyle G, Lackner A, Carmeliet P, Zou W (2004) Dendritic cell subsets differentially regulate angiogenesis in human ovarian cancer. Cancer Res 64(16):5535–5538. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-1272

D'Alessio FR, Zhong Q, Jenkins J, Moldobaeva A, Wagner EM (2015) Lung angiogenesis requires CD4(+) forkhead homeobox protein-3(+) regulatory T cells. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol 52(5):603–610. doi:10.1165/rcmb.2014-0278OC

D'Haene N, Sauvage S, Maris C, Adanja I, Le Mercier M, Decaestecker C, Baum L, Salmon I (2013) VEGFR1 and VEGFR2 involvement in extracellular galectin-1- and galectin-3-induced angiogenesis. PLoS One 8(6):e67029. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0067029

Dang EV, Barbi J, Yang HY, Jinasena D, Yu H, Zheng Y, Bordman Z, Fu J, Kim Y, Yen HR, Luo W, Zeller K, Shimoda L, Topalian SL, Semenza GL, Dang CV, Pardoll DM, Pan F (2011) Control of T(H)17/T(reg) balance by hypoxia-inducible factor 1. Cell 146(5):772–784. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2011.07.033

De Palma M, Venneri MA, Galli R, Sergi Sergi L, Politi LS, Sampaolesi M, Naldini L (2005) Tie2 identifies a hematopoietic lineage of proangiogenic monocytes required for tumor vessel formation and a mesenchymal population of pericyte progenitors. Cancer Cell 8(3):211–226. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2005.08.002

Delgado VM, Nugnes LG, Colombo LL, Troncoso MF, Fernandez MM, Malchiodi EL, Frahm I, Croci DO, Compagno D, Rabinovich GA, Wolfenstein-Todel C, Elola MT (2011) Modulation of endothelial cell migration and angiogenesis: a novel function for the "tandem-repeat" lectin galectin-8. FASEB J 25(1):242–254. doi:10.1096/fj.09-144907

Deng B, Zhu JM, Wang Y, Liu TT, Ding YB, Xiao WM, Lu GT, Bo P, Shen XZ (2013) Intratumor hypoxia promotes immune tolerance by inducing regulatory T cells via TGF-beta1 in gastric cancer. PLoS One 8(5):e63777. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0063777

Dikov MM, Ohm JE, Ray N, Tchekneva EE, Burlison J, Moghanaki D, Nadaf S, Carbone DP (2005) Differential roles of vascular endothelial growth factor receptors 1 and 2 in dendritic cell differentiation. J Immunol 174(1):215–222

Dings RP, Loren M, Heun H, McNiel E, Griffioen AW, Mayo KH, Griffin RJ (2007) Scheduling of radiation with angiogenesis inhibitors anginex and Avastin improves therapeutic outcome via vessel normalization. Clin Cancer Res 13(11):3395–3402. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-2441

Dobbelstein M, Moll U (2014) Targeting tumour-supportive cellular machineries in anticancer drug development. Nat Rev Drug Discov 13(3):179–196. doi:10.1038/nrd4201

Ebos JM, Lee CR, Cruz-Munoz W, Bjarnason GA, Christensen JG, Kerbel RS (2009) Accelerated metastasis after short-term treatment with a potent inhibitor of tumor angiogenesis. Cancer Cell 15(3):232–239. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2009.01.021

Ellis LM, Hicklin DJ (2008) Pathways mediating resistance to vascular endothelial growth factor-targeted therapy. Clin Cancer Res 14(20):6371–6375. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-5287

Facciabene A, Peng X, Hagemann IS, Balint K, Barchetti A, Wang LP, Gimotty PA, Gilks CB, Lal P, Zhang L, Coukos G (2011) Tumour hypoxia promotes tolerance and angiogenesis via CCL28 and T(reg) cells. Nature 475(7355):226–230. doi:10.1038/nature10169

Fagiani E, Bill R, Pisarsky L, Ivanek R, Ruegg C, Christofori G (2015) An immature B cell population from peripheral blood serves as surrogate marker for monitoring tumor

angiogenesis and anti-angiogenic therapy in mouse models. Angiogenesis 18(3):327–345. doi:10.1007/s10456-015-9470-9

Ferrara N, Adamis AP (2016) Ten years of anti-vascular endothelial growth factor therapy. Nat Rev Drug Discov 15(6):385–403. doi:10.1038/nrd.2015.17

Ferrara N, Hillan KJ, Novotny W (2005) Bevacizumab (Avastin), a humanized anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody for cancer therapy. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 333(2):328–335. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2005.05.132

Finke J, Ko J, Rini B, Rayman P, Ireland J, Cohen P (2011) MDSC as a mechanism of tumor escape from sunitinib mediated anti-angiogenic therapy. Int Immunopharmacol 11 (7):856–861. doi:10.1016/j.intimp.2011.01.030

Fischer C, Jonckx B, Mazzone M, Zacchigna S, Loges S, Pattarini L, Chorianopoulos E, Liesenborghs L, Koch M, De Mol M, Autiero M, Wyns S, Plaisance S, Moons L, van Rooijen N, Giacca M, Stassen JM, Dewerchin M, Collen D, Carmeliet P (2007) Anti-PlGF inhibits growth of VEGF(R)-inhibitor-resistant tumors without affecting healthy vessels. Cell 131(3):463–475. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2007.08.038

Folkman J (1971) Tumor angiogenesis: therapeutic implications. N Engl J Med 285(21):1182–1186. doi:10.1056/NEJM197111182852108

Forget MA, Voorhees JL, Cole SL, Dakhlallah D, Patterson IL, Gross AC, Moldovan L, Mo X, Evans R, Marsh CB, Eubank TD (2014) Macrophage colony-stimulating factor augments Tie2-expressing monocyte differentiation, angiogenic function, and recruitment in a mouse model of breast cancer. PLoS One 9(6):e98623. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0098623

Freeman MR, Schneck FX, Gagnon ML, Corless C, Soker S, Niknejad K, Peoples GE, Klagsbrun M (1995) Peripheral blood T lymphocytes and lymphocytes infiltrating human cancers express vascular endothelial growth factor: a potential role for T cells in angiogenesis. Cancer Res 55 (18):4140–4145

Gabrilovich DI, Chen HL, Girgis KR, Cunningham HT, Meny GM, Nadaf S, Kavanaugh D, Carbone DP (1996) Production of vascular endothelial growth factor by human tumors inhibits the functional maturation of dendritic cells. Nat Med 2(10):1096–1103

Gabrilovich D, Ishida T, Oyama T, Ran S, Kravtsov V, Nadaf S, Carbone DP (1998) Vascular endothelial growth factor inhibits the development of dendritic cells and dramatically affects the differentiation of multiple hematopoietic lineages in vivo. Blood 92(11):4150–4166

Gabrilovich DI, Ishida T, Nadaf S, Ohm JE, Carbone DP (1999) Antibodies to vascular endothelial growth factor enhance the efficacy of cancer immunotherapy by improving endogenous dendritic cell function. Clin Cancer Res 5(10):2963–2970

Gabrilovich DI, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Bronte V (2012) Coordinated regulation of myeloid cells by tumours. Nat Rev Immunol 12(4):253–268. doi:10.1038/nri3175

Garber K (2014) Promising early results for immunotherapy-antiangiogenesis combination. J Natl Cancer Inst 106(11):dju392. doi:10.1093/jnci/dju392

Garin MI, Chu CC, Golshayan D, Cernuda-Morollon E, Wait R, Lechler RI (2007) Galectin-1: a key effector of regulation mediated by CD4+CD25+ T cells. Blood 109(5):2058–2065. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-04-016451

Gasparri ML, Bellati F, Napoletano C, Panici PB, Nuti M (2013) Interaction between Treg cells and angiogenesis: a dark double track. Int J Cancer 132(10):2469. doi:10.1002/ijc.27920

Ge XN, Ha SG, Greenberg YG, Rao A, Bastan I, Blidner AG, Rao SP, Rabinovich GA, Sriramarao P (2016) Regulation of eosinophilia and allergic airway inflammation by the glycan-binding protein galectin-1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(33):E4837–E4846. doi:10.1073/pnas.1601958113

Giatromanolaki A, Bates GJ, Koukourakis MI, Sivridis E, Gatter KC, Harris AL, Banham AH (2008) The presence of tumor-infiltrating FOXP3+ lymphocytes correlates with intratumoral angiogenesis in endometrial cancer. Gynecol Oncol 110(2):216–221. doi:10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.04.021

Gotthardt D, Putz EM, Grundschober E, Prchal-Murphy M, Straka E, Kudweis P, Heller G, Bago-Horvath Z, Witalisz-Siepracka A, Cumaraswamy AA, Gunning PT, Strobl B, Muller M,

Moriggl R, Stockmann C, Sexl V (2016) STAT5 Is a key regulator in NK cells and acts as a molecular switch from tumor surveillance to tumor promotion. Cancer Discov 6(4):414–429. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-15-0732

Grunewald M, Avraham I, Dor Y, Bachar-Lustig E, Itin A, Jung S, Chimenti S, Landsman L, Abramovitch R, Keshet E (2006) VEGF-induced adult neovascularization: recruitment, retention, and role of accessory cells. Cell 124(1):175–189. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2005.10.036

Gupta S, Joshi K, Wig JD, Arora SK (2007) Intratumoral FOXP3 expression in infiltrating breast carcinoma: its association with clinicopathologic parameters and angiogenesis. Acta Oncol 46 (6):792–797. doi:10.1080/02841860701233443

Hamzah J, Jugold M, Kiessling F, Rigby P, Manzur M, Marti HH, Rabie T, Kaden S, Grone HJ, Hammerling GJ, Arnold B, Ganss R (2008) Vascular normalization in Rgs5-deficient tumours promotes immune destruction. Nature 453(7193):410–414. doi:10.1038/nature06868

Hanahan D, Coussens LM (2012) Accessories to the crime: functions of cells recruited to the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Cell 21(3):309–322. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2012.02.022

Hanna J, Goldman-Wohl D, Hamani Y, Avraham I, Greenfield C, Natanson-Yaron S, Prus D, Cohen-Daniel L, Arnon TI, Manaster I, Gazit R, Yutkin V, Benharroch D, Porgador A, Keshet E, Yagel S, Mandelboim O (2006) Decidual NK cells regulate key developmental processes at the human fetal-maternal interface. Nat Med 12(9):1065–1074. doi:10.1038/nm1452

Hansen W, Hutzler M, Abel S, Alter C, Stockmann C, Kliche S, Albert J, Sparwasser T, Sakaguchi S, Westendorf AM, Schadendorf D, Buer J, Helfrich I (2012) Neuropilin 1 deficiency on CD4+Foxp3+ regulatory T cells impairs mouse melanoma growth. J Exp Med 209 (11):2001–2016. doi:10.1084/jem.20111497

Heddleston JM, Li Z, Lathia JD, Bao S, Hjelmeland AB, Rich JN (2010) Hypoxia inducible factors in cancer stem cells. Br J Cancer 102(5):789–795. doi:10.1038/sj.bjc.6605551

Heusschen R, Schulkens IA, van Beijnum J, Griffioen AW, Thijssen VL (2014) Endothelial LGALS9 splice variant expression in endothelial cell biology and angiogenesis. Biochim Biophys Acta 1842(2):284–292. doi:10.1016/j.bbadis.2013.12.003

Hodi FS, Lawrence D, Lezcano C, Wu X, Zhou J, Sasada T, Zeng W, Giobbie-Hurder A, Atkins MB, Ibrahim N, Friedlander P, Flaherty KT, Murphy GF, Rodig S, Velazquez EF, Mihm MC Jr, Russell S, DiPiro PJ, Yap JT, Ramaiya N, Van den Abbeele AD, Gargano M, McDermott D (2014) Bevacizumab plus ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. Cancer Immunol Res 2(7):632–642. doi:10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-14-0053

Holash J, Davis S, Papadopoulos N, Croll SD, Ho L, Russell M, Boland P, Leidich R, Hylton D, Burova E, Ioffe E, Huang T, Radziejewski C, Bailey K, Fandl JP, Daly T, Wiegand SJ, Yancopoulos GD, Rudge JS (2002) VEGF-Trap: a VEGF blocker with potent antitumor effects. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99(17):11393–11398. doi:10.1073/pnas.172398299

Hsieh SH, Ying NW, Wu MH, Chiang WF, Hsu CL, Wong TY, Jin YT, Hong TM, Chen YL (2008) Galectin-1, a novel ligand of neuropilin-1, activates VEGFR-2 signaling and modulates the migration of vascular endothelial cells. Oncogene 27(26):3746–3753. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1211029

Huang Y, Yuan J, Righi E, Kamoun WS, Ancukiewicz M, Nezivar J, Santosuosso M, Martin JD, Martin MR, Vianello F, Leblanc P, Munn LL, Huang P, Duda DG, Fukumura D, Jain RK, Poznansky MC (2012) Vascular normalizing doses of antiangiogenic treatment reprogram the immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment and enhance immunotherapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109(43):17561–17566. doi:10.1073/pnas.1215397109

Huang Y, Goel S, Duda DG, Fukumura D, Jain RK (2013) Vascular normalization as an emerging strategy to enhance cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Res 73(10):2943–2948. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-4354

Hughes PE, Caenepeel S, Wu LC (2016) Targeted therapy and checkpoint immunotherapy combinations for the treatment of cancer. Trends Immunol 37(7):462–476. doi:10.1016/j.it.2016.04.010

Ilarregui JM, Croci DO, Bianco GA, Toscano MA, Salatino M, Vermeulen ME, Geffner JR, Rabinovich GA (2009) Tolerogenic signals delivered by dendritic cells to T cells through a galectin-1-driven immunoregulatory circuit involving interleukin 27 and interleukin 10. Nat Immunol 10(9):981–991. doi:10.1038/ni.1772

Jain RK (2005) Normalization of tumor vasculature: an emerging concept in antiangiogenic therapy. Science 307(5706):58–62. doi:10.1126/science.1104819

Jain RK (2014) Antiangiogenesis strategies revisited: from starving tumors to alleviating hypoxia. Cancer Cell 26(5):605–622. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2014.10.006

Jeong W, Doroshow JH, Kummar S (2013) United States Food and Drug Administration approved oral kinase inhibitors for the treatment of malignancies. Curr Probl Cancer 37(3):110–144. doi:10.1016/j.currproblcancer.2013.06.001

Jetten N, Verbruggen S, Gijbels MJ, Post MJ, De Winther MP, Donners MM (2014) Anti-inflammatory M2, but not pro-inflammatory M1 macrophages promote angiogenesis in vivo. Angiogenesis 17(1):109–118. doi:10.1007/s10456-013-9381-6

Ju JA, Godet I, Ye IC, Byun J, Jayatilaka H, Lee SJ, Xiang L, Samanta D, Lee MH, Wu PH, Wirtz D, Semenza GL, Gilkes DM (2017) Hypoxia selectively enhances integrin receptor expression to promote metastasis. Mol Cancer Res. doi:10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-16-0338

Junttila MR, de Sauvage FJ (2013) Influence of tumour micro-environment heterogeneity on therapeutic response. Nature 501(7467):346–354. doi:10.1038/nature12626

Juszczynski P, Ouyang J, Monti S, Rodig SJ, Takeyama K, Abramson J, Chen W, Kutok JL, Rabinovich GA, Shipp MA (2007) The AP1-dependent secretion of galectin-1 by Reed Sternberg cells fosters immune privilege in classical Hodgkin lymphoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(32):13134–13139. doi:10.1073/pnas.0706017104

Kale S, Hanai J, Chan B, Karihaloo A, Grotendorst G, Cantley L, Sukhatme VP (2005) Microarray analysis of in vitro pericyte differentiation reveals an angiogenic program of gene expression. FASEB J 19(2):270–271. doi:10.1096/fj.04-1604fje

Keith B, Johnson RS, Simon MC (2011) HIF1alpha and HIF2alpha: sibling rivalry in hypoxic tumour growth and progression. Nat Rev Cancer 12(1):9–22. doi:10.1038/nrc3183

Kitamura T, Qian BZ, Soong D, Cassetta L, Noy R, Sugano G, Kato Y, Li J, Pollard JW (2015) CCL2-induced chemokine cascade promotes breast cancer metastasis by enhancing retention of metastasis-associated macrophages. J Exp Med 212(7):1043–1059. doi:10.1084/jem.20141836

Knighton DR, Hunt TK, Scheuenstuhl H, Halliday BJ, Werb Z, Banda MJ (1983) Oxygen tension regulates the expression of angiogenesis factor by macrophages. Science 221 (4617):1283–1285

Kouo T, Huang L, Pucsek AB, Cao M, Solt S, Armstrong T, Jaffee E (2015) Galectin-3 shapes antitumor immune responses by suppressing CD8+ T cells via LAG-3 and inhibiting expansion of plasmacytoid dendritic cells. Cancer Immunol Res 3(4):412–423. doi:10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-14-0150

Krupitskaya Y, Wakelee HA (2009) Ramucirumab, a fully human mAb to the transmembrane signaling tyrosine kinase VEGFR-2 for the potential treatment of cancer. Curr Opin Investig Drugs 10(6):597–605

Kujawski M, Kortylewski M, Lee H, Herrmann A, Kay H, Yu H (2008) Stat3 mediates myeloid cell-dependent tumor angiogenesis in mice. J Clin Invest 118(10):3367–3377. doi:10.1172/JCI35213

Laderach DJ, Gentilini LD, Giribaldi L, Delgado VC, Nugnes L, Croci DO, Al Nakouzi N, Sacca P, Casas G, Mazza O, Shipp MA, Vazquez E, Chauchereau A, Kutok JL, Rodig SJ, Elola MT, Compagno D, Rabinovich GA (2013) A unique galectin signature in human prostate cancer progression suggests galectin-1 as a key target for treatment of advanced disease. Cancer Res 73(1):86–96. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-1260

LaGory EL, Giaccia AJ (2016) The ever-expanding role of HIF in tumour and stromal biology. Nat Cell Biol 18(4):356–365. doi:10.1038/ncb3330

Lau KS, Partridge EA, Grigorian A, Silvescu CI, Reinhold VN, Demetriou M, Dennis JW (2007) Complex N-glycan number and degree of branching cooperate to regulate cell proliferation and differentiation. Cell 129(1):123–134. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2007.01.049

Le QT, Shi G, Cao H, Nelson DW, Wang Y, Chen EY, Zhao S, Kong C, Richardson D, O'Byrne KJ, Giaccia AJ, Koong AC (2005) Galectin-1: a link between tumor hypoxia and tumor immune privilege. J Clin Oncol 23(35):8932–8941. doi:10.1200/JCO.2005.02.0206

Leung DW, Cachianes G, Kuang WJ, Goeddel DV, Ferrara N (1989) Vascular endothelial growth factor is a secreted angiogenic mitogen. Science 246(4935):1306–1309

Lewis CE, Pollard JW (2006) Distinct role of macrophages in different tumor microenvironments. Cancer Res 66(2):605–612. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-4005

Lin EY, Li JF, Gnatovskiy L, Deng Y, Zhu L, Grzesik DA, Qian H, Xue XN, Pollard JW (2006) Macrophages regulate the angiogenic switch in a mouse model of breast cancer. Cancer Res 66 (23):11238–11246. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-1278

Liu FT, Rabinovich GA (2005) Galectins as modulators of tumour progression. Nat Rev Cancer 5 (1):29–41. doi:10.1038/nrc1527

Liu XD, Hoang A, Zhou L, Kalra S, Yetil A, Sun M, Ding Z, Zhang X, Bai S, German P, Tamboli P, Rao P, Karam JA, Wood C, Matin S, Zurita A, Bex A, Griffioen AW, Gao J, Sharma P, Tannir N, Sircar K, Jonasch E (2015) Resistance to antiangiogenic therapy is associated with an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment in metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Cancer Immunol Res 3(9):1017–1029. doi:10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-14-0244

Loges S, Mazzone M, Hohensinner P, Carmeliet P (2009) Silencing or fueling metastasis with VEGF inhibitors: antiangiogenesis revisited. Cancer Cell 15(3):167–170. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2009.02.007

Lukashev D, Klebanov B, Kojima H, Grinberg A, Ohta A, Berenfeld L, Wenger RH, Ohta A, Sitkovsky M (2006) Cutting edge: hypoxia-inducible factor 1alpha and its activation-inducible short isoform I.1 negatively regulate functions of CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes. J Immunol 177(8):4962–4965

Luo W, Song L, Chen XL, Zeng XF, Wu JZ, Zhu CR, Huang T, Tan XP, Lin XM, Yang Q, Wang JZ, Li XK, Wu XP (2016) Identification of galectin-1 as a novel mediator for chemoresistance in chronic myeloid leukemia cells. Oncotarget 7(18):26709–26723. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.8489

Lykken JM, Horikawa M, Minard-Colin V, Kamata M, Miyagaki T, Poe JC, Tedder TF (2016) Galectin-1 drives lymphoma CD20 immunotherapy resistance: validation of a preclinical system to identify resistance mechanisms. Blood 127(15):1886–1895. doi:10.1182/blood-2015-11-681130

Machado CM, Andrade LN, Teixeira VR, Costa FF, Melo CM, dos Santos SN, Nonogaki S, Liu FT, Bernardes ES, Camargo AA, Chammas R (2014) Galectin-3 disruption impaired tumoral angiogenesis by reducing VEGF secretion from TGFbeta1-induced macrophages. Cancer Med 3(2):201–214. doi:10.1002/cam4.173

Mamessier E, Sylvain A, Thibult ML, Houvenaeghel G, Jacquemier J, Castellano R, Goncalves A, Andre P, Romagne F, Thibault G, Viens P, Birnbaum D, Bertucci F, Moretta A, Olive D (2011) Human breast cancer cells enhance self tolerance by promoting evasion from NK cell antitumor immunity. J Clin Invest 121(9):3609–3622. doi:10.1172/JCI45816

Manegold C, Dingemans AC, Gray JE, Nakagawa K, Nicolson M, Peters S, Reck M, Wu YL, Brustugun OT, Crino L, Felip E, Fennell D, Garrido P, Huber RM, Marabelle A, Moniuszko M, Mornex F, Novello S, Papotti M, Perol M, Smit EF, Syrigos K, van Meerbeeck JP, van Zandwijk N, Chih-Hsin Yang J, Zhou C, Vokes E (2017) The potential of combined immunotherapy and antiangiogenesis for the synergistic treatment of advanced NSCLC. J Thorac Oncol 12(2):194–207. doi:10.1016/j.jtho.2016.10.003

Mantovani A, Marchesi F, Malesci A, Laghi L, Allavena P (2017) Tumour-associated macrophages as treatment targets in oncology. Nat Rev Clin Oncol. doi:10.1038/nrclinonc.2016.217

Manzi M, Bacigalupo ML, Carabias P, Elola MT, Wolfenstein-Todel C, Rabinovich GA, Espelt MV, Troncoso MF (2016) Galectin-1 controls the proliferation and migration of liver

sinusoidal endothelial cells and their interaction with hepatocarcinoma cells. J Cell Physiol 231 (7):1522–1533. doi:10.1002/jcp.25244

Markowska AI, Liu FT, Panjwani N (2010) Galectin-3 is an important mediator of VEGF- and bFGF-mediated angiogenic response. J Exp Med 207(9):1981–1993. doi:10.1084/jem.20090121

Markowska AI, Jefferies KC, Panjwani N (2011) Galectin-3 protein modulates cell surface expression and activation of vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2 in human endothelial cells. J Biol Chem 286(34):29913–29921. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.226423

Marone G, Varricchi G, Loffredo S, Granata F (2016) Mast cells and basophils in inflammatory and tumor angiogenesis and lymphangiogenesis. Eur J Pharmacol 778:146–151. doi:10.1016/j.ejphar.2015.03.088

Martinez-Bosch N, Fernandez-Barrena MG, Moreno M, Ortiz-Zapater E, Munne-Collado J, Iglesias M, Andre S, Gabius HJ, Hwang RF, Poirier F, Navas C, Guerra C, Fernandez-Zapico ME, Navarro P (2014) Galectin-1 drives pancreatic carcinogenesis through stroma remodeling and Hedgehog signaling activation. Cancer Res 74(13):3512–3524. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-13-3013

Mathieu V, de Lassalle EM, Toelen J, Mohr T, Bellahcene A, Van Goietsenoven G, Verschuere T, Bouzin C, Debyser Z, De Vleeschouwer S, Van Gool S, Poirier F, Castronovo V, Kiss R, Feron O (2012) Galectin-1 in melanoma biology and related neo-angiogenesis processes. J Invest Dermatol 132(9):2245–2254. doi:10.1038/jid.2012.142

Melero I, Berman DM, Aznar MA, Korman AJ, Perez Gracia JL, Haanen J (2015) Evolving synergistic combinations of targeted immunotherapies to combat cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 15 (8):457–472. doi:10.1038/nrc3973

Mendez-Huergo SP, Blidner AG, Rabinovich GA (2017) Galectins: emerging regulatory checkpoints linking tumor immunity and angiogenesis. Curr Opin Immunol 45:8–15. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2016.12.003

Mimura K, Kono K, Takahashi A, Kawaguchi Y, Fujii H (2007) Vascular endothelial growth factor inhibits the function of human mature dendritic cells mediated by VEGF receptor-2. Cancer Immunol Immunother 56(6):761–770. doi:10.1007/s00262-006-0234-7

Mizukami Y, Jo WS, Duerr EM, Gala M, Li J, Zhang X, Zimmer MA, Iliopoulos O, Zukerberg LR, Kohgo Y, Lynch MP, Rueda BR, Chung DC (2005) Induction of interleukin-8 preserves the angiogenic response in HIF-1alpha-deficient colon cancer cells. Nat Med 11(9):992–997. doi:10.1038/nm1294

Mosser DM, Edwards JP (2008) Exploring the full spectrum of macrophage activation. Nat Rev Immunol 8(12):958–969. doi:10.1038/nri2448

Motz GT, Coukos G (2011) The parallel lives of angiogenesis and immunosuppression: cancer and other tales. Nat Rev Immunol 11(10):702–711. doi:10.1038/nri3064

Motz GT, Coukos G (2013) Deciphering and reversing tumor immune suppression. Immunity 39 (1):61–73. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2013.07.005

Murdoch C, Giannoudis A, Lewis CE (2004) Mechanisms regulating the recruitment of macrophages into hypoxic areas of tumors and other ischemic tissues. Blood 104 (8):2224–2234. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-03-1109

Murdoch C, Muthana M, Coffelt SB, Lewis CE (2008) The role of myeloid cells in the promotion of tumour angiogenesis. Nat Rev Cancer 8(8):618–631. doi:10.1038/nrc2444

Myszczyszyn A, Czarnecka AM, Matak D, Szymanski L, Lian F, Kornakiewicz A, Bartnik E, Kukwa W, Kieda C, Szczylik C (2015) The role of hypoxia and cancer stem cells in renal cell carcinoma pathogenesis. Stem Cell Rev 11(6):919–943. doi:10.1007/s12015-015-9611-y

Nabi IR, Shankar J, Dennis JW (2015) The galectin lattice at a glance. J Cell Sci 128 (13):2213–2219. doi:10.1242/jcs.151159

Nangia-Makker P, Honjo Y, Sarvis R, Akahani S, Hogan V, Pienta KJ, Raz A (2000) Galectin-3 induces endothelial cell morphogenesis and angiogenesis. Am J Pathol 156(3):899–909. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)64959-0

Noman MZ, Desantis G, Janji B, Hasmim M, Karray S, Dessen P, Bronte V, Chouaib S (2014) PD-L1 is a novel direct target of HIF-1alpha, and its blockade under hypoxia enhanced MDSC-mediated T cell activation. J Exp Med 211(5):781–790. doi:10.1084/jem.20131916

Noy R, Pollard JW (2014) Tumor-associated macrophages: from mechanisms to therapy. Immunity 41(1):49–61. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.010

Osada T, Chong G, Tansik R, Hong T, Spector N, Kumar R, Hurwitz HI, Dev I, Nixon AB, Lyerly HK, Clay T, Morse MA (2008) The effect of anti-VEGF therapy on immature myeloid cell and dendritic cells in cancer patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother 57(8):1115–1124. doi:10.1007/s00262-007-0441-x

Paez-Ribes M, Allen E, Hudock J, Takeda T, Okuyama H, Vinals F, Inoue M, Bergers G, Hanahan D, Casanovas O (2009) Antiangiogenic therapy elicits malignant progression of tumors to increased local invasion and distant metastasis. Cancer Cell 15(3):220–231. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2009.01.027

Pan F, Barbi J, Pardoll DM (2012) Hypoxia-inducible factor 1: a link between metabolism and T cell differentiation and a potential therapeutic target. Oncoimmunology 1(4):510–515

Pardoll DM (2012) The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):252–264. doi:10.1038/nrc3239

Piao Y, Liang J, Holmes L, Zurita AJ, Henry V, Heymach JV, de Groot JF (2012) Glioblastoma resistance to anti-VEGF therapy is associated with myeloid cell infiltration, stem cell accumulation, and a mesenchymal phenotype. Neuro-Oncology 14(11):1379–1392. doi:10.1093/neuonc/nos158

Piccolo E, Tinari N, Semeraro D, Traini S, Fichera I, Cumashi A, La Sorda R, Spinella F, Bagnato A, Lattanzio R, D'Egidio M, Di Risio A, Stampolidis P, Piantelli M, Natoli C, Ullrich A, Iacobelli S (2013) LGALS3BP, lectin galactoside-binding soluble 3 binding protein, induces vascular endothelial growth factor in human breast cancer cells and promotes angiogenesis. J Mol Med (Berlin) 91(1):83–94. doi:10.1007/s00109-012-0936-6

Platonova S, Cherfils-Vicini J, Damotte D, Crozet L, Vieillard V, Validire P, Andre P, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Alifano M, Regnard JF, Fridman WH, Sautes-Fridman C, Cremer I (2011) Profound coordinated alterations of intratumoral NK cell phenotype and function in lung carcinoma. Cancer Res 71(16):5412–5422. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-4179

Potente M, Gerhardt H, Carmeliet P (2011) Basic and therapeutic aspects of angiogenesis. Cell 146(6):873–887. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2011.08.039

Priceman SJ, Sung JL, Shaposhnik Z, Burton JB, Torres-Collado AX, Moughon DL, Johnson M, Lusis AJ, Cohen DA, Iruela-Arispe ML, Wu L (2010) Targeting distinct tumor-infiltrating myeloid cells by inhibiting CSF-1 receptor: combating tumor evasion of antiangiogenic therapy. Blood 115(7):1461–1471. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-08-237412

Quail DF, Joyce JA (2013) Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med 19(11):1423–1437. doi:10.1038/nm.3394

Rabinovich GA, Conejo-Garcia JR (2016) Shaping the immune landscape in cancer by galectin-driven regulatory pathways. J Mol Biol 428(16):3266–3281. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2016.03.021

Rabinovich GA, Croci DO (2012) Regulatory circuits mediated by lectin-glycan interactions in autoimmunity and cancer. Immunity 36(3):322–335. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.03.004

Rabinovich G, Castagna L, Landa C, Riera CM, Sotomayor C (1996) Regulated expression of a 16-kd galectin-like protein in activated rat macrophages. J Leukoc Biol 59(3):363–370

Rabinovich GA, Gabrilovich D, Sotomayor EM (2007) Immunosuppressive strategies that are mediated by tumor cells. Annu Rev Immunol 25:267–296. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141609

Rangachari M, Zhu C, Sakuishi K, Xiao S, Karman J, Chen A, Angin M, Wakeham A, Greenfield EA, Sobel RA, Okada H, McKinnon PJ, Mak TW, Addo MM, Anderson AC, Kuchroo VK (2012) Bat3 promotes T cell responses and autoimmunity by repressing Tim-3-mediated cell death and exhaustion. Nat Med 18(9):1394–1400. doi:10.1038/nm.2871

Rolny C, Mazzone M, Tugues S, Laoui D, Johansson I, Coulon C, Squadrito ML, Segura I, Li X, Knevels E, Costa S, Vinckier S, Dresselaer T, Akerud P, De Mol M, Salomaki H, Phillipson M,

Wyns S, Larsson E, Buysschaert I, Botling J, Himmelreich U, Van Ginderachter JA, De Palma M, Dewerchin M, Claesson-Welsh L, Carmeliet P (2011) HRG inhibits tumor growth and metastasis by inducing macrophage polarization and vessel normalization through downregulation of PlGF. Cancer Cell 19(1):31–44. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2010.11.009

Rubinstein N, Alvarez M, Zwirner NW, Toscano MA, Ilarregui JM, Bravo A, Mordoh J, Fainboim L, Podhajcer OL, Rabinovich GA (2004) Targeted inhibition of galectin-1 gene expression in tumor cells results in heightened T cell-mediated rejection; a potential mechanism of tumor-immune privilege. Cancer Cell 5(3):241–251

Rutkowski MR, Stephen TL, Svoronos N, Allegrezza MJ, Tesone AJ, Perales-Puchalt A, Brencicova E, Escovar-Fadul X, Nguyen JM, Cadungog MG, Zhang R, Salatino M, Tchou J, Rabinovich GA, Conejo-Garcia JR (2015) Microbially driven TLR5-dependent signaling governs distal malignant progression through tumor-promoting inflammation. Cancer Cell 27 (1):27–40. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2014.11.009

Sato S, Nieminen J (2004) Seeing strangers or announcing "danger": galectin-3 in two models of innate immunity. Glycoconj J 19(7–9):583–591. doi:10.1023/B:GLYC.0000014089.17121.cc

Semenza GL (2017) Hypoxia-inducible factors: coupling glucose metabolism and redox regulation with induction of the breast cancer stem cell phenotype. EMBO J 36(3):252–259. doi:10.15252/embj.201695204

Sharma P, Hu-Lieskovan S, Wargo JA, Ribas A (2017) Primary, adaptive, and acquired resistance to cancer immunotherapy. Cell 168(4):707–723. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.01.017

Shehade H, Acolty V, Moser M, Oldenhove G (2015) Cutting edge: hypoxia-inducible factor 1 negatively regulates Th1 function. J Immunol 195(4):1372–1376. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1402552

Shi LZ, Wang R, Huang G, Vogel P, Neale G, Green DR, Chi H (2011) HIF1alpha-dependent glycolytic pathway orchestrates a metabolic checkpoint for the differentiation of TH17 and Treg cells. J Exp Med 208(7):1367–1376. doi:10.1084/jem.20110278

Shojaei F, Wu X, Malik AK, Zhong C, Baldwin ME, Schanz S, Fuh G, Gerber HP, Ferrara N (2007a) Tumor refractoriness to anti-VEGF treatment is mediated by CD11b+Gr1+ myeloid cells. Nat Biotechnol 25(8):911–920. doi:10.1038/nbt1323

Shojaei F, Wu X, Zhong C, Yu L, Liang XH, Yao J, Blanchard D, Bais C, Peale FV, van Bruggen N, Ho C, Ross J, Tan M, Carano RA, Meng YG, Ferrara N (2007b) Bv8 regulates myeloid-cell-dependent tumour angiogenesis. Nature 450(7171):825–831. doi:10.1038/nature06348

Shojaei F, Singh M, Thompson JD, Ferrara N (2008) Role of Bv8 in neutrophil-dependent angiogenesis in a transgenic model of cancer progression. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105 (7):2640–2645. doi:10.1073/pnas.0712185105

Shojaei F, Wu X, Qu X, Kowanetz M, Yu L, Tan M, Meng YG, Ferrara N (2009) G-CSF-initiated myeloid cell mobilization and angiogenesis mediate tumor refractoriness to anti-VEGF therapy in mouse models. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(16):6742–6747. doi:10.1073/pnas.0902280106

Shojaei F, Lee JH, Simmons BH, Wong A, Esparza CO, Plumlee PA, Feng J, Stewart AE, Hu-Lowe DD, Christensen JG (2010) HGF/c-Met acts as an alternative angiogenic pathway in sunitinib-resistant tumors. Cancer Res 70(24):10090–10100. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-0489

Shrestha B, Hashiguchi T, Ito T, Miura N, Takenouchi K, Oyama Y, Kawahara K, Tancharoen S, Ki IY, Arimura N, Yoshinaga N, Noma S, Shrestha C, Nitanda T, Kitajima S, Arimura K, Sato M, Sakamoto T, Maruyama I (2010) B cell-derived vascular endothelial growth factor A promotes lymphangiogenesis and high endothelial venule expansion in lymph nodes. J Immunol 184(9):4819–4826. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0903063

Siveen KS, Kuttan G (2009) Role of macrophages in tumour progression. Immunol Lett 123 (2):97–102. doi:10.1016/j.imlet.2009.02.011

Song N, Huang Y, Shi H, Yuan S, Ding Y, Song X, Fu Y, Luo Y (2009) Overexpression of platelet-derived growth factor-BB increases tumor pericyte content via stromal-derived factor-1alpha/CXCR4 axis. Cancer Res 69(15):6057–6064. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-2007

Soucek L, Lawlor ER, Soto D, Shchors K, Swigart LB, Evan GI (2007) Mast cells are required for angiogenesis and macroscopic expansion of Myc-induced pancreatic islet tumors. Nat Med 13 (10):1211–1218. doi:10.1038/nm1649

Sozzani S, Rusnati M, Riboldi E, Mitola S, Presta M (2007) Dendritic cell-endothelial cell cross-talk in angiogenesis. Trends Immunol 28(9):385–392. doi:10.1016/j.it.2007.07.006

Stockmann C, Schadendorf D, Klose R, Helfrich I (2014) The impact of the immune system on tumor: angiogenesis and vascular remodeling. Front Oncol 4:69. doi:10.3389/fonc.2014.00069

Tan C, Cruet-Hennequart S, Troussard A, Fazli L, Costello P, Sutton K, Wheeler J, Gleave M, Sanghera J, Dedhar S (2004) Regulation of tumor angiogenesis by integrin-linked kinase (ILK). Cancer Cell 5(1):79–90

Tang D, Gao J, Wang S, Ye N, Chong Y, Huang Y, Wang J, Li B, Yin W, Wang D (2016) Cancer-associated fibroblasts promote angiogenesis in gastric cancer through galectin-1 expression. Tumour Biol 37(2):1889–1899. doi:10.1007/s13277-015-3942-9

von Tell D, Armulik A, Betsholtz C (2006) Pericytes and vascular stability. Exp Cell Res 312 (5):623–629. doi:10.1016/j.yexcr.2005.10.019

Tesone AJ, Rutkowski MR, Brencicova E, Svoronos N, Perales-Puchalt A, Stephen TL, Allegrezza MJ, Payne KK, Nguyen JM, Wickramasinghe J, Tchou J, Borowsky ME, Rabinovich GA, Kossenkov AV, Conejo-Garcia JR (2016) Satb1 overexpression drives tumor-promoting activities in cancer-associated dendritic cells. Cell Rep 14(7):1774–1786. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2016.01.056

Thiemann S, Baum LG (2016) Galectins and immune responses-just how do they do those things they do? Annu Rev Immunol 34:243–264. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-041015-055402

Thijssen VL, Postel R, Brandwijk RJ, Dings RP, Nesmelova I, Satijn S, Verhofstad N, Nakabeppu Y, Baum LG, Bakkers J, Mayo KH, Poirier F, Griffioen AW (2006) Galectin-1 is essential in tumor angiogenesis and is a target for antiangiogenesis therapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(43):15975–15980. doi:10.1073/pnas.0603883103

Thijssen VL, Barkan B, Shoji H, Aries IM, Mathieu V, Deltour L, Hackeng TM, Kiss R, Kloog Y, Poirier F, Griffioen AW (2010) Tumor cells secrete galectin-1 to enhance endothelial cell activity. Cancer Res 70(15):6216–6224. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-4150

Thijssen VL, Rabinovich GA, Griffioen AW (2013) Vascular galectins: regulators of tumor progression and targets for cancer therapy. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 24(6):547–558. doi:10.1016/j.cytogfr.2013.07.003

Triner D, Shah YM (2016) Hypoxia-inducible factors: a central link between inflammation and cancer. J Clin Invest 126(10):3689–3698. doi:10.1172/JCI84430

Verschuere T, Toelen J, Maes W, Poirier F, Boon L, Tousseyn T, Mathivet T, Gerhardt H, Mathieu V, Kiss R, Lefranc F, Van Gool SW, De Vleeschouwer S (2014) Glioma-derived galectin-1 regulates innate and adaptive antitumor immunity. Int J Cancer 134(4):873–884. doi:10.1002/ijc.28426

Voron T, Colussi O, Marcheteau E, Pernot S, Nizard M, Pointet AL, Latreche S, Bergaya S, Benhamouda N, Tanchot C, Stockmann C, Combe P, Berger A, Zinzindohoue F, Yagita H, Tartour E, Taieb J, Terme M (2015) VEGF-A modulates expression of inhibitory checkpoints on CD8+ T cells in tumors. J Exp Med 212(2):139–148. doi:10.1084/jem.20140559

Wallin JJ, Bendell JC, Funke R, Sznol M, Korski K, Jones S, Hernandez G, Mier J, He X, Hodi FS, Denker M, Leveque V, Canamero M, Babitski G, Koeppen H, Ziai J, Sharma N, Gaire F, Chen DS, Waterkamp D, Hegde PS, McDermott DF (2016) Atezolizumab in combination with bevacizumab enhances antigen-specific T-cell migration in metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Nat Commun 7:12624. doi:10.1038/ncomms12624

Wang F, Lv P, Gu Y, Li L, Ge X, Guo G (2017) Galectin-1 knockdown improves drug sensitivity of breast cancer by reducing P-glycoprotein expression through inhibiting the Raf-1/AP-1 signaling pathway. Oncotarget. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.15341

Wei J, Wu A, Kong LY, Wang Y, Fuller G, Fokt I, Melillo G, Priebe W, Heimberger AB (2011) Hypoxia potentiates glioma-mediated immunosuppression. PLoS One 6(1):e16195. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0016195

Winkler EA, Bell RD, Zlokovic BV (2011) Central nervous system pericytes in health and disease. Nat Neurosci 14(11):1398–1405. doi:10.1038/nn.2946

Wu X, Giobbie-Hurder A, Liao X, Lawrence D, McDermott D, Zhou J, Rodig S, Hodi FS (2016) VEGF neutralization plus CTLA-4 blockade alters soluble and cellular factors associated with enhancing lymphocyte infiltration and humoral recognition in melanoma. Cancer Immunol Res 4(10):858–868. doi:10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-16-0084

Yang L, DeBusk LM, Fukuda K, Fingleton B, Green-Jarvis B, Shyr Y, Matrisian LM, Carbone DP, Lin PC (2004) Expansion of myeloid immune suppressor Gr+CD11b+ cells in tumor-bearing host directly promotes tumor angiogenesis. Cancer Cell 6(4):409–421. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2004.08.031

Yang M, Ma C, Liu S, Shao Q, Gao W, Song B, Sun J, Xie Q, Zhang Y, Feng A, Liu Y, Hu W, Qu X (2010) HIF-dependent induction of adenosine receptor A2b skews human dendritic cells to a Th2-stimulating phenotype under hypoxia. Immunol Cell Biol 88(2):165–171. doi:10.1038/icb.2009.77

Yang C, Lee H, Pal S, Jove V, Deng J, Zhang W, Hoon DS, Wakabayashi M, Forman S, Yu H (2013) B cells promote tumor progression via STAT3 regulated-angiogenesis. PLoS One 8(5):e64159. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0064159

Yasuda S, Sho M, Yamato I, Yoshiji H, Wakatsuki K, Nishiwada S, Yagita H, Nakajima Y (2013) Simultaneous blockade of programmed death 1 and vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2 (VEGFR2) induces synergistic anti-tumour effect in vivo. Clin Exp Immunol 172(3):500–506. doi:10.1111/cei.12069

Zhao XY, Chen TT, Xia L, Guo M, Xu Y, Yue F, Jiang Y, Chen GQ, Zhao KW (2010) Hypoxia inducible factor-1 mediates expression of galectin-1: the potential role in migration/invasion of colorectal cancer cells. Carcinogenesis 31(8):1367–1375. doi:10.1093/carcin/bgq116

Zhu C, Anderson AC, Schubart A, Xiong H, Imitola J, Khoury SJ, Zheng XX, Strom TB, Kuchroo VK (2005) The Tim-3 ligand galectin-9 negatively regulates T helper type 1 immunity. Nat Immunol 6(12):1245–1252. doi:10.1038/ni1271

Zucchetti M, Bonezzi K, Frapolli R, Sala F, Borsotti P, Zangarini M, Cvitkovic E, Noel K, Ubezio P, Giavazzi R, D'Incalci M, Taraboletti G (2013) Pharmacokinetics and antineoplastic activity of galectin-1-targeting OTX008 in combination with sunitinib. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 72(4):879–887. doi:10.1007/s00280-013-2270-2

Mechanisms of Resistance to Target Therapies in Non-small Cell Lung Cancer

Francesco Facchinetti, Claudia Proto, Roberta Minari, Marina Garassino, and Marcello Tiseo

Contents

1 Introduction 64
2 Resistance Mechanisms to EGFR-Driven NSCLC 66
2.1 Resistance to First- and Second-Generation EGFR-TKIs 67
2.2 Resistance to Third-Generation EGFR-TKIs 72
3 Resistance Mechanisms to ALK- and ROS1-Driven NSCLC 74
3.1 Mechanisms of Crizotinib Resistance 74
3.2 Resistance to Next-Generation ALK and ROS1 Inhibitors 78
4 Resistance Mechanisms to Targeted Drugs in NSCLC Driven by Other Oncogenes 79
4.1 MET 79
4.2 BRAF 79
4.3 RET 80
5 Conclusions 80
References 81

Abstract

Targeted therapies are revolutionizing the treatment of advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). The discovery of key oncogenic events mainly in lung adenocarcinoma, like *EGFR* mutations or *ALK* rearrangements, has changed the treatment landscape while improving the prognosis of lung cancer patients. Inevitably, virtually all patients initially treated with targeted therapies develop resistance because of the emergence of an insensitive cellular population, selected by pharmacologic pressure. Diverse mechanisms of resistance, in

F. Facchinetti • R. Minari • M. Tiseo (✉)
Medical Oncology Unit, University Hospital of Parma, Via Gramsci, 14, Parma 43126, Italy
e-mail: mtiseo@ao.pr.it

C. Proto • M. Garassino
Thoracic Oncology Unit, Department of Medical Oncology 1, Fondazione IRCCS, Istituto Nazionale dei Tumori, Milan, Italy

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_16

particular to EGFR, ALK and ROS1 tyrosine-kinase inhibitors (TKIs), have now been discovered and may be classified in three different groups: (1) alterations in the target (such as *EGFR* T790M and *ALK* or *ROS1* mutations); (2) activation of alternative pathways (i.e. *MET* amplification, *KRAS* mutations); (3) phenotype transformation (to small cell lung cancer, epithelial–mesenchymal transition). These basic mechanisms are informing the development of novel therapeutic strategies to overcome resistance in the clinic. Novel-generation molecules include osimertinib, for EGFR-T790M-positive patients, and new ALK-TKIs. Nevertheless, the possible concomitant presence of multiple resistance mechanisms, as well as their heterogeneity among cells and disease localizations, makes research in this field particularly arduous. In this chapter, available evidence and perspectives concerning precise mechanisms of escape to pharmacological inhibition in *oncogene-addicted* NSCLC are reported for single targets, including but not limited to EGFR and ALK.

Keywords
ALK • EGFR • NSCLC • Resistance mechanisms • ROS-1 • T790M

1 Introduction

Lung cancers currently figure among the most frequent tumor diagnoses and are the most relevant in terms of mortality worldwide (Siegel et al. 2016).

Before the year 2000 the dichotomy between small cell and non-small cell lung cancer (SCLC and NSCLC, respectively) was sufficient to address treatment strategies. Further histologic definition within NSCLC (squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma) was therefore recognized as clinically meaningful (Scagliotti et al. 2008). Since the last decades, molecular sub-typing of NSCLC (with an almost exclusive regard to adenocarcinoma) is providing a drastic refinement in the detection of alterations suitable of specific inhibition, generating a dramatic evolution in patients' management. Such aberrations (whose incidence in western population is showed in Fig. 1), in general mutually exclusive, normally represent the very funding oncogenic event (Gainor et al. 2013). The targeting of such altered tyrosine-kinase (TK) receptors by means of specific inhibitors (TKIs, actively competing against ATP-binding) usually generates extremely rapid and profound tumor responses, defining thus far the scenario of *oncogene addiction* (Lynch et al. 2004; Paez et al. 2004; Kwak et al. 2010). In this field, the superiority of targeted agents over standard chemotherapy, in the advanced setting, is at this point evident (Mok et al. 2009; Solomon et al. 2014).

Albeit targeted therapies are revolutionizing the treatment of advanced NSCLC, sooner or later resistance appears in virtually every patient. Molecular treatment exhaustion denotes the emergence of a cellular population insensitive and selected by the pharmacologic pressure. In parallel to the crucial recognition of specific mechanisms on the diagnostic samples, the detection of molecular reasons explaining treatment resistance at the moment of disease progression, obtaining

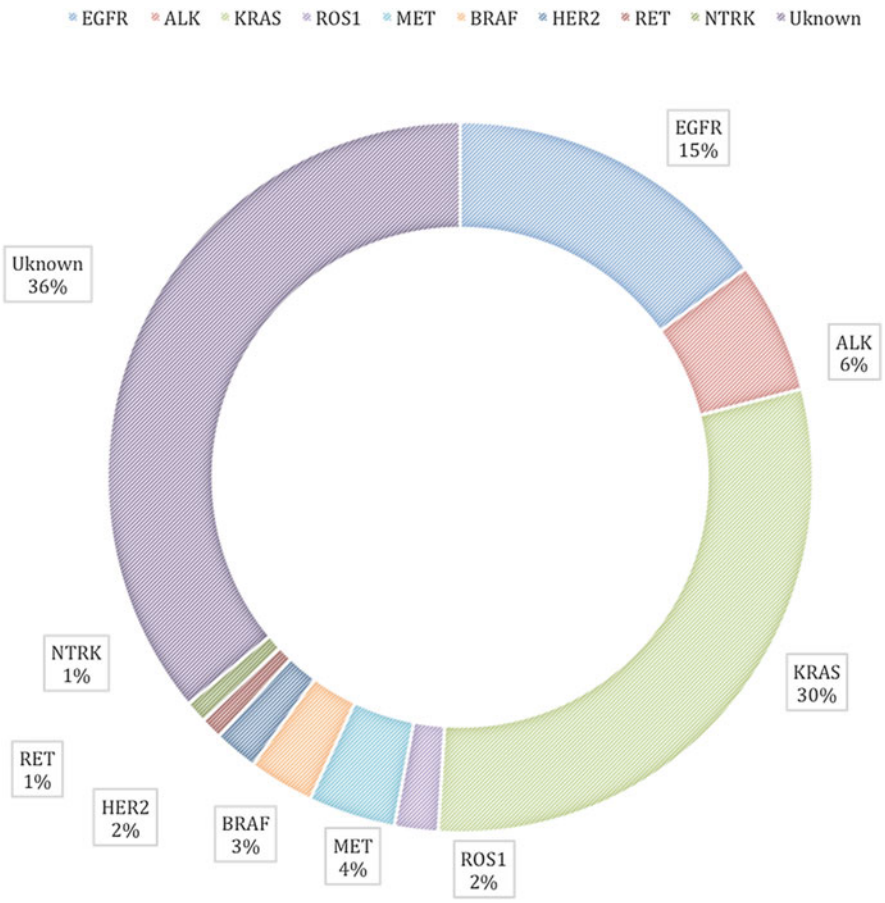


Fig. 1 Distribution of molecular aberrations responsible for *oncogene addiction* in lung adenocarcinoma affecting Western populations

of novel tumor material (*re-biopsy*) harbours a similar pivotal importance. The role of re-biopsies in the clinical setting is currently gaining more and more relevance due to the development of novel-generations Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR)-TKIs, like osimertinib (AZD9291), active against T790M *EGFR* mutation, whose emergence is the most common mechanism of resistance to first-and second-generation anti-EGFR compounds (Kobayashi et al. 2005; Cross et al. 2014; Mok et al. 2016) (see next paragraphs).

Patterns of resistance to tailored therapies are shared among different activating aberration, and lessons regarding targets rare in lung cancers can be driven from other tumors. The general molecular ways lung cancer cells find to escape directed targeting are resumed in Table 1. The possible concomitant presence of multiple mechanisms, as well as their heterogeneity among cells and disease localizations (Suda et al. 2016; Hata et al. 2015), makes research in this field particularly

Table 1 Schematic description of the main resistance mechanisms to targeted treatments in non-small cell lung cancer

Mechanisms	Examples	Oncogene
Alterations in the target	*EGFR* T790M mutations	*EGFR*
	ALK TKD mutations – *ALK* amplification	*ALK*
Activation of bypass pathways	*MET* or *HER2* amplification	*EGFR*
	EGFR hyperactivation	*ALK*
Morpho-phenotypic evolutions	EMT and transformation from ADC to SCLC	Both

TKD tyrosine kinase domain, *EMT* epithelial–mesenchymal transition, *ADC* adenocarcinoma, *SCLC* small cell lung cancer

arduous. Available evidence and perspectives concerning precise mechanisms of escape to pharmacological inhibition in *oncogene-addicted* NSCLC are reported for single targets in the next paragraphs.

2 Resistance Mechanisms to EGFR-Driven NSCLC

Mutations in the *EGFR* gene are the most frequent oncogenic drivers in NSCLC, reported in approximately 10–15% of Caucasian NSCLC patients (Rosell et al. 2009) and 30–50% of Asians ones (Mok et al. 2009). The development of EGFR-TKIs, such as erlotinib, gefitinib (belonging to the first generation) and afatinib (second generation), shaped a great shift in the therapeutic management of *EGFR*-mutated NSCLC patients resulting in improved response rate (RR), progression free survival (PFS) and quality of life compared to first-line platinum-based chemotherapy (Mok et al. 2009; Rosell et al. 2012; Yang et al. 2015).

Unfortunately, prognosis remains unfavourable because of the occurrence of treatment resistance.

However, the identification of some mechanisms of resistance improved the therapeutic chances of these patients. In particular, the point mutation p.Thr790Met (T790M) occurring in *EGFR* exon 20 is responsible of resistance in about 50–60% of the patients when progression occurs (Sequist et al. 2011). Recently, the third-generation TKI osimertinib improved outcomes in patients harbouring this new mutation (Mok et al. 2016). Some other molecular resistance mechanisms have already been identified, but other information are needed to better understand and effectively overcome resistance to EGFR-TKIs in the remaining 40–50% lacking T790M mutation. Although exciting survival data and response rates have been registered in patients treated with osimertinib, acquired resistance unfortunately still occurs also during this therapy (Minari et al. 2016). Here, we will review principle mechanisms of resistance described during NSCLC treatment with both first-/second- and third-generation EGFR-TKIs.

2.1 Resistance to First- and Second-Generation EGFR-TKIs

Today erlotinib and gefitinib, together with the second-generation afatinib, are recognized as the standard first-line therapy in NSCLC patients with activating *EGFR* mutations (Mok et al. 2009; Rosell et al. 2012; Yang et al. 2015). Despite these important results, some patients with confirmed mutations in the EGFR-TK domain do not respond to EGFR-TKIs at all (de novo/*intrinsic resistance*). The remaining *EGFR*-mutated patients, after favourable and prolonged responses, inevitably exhibit disease progression (*acquired resistance*), usually after 10–14 months of treatment. Although the large majority of evidence concerns tumor evasion of targeted treatments represented by erlotinib and gefitinib, afatinib exhaustion seems to share the same molecular mechanisms (Campo et al. 2016). Several mechanisms of resistance have been identified and they may be classified in three different groups, as indicated in the introduction: (1) *EGFR* mutations; (2) activation of alternative pathways; (3) phenotype transformation (Table 1 and Fig. 2).

2.1.1 Preclinical Evidence and Clinical Relevance of Resistance Mechanisms

Mechanisms of primary resistance are still not fully understood, but several cases of de novo inefficacy of EGFR-TKIs are the consequence of the presence of

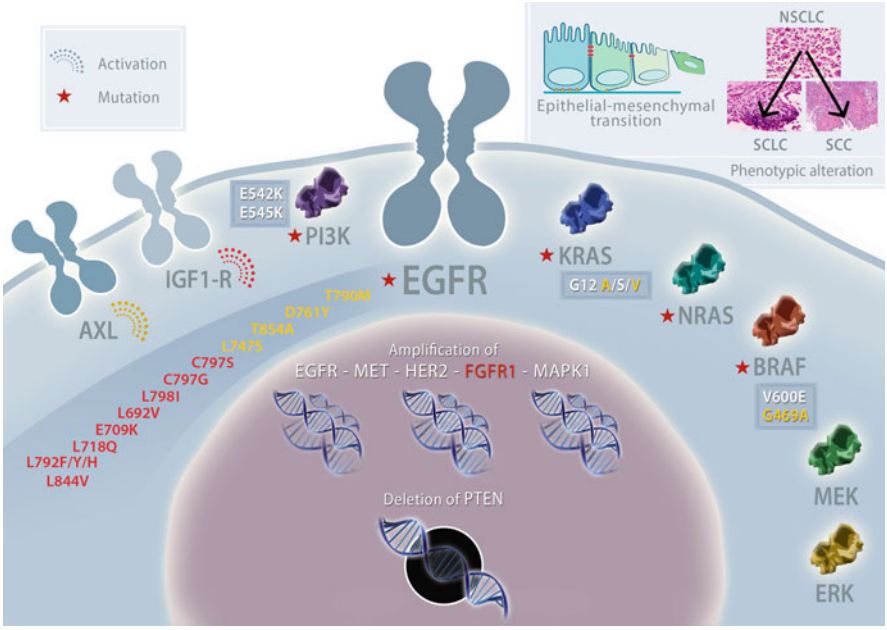


Fig. 2 Mechanisms of resistance to first/second (*yellow*) and third (*red*)-generation EGFR-TKIs; shared mechanisms among the three TKI generations are depicted in *white*. *NSCLC* non-small cell lung cancer, *SCLC* small cell lung cancer, *SCC* squamous cell carcinoma

non-sensitive *EGFR* mutations. Exon 20 insertions, which represent the 1–10% of the total number of *EGFR* mutations, adding residues at the N-lobe of EGFR (M766 to C775) in particular in the C-helix (A767 to C775), frequently reduce affinity for EGFR-TKIs (Yasuda et al. 2013). New sequencing technologies are able to detect cases of concomitant (double or multiple) *EGFR* mutations. Patients with a combination of typical and atypical mutations reported less favourable outcomes compared to patients with a single typical mutation (Wu et al. 2011). Also the coexistence of different driver alterations in other genes, such as *ALK* rearrangements and *KRAS* mutations, resulted associated with worse prognosis after EGFR-TKI treatment in *EGFR*-mutated NSCLC (Ulivi et al. 2016).

The most common mechanism of resistance is the development of acquired T790M *EGFR* gene mutation (Sequist et al. 2011), a secondary point mutation in exon 20, engendering the substitution of methionine (T) for threonine (M) at codon position 790, that sterically prevents the EGFR-TKI binding in the TK domain (TKD), allowing the ATP-mediated activation of the receptor (Kobayashi et al. 2005). Nevertheless, T790M mutation has been also identified as a de novo mutation (Inukai et al. 2006). In this case of primary resistance, it is predictive for poor survival outcomes under EGFR-TKI treatment (Su et al. 2012). Moreover, the T790M impact on responsiveness to EGFR-TKI therapy may depend on the proportion of pre-treatment EGFR T790M-positive clones (Hata et al. 2016).

Third-generation EGFR-mutant selective inhibitors (such as osimertinib and rociletinib) have been developed for patients whose cancers acquire the T790M mutation. These third-generation EGFR-TKIs realize selective inhibition of activating as well as T790M alterations, by means of an irreversible covalent binding to the target while sparing wild-type EGFR (Cross et al. 2014), with important efficacy results and reduced toxic effects (Mok et al. 2016; Jänne et al. 2015; Sequist et al. 2015).

Other rare resistance *EGFR* point mutations including D761Y, T854A and L747S have been reported in less than 10% of mutated NSCLC patients. The mechanism underlying resistance conferred by these mutations is still unclear (Nguyen et al. 2009).

The activation of alternative pathways is now recognized as a different mechanism of resistance (Niederst and Engelman, 2013; Yu et al. 2013a).

The *MET* gene amplification is the second most common mechanisms of acquired resistance, affecting about 5–20% of NSCLC patients during EGFR-TKI treatment, irrespective of the T790M mutation status (Sequist et al. 2011; Engelman et al. 2007). *MET* amplification, accompanied by HGF (MET ligand) autocrine signalling, drives resistance to EGFR-TKIs acting upon molecular elements regulating critical intracellular pathways (Engelman et al. 2007; Turke et al. 2010). MET inhibition has proven to be effective in cell lines with *MET* gene amplification and many preclinical and clinical data demonstrate that contemporary inhibition of MET and EGFR may be a strategy to overcoming resistance (Engelman et al. 2007; Bahcall et al. 2016; Gainor et al. 2016a).

HER2 amplification is a rare event in lung adenocarcinoma at diagnosis, accounting for about 1–2% of cases, but it has been reported in up to 13% of

NSCLC with acquired resistance to EGFR-TKIs (Yu et al. 2013a; Takezawa et al. 2012), whereas resulting absent in other series (Sequist et al. 2011). Mutated EGFR has the tendency to heterodimerize with HER2, the resulting heterodimers being resistant to degradation (Takezawa et al. 2012). Therefore, HER2 heterodimerization could support EGFR-TKIs resistance in presence of both T790M mutation and *HER2* amplification itself as acquired mechanisms of drug exhaustion.

Boosting of cell signalling pathways due to activation of BRAF, PIK3CA and AXL has been proposed as mechanism of drug resistance in cancer cells and in *EGFR*-mutated NSCLC patients, in which their emergence can be overall detected in up to 20–25% of cases (Sequist et al. 2011; Ohashi et al. 2012; Wang et al. 2014; Zhang et al. 2012).

A third resistance mechanism is the phenotypic transformation of lung cancer cells. Histological transformation in SCLC has been observed after the development of acquired resistance to EGFR-TKI in about 3–14% of patients (Sequist et al. 2011; Yu et al. 2013a). The mechanism underlying this histological modification is still not completely known: minor pre-existent cells under the selection pressure of EGFR-TKIs could originate SCLC cells or adenocarcinoma cells could transdifferentiate in SCLC cells (Oser et al. 2015); alternatively, SCLC cells could develop from multi-potent pre-existing stem cells (Oser et al. 2015). Whatever the funding cellular evolution, the loss of Rb protein seems a common and necessary event for this kind of transformation (Niederst et al. 2015a).

Loss of E-cadherin expression and upregulation of mesenchymal proteins such as vimentin, fibronectin and N-cadherin are the main features of epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT). In the EMT setting, AXL upregulation and alterations in the Hedgehog pathway have been recently recognized as mechanisms of resistance to targeted agents in EGFR-mutated NSCLC (Zhang et al. 2012; Thomson et al. 2005).

Moreover, transformation from adenocarcinomas to squamous cell carcinomas during the administration of anti-EGFR molecules has been reported as a mechanism of acquired drug resistance (Haratani et al. 2016).

Anyway, the cause of resistance remains still unknown in 18–30% of NSCLC patients resistant to anti-EGFR targeted therapy (Sequist et al. 2011; Yu et al. 2013a).

2.1.2 Detection of T790M Mutation

According to current guidelines, after progression to first-line EGFR-TKI treatment, carrying out a new biopsy to identify the molecular mechanism of acquired resistance and to select patients for targeted therapies is a reasonable procedure (Novello et al. 2016). The feasibility and utility of re-biopsies have been evaluated in several clinical experiences (Mok et al. 2016; Campo et al. 2016; Arcila et al. 2011).

However, serial tumor sampling to monitor cancer evolution is not always feasible in clinical practice. An alternative approach in NSCLC patients may be indeed the use of the so-called *liquid biopsy*, whereby circulating cell-free tumor DNA (ctDNA), DNA fragments passively released into the blood by primary cancer cells, or circulating tumor cells (CTCs), viable or apoptotic cells released from the

primary tumor, can be analysed in the peripheral blood to detect *EGFR* mutations (Crowley et al. 2013; Douillard et al. 2014). Dynamic changes of *EGFR* mutational status in ctDNA seem to predict the clinical outcome to EGFR-TKI treatment (Tseng et al. 2015). A meta-analysis showed a sensitivity of 61% and a specificity of 90% for blood (plasma and serum) analysis compared to tissue evaluation in identifying *EGFR* mutations with a concordance rate of 79% (Mao et al. 2015).

Many studies confirmed the utility and validity of plasma DNA in detection T790M mutation in patients with NSCLC who progressed under EGFR-TKI therapy (Mok et al. 2016; Sundaresan et al. 2016; Remon et al. 2017). According to results of many studies, this method it is today approved by the FDA (http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/DeviceApprovalsandClearances/Recently-ApprovedDevices/ucm519922). Considering the level of sensitivity, when a liquid biopsy is negative for the detection of *EGFR* T790M, this result should be confirmed on tissue biopsy specimen (Oxnard et al. 2016). In addition, a study recently demonstrated satisfying agreements in T790M status definition between urine, plasma and tissue (Reckamp et al. 2016); further urine-based tests are indeed under study.

As mentioned before, T790M mutations account for up to 60% of resistant cases to first- and second-generation EGFR-TKIs (Sequist et al. 2011; Yu et al. 2013a). The remaining T90M-negative cases, for which, in addition, molecular treatment strategies are less developed, can be less characterized by liquid biopsy, with special regard to morpho-phenotypic changes. Recently nevertheless, a high quote of *KRAS* activating mutations has been uncovered in ctDNA in EGFR-mutant NSCLC patients progressing to first or second-generation TKIs (Del Re et al. 2016).

2.1.3 Potential Strategies to Overcome Resistance

Some clinical strategies have indeed been developed in order to *deal with* or overcome resistance to first- and second-EGFR-TKIs.

Because of cancer heterogeneity, once the onset of resistance is manifest, some clones may continue to remain sensitive to EGFR-TKIs, whose continuation can slow down disease progression. For these reasons, in selected patients with slow-growing and low-volume disease, progression in non-critical or asymptomatic sites, no clinical deterioration or intolerable toxicity, first-line EGFR-TKI treatment can be continued beyond progression, as several retrospective studies and some prospective experience showed (Park et al. 2016; Yap et al. 2017).

In the case of clinical progression in circumscribed localization, disease behaviour reflects the spatial heterogeneity of resistance. Retention of the targeted treatment with the addition of local approaches (including surgical resection or radiotherapy) to the dimensionally increasing lesions results a suitable option in order to achieve long-term disease control, acting directly against the resistant counterparts while maintaining active EGFR suppression (Weickhardt et al. 2012; Yu et al. 2013b).

Brain metastases interest around 20% of *EGFR*-mutated NSCLC patients at diagnosis, while 30–60% of them, during an effective EGFR-TKI administration,

develop central nervous system lesions, often representing the isolated site of disease recurrence (Heon et al. 2010; Khalifa et al. 2016). If the progression after first-line EGFR-TKI therapy is characterized by the development of isolated brain metastases, stereotactic radiotherapy or surgery, when possible, is recommended, while multiple lesions require whole-brain radiotherapy. In order to keep extracerebral disease control, EGFR-TKI treatment should be continued (Khalifa et al. 2016).

These reported are effective clinical ways to delay the requirement of novel (cytotoxic or targeted) treatment. In virtually every patient indeed, disease progression not allowing such approaches sooner or later occurs. The research of T790M mutation on tumor specimens or ctDNA is crucial, both for the quote of patients harbouring it and for the actual possibility to overcome it with the novel molecules of third generation, such as osimertinib, rociletinib, HM61713 (olmutinib), ASP8273, EGF816 and PF-06747775. The clinical development of rociletinib and olmutinib has been recently interrupted and ASP8273, EGF816 and PF-06747775 are under early investigation.

Osimertinib is an oral, irreversible EGFR-TKI that is selective for both activating and T790M-resistance mutations (Cross et al. 2014), with significant activity against central nervous system metastases too (Mok et al. 2016; Ballard et al. 2016). In the phase 1 trial (AURA) the RR for osimertinib in patients with T790M-positive tumors was 61%, with a median PFS of 9.6 months (Jänne et al. 2015). These findings were confirmed in a pooled analysis of two subsequent phase 2 studies (Yang et al. 2016), one of which recently published (AURA2) (Goss et al. 2016). On the basis of these results, FDA approved osimertinib in T790M-positive NSCLC patients. A confirmatory, randomized, open-label, international phase 3 trial (AURA3) was conducted and osimertinib showed significantly greater efficacy than platinum plus pemetrexed chemotherapy in patients with T790M-positive cancers after progression under first- or second-generation EGFR-TKIs (Mok et al. 2016). Median PFS for osimertinib was 10.1 months, compared to 4.4 months for chemotherapy (HR: 0.30; 95% CI 0.23–0.41; $p < 0.001$) (Mok et al. 2016). Under the AURA development, osimertinib became the standard of care in second-line treatment for *EGFR*-mutated patients harbouring the T790M mutation.

At the time of progression for patients who are not candidate to osimertinib due to the absence of *EGFR* T790M resistance mutation, different therapeutic options have been or are under investigation. The randomized phase III IMPRESS trial compared gefitinib with versus chemotherapy alone in 265 EGFR-mutated NSCLC resistant to first-line gefitinib (Soria et al. 2015). The underlying objective was to sound out the potential contribution of maintaining inhibition of the driver molecule in addition to standard cytotoxic treatment. No benefit in survival was observed when gefitinib was associated with chemotherapy, suggesting that the EGFR-TKI should be discontinued in resistant patients when the switch to chemotherapy is required (Soria et al. 2015, 2016).

In order to overcome the resistance mediated by specific bypass mechanisms, targeting the detected drivers of resistance itself in combination with EGFR-TKIs may be a sound therapeutic possibility. In particular, the use of MET inhibitors in

combination with EGFR-TKI recently revealed as a promising strategy for *EGFR*-mutated and *MET* amplified NSCLC. Cabozantinib, capmatinib and tepotinib reported significant results in terms of disease response if associated with anti-EGFR agents in this subgroup of NSCLC (Bahcall et al. 2016; Wu et al. 2016; Soo et al. 2015).

In cases of rapid systemic progression, performing a new biopsy is recommended because in presence of a phenotypic transformation to SCLC, to squamous cell carcinoma or when EMT is evident, the use of the chemotherapy could be more beneficial than the use of target therapies.

2.2 Resistance to Third-Generation EGFR-TKIs

The introduction of third-generation EGFR-TKIs resulted in a further outcome improvement for a selected group of NSCLC patients. Nevertheless, despite the high RR and the significant prolongation of survival, after 9–13 months, unfortunately, acquired resistance occurs again (Mok et al. 2016; Jänne et al. 2015; Goss et al. 2016). Several (and not fully recognized) underlying molecular mechanisms have been described (Minari et al. 2016).

2.2.1 Preclinical Evidence and Clinical Relevance of Resistance Mechanisms

In the case of third-generation EGFR-TKIs too, we can classify the mechanisms of resistance in three different categories: (1) EGFR-dependent mechanisms; (2) activation of alternative pathways; (3) phenotypic transformation (Table 1 and Fig. 2).

The emergence of tertiary *EGFR* mutations has been repeatedly reported in the presence of acquired resistance to third-generation TKIs and it has been well characterized in cell lines models (Minari et al. 2016). The *EGFR* p.Cys797Ser (C797S) mutation in the exon 20 is the most common mutation responsible for resistance to osimertinib. Firstly, C797S was identified in ctDNA of 6 out of 15 (40%) patients progressing to osimertinib in the AURA phase I/II study (Thress et al. 2015). It seems also responsible of acquired resistance to other third-generation EGFR-TKIs such as HM61713 and WZ4002, but it is rare after rociletinib (Niederst et al. 2015b; Ercan et al. 2015; Chabon et al. 2016). The substitution of a cysteine with a serine in the position 797 of the tyrosine kinase domain reduces the inhibitory effect of third-generation TKIs by interfering with their covalent binding to EGFR (Thress et al. 2015). Interestingly, according to preclinical evidence, the location of C797S mutation among other *EGFR* alleles (in *cis* vs. in *trans*) may affect the efficacy of subsequent treatments (Niederst et al. 2015b).

After the report of this first mutation responsible of resistance third-generation EGFR-TKIs, several other single-site alterations, such as L718Q and L844V, have been reported in patients and in cellular models treated with osimertinib or other third-generation TKIs (Minari et al. 2016). Importantly, liquid biopsy confirmed its value in detecting such mutations in ctDNA, reinforcing its importance as a clinical

tool (Thress et al. 2015; Ercan et al. 2015; Chabon et al. 2016; Piotrowska et al. 2015).

Again, EGFR-independent mechanisms of resistance during third-generation TKI treatment can emerge. *HER2* amplification was discovered in a NSCLC patient with disease progression after 12 months of osimertinib in the AURA trial (Planchard et al. 2015). It appeared to be mutually exclusive with *EGFR* T790M mutation, as described for first-generation TKIs (Takezawa et al. 2012), and not associated with C797S. Similar findings were reported in other patients treated with osimertinib (Minari et al. 2016), while in the case of resistance to rociletinib, *HER2* amplification was associated with T790M persistence (Chabon et al. 2016). *MET* amplification was first reported in a single case of NSCLC after 10 months of osimertinib treatment, in the absence of T790M or C797S mutations (Planchard et al. 2015), and it was documented too as a mechanism of acquired resistance, both in preclinical in vitro models and clinical cases (Ortiz-Cuaran et al. 2016; Ou et al. 2016a).

In preclinical studies of acquired resistance to osimertinib, an increased dependence on RAS signalling was reported. *NRAS* mutations, including a novel E63K mutation, and *NRAS* or *KRAS* amplification have been described as mechanisms of acquired resistance to osimertinib (Eberlein et al. 2015). The emergence of three *KRAS* activating mutations (p.G12A, p.Q61H and p.A146T), alone or in combination with other resistance mechanisms, has been reported after rociletinib (Chabon et al. 2016). Moreover, at the time of progression, p.E542K and p.E545K mutations in *PIK3CA* gene have been described in five patients treated with rociletinib (Chabon et al. 2016). Other reported resistance mechanisms include *BRAF* p.V600E mutation (Oxnard et al. 2015) and *EGFR* amplification (Chabon et al. 2016; Piotrowska et al. 2015).

Finally, after third-generation TKIs too, in some cases resistant tumors showed phenotypic changes, such as SCLC transformation or EMT (Piotrowska et al. 2015; Kim et al. 2015; Ham et al. 2016).

2.2.2 Potential Strategies to Overcome Resistance

Currently, different therapeutic strategies to overcome the above-described heterogeneous resistance mechanisms to third-generation TKIs are under development.

A new era of fourth-generation TKIs is coming (Minari et al. 2016). EAI045 is the first of a new class of inhibitors, able to overcome T790M and C797S mutations, being selective against mutant-EGFR while sparing the wild-type forms. The combination of EAI045 and cetuximab showed efficacy in mouse models of lung cancer carrying EGFR L858R/T790M/C797S mutations (Jia et al. 2016).

Combinations with third-generation TKIs are being investigated in several studies to avoid the occurrence or overcome resistance (Minari et al. 2016). The association of the MEK inhibitor trametinib with the third-generation EGFR-TKI WZ4002 was able to prevent the emergence of resistance in *EGFR*-mutant lung cancer models (Tricker et al. 2015). The association of osimertinib and another MEK inhibitor, selumetinib, prevented the onset of resistance in cellular lines and

reported in vivo cancer regression in an *EGFR*-mutated, T790M-positive, osimertinib-resistant transgenic model (Eberlein et al. 2015).

Some evidences suggest that patients with C797S and T790M mutations *in trans* could be sensitive again to the association of first/second-generation TKIs with third-generation ones, while the *in cis* disposition results in resistance to all molecules, both alone and in combination (Niederst et al. 2015b). Moreover, the occurrence of C797S in T790M wild-type cells is responsible of resistance to third-generation TKIs, despite the sensitivity to first-generation TKIs (Niederst et al. 2015b). Patients progressing on rociletinib achieved response with osimertinib (Sequist et al. 2016), suggesting a slight different activity of the molecules developed against the T790M mutation.

For patients whose tumors undergo SCLC transformation or EMT, switching platinum-based chemotherapy could be recommended.

Surely, other escape mechanisms are likely to emerge, highlighting the importance of molecular characterization at the time of progression, aiming at the definition of the most correct therapeutic strategy.

3 Resistance Mechanisms to ALK- and ROS1-Driven NSCLC

ALK and *ROS1* rearrangements are present in approximately 4–7% and 1–2% of NSCLC, respectively (Barlesi et al. 2016; Bergethon et al. 2012). These two oncogenes share profound similarities in phylogenesis, biology, genomic sequences, profiles of pharmacological inhibition and tumor clinical features (Ou et al. 2012). Importantly, tumors driven by either ALK or ROS1 manifest similar mechanisms of resistance to targeted agents, which will be approached in parallel. Several mechanisms of drug escape have been identified and they may be classified, similarly to EGFR-TKIs, in three different groups, as indicated in the introduction: (1) involving the target (ALK or ROS1); (2) activation of alternative pathways; (3) phenotype transformation (Table 1 and Fig. 3).

3.1 Mechanisms of Crizotinib Resistance

3.1.1 Mechanisms of Crizotinib Resistance Involving ALK and ROS1

Crizotinib, firstly developed as a MET inhibitor (Kwak et al. 2010), is currently registered by FDA and EMA for patients suffering from *ALK*- and *ROS1*-rearranged NSCLC. Similarly to EGFR-driven tumors, mutations in the target have been reported as the first mechanism of resistance to crizotinib for both oncogenes (Choi et al. 2010; Awad et al. 2013). The number of reported *ALK* mutations responsible of acquired resistance is high, whereas altogether their detection is present in around 30% of clinical samples (Gainor et al. 2016b).

Concomitantly with the first report of crizotinib clinical activity (Kwak et al. 2010), Choi and colleagues described *ALK* C1156Y and L1196M mutations as responsible of acquired resistance to the drug (Choi et al. 2010). L1196 corresponds

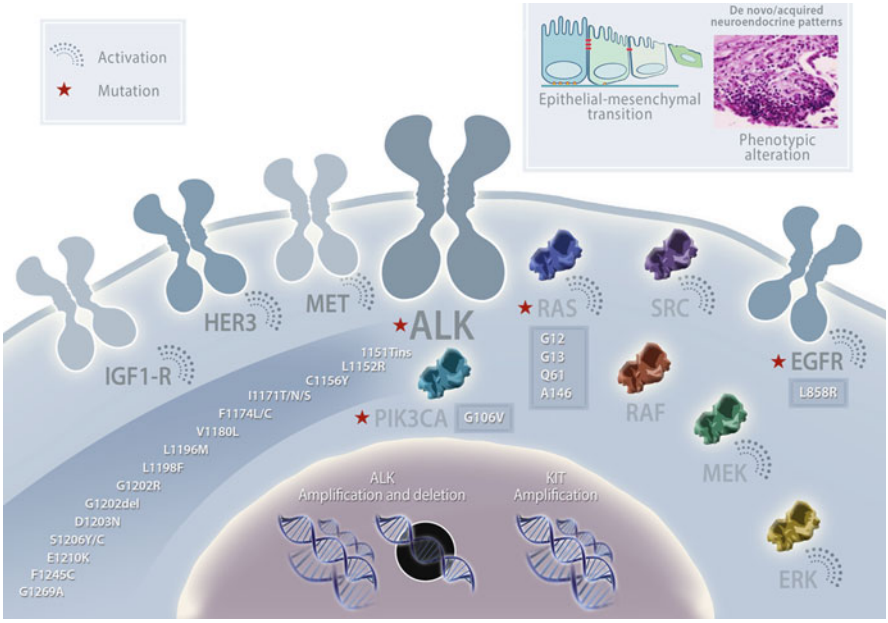


Fig. 3 Thorough representation of mechanisms of resistance to crizotinib and novel-generation inhibitors in ALK-rearranged non-small cell lung cancer. See Gainor et al. Cancer Discovery 2016 (Gainor et al. 2016b) to distinguish the differential mechanisms for single molecules

to the gatekeeper residue in ALK tyrosine kinase domain and this substitution is among the most frequently reported single-nucleotide alteration responsible of crizotinib resistance in NSCLC, together with G1269A (Gainor et al. 2016b). Biopsies obtained in *ALK-positive* NSCLC patients at the moment of disease progression to crizotinib (Katayama et al. 2012; Doebele et al. 2012) allowed the detection a conspicuous number of mutations in ALK TKD. These latter engender crizotinib resistance by means of two main mechanisms: by increasing enzymatic activity at a level not suitable of crizotinib inhibition or interfering with its binding (Gainor et al. 2016b; Friboulet et al. 2014). Considering also isolated case reports, single-nucleotide substitutions reported thus far include 1151Tins, L1152R, C1156Y, I1171N/S/T, F1174C/V, L1196M, G1202R, D1203N, S1206Y, F1245C and G1269A (Gainor et al. 2016b; Facchinetti et al. 2016a) (Fig. 3).

Due to the more limited rate of patients harbouring the oncogenic aberration and to the particularly recent introduction of crizotinib for ROS1-positive advanced NSCLC, information concerning resistance emerging in this setting is barely less abundant. Given the homology between ALK and ROS1 TKD (which share >80% sequence identity within their ATP-binding sites), every mutation reported so far to negatively affect crizotinib activity in ROS1-positive patients find its corresponding with comparison to *ALK* (Facchinetti et al. 2016b). G2032R (Awad et al. 2013), D2033N (Drilon et al. 2016a) and S1986Y/F (Facchinetti et al. 2016b), here reported in order of discovery, can be indeed aligned with the

corresponding *ALK* G1202R, D1203N and C1156Y, respectively. Moreover, the gatekeeper L2026M substitution, together with L1951R, has been recently reported in a patient biopsy after crizotinib resistance (McCoach et al. 2016). The clinical relevance of other mutations (L2155S, K2003I, L1951R and M2128V) reported in vitro only has yet to be established (Katayama et al. 2015; Song et al. 2015).

ALK activation in NSCLC is a consequence of gene fusions and the most frequently partner gene is represented by *EML4*. Several fusion variants are possible, showing slight differential sensitivity to crizotinib in cellular models (Heuckmann et al. 2012) and potentially accounting to the variable durations of disease control in the clinics (Yoshida et al. 2016; Woo et al. 2016).

Crizotinib exhaustion can depend from the amplification/copy number gain of the *ALK* gene itself (Doebele et al. 2012; Shaw et al. 2014) and the possibility of loss of the driver alteration under selective pressure has been proposed in the clinics (Doebele et al. 2012).

These mechanisms have not yet been reported in ROS1-postive NSCLC, neither in preclinical studies nor in the clinics.

3.1.2 Activation of Bypass Pathways Explaining Crizotinib Resistance

Occurrence of either *ALK* or *ROS1* rearrangements together with *KRAS* mutations in NSCLC can explain primary (Mengoli et al. 2016; Schmid et al. 2016) or acquired (Doebele et al. 2012) resistance to crizotinib. Moreover, KRAS and NRAS activation through mutations or amplifications leads to the exhaustion of first-generation inhibitors activity in ROS1-positive cellular models (Cargnelutti et al. 2015).

EGFR signalling has been reported as the responsible of crizotinib resistance in a non-negligible rate of patients-derived biopsies and in cellular models (Katayama et al. 2012; Doebele et al. 2012). Similarly to what observed for RAS alterations, EGFR signalling could augment, with or without the evidence of classical activating mutations (Katayama et al. 2012; Doebele et al. 2012; Kim et al. 2013). Several experiences indeed shown the amplification of *EGFR* gene and implementation of EGFR phosphorylation have been functionally related to acquired resistance to crizotinib, in both ALK- and ROS1-dependent NSCLC (Katayama et al. 2012; Song et al. 2015; Kim et al. 2013; Davies et al. 2013).

KIT gene amplification or activating mutations in *ALK* and *ROS1*-rearranged NSCLC patients can, respectively, explain the acquisition of crizotinib resistance (Katayama et al. 2012; Dziadziuszko et al. 2016).

Moreover, IGF1R, SRC and MEK/ERK activation can mediate resistance to specific inhibitors in ALK-dependent cell models, suggesting thus far the potential of combinatorial strategies in the clinics (Lovly et al. 2014; Crystal et al. 2014; Hrustanovic et al. 2015).

3.1.3 Further Mechanisms of Crizotinib Resistance

The largest part of ALK-positive NSCLC patients exposed to crizotinib experiences intracranial disease progression in spite of extra-cerebral disease control. Pharmacokinetics issues concerning the low blood–brain barrier penetration of the

compound account for its reduced, albeit present, activity in CNS lesions (Costa et al. 2011). Data concerning ROS1-driven disease are still too limited to infer such similar conclusions.

Morpho-phenotypic tumor changes in ALK-positive disease are more limited than *EGFR* mutated, while in *ROS1*-rearranged cells they are limited to preclinical reports (Song et al. 2015). The neuroendocrine phenotypes of NSCLC can be responsible of either de novo crizotinib resistance (Omachi et al. 2014) or for the exhaustion of drug efficacy after initial responses, as transformation from adenocarcinoma to SCLC (Caumont et al. 2016).

In vitro data suggests EMT contribution to the establishing of resistance to ALK inhibitors (Kogita et al. 2014). Experimental data are sustained by clinical reports (Kobayashi et al. 2013).

3.1.4 Overcoming Crizotinib Resistance

In the very recent years, several other molecules have been developed aiming to maintain specific inhibition of ALK and ROS1 when crizotinib runs out of activity. Second-generation compounds include ceritinib, alectinib and brigatinib, while lorlatinib belongs to the third-generation of drugs. If ceritinib, brigatinib and lorlatinib are characterized by half maximal inhibitory concentration (IC50) values suitable of clinical application in both ALK- and ROS1-driven diseases, according to cellular assays alectinib exclusively hits ALK (Gainor et al. 2016b; Facchinetti et al. 2016b; Davare et al. 2015).

The mentioned inhibitors shown crucial properties, such as the ability to inhibit the target more potently than crizotinib, the activity against multiple mutant forms of ALK and ROS1 and the good brain penetration, confirming their relevant activity in the setting of crizotinib resistance (Facchinetti et al. 2016a, 2017). Data from clinical trials and patients' cohorts suggests the clear advantage of administering new-generation compounds after crizotinib (Facchinetti et al. 2016a, 2017). There is moreover an efficacy gradient from the less recent to the newest inhibitors, as the latest are more potent and active against a larger number of mutations in the targets conferring resistance, as long as the brain penetration and the selectivity increase (Gainor et al. 2016b; Zou et al. 2015).

Among the cited novel inhibitors, only ceritinib and lorlatinib ostensibly harbour a significant role as ROS1 TKIs, considering the reduced potency of brigatinib against the wild-type and mutated forms of the enzyme (Chong et al. 2017), together with the inefficacity of alectinib.

Other wide-spectrum tyrosine-kinase inhibitors (e.g. cabozantinib, foretinib, entrectinib) shown activity against ROS1 and/or ALK (Facchinetti et al. 2017). The current availability of the mentioned specific inhibitors with important anti-ALK activity makes questionable the utilization of the latter ones in ALK-driven diseases. Among these less-specific molecules, cabozantinib only could have a role, as the sole drug potentially active against the G2032R *ROS1* mutation, the most frequent mechanism of crizotinib resistance reported so far, albeit in very small series (Katayama et al. 2015; Gainor et al. 2016c). Nevertheless, the toxicity spectrum of cabozantinib at the systemic concentrations required to inhibit mutant

ROS1 forms, still leave doubts about its potential clinical proposition; beside, all other crizotinib-resistance mutations seem to be overcome by the more manageable drug lorlatinib (Facchinetti et al. 2017).

3.2 Resistance to Next-Generation ALK and ROS1 Inhibitors

Recently, Gainor and colleagues reported the results from a wide series of ALK-positive tumor biopsies obtained at progression to crizotinib or second-generation inhibitors (Gainor et al. 2016b). Some of the codons involved in TKD mutations were previously unreported in the clinics, as E1210K, conferring crizotinib resistance, and V1180L, occurring after alectinib administration and already approached in in vitro studies (Gainor et al. 2016b; Katayama et al. 2014).

After ceritinib and alectinib, amino-acidic substitutions mediating resistance were observed in more than 50% of the samples, compared with the 20–30% target alterations responsible of crizotinib exhaustion (Gainor et al. 2016b). Although post-brigatinib biopsies were limited in the series, an enrichment in *ALK* G1202R mutation was reported after the onset of resistance for all the three new inhibitors compared to post-crizotinib samples. Other *ALK* mutations responsible of new-generation inhibitors resistance, unreported after crizotinib, are emerging, as reported in a patient developing ceritinib exhaustion due to the G1123S substitution (Toyokawa et al. 2015), underlying the differential selective pressure exerted by the inhibitors.

PIK3CA G106V activating mutation was detected in an alectinib-resistant specimen, thus allowing to envisaging the involvement of the AKT-mTOR pathway in resistance (Redaelli et al. 2016), as seen in *EGFR*-mutant NSCLC (Sequist et al. 2011).

Bypass signalling activation mediated by IGF1R, HER3 (with the concomitant overexpression of its ligand neuregulin-1) and MET has been proven as mechanism of resistance to alectinib in cellular models (Isozaki et al. 2016).

Morpho-phenotypic changes driving EMT were clearly depicted in one ceritinib-resistant sample and present, with different levels of intensity, in up to 42% (five out of 12) specimens, often in the presence of ALK mutations (Gainor et al. 2016b). Two cases of SCLC transformation were reported in alectinib-resistant tumors (Fujita et al. 2016; Takegawa et al. 2016).

Great interest was raised by the first and, to date, the only report of specific lorlatinib resistance in an ALK-rearranged NSCLC patient. Tumor cells, already harbouring the crizotinib and ceritinib resistant mutation C1156Y, developed the previously unknown L1198F substitution, determining in vitro resistance to all available ALK inhibitors except for crizotinib (Shaw et al. 2015). Administration of the first-generation compound led indeed to disease response. Data concerning resistance to new-generations inhibitors in ROS1-positive NSCLC models or patients are still lacking.

4 Resistance Mechanisms to Targeted Drugs in NSCLC Driven by Other Oncogenes

As several other targets and corresponding pharmacological compounds are emerging in lung cancer, mechanisms of resistance in this new field are rising and lessons can be inferred from tumor models other than NSCLC, sharing driving molecular aberrations and specific inhibition.

4.1 MET

Beside its role in mediating resistance to EGFR inhibition (Engelman et al. 2007), MET is known as a meaningful driver oncogene in NSCLC since around a decade. Nevertheless, its precise mechanisms of activation, harbouring biological and clinical relevance, have been profitably elucidated in the last 2 years (Drilon et al. 2017). *MET* gene amplification needs a precise definition for achieving a meaningful role in predicting response to specific inhibitors, the most relevant one to date again represented by crizotinib (Drilon et al. 2017). Moreover, MET can be biologically activated by a newly recognized mechanism represented by the loss of its exon 14 (*exon 14 skipping*), coding for the juxtamembrane domain, that leads to a meaningful increase in MET signalling by means of the decrease of its degradation (Awad 2016). As in this case MET TKD remains intact, crizotinib is indeed active (Drilon et al. 2017). Nevertheless, mutations occurring in *MET* TKD (D1228N, D1228V, Y1230C, the two latter founded in ctDNA too) have been recently reported as putative responsible of resistance to MET inhibitors in the clinics (Bahcall et al. 2016; Heist et al. 2016; Ou et al. 2016b). Strategies to overcome resistance to type I MET inhibitors (which preferentially bind to the active conformation of the protein, e.g. crizotinib and savolitinib) with type II compounds (which preferentially bind to the inactive molecule conformation, e.g. cabozantinib and capmatinib) yield an in vitro and clinical crucial meaning (Bahcall et al. 2016). If MET activation can explain resistance to EGFR inhibitors, as seen above, the reverse situation has been reported, with the onset of crizotinib resistance in a MET-driven NSCLC associated to the appearance to the activating *EGFR* L861A mutation (Benderra et al. 2016).

4.2 BRAF

BRAF-mutated NSCLC is similar in biology (in terms of role of oncogenic agent), clinical and therapeutic approaches to melanomas harbouring *BRAF* activating mutations (Nguyen-Ngoc et al. 2015). According to *BRAF*-mutant melanomas, the co-inhibition of BRAF and MEK in NSCLC generates better outcomes compared to BRAF blockade alone (Planchard et al. 2016a, b). With regard to *BRAF*-mutated lung adenocarcinoma, the onset of mutations in *KRAS*, *TP53* and *CDKN2A*

has been proposed as a resistance mechanism to the BRAF inhibitor dabrafenib in the clinics (Rudin et al. 2013).

Clear evidence concerning resistance to BRAF and MEK inhibitors in NSCLC is yet to be provided, but mechanisms could be the same observed in melanoma. Nevertheless, if *BRAF* mutations in melanoma occur for the largest part in codon V600 (of which V600E is the archetypal), in NSCLC the involvement of different BRAF activating sites in up to 50% of the cases (Nguyen-Ngoc et al. 2015). Non-V600 *BRAF* mutants are globally less potently inhibited by available anti-BRAF molecules (Gatalica et al. 2015; Noeparast et al. 2016), making the association with MEK inhibitors even more recommended.

4.3 RET

RET rearrangements drive oncogenesis in 1–2% of lung adenocarcinomas (Kohno et al. 2012). Responses to cabozantinib and vandetanib have currently been systematically recognized in phase II clinical trials (Drilon et al. 2016b; Yoh et al. 2017). Moreover, clinical activity of sunitinib (Wu et al. 2015) and alectinib (Lin et al. 2016) has been documented in RET-driven NSCLC. No clinical demonstration of molecular mechanisms of targeted treatment exhaustion is available thus far. An extensive preclinical study recently identified *RET* mutations conferring differential resistance to cabozantinib and vandetanib, while overcome by ponatinib, the most potent RET inhibitor (Huang et al. 2016), whose activity in patients is currently under study. Another experience revealed the hyperactivation of *SRC*, a central gene in focal adhesion, as a suitable mechanism of acquired resistance to dovitinib (Kang et al. 2015); specific inhibition of SRC with sarcatinib allowed the re-sensitization to RET inhibition, as robustly seen in *ALK*-rearranged models (Crystal et al. 2014).

5 Conclusions

The obtaining of the most prolonged disease control with targeted therapies represents nowadays the primary goal in oncogene-driven advanced NSCLC. The profound knowledge of the molecular mechanisms driving resistance to specific inhibitors is basilar in order to develop further treatment strategies. Nevertheless, in experiences when re-biopsies are performed once treatment exhaustion manifests, mechanistic reasons for this clinical behaviour remain biologically uncovered in up to 30–50% of the cases.

Adaptive strategies with novel inhibitors are showing outstanding results both after and in comparison with first-generation molecules when administered upfront, suggesting a scenario in which the most potent drugs would be given immediately. Nevertheless, combinatorial strategies aiming at bypass collapse, achievable with the fruitful blocking of both the primary molecular alteration and the alternative signalling tracks responsible of resistance, are still lacking. Given the relevant

potency of novel molecules against their respective targets, together with the emergence of novel resistance mutations thus far uncommon (*EGFR* C797S, *ALK* L1198F), activation of bypass pathways are expected to arise in a significant quote of cases and this therapeutic gap would need to be filled.

Inner tumor heterogeneity manifests in this field with the various mechanisms adopted by tumors to find escapes under specific therapeutic pressure, in different individuals as well as in the diverse lesions of the same patient. This represents one of the greatest issues to deal with, hampering the potential of pharmacologic developments. Strategies to face the limits imposed by biologic tumor variability are lately emerging (Suda et al. 2017).

The detection of mutations responsible of resistance to old and novel EGFR inhibitors in the blood represents a major improvement (hopefully applicable to other drivers) as a proof of principle and for practical reasons. Nevertheless, its application still requires additional adjustments.

Taken together, the evidence contained in this chapter depicts a scenario in continuous evolution, in which the search for the best-targeted treatment option in lung cancer strictly relies upon the digging towards the deeper and widest knowledge concerning biologic resistance. Questions to be solved are still copious and complex; nevertheless, the recent advances in both clinical and preclinical research, allowed by the impressive developments in experimental methods and techniques, generate enthusiasm and hope for the very next future.

References

Arcila ME, Oxnard GR, Nafa K, Riely GJ, Solomon SB, Zakowski MF et al (2011) Rebiopsy of lung cancer patients with acquired resistance to EGFR inhibitors and enhanced detection of the T790M mutation using a locked nucleic acid-based assay. Clin Cancer Res 17:1169–1180

Awad MM (2016) Impaired c-Met receptor degradation mediated by MET exon 14 mutations in non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 34:879–881

Awad MM, Katayama R, McTigue M, Liu W, Deng Y-L, Brooun A et al (2013) Acquired resistance to crizotinib from a mutation in CD74-ROS1. N Engl J Med 368:2395–2401

Bahcall M, Sim T, Paweletz CP, Patel JD, Alden RS, Kuang Y et al (2016) Acquired METD1228V mutation and resistance to MET inhibition in lung cancer. Cancer Discov 6:1334–1341

Ballard P, Yates JWT, Yang Z, Kim DW, Yang JCH, Cantarini M et al (2016) Preclinical comparison of osimertinib with other EGFR-TKIs in EGFR-mutant NSCLC brain metastases models, and early evidence of clinical brain metastases activity. Clin Cancer Res 22:5130–5140

Barlesi F, Mazieres J, Merlio JP, Debieuvre D, Mosser J, Lena H et al (2016) Routine molecular profiling of patients with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: results of a 1-year nationwide programme of the French cooperative thoracic intergroup (IFCT). Lancet 387:1415–1426

Benderra MA, Aspeslagh S, Postel-Vinay S, Bigot L, De Baere T, Loriot Y et al (2016) Acquired EGFR mutation as the potential resistance driver to crizotinib in a MET-mutated tumor. J Thorac Oncol 11:e21–e23

Bergethon K, Shaw AT, Ou S-HI, Katayama R, Lovly CM, McDonald NT et al (2012) ROS1 rearrangements define a unique molecular class of lung cancers. J Clin Oncol 30:863–870

Campo M, Gerber D, Gainor JF, Heist RS, Temel JS, Shaw AT et al (2016) Acquired resistance to first-line afatinib and the challenges of prearranged progression biopsies. J Thorac Oncol 11:2022–2026

Cargnelutti M, Corso S, Pergolizzi M, Mévellec L, Aisner DL, Dziadziuszko R et al (2015) Activation of RAS family members confers resistance to ROS1 targeting drugs. Oncotarget 6:5182–5194

Caumont C, Veillon R, Gros A, Laharanne E, Bégueret H, Merlio JP (2016) Neuroendocrine phenotype as an acquired resistance mechanism in ALK-rearranged lung adenocarcinoma. Lung Cancer 92:15–18

Chabon JJ, Simmons AD, Lovejoy AF, Esfahani MS, Newman AM, Haringsma HJ et al (2016) Circulating tumour DNA profiling reveals heterogeneity of EGFR inhibitor resistance mechanisms in lung cancer patients. Nat Commun 7:11815

Choi YL, Soda M, Yamashita Y, Ueno T, Takashima J, Nakajima T et al (2010) EML4-ALK mutations in lung cancer that confer resistance to ALK inhibitors. N Engl J Med 363:1734–1739

Chong CR, Bahcall M, Capelletti M, Kosaka T, Ercan D, Sim T et al (2017) Identification of existing drugs that effectively target NTRK1- and ROS1-rearrangements in lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 23:204–213

Costa DB, Kobayashi S, Pandya SS, Yeo WL, Shen Z, Tan W et al (2011) CSF concentration of the anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibitor crizotinib. J Clin Oncol 29:e443–e445

Cross DAE, Ashton SE, Ghiorghiu S, Eberlein C, Nebhan CA, Spitzler PJ et al (2014) AZD9291, an irreversible EGFR TKI, overcomes T790M-mediated resistance to EGFR inhibitors in lung cancer. Cancer Discov 4:1046–1061

Crowley E, Di Nicolantonio F, Loupakis F, Bardelli A (2013) Liquid biopsy: monitoring cancer-genetics in the blood. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 10:472–484

Crystal AS, Shaw AT, Sequist LV, Friboulet L, Niederst MJ, Lockerman EL et al (2014) Patient-derived models of acquired resistance can identify effective drug combinations for cancer. Science 346:1480–1486

Davare MA, Vellore NA, Wagner JP, Eide CA, Goodman JR, Drilon A et al (2015) Structural insight into selectivity and resistance profiles of ROS1 tyrosine kinase inhibitors. Proc Natl Acad Sci 112:E5381–E5390

Davies KD, Mahale S, Astling DP, Aisner DL, Le AT, Hinz TK et al (2013) Resistance to ROS1 inhibition mediated by EGFR pathway activation in non-small cell lung cancer. PLoS One 8:1–13

Del Re M, Tiseo M, Bordi P, D'Incecco A, Camerini A, Petrini I et al (2016) Contribution of KRAS mutations and c.2369C > T (p.T790M) EGFR to acquired resistance to EGFR-TKIs in EGFR mutant NSCLC: a study on circulating tumor DNA. Oncotarget [Epub ahead of print]

Doebele RC, Pilling AB, Aisner DL, Kutateladze TG, Le AT, Weickhardt AJ et al (2012) Mechanisms of resistance to crizotinib in patients with ALK gene rearranged non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 18:1472–1482

Douillard JJ-Y, Ostoros G, Cobo M, Ciuleanu T, Cole R, McWalter G et al (2014) Gefitinib treatment in EGFR mutated caucasian NSCLC: circulating-free tumor DNA as a surrogate for determination of EGFR status. J Thorac Oncol 9:1345–1353

Drilon A, Somwar R, Wagner JP, Vellore NA, Eide CA, Zabriskie MS et al (2016a) A novel crizotinib-resistant solvent-front mutation responsive to cabozantinib therapy in a patient with ROS1-rearranged lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 22:2351–2358

Drilon A, Rekhtman N, Arcila M, Wang L, Ni A, Albano M et al (2016b) Cabozantinib in patients with advanced RET-rearranged non-small-cell lung cancer: an open-label, single-centre, phase 2, single-arm trial. Lancet Oncol 17:1653–1660

Drilon A, Cappuzzo F, Ou SICD (2017) Targeting MET in lung cancer: will expectations finally be MET? J Thorac Oncol 12:15–26

Dziadziuszko R, Le AT, Wrona A, Jassem J, Camidge DR, Varella-Garcia M et al (2016) An activating KIT mutation induces crizotinib resistance in ROS1-positive lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 11:1273–1281

Eberlein CA, Stetson D, Markovets AA, Al-Kadhimi KJ, Lai Z, Fisher PR et al (2015) Acquired resistance to the mutant-selective EGFR inhibitor AZD9291 is associated with increased dependence on RAS signaling in preclinical models. Cancer Res 75:2489–2500

Engelman JA, Zejnullahu K, Mitsudomi T, Song Y, Hyland C, Park JO et al (2007) MET amplification leads to gefitinib resistance in lung cancer by activating ERBB3 signaling. Science 316:1039–1043

Ercan D, Choi HG, Yun CH, Capelletti M, Xie T, Eck MJ et al (2015) EGFR mutations and resistance to irreversible pyrimidine-based EGFR inhibitors. Clin Cancer Res 21:3913–3923

Facchinetti F, Tiseo M, Di Maio M, Graziano P, Novello S (2016a) Tackling ALK in non-small cell lung cancer: the role of novel inhibitors. Transl Lung Cancer Res 5:301–321

Facchinetti F, Loriot Y, Kuo MS, Mahjoubi L, Lacroix L, Planchard D et al (2016b) Crizotinib-resistant ROS1 mutations reveal a predictive kinase inhibitor sensitivity model for ROS1- and ALK-rearranged lung cancers. Clin Cancer Res 15:5983–5991

Facchinetti F, Rossi G, Bria E, Soria JC, Besse B, Minari R et al (2017) Oncogene addiction in non-small cell lung cancer: focus on ROS1 inhibition. Cancer Treat Rev. doi:10.1016/j.ctrv.2017.02.010

Friboulet L, Li N, Katayama R, Lee CC, Gainor JF, Crystal AS et al (2014) The ALK inhibitor ceritinib overcomes crizotinib resistance in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Discov 4:662–673

Fujita S, Masago K, Katakami N, Yatabe Y (2016) Transformation to SCLC after treatment with the ALK inhibitor alectinib. J Thorac Oncol 11:e67–e72

Gainor JF, Varghese AM, Ou SHI, Kabraji S, Awad MM, Katayama R et al (2013) ALK rearrangements are mutually exclusive with mutations in EGFR or KRAS: an analysis of 1,683 patients with non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 19:4273–4281

Gainor JF, Niederst MJ, Lennerz JK, Dagogo-Jack I, Stevens S, Shaw AT et al (2016a) Dramatic response to combination erlotinib and crizotinib in a patient with advanced, EGFR-mutant lung cancer harboring de novo MET amplification. J Thorac Oncol 11:e83–e85

Gainor JF, Dardaei L, Yoda S, Friboulet L, Leshchiner I, Katayama R et al (2016b) Molecular mechanisms of resistance to first- and second-generation ALK inhibitors in ALK-rearranged lung cancer. Cancer Discov 6:1118–1133

Gainor JF, Friboulet L, Yoda S, Dardaei Alghalandis L, Farago AF, Logan J et al (2016c) Frequency and spectrum of ROS1 resistance mutations in ROS1-positive lung cancer patients progressing on crizotinib. J Clin Oncol 34:(suppl; abstr 9072)

Gatalica Z, Burnett K, Bender R, Feldman R, Vranic S, Reddy S (2015) BRAF mutations are potentially targetable alterations in a wide variety of solid cancers. Eur J Cancer 51(suppl 3): S31

Goss G, Tsai C-M, Shepherd FA, Bazhenova L, Lee JS, Chang G-C et al (2016) Osimertinib for pretreated EGFR Thr790Met-positive advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (AURA2): a multicentre, open-label, single-arm, phase 2 study. Lancet Oncol 17:1643–1652

Ham JS, Kim S, Kim HK, Byeon S, Sun JM, Lee SH et al (2016) Two cases of small cell lung cancer transformation from EGFR mutant adenocarcinoma during AZD9291 treatment. J Thorac Oncol 11:e1–e4

Haratani K, Hayashi H, Watanabe S, Kaneda H, Yoshida T, Takeda M et al (2016) Two cases of EGFR mutation-positive lung adenocarcinoma that transformed into squamous cell carcinoma: successful treatment of one case with rociletinib. Ann Oncol 27:200–202

Hata A, Katakami N, Yoshioka H, Kaji R, Masago K, Fujita S et al (2015) Spatiotemporal T790M heterogeneity in individual patients with EGFR-mutant non–small-cell lung cancer after acquired resistance to EGFR-TKI. J Thorac Oncol 10:1553–1559

Hata AN, Niederst MJ, Archibald HL, Gomez-Caraballo M, Siddiqui FM, Mulvey HE et al (2016) Tumor cells can follow distinct evolutionary paths to become resistant to epidermal growth factor receptor inhibition. Nat Med 22:262–269

Heist RS, Sequist LV, Borger D, Gainor JF, Arellano RS, Le LP et al (2016) Acquired resistance to crizotinib in NSCLC with MET exon 14 skipping. J Thorac Oncol 11:1242–1245

Heon S, Yeap BY, Britt GJ, Costa DB, Rabin MS, Jackman DM et al (2010) Development of central nervous system metastases in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer and somatic EGFR mutations treated with gefitinib or erlotinib. Clin Cancer Res 16:5873–5882

Heuckmann JM, Balke-Want H, Malchers F, Peifer M, Sos ML, Koker M et al (2012) Differential protein stability and ALK inhibitor sensitivity of EML4-ALK fusion variants. Clin Cancer Res 18:4682–4690

Hrustanovic G, Olivas V, Pazarentzos E, Tulpule A, Asthana S, Blakely CM et al (2015) RAS-MAPK dependence underlies a rational polytherapy strategy in EML4-ALK-positive lung cancer. Nat Med 21:1038–1047

Huang Q, Schneeberger VE, Luetteke N, Jin C, Afzal R, Budzevich MM et al (2016) Preclinical modeling of KIF5B-RET fusion lung adenocarcinoma. Mol Cancer Ther 15(10):2521–2529

Inukai M, Toyooka S, Ito S, Asano H, Ichihara S, Soh J et al (2006) Presence of epidermal growth factor receptor gene T790M mutation as a minor clone in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 66:7854–7858

Isozaki H, Ichihara E, Takigawa N, Ohashi K, Ochi N, Yasugi M et al (2016) Non-small cell lung cancer cells acquire resistance to the ALK inhibitor alectinib by activating alternative receptor tyrosine kinases. Cancer Res 76:1506–1516

Jänne PA, Yang JC-H, Kim D-W, Planchard D, Ohe Y, Ramalingam SS et al (2015) AZD9291 in EGFR inhibitor-resistant non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 372:1689–1699

Jia Y, Yun C-H, Park E, Ercan D, Manuia M, Juarez J et al (2016) Overcoming EGFR(T790M) and EGFR(C797S) resistance with mutant-selective allosteric inhibitors. Nature 534:129–132

Kang CW, Jang KW, Sohn J, Kim S-M, Pyo K-H, Kim H et al (2015) Antitumor activity and acquired resistance mechanism of dovitinib (TKI258) in RET-rearranged lung adenocarcinoma. Mol Cancer Ther 14:2238–2248

Katayama R, Shaw AT, Khan TM, Mino-Kenudson M, Solomon BJ, Halmos B et al (2012) Mechanisms of acquired crizotinib resistance in ALK-rearranged lung Cancers. Sci Transl Med 4:120ra17

Katayama R, Friboulet L, Koike S, Lockerman EL, Khan TM, Gainor JF et al (2014) Two novel ALK mutations mediate acquired resistance to the next-generation ALK inhibitor alectinib. Clin Cancer Res 20:5686–5696

Katayama R, Kobayashi Y, Friboulet L, Lockerman EL, Koike S, Shaw AT et al (2015) Cabozantinib overcomes crizotinib resistance in ROS1 fusion-positive cancer. Clin Cancer Res 21:166–174

Khalifa J, Amini A, Popat S, Gaspar LE, Faivre-Finn C (2016) Brain metastases from NSCLC: radiation therapy in the era of targeted therapies. J Thorac Oncol 11:1627–1643

Kim S, Kim TM, Kim D-W, Go H, Keam B, Lee S-H et al (2013) Heterogeneity of genetic changes associated with acquired crizotinib resistance in ALK-rearranged lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 8:415–422

Kim TM, Song A, Kim D-W, Kim S, Ahn Y-O, Keam B et al (2015) Mechanisms of acquired resistance to AZD9291, a mutation-selective, irreversible EGFR inhibitor. J Thorac Oncol 10:1736–1744

Kobayashi S, Boggon TJ, Dayaram T, Jänne PA, Kocher O, Meyerson M et al (2005) EGFR mutation and resistance of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. N Engl J Med 352:786–792

Kobayashi Y, Sakao Y, Ito S, Sakakura N, Usami N, Mitsudomi T et al (2013) Transformation to sarcomatoid carcinoma in ALK-rearranged adenocarcinoma, which developed acquired resistance to crizotinib and received subsequent chemotherapies. J Thorac Oncol 8:75–78

Kogita A, Togashi Y, Hayashi H, Sogabe S, Terashima M, De Velasco MA et al (2014) Hypoxia induces resistance to ALK inhibitors in the H3122 non-small cell lung cancer cell line with an ALK rearrangement via epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Int J Oncol 45:1430–1436

Kohno T, Ichikawa H, Totoki Y, Yasuda K, Hiramoto M, Nammo T et al (2012) KIF5B-RET fusions in lung adenocarcinoma. Nat Med 18:375–357

Kwak EL, Bang Y-J, Camidge DR, Shaw AT, Solomon B, Maki RG et al (2010) Anaplastic lymphoma kinase inhibition in non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 363:1693–1703

Lin JJ, Kennedy E, Sequist LV, Brastianos PK, Goodwin KE, Stevens S et al (2016) Clinical activity of alectinib in advanced RET-rearranged non-small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 11:2027–2032

Lovly CM, McDonald NT, Chen H, Ortiz-Cuaran S, Heukamp LC, Yan Y et al (2014) Rationale for co-targeting IGF-1R and ALK in ALK fusion-positive lung cancer. Nat Med 20:1027–1034

Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R, Gurubhagavatula S, Okimoto RA, Brannigan BW et al (2004) Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. N Engl J Med 350:2129–2139

Mao C, Yuan J-Q, Yang Z-Y, Fu X-H, Wu X-Y, Tang J-L (2015) Blood as a substitute for tumor tissue in detecting EGFR mutations for guiding EGFR TKIs treatment of nonsmall cell lung cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore) 94:e775

McCoach CE, Le AT, Aisner D, Gowan K, Jones KL, Merrick D et al (2016) Resistance mechanisms to targeted therapies in ROS1+ and ALK+ non-small cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 34:(suppl; abstr 9065)

Mengoli MC, Barbieri F, Bertolini F, Tiseo M, Rossi G (2016) K-RAS mutations indicating primary resistance to crizotinib in ALK-rearranged adenocarcinomas of the lung: report of two cases and review of the literature. Lung Cancer 93:55–58

Minari R, Bordi P, Tiseo M (2016) Third-generation epidermal growth factor receptor-tyrosine kinase inhibitors in T790M-positive non-small cell lung cancer: review on emerged mechanisms of resistance. Transl Lung Cancer Res 5:695–708

Mok TS, Wu YL, Thongprasert S, Yang CH, Chu DT, Saijo N et al (2009) Gefitinib or carboplatin-paclitaxel in pulmonary adenocarcinoma. N Engl J Med 361:947–957

Mok TS, Wu Y-L, Ahn M-J, Garassino MC, Kim HR, Ramalingam SS et al (2016) Osimertinib or platinum–pemetrexed in EGFR T790M–positive lung cancer. N Engl J Med [Epub ahead of print]

Nguyen K-SH, Kobayashi S, Costa DB (2009) Acquired resistance to epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in non-small-cell lung cancers dependent on the epidermal growth factor receptor pathway. Clin Lung Cancer 10:281–289

Nguyen-Ngoc T, Bouchaab H, Adjei AA, Peters S (2015) BRAF alterations as therapeutic targets in non-small cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 10:1396–1403

Niederst MJ, Engelman JA (2013) Bypass mechanisms of resistance to receptor tyrosine kinase inhibition in lung cancer. Sci Signal 6:re6

Niederst MJ, Sequist LV, Poirier JT, Mermel CH, Lockerman EL, Garcia AR et al (2015a) RB loss in resistant EGFR mutant lung adenocarcinomas that transform to small-cell lung cancer. Nat Commun 6:6377

Niederst MJ, Hu H, Mulvey HE, Lockerman EL, Garcia AR, Piotrowska Z et al (2015b) The allelic context of the C797S mutation acquired upon treatment with third-generation EGFR inhibitors impacts sensitivity to subsequent treatment strategies. Clin Cancer Res 21:3924–3933

Noeparast A, Teugels E, Giron P, Verschelden G, De Brakeleer S, Decoster L et al (2016) Non-V600 BRAF mutations recurrently found in lung cancer predict sensitivity to the combination of trametinib and dabrafenib. Oncotarget [Epub ahead of print]

Novello S, Barlesi F, Califano R, Cufer T, Ekman S, Levra MG et al (2016) Metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer: ESMO clinical practice guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. Ann Oncol 27:v1–27

Ohashi K, Sequist LV, Arcila ME, Moran T, Chmielecki J, Lin YL et al (2012) Lung cancers with acquired resistance to EGFR inhibitors occasionally harbor BRAF gene mutations but lack mutations in KRAS, NRAS, or MEK1. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:E2127–E2133

Omachi N, Shimizu S, Kawaguchi T, Tezuka K, Kanazu M, Tamiya A et al (2014) A case of large-cell neuroendocrine carcinoma harboring an EML4-ALK rearrangement with resistance to the ALK inhibitor crizotinib. J Thorac Oncol 9:e40–e42

Ortiz-Cuaran S, Scheffler M, Plenker D, Dahmen L, Scheel AH, Fernandez-Cuesta L et al (2016) Heterogeneous mechanisms of primary and acquired resistance to third-generation EGFR inhibitors. Clin Cancer Res 22:4837–4847

Oser MG, Niederst MJ, Sequist LV, Engelman JA (2015) Transformation from non-small-cell lung cancer to small-cell lung cancer: molecular drivers and cells of origin. Lancet Oncol 16: e165–e172

Ou S-HI, Tan J, Yen Y, Soo RA (2012) ROS1 as a "druggable" receptor tyrosine kinase: lessons learned from inhibiting the ALK pathway. Expert Rev Anticancer Ther 12:447–456

Ou SHI, Agarwal N, Ali SM (2016a) High MET amplification level as a resistance mechanism to osimertinib (AZD9291) in a patient that symptomatically responded to crizotinib treatment post-osimertinib progression. Lung Cancer 98:59–61

Ou S-HI, Young L, Schrock AB, Johnson A, Klempner SJ, Zhu VW et al (2016b) Emergence of pre-existing MET Y1230C mutation as a resistance mechanism to crizotinib in NSCLC with MET exon 14 skipping. J Thorac Oncol 12:137–140

Oxnard GR, Thress K, Paweletz CP, Stetson D, Dougherty B, Lai Z et al (2015) Mechanisms of acquired resistance to AZD9291 in EGFRT790M positive lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 9(suppl 2):S207

Oxnard GR, Thress KS, Alden RS, Lawrance R, Paweletz CP, Cantarini M et al (2016) Association between plasma genotyping and outcomes of treatment with osimertinib (AZD9291) in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 34:3375–3382

Paez JG, Jänne PA, Lee JC, Tracy S, Greulich H, Gabriel S et al (2004) EGFR mutations in lung cancer: correlation with clinical response to gefitinib therapy. Science 304:1497–1500

Park K, Yu C-J, Kim S-W, Lin M-C, Sriuranpong V, Tsai C-M et al (2016) First-line erlotinib therapy until and beyond response evaluation criteria in solid tumors progression in Asian patients with epidermal growth factor receptor mutation-positive non-small-cell lung cancer: the ASPIRATION study. JAMA Oncol 2:305–312

Piotrowska Z, Niederst MJ, Karlovich CA, Wakelee HA, Neal JW, Mino-Kenudson M et al (2015) Heterogeneity underlies the emergence of $EGFR^{T790}$wild-type clones following treatment of T790M-positive cancers with a third-generation EGFR inhibitor. Cancer Discov 5:713–723

Planchard D, Loriot Y, André F, Gobert A, Auger N, Lacroix L et al (2015) EGFR-independent mechanisms of acquired resistance to AZD9291 in EGFR T790M-positive NSCLC patients. Ann Oncol 26:2073–2208

Planchard D, Kim TM, Mazieres J, Quoix E, Riely G, Barlesi F et al (2016a) Dabrafenib in patients with BRAFV600E-positive advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a single-arm, multicentre, open-label, phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol 17:642–650

Planchard D, Besse B, Groen HJ, Souquet PJ, Quoix E, Baik CS et al (2016b) Dabrafenib plus trametinib in patients with previously treated BRAF(V600E)-mutant metastatic non-small cell lung cancer: an open-label, multicentre phase 2 trial. Lancet Oncol 17:984–993

Reckamp KL, Melnikova VO, Karlovich C, Sequist LV, Camidge DR, Wakelee H et al (2016) A highly sensitive and quantitative test platform for detection of NSCLC EGFR mutations in urine and plasma. J Thorac Oncol 11:1690–1700

Redaelli S, Ceccon M, Antolini L, Rigolio R, Pirola A, Peronaci M et al (2016) Synergistic activity of ALK and mTOR inhibitors for the treatment of NPM-ALK positive lymphoma. Oncotarget 7:72886–72897

Remon J, Caramella C, Jovelet C, Lacroix L, Lawson A, Smalley S et al (2017) Osimertinib benefit in EGFR-mutant NSCLC patients with T790M-mutation detected by circulating tumour DNA. Ann Oncol [Epub ahead of print]

Rosell R, Moran T, Queralt C, Porta R, Cardenal F, Camps C et al (2009) Screening for epidermal growth factor receptor mutations in lung cancer. N Engl J Med 361:958–967

Rosell R, Carcereny E, Gervais R, Vergnenegre A, Massuti B, Felip E et al (2012) Erlotinib versus standard chemotherapy as first-line treatment for European patients with advanced EGFR mutation-positive non-small-cell lung cancer (EURTAC): a multicentre, open-label, randomised phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol 13:239–246

Rudin CM, Hong K, Streit M (2013) Molecular characterization of acquired resistance to the BRAF inhibitor dabrafenib in a patient with BRAF-mutant non-small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 8:e41–e42

Scagliotti GV, Parikh P, von Pawel J, Biesma B, Vansteenkiste J, Manegold C et al (2008) Phase III study comparing cisplatin plus gemcitabine with cisplatin plus pemetrexed in chemotherapy-naive patients with advanced-stage non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 26:3543–3551

Schmid S, Gautschi O, Rothschild S, Mark M, Froesch P, Klingbiel D et al (2016) Clinical outcome of ALK-positive non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) patients with de novo EGFR or KRAS co-mutations receiving tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI). J Thorac Oncol [Epub ahead of print]

Sequist LV, Waltman BA, Dias-Santagata D, Digumarthy S, Turke AB, Fidias P et al (2011) Genotypic and histological evolution of lung cancers acquiring resistance to EGFR inhibitors. Sci Transl Med 3:75ra26

Sequist LV, Soria JC, Goldman JW, Wakelee HA, Gadgeel SM, Varga A et al (2015) Rociletinib in EGFR-mutated non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 372:1700–1709

Sequist LV, Piotrowska Z, Niederst MJ, Heist RS, Digumarthy S, Shaw AT et al (2016) Osimertinib responses after disease progression in patients who had been receiving rociletinib. JAMA Oncol 2:541–543

Shaw AT, Kim D-W, Mehra R, Tan DSW, Felip E, Chow LQM et al (2014) Ceritinib in ALK-rearranged non–small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 370:1189–1197

Shaw AT, Friboulet L, Leshchiner I, Gainor JF, Bergqvist S, Brooun A et al (2015) Resensitization to crizotinib by the lorlatinib ALK resistance mutation L1198F. N Engl J Med 374:54–61

Siegel RL, Miller KD, Jemal A (2016) Cancer statistics 2016. CA Cancer J Clin 66:7–30

Solomon BJ, Mok T, Kim D-W, Wu Y-L, Nakagawa K, Mekhail T et al (2014) First-line crizotinib versus chemotherapy in ALK-positive lung cancer. N Engl J Med 371:2167–2177

Song A, Kim TM, Kim D-W, Kim S, Keam B, Lee S-H et al (2015) Molecular changes associated with acquired resistance to crizotinib in ROS1-rearranged non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 21:2379–2387

Soo R, Kim D-W, Yang JC-H, Park K, Stammberger U, Xiong H et al (2015) Highly selective c-Met inhibitor tepotinib plus gefitinib is active in Asian patients with c-Met+ NSCLC. Ann Oncol 26(suppl 9):ix143

Soria JC, Wu YL, Nakagawa K, Kim SW, Yang JJ, Ahn MJ et al (2015) Gefitinib plus chemotherapy versus placebo plus chemotherapy in EGFR-mutation-positive non-small-cell lung cancer after progression on first-line gefitinib (IMPRESS): a phase 3 randomised trial. Lancet Oncol 16:990–998

Soria JC, Kim SW, Wu YL, Nakagawa K, Yang JJ, Ahn MJ et al (2016) Gefitinib/chemotherapy vs chemotherapy in EGFR mutation-positive NSCLC after progression on 1st line gefitinib (IMPRESS study): final overall survival (OS) analysis. Ann Oncol 27(suppl 6):1201O

Su KY, Chen HY, Li KC, Kuo ML, Yang JCH, Chan WK et al (2012) Pretreatment epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) T790M mutation predicts shorter EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor response duration in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 30:433–440

Suda K, Murakami I, Sakai K, Tomizawa K, Mizuuchi H, Sato K et al (2016) Heterogeneity in resistance mechanisms causes shorter duration of epidermal growth factor receptor kinase inhibitor treatment in lung cancer. Lung Cancer 91:36–40

Suda K, Bunn PA, Rivard CJ, Mitsudomi T, Hirsch FR (2017) Primary double-strike therapy for cancers to overcome EGFR kinase inhibitor resistance: proposal from the bench. J Thorac Oncol 12:27–35

Sundaresan TK, Sequist LV, Heymach JV, Riely GJ, Jänne PA, Koch WH et al (2016) Detection of T790M, the acquired resistance EGFR mutation, by tumor biopsy versus noninvasive blood-based analyses. Clin Cancer Res 22:1103–1110

Takegawa N, Hayashi H, Iizuka N, Takahama T, Ueda H, Tanaka K et al (2016) Transformation of ALK rearrangement-positive adenocarcinoma to small-cell lung cancer in association with acquired resistance to alectinib. Ann Oncol 27:953–955

Takezawa K, Pirazzoli V, Arcila ME, Nebhan CA, Song X, de Stanchina E et al (2012) HER2 amplification: a potential mechanism of acquired resistance to EGFR inhibition in EGFR-mutant lung cancers that lack the second-site EGFR T790M mutation. Cancer Discov 2:922–933

Thomson S, Buck E, Petti F, Griffin G, Brown E, Ramnarine N et al (2005) Epithelial to mesenchymal transition is a determinant of sensitivity of non-small-cell lung carcinoma cell lines and xenografts to epidermal growth factor receptor inhibition. Cancer Res 65:9455–9462

Thress KS, Paweletz CP, Felip E, Cho BC, Stetson D, Dougherty B et al (2015) Acquired EGFR C797S mutation mediates resistance to AZD9291 in non-small cell lung cancer harboring EGFR T790M. Nat Med 21:560–562

Toyokawa G, Inamasu E, Shimamatsu S, Yoshida T, Nosaki K, Hirai F et al (2015) Identification of a novel ALK G1123S mutation in a patient with ALK-rearranged non-small-cell lung cancer exhibiting resistance to ceritinib. J Thorac Oncol 10:e55–e57

Tricker EM, Xu C, Uddin S, Capelletti M, Ercan D, Ogino A et al (2015) Combined EGFR/MEK inhibition prevents the emergence of resistance in EGFR-mutant lung cancer. Cancer Discov 5:960–971

Tseng JS, Yang TY, Tsai CR, Chen KC, Hsu KH, Tsai MH et al (2015) Dynamic plasma EGFR mutation status as a predictor of EGFR-TKI efficacy in patients with EGFR-mutant lung adenocarcinoma. J Thorac Oncol 10:603–610

Turke AB, Zejnullahu K, Wu YL, Song Y, Dias-Santagata D, Lifshits E et al (2010) Preexistence and clonal selection of MET amplification in EGFR mutant NSCLC. Cancer Cell 17:77–88

Ulivi P, Chiadini E, Dazzi C, Dubini A, Costantini M, Medri L et al (2016) Nonsquamous, non-small-cell lung cancer patients who carry a double mutation of EGFR, EML4-ALK or KRAS: frequency, clinical-pathological characteristics, and response to therapy. Clin Lung Cancer 17:384–390

Wang L, Hu H, Pan Y, Wang R, Li Y, Shen L et al (2014) PIK3CA mutations frequently coexist with EGFR/KRAS mutations in non-small cell lung cancer and suggest poor prognosis in EGFR/KRAS wildtype subgroup. PLoS One 9:e0088291

Weickhardt AJ, Scheier B, Burke JM, Gan G, Lu X, Bunn PA et al (2012) Local ablative therapy of oligoprogressive disease prolongs disease control by tyrosine kinase inhibitors in oncogene-addicted non-small-cell lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol 7:1807–1814

Woo CG, Seo S, Kim SW, Jang SJ, Park KS, Song JY et al (2016) Differential protein stability and clinical responses of EML4-ALK fusion variants to various ALK inhibitors in advanced ALK-rearranged non-small cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol [Epub ahead of print]

Wu JY, Yu CJ, Chang YC, Yang CH, Shih JY, Yang PC (2011) Effectiveness of tyrosine kinase inhibitors on "uncommon" epidermal growth factor receptor mutations of unknown clinical significance in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 17:3812–3821

Wu H, Shih JY, Yang JC (2015) Rapid response to sunitinib in a patient with lung adenocarcinoma harboring KIF5B-RET fusion gene. J Thorac Oncol 10:e95–e96

Wu YL, Kim DW, Felip E, Zhang L, Liu X, Zhou CC et al (2016) Phase (Ph) II safety and efficacy results of a single-arm ph ib/II study of capmatinib (INC280) + gefitinib in patients (pts) with EGFR-mutated (mut), cMET-positive (cMET +) non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). J Clin Oncol 34:(suppl;abstr 9020)

Yang JCH, Wu YL, Schuler M, Sebastian M, Popat S, Yamamoto N et al (2015) Afatinib versus cisplatin-based chemotherapy for EGFR mutation-positive lung adenocarcinoma (LUX-lung 3 and LUX-lung 6): analysis of overall survival data from two randomised, phase 3 trials. Lancet Oncol 16:141–151

Yang J, Ramalingam SS, Jänne PA, Cantarini M, Mitsudomi T (2016) Osimertinib (AZD9291) in pre-treated pts with T790M-positive advanced NSCLC: updated phase 1 (P1) and pooled phase 2 (P2) results. J Thorac Oncol 11(suppl 4):S152–S153

Yap TA, Macklin-Doherty A, Popat S (2017) Continuing EGFR inhibition beyond progression in advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Eur J Cancer 70:12–21

Yasuda H, Park E, Yun CH, Sng NJ, Lucena-Araujo AR, Yeo WL et al (2013) Structural, biochemical, and clinical characterization of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) exon 20 insertion mutations in lung cancer. Sci Transl Med 5:216ra177

Yoh K, Seto T, Satouchi M, Nishio M, Yamamoto N, Murakami H et al (2017) Vandetanib in patients with previously treated RET-rearranged advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (LURET): an open-label, multicentre phase 2 trial. Lancet Respir Med 5:42–50

Yoshida T, Oya Y, Tanaka K, Shimizu J, Horio Y, Kuroda H et al (2016) Differential crizotinib response duration among ALK fusion variants in ALK-positive non-small-cell lung cancer. J Clin Oncol 34:3383–3389

Yu HA, Arcila ME, Rekhtman N, Sima CS, Zakowski MF, Pao W et al (2013a) Analysis of tumor specimens at the time of acquired resistance to EGFR-TKI therapy in 155 patients with EGFR-mutant lung cancers. Clin Cancer Res 19:2240–2247

Yu HA, Sima CS, Huang J, Solomon SB, Rimner A, Paik P et al (2013b) Local therapy with continued EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy as a treatment strategy in EGFR-mutant advanced lung cancers that have developed acquired resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors. J Thorac Oncol 8:346–351

Zhang Z, Lee JC, Lin L, Olivas V, Au V, LaFramboise T et al (2012) Activation of the AXL kinase causes resistance to EGFR-targeted therapy in lung cancer. Nat Genet 44:852–860

Zou H, Friboulet L, Kodack D, Engstrom L, Li Q, West M et al (2015) PF-06463922, an ALK/ROS1 inhibitor, overcomes resistance to first and second generation ALK inhibitors in preclinical odels. Cancer Cell 28:70–81

Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Melanoma

Matthew Winder and Amaya Virós

Contents

1 Melanoma Incidence and Clinical Subtypes 92
2 Melanoma Treatment Overview 93
3 The Rationale for Targeted Therapies in Melanoma 93
4 RAF Inhibition in Melanoma 95
5 Tumour Cell Intrinsic or Autonomous Resistance to RAF Inhibition in Melanoma due to Mutational or Genetic Events 95
6 Tumour Cell Intrinsic or Autonomous Resistance to RAF Inhibition in Melanoma due to Non-mutational Events 97
7 Tumour Cell Extrinsic or Microenvironmental Resistance to RAF Inhibition in Melanoma 99
8 Immunotherapies in Melanoma 100
9 Intrinsic and Adaptive Resistance to Immunotherapies in Melanoma 101
10 Conclusions and Future Avenues 102
Acknowledgements 103
References 103

Abstract

Metastatic melanoma is associated with poor outcome and is largely refractory to the historic standard of care. In recent years, the development of targeted small-molecule inhibitors and immunotherapy has revolutionised the care and improved the overall survival of these patients. Therapies targeting BRAF and MEK to block the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway were the

M. Winder
Skin Cancer and Ageing, Cancer Research UK Manchester Institute, The University of Manchester, Wilmslow Road, Manchester M20 4BX, UK

A. Virós (✉)
Skin Cancer and Ageing, Cancer Research UK Manchester Institute, The University of Manchester, Wilmslow Road, Manchester M20 4BX, UK
Salford Royal NHS Foundation Trust, Manchester, UK
e-mail: Amaya.Viros@cruk.manchester.ac.uk

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_17

first to show unprecedented clinical responses. Following these encouraging results, antibodies targeting immune checkpoint inhibition molecules cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4), programmed cell death (PD)-1, and PD-ligand1(PD-L1) demonstrated sustained tumour regression in a significant subset of patients by enabling an anti-tumour immunologic response. Despite these landmark changes in practice, the majority of patients are either intrinsically resistant or rapidly acquire resistance to MAPK pathway inhibitors and immune checkpoint blockade treatment. The lack of response can be driven by mutations and non-mutational events in tumour cells, as well as by changes in the surrounding tumour microenvironment. Common resistance mechanisms bypass the dependence of tumour cells on initial MAPK pathway driver mutations during targeted therapy, and permit evasion of the host immune system to allow melanoma growth and survival following immunotherapy. This highlights the requirement for personalised treatment regimens that take into account patient-specific genetic and immunologic characteristics. Here we review the mechanisms by which melanomas display intrinsic resistance or acquire resistance to targeted therapy and immunotherapy.

Keywords

Acquired resistance • BRAF inhibitor • Checkpoint inhibitor • Immunotherapy • Intrinsic resistance • MAPK pathway • MEK inhibitor • Melanoma • Targeted therapy

1 Melanoma Incidence and Clinical Subtypes

Malignant melanoma accounts for >80% of skin cancer-related deaths despite representing <1% of cases (NICE 2015). The current incidence and mortality of melanoma in Europe is over 100,000 new cases and over 22,000 deaths each year (http://www.IARC.fr). In most European countries rates are doubling every decade and in many countries melanoma will soon be the fourth most common cancer (Ferlay et al. 2013). The yearly incidence in the UK is 12,000 cases, which is rising by ~2% per year, and approximately 2,000 patients die from advanced disease. Approximately one third of melanoma patients are under 50 years of age, so this cancer disproportionately affects the elderly population (NICE 2015).

Melanoma stems from the malignant transformation of melanocytes, which are neural crest-derived, and migrate during development to colonise the skin, eye, and in scarce numbers, other tissues of the body. The most common type of melanoma arises from melanocytes in the skin and predominantly affects the population of European descent (Whiteman and Green 1999). The only known environmental risk factor for cutaneous melanoma is ultraviolet radiation (UVR) and informing the population at risk remains a public health challenge (Gilchrest et al. 1999). Previous efforts to use environmental factors to classify cutaneous melanoma include proposals for a divergent pathway model (Whiteman and Green 1999), where UVR exposure pattern, host susceptibility, and the site of the primary lesion are

used as criteria to identify epidemiologically uniform subsets of patients. Indeed, cutaneous melanoma arising at sites chronically exposed to UVR (head and neck) is more likely to occur in adults with a high lifetime accumulation of UVR exposure, whereas melanomas arising at sites that are only intermittently exposed to UVR (trunk) appear in younger patients who received a lower lifetime exposure. This group of patients were more likely to report intermittent UVR exposure on the trunk through recreational activities (Whiteman et al. 2003; Curtin et al. 2005; Chang et al. 2009).

The most common founder mutation in melanomas arising in patients younger than 55 years of age is ^{V600E}BRAF (Davies et al. 2002; Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2015). In contrast, melanomas arising in the elderly are more likely to be driven by mutations in *NRAS*, *NF1* and *BRAF* mutations that do not affect the codon V600 (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2015; Krauthammer et al. 2015; Shain and Bastian 2016). Thus, the protein kinase BRAF is mutated in almost half of all cutaneous melanomas, and *BRAF* mutations are more frequently found to drive melanomas arising over skin that has been only intermittently exposed to sun such as the trunk and upper limbs (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2015; Shain and Bastian 2016; Shain et al. 2015).

2 Melanoma Treatment Overview

Until the last decade, the standard of care for advanced disease included surgical resection, chemotherapy with the alkylating agent dacarbazine (DTIC), and high-dose interleukin 2 (IL-2), which only led to durable responses in a few patients with metastatic disease. The only approved adjuvant treatment for patients at high risk of progression was interferon-α-2b. Despite these treatments, metastatic melanoma remained associated with extremely poor prognosis and only curable if detected at an early, pre-metastatic stage (Balch et al. 2009). More recently, insights into the molecular mechanisms driving melanomagenesis have led to the development of targeted therapies, and the advances in immune checkpoint inhibitor therapies have also contributed to a revolution in melanoma care.

3 The Rationale for Targeted Therapies in Melanoma

One of the principal signalling pathways in melanoma is the MAPK pathway, which signals via RAS (Young et al. 2009; Stephen et al. 2014) and RAF (Davies et al. 2002; Wan et al. 2004; Marais et al. 1997). The signalling cascade is triggered by stimulatory input from extracellular growth factors, cytokines and hormones that bind to the receptor tyrosine kinases (RTK) on the cell membrane (Schlessinger 2000). Once activated, the RTKs form stable dimers that undergo phosphorylation at multiple tyrosine residues that are in the cytosolic component of the protein. This chemical change drives activation of RAS proteins, and downstream proteins BRAF and CRAF, leading to activation and phosphorylation of the dual-specificity

kinases MEK1 and MEK2; which in turn phosphorylate ERK1 and ERK2 (Holderfield et al. 2014). ERK proteins then phosphorylate approximately 50 cytoplasmic and nuclear proteins to control cell proliferation, differentiation, adhesion and migration (Roberts and Der 2007). This powerful signalling pathway presents negative regulators that limit ERK effects supplying feedback mechanism systems (Lito et al. 2013). In addition to the MAPK pathway, however, extracellular stimuli may affect multiple other pathways. Of particular significance to melanoma is the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway, which is upregulated across many cancer types (Fruman and Rommel 2014). Critically, these signalling pathways not only drive signals in a single direction from the extracellular space to the nucleus, but also interconnect at different levels creating a complex network (Fey et al. 2012). Thus, targeted therapies aim to not only interfere with a single signalling axis but also aim to target secondary signalling streams that the tumour may use to circumvent the target of a single node within the network.

Nearly half of all cutaneous melanomas present a gain-of-function (GOF) mutation in the *BRAF* gene at the codon V600, which constitutively drives MAPK pathway activation via MEK1/2 and ERK1/2 (Davies et al. 2002; Wan et al. 2004). A single activating mutation in the V600 codon of *BRAF*, which usually leads to substitution of a valine residue to glutamic acid residue (V600E) (Dhomen et al. 2009), renders BRAF constitutively active but is not enough to drive tumour initiation (Pollock et al. 2003). Additional hits in tumour suppressors *PTEN* (Dankort et al. 2009), *TP53* (Goel et al. 2009) or *CDKN2A* (Sharpless et al. 2003) are required to progress melanomagenesis. Critically, in physiological conditions where BRAF is wild type, RAF proteins dimerise upon activation (Wan et al. 2004; Luo et al. 1996; Farrar et al. 1996). By contrast, ^{V600E}BRAF is able to dimerise with CRAF (Wan et al. 2004), a RAF family protein, and function as a monomer vulnerable to inhibition (Poulikakos et al. 2011).

The second most common mutation is a GOF at codons G12/13 (approximately 5% of melanomas) or Q61 (17% of melanomas) of NRAS (Sekiya et al. 1984; Albino et al. 1989; van't Veer et al. 1989). BRAF and NRAS mutations occur in a mutually exclusive pattern in pre-treatment samples (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2015). NRAS presents GTPase activity and when wild type, following the phosphorylation of RTKs, is activated by a guanine nucleotide exchange factor (GEF), which permits the exchange of GDP for GTP (Young et al. 2009). When RAS is mutated, it remains in GTP-bound state (Katz and McCormick 1997). RAS signals downstream by a variety of pathways, including both the MAPK and PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathways, and in human melanoma and mouse models of NRAS melanoma, like in BRAF, there is synergy to drive tumour progression when RAS alterations are combined with additional genetic hits in *CDKN2A*, *TP53* and *PTEN* (Feng et al. 2013; Conde-Perez and Larue 2014). Critically, there are currently no successful drugs in clinic targeting oncogenic RAS.

In the tumours that are wild type for both BRAF and NRAS mutations, the more frequent identified drivers are *NF1* loss-of-function (LOF) mutations, as well as alterations in *KIT*, *TERT* and CCND1 (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2015; Krauthammer et al. 2015; Shain et al. 2015; Hodis et al. 2012).

4 RAF Inhibition in Melanoma

The discovery of the BRAF oncogene and MAPK pathway signalling led to the development of targeted BRAF inhibition therapy (vemurafenib (Chapman et al. 2011; Sosman et al. 2012; McArthur et al. 2014) and dabrafenib (Hauschild et al. 2012)) and targeted MEK kinase inhibition (trametinib (Flaherty et al. 2012)), although MEK inhibitor trials have shown less impressive responses than BRAF inhibitors. More recently, combination therapies have improved initial monotherapy results (Long et al. 2014; Ascierto et al. 2016). These new drugs achieve improved progression-free and overall survival, and about 90% of patients show some improvement and tumour regression, with up to approximately 50% achieving partial or complete responses. Although these responses are encouraging, the response to these drugs is limited, with only a small subset of patients developing long-term, durable responses. Unfortunately, approximately 50% of patients that present an initial improvement generally relapse within 7 months of treatment (acquired resistance) (Chapman et al. 2011; Hauschild et al. 2012). Additionally, there are about 10% of patients who do not respond to the targeted inhibition at all, and these are termed intrinsic or primary resistant to targeted therapy. Importantly, BRAF inhibitors lead to characteristic side effects, including photosensitivity, which can limit treatment, and the rapid development of cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma (cuSCC) (Su et al. 2012). Keratinocytic secondary neoplasia are thought to arise due to the paradoxical activation of the MAPK pathway in keratinocytes that are wild type for BRAF but present upstream RAS activation in chronically damaged skin (Su et al. 2012). In this cellular context, the BRAF inhibitor leads to increased downstream ERK signalling in BRAF wild type keratinocytes that give rise to cuSCC (Heidorn et al. 2010). Thus, combining BRAF and ERK inhibitors was predicted to decrease this side effect, and indeed, this combination treatment not only was demonstrably linked to improved progression free and overall survival compared to BRAF inhibitor in monotherapy (Larkin et al. 2014; Robert et al. 2015) but also decreased development of cuSCC. However, as in BRAF inhibitor monotherapy, resistance develops in most melanoma patients, and great efforts have been invested to understand how and when tumours resist or stop responding.

5 Tumour Cell Intrinsic or Autonomous Resistance to RAF Inhibition in Melanoma due to Mutational or Genetic Events

Resistance to BRAF inhibitors is predominantly linked to reactivation of the MAPK pathway (Lito et al. 2013; Nazarian et al. 2010; Maertens et al. 2013; Whittaker et al. 2013). As monomeric ^{V600E}BRAF is the relevant target of RAF inhibitors, all changes that increase the proportion of RAF dimerisation likely decrease sensitivity to BRAF inhibitors (Poulikakos et al. 2011). Following the rationale that increasing RAS signalling to drive RAF heterodimer formation should decrease therapy

response, we find that upstream, acquired GOF mutations in *RAS* (Nazarian et al. 2010), LOF mutations in *NF1* (Maertens et al. 2013) and several GOF mutations in RTKs (Whittaker et al. 2013) have all shown to drive tumour resistance. Apart from these mechanisms that reactivate RAS, there are structural changes in oncogenic BRAF due to aberrant splicing that can lead to resistance (Poulikakos et al. 2011; Solit and Rosen 2011). For example, p61-^{V600E}BRAF splice variants retain an active kinase activity but are unable to bind RAS. They dimerise regardless of RAS status and drive constitutive signalling to ERK, uncoupled from upstream regulation (Poulikakos et al. 2011). More recently, a screen for resistance mechanisms using patient derived xenografts (PDX) found that duplications of the BRAF kinase domain led to resistance in approximately 10% of PDX (Kemper et al. 2016). This was found to hold true in a validation cohort of resistant patient samples. Additional drivers of resistance are the increased expression of CRAF or copy number increase of BRAF, which possibly also drive dimer formation and increase signalling throughput.

There are also mechanisms of resistance that arise downstream of the inhibition site BRAF within the MAPK cascade, that bypass the effect of the drug. Importantly, the specific mutations in *MEK1* (*MAP2K1*) coding amino acid changes P124L and Q56P are able to decrease response to BRAF inhibition (Wagle et al. 2011), but not all MEK1 somatic mutations lead to equivalent reactivation of the pathway downstream of MEK1 (Shi et al. 2012). Additionally, the increased expression of the MAPK kinase kinase COT (*MAP3K8*) is thought to lead to direct activation of MEK1, circumventing RAF inhibition (Johannessen et al. 2010). More recently, the role of ERK reactivation driving resistance has been further highlighted by massively parallel sequencing efforts revealing mutations in genes encoding for proteins in the cohesion complex that participate in the organisation of chromatids, *STAG2* and *STAG3* (Shen et al. 2016). Mutant proteins are shown to drive the reactivation of ERK signalling to drive resistance by inhibiting the expression of the phosphatase DUSP6, an inhibitor and regulator of ERK activity in melanoma. Other implicated negative regulators include the LOF of DUSP4 (Shen et al. 2016).

Further molecular alternatives driving resistance are the activation of parallel signalling, such as the activation of PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway by deletion or inactivating mutations of the negative pathway regulator and tumour suppressor *PTEN* (Xing et al. 2012), and the inactivation of the tumour suppressor *RB1* (Xing et al. 2012) to decrease the requirement for BRAF/MEK signalling. The discovery of these contributing signalling pathways provides new rationales of second-line therapies, as demonstrated by the success of combinations of MAPK and PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway inhibitors to overcome acquired resistance to monotherapy targeting BRAF alone (Greger et al. 2012).

To add further complexity, patients who present disease progression following initial therapeutic response to BRAF inhibition are more likely to progress presenting metastasis at previously uninvolved sites, and there is a selection for more aggressive clones (Paraiso et al. 2015). Importantly, tumour heterogeneity and heterogeneous mechanisms of resistance are present in tumours and at different

metastatic sites simultaneously (Shi et al. 2014). Recent efforts to dissect the degree of heterogeneity and its clinical implications have led to transcriptional studies targeting thousands of single tumour cells, and show that at the cellular level in all tumours, there are distinct transcriptional patterns within each tumour that display varying degrees of predicted responsiveness to BRAF inhibition (Tirosh et al. 2016). Thus, there are subclones of cells, in varying proportions within each tumour, expressing molecular programmes that make them less likely to respond to therapy and vulnerable to selection during disease progression (Tirosh et al. 2016).

6 Tumour Cell Intrinsic or Autonomous Resistance to RAF Inhibition in Melanoma due to Non-mutational Events

As described above, additional genetic damage to *PTEN* or *RB1* leads to activation of alternative signalling pathways that will lead to therapeutic failure (Xing et al. 2012). However, we already observe the activation of parallel signalling pathways, leading to progressive "dampening" (adaptation) of response to BRAF inhibitors during therapy in the absence of additional genetic hits. This occurs because there is a progressive switch of cells to rely on other signalling pathways such as PI3K/AKT as a natural consequence of the new pressures exerted by BRAF inhibition (Lito et al. 2012). This rewiring or switch happens because BRAF inhibitors will initially shut down transcription of key targets of proliferation, leading to response, via suppression of ERK function, but will also decrease the expression of negative pathway regulators downstream of ERK such as DUSP6 (negative regulator of ERK activity) and Sprouty (*SPRY* (Tsavachidou et al. 2004); inhibitor of GRB2, an adaptor protein transducing signals between RTKs and RAS) (Lito et al. 2013; Lito et al. 2012). Thus, inherent tumour cell adaptation to targeted therapy, in the absence of additional genetic events, per se provides an explanation for progressive decline in therapeutic response.

Another way tumour cells co-opt established biological cellular signalling pathways to advance tumour progression in the absence of genetic mutations is by up-regulation or activation of RTKs (Whittaker et al. 2013). Tumour cells express multiple RTKs that integrate extracellular signals to modulate intracellular events feeding multiple cascades that will affect the fundamental MAPK and PI3K/AKT pathways, and influence proliferation and survival. Therefore, up-regulation of RTKs and increases in soluble RTK ligands and growth factors are all described mechanisms to reduce innate drug sensitivity and drive acquired resistance. Critical RTKs that are implicated in reducing response to treatment due to activation or up-regulation include MET, IFG-1R (Villanueva et al. 2010), EGFR and PDGFRbeta (Wilson et al. 2012). In melanoma, the expression of the RTK ligand HGF is a well-known driver of poor response (Straussman et al. 2012).

Both the expression and loss of MITF, the critical melanoma lineage survival factor, are additional mechanisms of resistance to BRAF pathway inhibition. MITF

plays a central role in ensuring melanocyte survival, and regulates multiple critical survival and antiapoptotic genes (Levy et al. 2006).

Different MITF expression levels have been linked to distinct melanoma tumour and cell behaviour, where high levels mediate differentiation, moderate levels promote proliferation, and low/absent levels drive a more invasive phenotype (Levy et al. 2006). Therefore, the multifaceted role of MITF as a consequence of varying expression levels, with seemingly opposing effects, is further mirrored during the development of resistance. Specifically, overexpression of MITF reduces the therapeutic effect of BRAF inhibitors (Johannessen et al. 2013; Smith et al. 2016; Haq et al. 2013; Van Allen et al. 2014), MEK inhibitors (Smith et al. 2013) and combination treatments (Shi et al. 2014) via increased cAMP pathway signalling (Johannessen et al. 2013).

However, at the other end of the expression spectrum, loss of MITF is also a common occurrence in acquired resistance (Muller et al. 2014). Critically, in cell clones down-regulating MITF, there is an inversely correlated up-regulation of the RTK AXL that enhances tumour resistance. The expression programme in MITF low/AXL high tumours is implicated in driving the resistant phenotype and has now been found to exist in a continuum in subsets of tumour cells that may otherwise express a predominating "AXL low" expression programme that would predict response. A recent study has found the expression programme observed in "MITF low/AXL high" resistant samples can already be detected at the single cell level in treatment-naïve samples, and these transcriptomic features are subsequently increased in resistant, progressive disease (Muller et al. 2014; Konieczkowski et al. 2014). Additionally, the neighbouring stromal cells also influence the expression programme at the single cell level (Tirosh et al. 2016).

A landmark 2015 study performed transcriptome and methylome analysis of matched melanoma samples taken before treatment and during disease progression. One of the critical findings in this paper is that resistant samples displayed a more homogeneous pattern of expression that was in contrast to heterogeneity shown at the DNA level. The acquired resistance transcriptome correlated with YAP1 enrichment, MET high and LEF1 low expression levels. Moreover, MAPK pathway inhibition with targeted therapies led to direct methylation changes that were therapy time-dependent, affecting key regulatory genes and the transcriptome across the resistant samples. One of the other striking findings in the paper is that in resistant samples, there is a predominance of NF-Kβ inflammation that correlates with monocyte expression and M2 macrophages (tumour associated macrophages), suggesting MAPK pathway inhibition affects the inflammatory context of the tumour. Indeed, as a consequence of the M2 switch in macrophage phenotype, the researchers observed that as MAPK pathway inhibitor resistance arose, there was a parallel increase in $CD8^+$ T cell deficiency, exhaustion of the cell population and down-regulation of the antigen presentation molecules in about half the resistant samples (Hugo et al. 2015). Thus, this shows that the study of resistance must extend beyond DNA analysis to incorporate non-genomic approaches with a focus on the consequences on the tumour as well as on the immune tumour ecosystem. Unravelling these changes impacts the therapeutic options of patients, as this work

shows that when patients progress on targeted therapies they likely respond less to immunotherapy. Providing further evidence of how a deep understanding of the immune context underpins therapeutic choice, there are data to support the up-regulation of PD-L1 and the tumour-infiltrating immune populations in metastatic melanoma before MAPK inhibition are associated with progression and survival (Hugo et al. 2017; Massi et al. 2015).

7 Tumour Cell Extrinsic or Microenvironmental Resistance to RAF Inhibition in Melanoma

Research focus into the mechanisms of drug resistance in melanoma has predominantly centred on properties intrinsic to tumour cells, but disease progression and resistance to targeted therapies is no longer considered an exclusive function of genomic and non-genomic modifications of tumour cells. The importance of the tumour microenvironment in supporting resistance to MAPK inhibition is slowly unravelling, and a more complex, comprehensive interpretation must incorporate knowledge of cross talk between discrete cellular compartments including the tumour and supporting stroma (Tape et al. 2016). As we have already alluded to, recent studies delineate a clear contribution of macrophages and fibroblast-derived factors that are well known to confer resistance to MAPK pathway inhibitors.

Fibroblasts are well-known facilitators of melanoma progression, and there is a bidirectional communication through direct cell-to-cell contact and via the secretion of soluble factors to promote melanoma invasion, survival and growth (Li et al. 2003). In melanoma, an extrinsic, non-cell autonomous signal leading to HGF secretion by the stromal cells may lead to resistance (Straussman et al. 2012). HGF can bind to RTKs that will increase intracellular signalling to drive up-regulation of RAS, and ultimately, reactivation of MAPK pathway (Straussman et al. 2012). Furthermore, HGF is also known to contribute to resistance in human cell lines treated with a BRAF inhibitor by down-regulating the pro-apoptotic response. A more recent paper investigated how genetically unharmed stroma evolves under treatment with targeted therapy. Importantly, they demonstrated that in areas of high stromal density, fibroblasts present a hyperactivation of MAPK pathway that elicits a qualitative change in the tumour matrix via integrin β1 and FAK to induce ERK, providing an early subset of melanoma cells with the capacity to rapidly tolerate treatment (Hirata et al. 2015). Moreover, the effect of fibroblasts may vary in patients who are elderly, as melanoma cells in contact with aged fibroblasts are more invasive (Kaur et al. 2016). A recent study has shown that aged fibroblasts increase the secretion of sFRP2, a β-catenin inhibitor that decreases MITF expression, leading to downregulation of the redox regulator APE1, thus rendering melanoma cells more sensitive to oxidative stress and secondarily driving resistance to BRAF inhibition (Kaur et al. 2016). Together, all these studies demonstrate that melanoma cells and fibroblasts are both under pressure to adapt to targeted inhibitors. Thus, fibroblasts change their matrix providing melanoma

cells with a new microenvironment that will enable adjacent tumour cells to evade therapy at a very early stage.

Additional stromal cells that play a demonstrated role in the development of resistance are macrophages (Ruffell and Coussens 2015). Tumours from patients treated with MAPK pathway inhibitors present an increased density of tumour-associated macrophages. These tumour macrophages secrete the melanoma growth factor TNFα that drives, in an NF-kβ-dependent manner, the expression of MITF, leading to resistance (Smith et al. 2014). Moreover, studies show that combination of MAPK and NF-kβ inhibitors delay the appearance of resistance (Smith et al. 2014). TNFα is known to block apoptosis in cells where BRAF is inhibited, and additionally contributes to melanoma invasion and vascularisation of tumours (Gray-Schopfer et al. 2007). As TNFα and NF-kβ play context-specific roles within cancer progression, it will be critical to further investigate whether the signalling pathways described to promote therapy failure secondary to macrophage infiltration hold true across different cancer types and other targeted therapies. These studies, together with the recent discovery that MAPK pathway inhibition leads to $CD8^+$ T cell depletion, highlight how the pressure exerted by novel MAPK inhibitor therapies not only impact tumour evolution by genomic and non-genomic events, but also shape the behaviour of the supporting connective tissue and immune cell populations and function.

8 Immunotherapies in Melanoma

Another landmark change in melanoma therapy has been the development of antibodies to elicit an antitumor immunologic response (Brahmer et al. 2012; Hodi et al. 2010; Topalian et al. 2012; Kaufman et al. 2013; Mellman et al. 2011; Topalian et al. 2014; Wolchok et al. 2013). These novel therapies target the immune checkpoints that exist in physiological conditions to counterbalance immune activation. In cancer, these critical signalling barriers inhibit the activation of antitumoural immune responses. The inhibition of these checkpoints allows the immune system to target cancer cells and leads to long-term disease control. In melanoma, there is improved survival by targeting the cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA-4) checkpoint molecule, the inhibitory T-cell receptor programmed death 1 (PD-1) receptor and the PD-1 ligand PD-L1. The mechanisms of action have been extensively reviewed. Other novel immunotherapies include adoptive T cell therapy, which is based on the isolation and ex vivo expansion of T cells that are tumour-specific (Restifo et al. 2012). This therapy allows the vast expansion of T cells, which are then infused into patients to target tumour cells. However, there is great variability of response to immunotherapies across different cancer types, and even within cancer types where immunotherapy is successful, such as melanoma, lung cancer and renal cell cancer, there is a proportion of patients who never respond. Similarly to targeted therapy patients, these are termed intrinsically resistant patients. There is also a subset of patients who initially respond but later progress, indicating the development of acquired resistance to

immunotherapy. Thus, there are tumours that cannot be detected by the immune system (intrinsically resistant), and tumours where the cells adapt to immunotherapy and progressively outgrow the inhibition (adaptive immune resistance).

9 Intrinsic and Adaptive Resistance to Immunotherapies in Melanoma

Intrinsic resistance arises in cells that present genetic or non-genetic changes that afford the tumour natural resistance, as seen, for example, in tumours that express few molecular changes that are recognised as foreign by the immune system (Snyder et al. 2014; McGranahan et al. 2016). This affords one explanation as to why tumours with fewer mutation loads are less likely to respond to immunotherapy. During tumour evolution, there is a tendency for tumours to lose a proportion of their non-silent mutations, which can potentially lead to a lower ratio of antigenic epitopes, leading to immunoadaptation of tumours (Rooney et al. 2015). One of the necessary elements linked to response is the presence of pre-existing T cells within the tumour. The absence of effector T cells within a melanoma has been linked in humans and mice to melanoma-cell-intrinsic oncogenic activation of the WNT/β-catenin pathway (Spranger et al. 2015; Spranger and Gajewski 2016). Importantly, analysis of pre-anti-PD-1 treatment and post-treatment samples has shown a greater proportion of mutations in the DNA repair gene *BRCA2* in responding patients (Hugo et al. 2017). By contrast, the samples that are intrinsically resistant to anti-PD-1 therapy have upregulation of genes involved in a non-melanocytic, more mesenchymal behaviour (*AXL*, *ROR2*, *WNT5A*, *LOXL2*, *TWIST2*, *TAGLN*, *FAP*), as well as genes involved in angiogenesis and wound healing (Hugo et al. 2017). Curiously, this expression profile significantly overlaps with the expression profile observed in samples that have developed resistance to MAPK pathway inhibition (Hugo et al. 2017), implying convergence of resistance-expression programmes.

Cooperating with the loss of antigenicity and the intrinsic characteristics in the tumour that render them more or less vulnerable to immunotherapy are additional mechanisms arising during immune response that directly inhibit tumour-targeting T cells. For example, resistances can be acquired by new resistance-driving mutations in genes involved in interferon-receptor signalling and in antigen presentation (Zaretsky et al. 2016). Additionally, during the initial phase of the interaction between a tumour cell and an antigen-specific T cell, the T cell produces interferon-γ (Ribas 2015; Peng et al. 2012). Interferon-γ signalling has a dual anti-tumour and immune inhibitor role in this interaction (Shankaran et al. 2001). It first serves as a mediator and amplifier of the immune effect, exerting a chemoattraction role to recruit further leukocytes, macrophages and natural killer T cells, but also has a second effect dampening the immune response to cancer cells by expressing factors aimed to reduce the immune anti-tumour effect (Rooney et al. 2015; Bald et al. 2014), such as indolamin 2.2 dioxygenase (IDO) (Peng et al. 2016). IDO is a critical enzyme that when expressed, interferes with

appropriate T cell function. Most critically, following an interferon-γ stimulus, T cells express the ligand PD-L1 that binds to the PD1 receptor leading to inactivation of T cells (Spranger et al. 2013; Tumeh et al. 2014; Pardoll 2012). Other interferon-γ-dependent checkpoints that have also been described to mediate inhibitory immune loops are most prominently the carcinoembryonic antigen cell adhesion molecule-1 (CEACAM1) that forms heterodimers with TIM-3, an activation-induced inhibition molecule involved in immune tolerance and T-cell exhaustion, to inhibit T cell function (Huang et al. 2015). This interaction is an attractive target for additional immune checkpoint blockade in cancers expressing CEACAM1 and TIM-3 (Huang et al. 2015).

There are additional interferon-independent mechanisms of adaptation to immunotherapy. For example, in some tumours, mutations in cancer cells affecting major signalling pathways per se can also lead to expression of PD-L1 in tumours (Parsa et al. 2007; Mittendorf et al. 2014; Marzec et al. 2008; Atefi et al. 2014; Akbay et al. 2013; Shin et al. 2016). There is also a $CD8^+$ T cell-dependent accumulation of regulatory T cells expressing $FOXP3^+$ that exert an inhibitory influence over the immune response, which is mediated by chemokine release (Spranger et al. 2013). Regulatory T cells are immunosuppressive, downregulate the proliferation and induction of effector T cells and are critical to control autoimmunity or excess immunity. Additionally, tumour specific T cells mounting an immune response during the killing of cancer cells produce the major modulating inflammatory cytokine TNFα, which leads to a decrease in the expression of melanoma-specific genes, involved in melanocyte lineage differentiation, and an increase in the expression of genes that signal dedifferentiation and a biological profile more in keeping with neural crest-derived cells or immature melanocytes (Ribas and Tumeh 2012). In adoptive T cell transfer therapy, melanoma evolves to a less differentiated state that mediates resistance due to TNFα secretion (Landsberg et al. 2012). Thus, the loss of melanoma-specific antigens provides another mechanism of immunoevasion. Furthermore, a seminal recent study shows progressive selection of non-immunogenic clones, a process termed immunoediting, occurs during cancer progression via a T cell-dependent immunoselection process (Matsushita et al. 2012).

Taken together, research shows the fine regulatory relationships aimed to deliver accurate immune responses to infection and limit excess cytotoxicity in homeostasis are co-opted to the tumours' advantage in cancer.

10 Conclusions and Future Avenues

There is a rapid changing landscape of therapies for advanced melanoma patients. Current efforts aim to enhance the efficacy of existing targeted and immunotherapies, by understanding the biology driving response and resistance to guide therapeutic care. One of the challenges is identifying the first line therapies or combinations of therapies that will lead to more prolonged clinical responses, taking into consideration the genetic and immunological differences in each patient.

Moreover, in this rapidly changing landscape of novel therapies, new strategies to overcome resistances are currently underway. For example, promising new drugs block the reactivation of MAPK pathway in both BRAF and NRAS tumours, without driving the paradoxical activation of the MAPK pathway (Girotti et al. 2015). Another novel approach to overcome resistance includes the disruption of mitochondrial biogenesis using the small-molecule HSP90 inhibitor gamitrinib (Zhang et al. 2016). New drug discovery efforts have also found encouraging results using compounds triggering ER Stress in MAPK inhibitor resistant cells (Cerezo et al. 2016). For novel immunotherapies, understanding the activation levels of significant checkpoint molecules and the immunosuppressive context within each tumour sample will aid physicians select appropriate therapies or combinations of therapies to improve survival.

Acknowledgements

MW is funded by Cancer Research UK and AV is funded by Wellcome Trust (110078/Z/15/Z).

References

Akbay EA et al (2013) Activation of the PD-1 pathway contributes to immune escape in EGFR-driven lung tumors. Cancer Discov 3:1355–1363. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-0310

Albino AP et al (1989) Analysis of Ras oncogenes in malignant melanoma and precursor lesions: correlation of point mutations with differentiation phenotype. Oncogene 4:1363–1374

Ascierto PA et al (2016) Cobimetinib combined with vemurafenib in advanced BRAF(V600)-mutant melanoma (coBRIM): updated efficacy results from a randomised, double-blind, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol 17:1248–1260. doi:10.1016/S1470-2045(16)30122-X

Atefi M et al (2014) Effects of MAPK and PI3K pathways on PD-L1 expression in melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 20:3446–3457. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2797

Balch CM et al (2009) Final version of 2009 AJCC melanoma staging and classification. J Clin Oncol 27:6199–6206. doi:10.1200/JCO.2009.23.4799

Bald T et al (2014) Immune cell-poor melanomas benefit from PD-1 blockade after targeted type I IFN activation. Cancer Discov 4:674–687. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-0458

Brahmer JR et al (2012) Safety and activity of anti-PD-L1 antibody in patients with advanced cancer. N Engl J Med 366:2455–2465. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1200694

Cancer Genome Atlas Network (2015) Genomic classification of cutaneous melanoma. Cell 161:1681–1696. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2015.05.044

Cerezo M et al (2016) Compounds triggering ER stress exert anti-melanoma effects and overcome BRAF inhibitor resistance. Cancer Cell 30:183. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2016.06.007

Chang YM et al (2009) Sun exposure and melanoma risk at different latitudes: a pooled analysis of 5700 cases and 7216 controls. Int J Epidemiol 38:814–830. doi:10.1093/ije/dyp166

Chapman PB et al (2011) Improved survival with vemurafenib in melanoma with BRAF V600E mutation. N Engl J Med 364:2507–2516. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1103782

Conde-Perez A, Larue L (2014) Human relevance of NRAS/BRAF mouse melanoma models. Eur J Cell Biol 93:82–86. doi:10.1016/j.ejcb.2013.10.010

Curtin JA et al (2005) Distinct sets of genetic alterations in melanoma. N Engl J Med 353:2135–2147. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa050092

Dankort D et al (2009) Braf(V600E) cooperates with Pten loss to induce metastatic melanoma. Nat Genet 41:544–552. doi:10.1038/ng.356
Davies H et al (2002) Mutations of the BRAF gene in human cancer. Nature 417:949–954. doi:10.1038/nature00766
Dhomen N et al (2009) Oncogenic Braf induces melanocyte senescence and melanoma in mice. Cancer Cell 15:294–303. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2009.02.022
Farrar MA, Alberol-Ila J, Perlmutter RM (1996) Activation of the Raf-1 kinase cascade by coumermycin-induced dimerization. Nature 383:178–181. doi:10.1038/383178a0
Feng Y et al (2013) Inhibition of melanoma development in the Nras((Q61K)) ::Ink4a(−/−) mouse model by the small molecule BI-69A11. Pigment Cell Melanoma Res 26:136–142. doi:10.1111/pcmr.12033
Ferlay J et al (2013) Cancer incidence and mortality patterns in Europe: estimates for 40 countries in 2012. Eur J Cancer 49:1374–1403. doi:10.1016/j.ejca.2012.12.027
Fey D, Croucher DR, Kolch W, Kholodenko BN (2012) Crosstalk and signaling switches in mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades. Front Physiol 3:355. doi:10.3389/fphys.2012.00355
Flaherty KT et al (2012) Improved survival with MEK inhibition in BRAF-mutated melanoma. N Engl J Med 367:107–114. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1203421
Fruman DA, Rommel C (2014) PI3K and cancer: lessons, challenges and opportunities. Nat Rev Drug Discov 13:140–156. doi:10.1038/nrd4204
Gilchrest BA, Eller MS, Geller AC, Yaar M (1999) The pathogenesis of melanoma induced by ultraviolet radiation. N Engl J Med 340:1341–1348. doi:10.1056/NEJM199904293401707
Girotti MR et al (2015) Paradox-breaking RAF inhibitors that also target SRC are effective in drug-resistant BRAF mutant melanoma. Cancer Cell 27:85–96. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2014.11.006
Goel VK et al (2009) Melanocytic nevus-like hyperplasia and melanoma in transgenic BRAFV600E mice. Oncogene 28:2289–2298. doi:10.1038/onc.2009.95
Gray-Schopfer VC, Karasarides M, Hayward R, Marais R (2007) Tumor necrosis factor-alpha blocks apoptosis in melanoma cells when BRAF signaling is inhibited. Cancer Res 67:122–129. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-1880
Greger JG et al (2012) Combinations of BRAF, MEK, and PI3K/mTOR inhibitors overcome acquired resistance to the BRAF inhibitor GSK2118436 dabrafenib, mediated by NRAS or MEK mutations. Mol Cancer Ther 11:909–920. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-11-0989
Haq R et al (2013) BCL2A1 is a lineage-specific antiapoptotic melanoma oncogene that confers resistance to BRAF inhibition. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:4321–4326. doi:10.1073/pnas.1205575110
Hauschild A et al (2012) Dabrafenib in BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma: a multicentre, open-label, phase 3 randomised controlled trial. Lancet 380:358–365. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60868-X
Heidorn SJ et al (2010) Kinase-dead BRAF and oncogenic RAS cooperate to drive tumor progression through CRAF. Cell 140:209–221. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2009.12.040
Hirata E et al (2015) Intravital imaging reveals how BRAF inhibition generates drug-tolerant microenvironments with high integrin beta1/FAK signaling. Cancer Cell 27:574–588. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2015.03.008
Hodi FS et al (2010) Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med 363:711–723. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1003466
Hodis E et al (2012) A landscape of driver mutations in melanoma. Cell 150:251–263. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2012.06.024
Holderfield M, Deuker MM, McCormick F, McMahon M (2014) Targeting RAF kinases for cancer therapy: BRAF-mutated melanoma and beyond. Nat Rev Cancer 14:455–467. doi:10.1038/nrc3760
Huang YH et al (2015) CEACAM1 regulates TIM-3-mediated tolerance and exhaustion. Nature 517:386–390. doi:10.1038/nature13848
Hugo W et al (2015) Non-genomic and immune evolution of melanoma acquiring MAPKi resistance. Cell 162:1271–1285. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2015.07.061

Hugo W et al (2017) Genomic and transcriptomic features of response to anti-PD-1 therapy in metastatic melanoma. Cell 168:542. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.01.010
Johannessen CM et al (2010) COT drives resistance to RAF inhibition through MAP kinase pathway reactivation. Nature 468:968–972. doi:10.1038/nature09627
Johannessen CM et al (2013) A melanocyte lineage program confers resistance to MAP kinase pathway inhibition. Nature 504:138–142. doi:10.1038/nature12688
Katz ME, McCormick F (1997) Signal transduction from multiple Ras effectors. Curr Opin Genet Dev 7:75–79
Kaufman HL et al (2013) The Society for Immunotherapy of Cancer consensus statement on tumour immunotherapy for the treatment of cutaneous melanoma. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 10:588–598. doi:10.1038/nrclinonc.2013.153
Kaur A et al (2016) sFRP2 in the aged microenvironment drives melanoma metastasis and therapy resistance. Nature 532:250–254. doi:10.1038/nature17392
Kemper K et al (2016) BRAF(V600E) kinase domain duplication identified in therapy-refractory melanoma patient-derived xenografts. Cell Rep 16:263–277. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2016.05.064
Konieczkowski DJ et al (2014) A melanoma cell state distinction influences sensitivity to MAPK pathway inhibitors. Cancer Discov 4:816–827. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-0424
Krauthammer M et al (2015) Exome sequencing identifies recurrent mutations in NF1 and RASopathy genes in sun-exposed melanomas. Nat Genet 47:996–1002. doi:10.1038/ng.3361
Landsberg J et al (2012) Melanomas resist T-cell therapy through inflammation-induced reversible dedifferentiation. Nature 490:412–416. doi:10.1038/nature11538
Larkin J et al (2014) Combined vemurafenib and cobimetinib in BRAF-mutated melanoma. N Engl J Med 371:1867–1876. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1408868
Levy C, Khaled M, Fisher DE (2006) MITF: master regulator of melanocyte development and melanoma oncogene. Trends Mol Med 12:406–414. doi:10.1016/j.molmed.2006.07.008
Li G et al (2003) Function and regulation of melanoma-stromal fibroblast interactions: when seeds meet soil. Oncogene 22:3162–3171. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1206455
Lito P et al (2012) Relief of profound feedback inhibition of mitogenic signaling by RAF inhibitors attenuates their activity in BRAFV600E melanomas. Cancer Cell 22:668–682. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2012.10.009
Lito P, Rosen N, Solit DB (2013) Tumor adaptation and resistance to RAF inhibitors. Nat Med 19:1401–1409. doi:10.1038/nm.3392
Long GV et al (2014) Combined BRAF and MEK Inhibition versus BRAF Inhibition Alone in Melanoma. N Engl J Med 371:1877–1888. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1406037
Luo Z et al (1996) Oligomerization activates c-Raf-1 through a Ras-dependent mechanism. Nature 383:181–185. doi:10.1038/383181a0
Maertens O et al (2013) Elucidating distinct roles for NF1 in melanomagenesis. Cancer Discov 3:338–349. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0313
Marais R, Light Y, Paterson HF, Mason CS, Marshall CJ (1997) Differential regulation of Raf-1, A-Raf, and B-Raf by oncogenic ras and tyrosine kinases. J Biol Chem 272:4378–4383
Marzec M et al (2008) Oncogenic kinase NPM/ALK induces through STAT3 expression of immunosuppressive protein CD274 (PD-L1, B7-H1). Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:20852–20857. doi:10.1073/pnas.0810958105
Massi D et al (2015) The status of PD-L1 and tumor-infiltrating immune cells predict resistance and poor prognosis in BRAFi-treated melanoma patients harboring mutant BRAFV600. Ann Oncol 26:1980–1987. doi:10.1093/annonc/mdv255
Matsushita H et al (2012) Cancer exome analysis reveals a T-cell-dependent mechanism of cancer immunoediting. Nature 482:400–404. doi:10.1038/nature10755
McArthur GA et al (2014) Safety and efficacy of vemurafenib in BRAF(V600E) and BRAF(V600K) mutation-positive melanoma (BRIM-3): extended follow-up of a phase 3, randomised, open-label study. Lancet Oncol 15:323–332. doi:10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70012-9
McGranahan N et al (2016) Clonal neoantigens elicit T cell immunoreactivity and sensitivity to immune checkpoint blockade. Science 351:1463–1469. doi:10.1126/science.aaf1490

Mellman I, Coukos G, Dranoff G (2011) Cancer immunotherapy comes of age. Nature 480:480–489. doi:10.1038/nature10673
Mittendorf EA et al (2014) PD-L1 expression in triple-negative breast cancer. Cancer Immunol Res 2:361–370. doi:10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-13-0127
Muller J et al (2014) Low MITF/AXL ratio predicts early resistance to multiple targeted drugs in melanoma. Nat Commun 5:5712. doi:10.1038/ncomms6712
Nazarian R et al (2010) Melanomas acquire resistance to B-RAF(V600E) inhibition by RTK or N-RAS upregulation. Nature 468:973–977. doi:10.1038/nature09626
NICE (2015) Melanoma: assessment and management. In: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence: clinical guidelines
Paraiso KH et al (2015) Ligand-independent EPHA2 signaling drives the adoption of a targeted therapy-mediated metastatic melanoma phenotype. Cancer Discov 5:264–273. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-0293
Pardoll DM (2012) The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer 12:252–264. doi:10.1038/nrc3239
Parsa AT et al (2007) Loss of tumor suppressor PTEN function increases B7-H1 expression and immunoresistance in glioma. Nat Med 13:84–88. doi:10.1038/nm1517
Peng W et al (2012) PD-1 blockade enhances T-cell migration to tumors by elevating IFN-gamma inducible chemokines. Cancer Res 72:5209–5218. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-1187
Peng W et al (2016) Loss of PTEN promotes resistance to T cell-mediated immunotherapy. Cancer Discov 6:202–216. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-15-0283
Pollock PM et al (2003) High frequency of BRAF mutations in nevi. Nat Genet 33:19–20. doi:10.1038/ng1054
Poulikakos PI et al (2011) RAF inhibitor resistance is mediated by dimerization of aberrantly spliced BRAF(V600E). Nature 480:387–390. doi:10.1038/nature10662
Restifo NP, Dudley ME, Rosenberg SA (2012) Adoptive immunotherapy for cancer: harnessing the T cell response. Nat Rev Immunol 12:269–281. doi:10.1038/nri3191
Ribas A (2015) Adaptive immune resistance: how cancer protects from immune attack. Cancer Discov 5:915–919. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-15-0563
Ribas A, Tumeh PC (2012) Cancer therapy: tumours switch to resist. Nature 490:347–348. doi:10.1038/nature11489
Robert C et al (2015) Improved overall survival in melanoma with combined dabrafenib and trametinib. N Engl J Med 372:30–39. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1412690
Roberts PJ, Der CJ (2007) Targeting the Raf-MEK-ERK mitogen-activated protein kinase cascade for the treatment of cancer. Oncogene 26:3291–3310. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1210422
Rooney MS, Shukla SA, Wu CJ, Getz G, Hacohen N (2015) Molecular and genetic properties of tumors associated with local immune cytolytic activity. Cell 160:48–61. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.12.033
Ruffell B, Coussens LM (2015) Macrophages and therapeutic resistance in cancer. Cancer Cell 27:462–472. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2015.02.015
Schlessinger J (2000) Cell signaling by receptor tyrosine kinases. Cell 103:211–225
Sekiya T et al (1984) Molecular cloning and the total nucleotide sequence of the human c-Ha-ras-1 gene activated in a melanoma from a Japanese patient. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 81:4771–4775
Shain AH, Bastian BC (2016) From melanocytes to melanomas. Nat Rev Cancer 16:345–358. doi:10.1038/nrc.2016.37
Shain AH et al (2015) Exome sequencing of desmoplastic melanoma identifies recurrent NFKBIE promoter mutations and diverse activating mutations in the MAPK pathway. Nat Genet 47:1194–1199. doi:10.1038/ng.3382
Shankaran V et al (2001) IFNgamma and lymphocytes prevent primary tumour development and shape tumour immunogenicity. Nature 410:1107–1111. doi:10.1038/35074122
Sharpless NE, Kannan K, Xu J, Bosenberg MW, Chin L (2003) Both products of the mouse Ink4a/Arf locus suppress melanoma formation in vivo. Oncogene 22:5055–5059. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1206809

Shen CH et al (2016) Loss of cohesin complex components STAG2 or STAG3 confers resistance to BRAF inhibition in melanoma. Nat Med 22:1056–1061. doi:10.1038/nm.4155
Shi H et al (2012) Preexisting MEK1 exon 3 mutations in V600E/KBRAF melanomas do not confer resistance to BRAF inhibitors. Cancer Discov 2:414–424. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0022
Shi H et al (2014) Acquired resistance and clonal evolution in melanoma during BRAF inhibitor therapy. Cancer Discov 4:80–93. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-0642
Shin DS et al (2016) Primary resistance to PD-1 blockade mediated by JAK1/2 mutations. Cancer Discov 7:188–201. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-16-1223
Smith MP et al (2013) Effect of SMURF2 targeting on susceptibility to MEK inhibitors in melanoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 105:33–46. doi:10.1093/jnci/djs471
Smith MP et al (2014) The immune microenvironment confers resistance to MAPK pathway inhibitors through macrophage-derived TNFalpha. Cancer Discov 4:1214–1229. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-1007
Smith MP et al (2016) Inhibiting drivers of non-mutational drug tolerance is a salvage strategy for targeted melanoma therapy. Cancer Cell 29:270–284. doi:10.1016/j.ccell.2016.02.003
Snyder A et al (2014) Genetic basis for clinical response to CTLA-4 blockade in melanoma. N Engl J Med 371:2189–2199. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1406498
Solit DB, Rosen N (2011) Resistance to BRAF inhibition in melanomas. N Engl J Med 364:772–774. doi:10.1056/NEJMcibr1013704
Sosman JA et al (2012) Survival in BRAF V600-mutant advanced melanoma treated with vemurafenib. N Engl J Med 366:707–714. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1112302
Spranger S, Gajewski TF (2016) Tumor-intrinsic oncogene pathways mediating immune avoidance. Oncoimmunology 5:e1086862. doi:10.1080/2162402X.2015.1086862
Spranger S et al (2013) Up-regulation of PD-L1, IDO, and T(regs) in the melanoma tumor microenvironment is driven by CD8(+) T cells. Sci Transl Med 5:200ra116. doi:10.1126/scitranslmed.3006504
Spranger S, Bao R, Gajewski TF (2015) Melanoma-intrinsic beta-catenin signalling prevents anti-tumour immunity. Nature 523:231–235. doi:10.1038/nature14404
Stephen AG, Esposito D, Bagni RK, McCormick F (2014) Dragging Ras back in the ring. Cancer Cell 25:272–281. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2014.02.017
Straussman R et al (2012) Tumour micro-environment elicits innate resistance to RAF inhibitors through HGF secretion. Nature 487:500–504. doi:10.1038/nature11183
Su F et al (2012) RAS mutations in cutaneous squamous-cell carcinomas in patients treated with BRAF inhibitors. N Engl J Med 366:207–215. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1105358
Tape CJ et al (2016) Oncogenic KRAS regulates tumor cell signaling via stromal reciprocation. Cell 165:910–920. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2016.03.029
Tirosh I et al (2016) Dissecting the multicellular ecosystem of metastatic melanoma by single-cell RNA-seq. Science 352:189–196. doi:10.1126/science.aad0501
Topalian SL et al (2012) Safety, activity, and immune correlates of anti-PD-1 antibody in cancer. N Engl J Med 366:2443–2454. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1200690
Topalian SL et al (2014) Survival, durable tumor remission, and long-term safety in patients with advanced melanoma receiving nivolumab. J Clin Oncol 32:1020–1030. doi:10.1200/JCO.2013.53.0105
Tsavachidou D et al (2004) SPRY2 is an inhibitor of the ras/extracellular signal-regulated kinase pathway in melanocytes and melanoma cells with wild-type BRAF but not with the V599E mutant. Cancer Res 64:5556–5559. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-1669
Tumeh PC et al (2014) PD-1 blockade induces responses by inhibiting adaptive immune resistance. Nature 515:568–571. doi:10.1038/nature13954
Van Allen EM et al (2014) The genetic landscape of clinical resistance to RAF inhibition in metastatic melanoma. Cancer Discov 4:94–109. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-0617
van't Veer LJ et al (1989) N-ras mutations in human cutaneous melanoma from sun-exposed body sites. Mol Cell Biol 9:3114–3116

Villanueva J et al (2010) Acquired resistance to BRAF inhibitors mediated by a RAF kinase switch in melanoma can be overcome by cotargeting MEK and IGF-1R/PI3K. Cancer Cell 18:683–695. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2010.11.023

Wagle N et al (2011) Dissecting therapeutic resistance to RAF inhibition in melanoma by tumor genomic profiling. J Clin Oncol 29:3085–3096. doi:10.1200/JCO.2010.33.2312

Wan PT et al (2004) Mechanism of activation of the RAF-ERK signaling pathway by oncogenic mutations of B-RAF. Cell 116:855–867

Whiteman D, Green A (1999) The pathogenesis of melanoma induced by ultraviolet radiation. N Engl J Med 341:766–767

Whiteman DC et al (2003) Melanocytic nevi, solar keratoses, and divergent pathways to cutaneous melanoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 95:806–812

Whittaker SR et al (2013) A genome-scale RNA interference screen implicates NF1 loss in resistance to RAF inhibition. Cancer Discov 3:350–362. doi:10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0470

Wilson TR et al (2012) Widespread potential for growth-factor-driven resistance to anticancer kinase inhibitors. Nature 487:505–509. doi:10.1038/nature11249

Wolchok JD et al (2013) Nivolumab plus ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med 369:122–133. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1302369

Xing F et al (2012) Concurrent loss of the PTEN and RB1 tumor suppressors attenuates RAF dependence in melanomas harboring (V600E)BRAF. Oncogene 31:446–457. doi:10.1038/onc.2011.250

Young A et al (2009) Ras signaling and therapies. Adv Cancer Res 102:1–17. doi:10.1016/S0065-230X(09)02001-6

Zaretsky JM et al (2016) Mutations associated with acquired resistance to PD-1 blockade in melanoma. N Engl J Med 375:819–829. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1604958

Zhang G et al (2016) Targeting mitochondrial biogenesis to overcome drug resistance to MAPK inhibitors. J Clin Invest 126:1834–1856. doi:10.1172/JCI82661

Mechanisms of Resistance to Immune Checkpoint Antibodies

Rodrigo N. Ramos, Eliane Piaggio, and Emanuela Romano

Contents

1 Introduction 110
2 "Hot" Versus "Cold" Tumors in the Context of Resistance to Checkpoint Inhibition ... 112
3 Alterations of Signaling Pathways Involved in Primary and/or Secondary Resistance to Checkpoint Inhibition 114
3.1 The PI3K/AKT/mTOR Pathway 114
3.2 BRAF Activating Mutations as a Mechanism of Immune Resistance 116
3.3 EGFR Pathway Activation and Its Suppressive Tumor Abilities 117
3.4 HIPPO Pathway: Improving the Immunogenic Tumor Potential 118
3.5 Mutations in *JAK1* and *JAK2* Hamper IFN Signaling Pathway 118
3.6 The Wnt/β-Catenin Pathway and Immune Response 120
4 Concluding Remarks and Future Prospects 123
References 124

R.N. Ramos
Translational Immunotherapy Siric Team, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, INSERM U932, Paris 75005, France

Center of Cancer Immunotherapy, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, Paris 75005, France

E. Piaggio
Translational Immunotherapy Siric Team, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, INSERM U932, Paris 75005, France

Center of Cancer Immunotherapy, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, Paris 75005, France

Centre d'Investigation Clinique Biothérapie CICBT 1428, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, Paris 75005, France

E. Romano (✉)
Center of Cancer Immunotherapy, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, Paris 75005, France

Centre d'Investigation Clinique Biothérapie CICBT 1428, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, Paris 75005, France

Department of Oncology, Institut Curie, PSL Research University, Office 2A-5, 26, Rue d'Ulm, Paris 75005, France
e-mail: Emanuela.Romano@curie.fr

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_11

Abstract

Immunotherapy using checkpoint inhibitors has changed the way we treat several aggressive cancers such as melanoma, non-small cell lung and head & neck cancers, among others, with durable responses achieved in the metastatic setting. However, unfortunately, the vast majority of patients do not respond to checkpoint inhibition therapy and a minority of patients, who do respond to treatment, develop secondary resistance and experience relapse by mechanisms still inadequately understood. Emerging evidence shows that alterations in multiple signaling pathways are involved in primary and/or secondary resistance to checkpoint inhibition. In this review we discuss how selected cancer-cell autonomous cues may influence the outcome of cancer immunotherapy, particularly immune checkpoint inhibition.

Keywords

Acquired resistance • BRAF • EGFR pathway • HIPPO pathway • Immune checkpoint • Immunotherapy • Intrinsic resistance • *JAK1* • *JAK2* • PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway • Wnt/β-Catenin pathway

1 Introduction

The goal of harnessing the immune system to fight cancer dates back over a century, when William Coley advocated that the bodys response to infection could have anti-tumoral effects (Brouckaert et al. 1992). However, decades of efforts using vaccines and other immune therapies to harness the immune system to fight tumors have had limited success and at times have been fraught with serious adverse effects. In the era of modern medicine, proof of the effectiveness of immune-based treatments against cancer was established with the development of high-dose IL-2 for patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma and metastatic melanoma (Rosenberg et al. 1989). Inhibition of immune regulatory checkpoints, such as CTLA-4 and the PD-1/PD-L1 axis, is at the forefront of immunotherapy for cancers of various histological types. Several agents targeting two such negative checkpoints, the programmed death-1 (PD-1) pathway (pembrolizumab, nivolumab, and atezolizumab), and the cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA4) (ipilimumab) are currently approved by Food and Drug Administration and European Medicines Agency. Both CTLA-4- and PD-1/L1-based therapies target pathways that negatively regulate T cell function, and recent studies have highlighted the ability of anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 antibodies to synergize and reverse T cell anergy within tumors by enhancing the local proliferation of effector tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) (Curran et al. 2010). These negative checkpoint pathways play a role in immune tolerance in normal tissues and their activation is highly linked to the biological context. Immunotherapy using checkpoint inhibitors has changed the way we treat several aggressive cancers such as melanoma, non-small cell lung, and head and neck cancers, among others, with durable

responses achieved in the metastatic setting. However, unfortunately, the vast majority of patients do not respond to checkpoint inhibition therapy and a minority of patients, who do respond to treatment, develop secondary resistance and experience relapse by mechanisms still inadequately understood. Emerging evidence shows that alterations in multiple signaling pathways are involved in primary and/or secondary resistance to checkpoint inhibition. In this review we discuss how selected cancer-cell-autonomous cues may influence the outcome of cancer immunotherapy, particularly immune checkpoint inhibition. For instance, cancer-cell-autonomous cues might be responsible for TIL-negative tumors and cancer cell genetic evolution might predict the efficacy of checkpoint blockade. Activation of the oncogenic Wnt-β-catenin signaling pathway in melanoma cells has been shown to correlate with the absence of T cell and $CD103^+$ dendritic cells (DCs) infiltration into the tumor microenvironment (TME) due to β-catenin-mediated suppression of the chemokine CCL4, which in turn induces resistance to anti-PD-L1 and anti-CTLA-4 mAb-based therapies in experimental murine tumor models (Spranger et al. 2015). Similarly, loss of phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) and activation of the PI3-kinase pathway in cancer cells can also promote resistance to checkpoint blockade (Peng et al. 2016) and has been linked to increased PD-L1 expression and immune resistance in human glioma (Parsa et al. 2007). Activating mutations in MAPK signaling pathway (i.e., oncogenic BRAF) has also been implicated in lower expression of tumor-associated antigens (Boni et al. 2010) and increased expression of immunosuppressive cytokines and VEGF (Frederick et al. 2013). Further evidence has shown that alterations in chromosomal region 9p24.1 in Hodgkin's lymphoma can induce the expression of PD-1 ligands through Janus kinase (JAK)-signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) signaling (Ansell et al. 2015), and that defects in the pathways involved in interferon (IFN)-receptor signaling are associated with primary and secondary resistance to checkpoint inhibition (Zaretsky et al. 2016; Shin et al. 2016). Furthermore, Akbay et al. reported a correlation between activation of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) pathway and a signature of immunosuppression induced by the upregulation of PD-1, PD-L1, CTLA-4, and inflammatory cytokines (Akbay et al. 2013). This immune ablative fingerprint was associated with decreased TILs and increased markers of T cell exhaustion in mice bearing EGFR-driven adenocarcinoma of the lungs, albeit PD1 blockade could restore effector T (Teff) cell functions and prolong survival in this model. In addition, Moroishi and collaborators recently proposed that the activation of the Hippo pathway is responsible for the maintenance of low immunogenicity of tumors, through an impaired recognition by antigen presenting cells (APCs) and lack of an adaptive immune response. Strategies aimed at the ablation of Hippo pathway's components led to increased nucleic acid release by cancer cells, that in turn promoted immune activation and tumor control (Moroishi et al. 2016). We will also review multiple inhibitory feedback mechanisms in the TME that play a critical role in suppressing the anti-tumor immune response and are associated with resistance to checkpoint blockade.

2 "Hot" Versus "Cold" Tumors in the Context of Resistance to Checkpoint Inhibition

A series of recent studies have proposed a new paradigm of tumor classification based on the "temperature" measured in the TME, whereby "hot" tumors are characterized by the presence of a brisk immune cell infiltrate, while "cold" tumors lack such infiltrate (Fig. 1). This characterization has emerged thanks to in-depth studies of the TME and to advances in the use of big data from RNA sequencing technologies, as The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA), which together allow the classification of tumors based on the presence of myeloid or lymphoid infiltrates and the expression of immune-related genes. Indeed, recent studies have defined "cold tumors" as those displaying low or no T cell-inflammatory signatures; in contrast to "hot tumors" that display an increased presence of these genes, mainly by $CD8^+$ T cell-associated markers (Harlin et al. 2009; Sweis et al. 2016; Keck et al. 2015). Among the most investigated immune signatures, great emphasis has been given to T cell transcripts, mainly due to their implication on the clinical outcome following immunotherapy with checkpoint inhibitors. The most used transcripts to define "cold vs hot tumors" assess: CD3 and CD8 (including granzyme-B and perforin); the STING pathway (Stimulators of Interferon genes, including type I IFN) and IFN-gamma signaling; T cell-related chemokines (e.g., CXCL9, CXCL10, CCL2, CCL3, and CCL4); and MHC class I molecules. Also, other markers of myeloid-related signatures as CD68, CD14 for macrophages and Batf3 for DCs are used to assess the degree of immune infiltration of tumors (Corrales et al. 2016; Spranger et al. 2015).

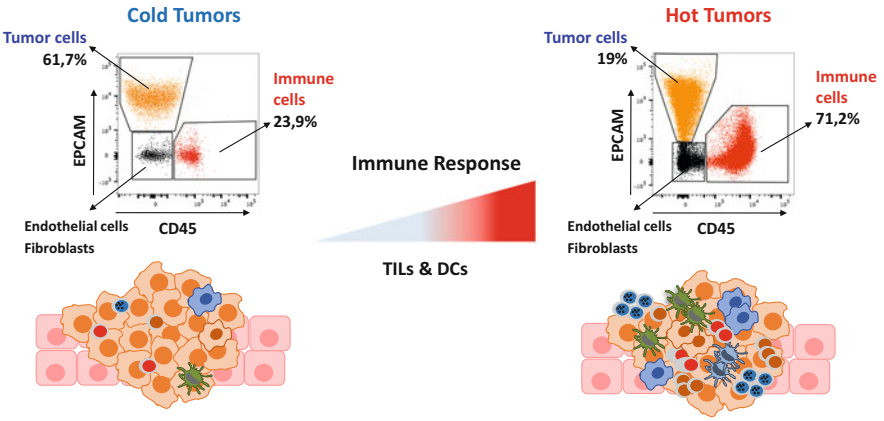


Fig. 1 "Cold" vs "Hot" tumors according to the immune contexture. Several tumor types have been recently defined based on immune signature features. Here, we show two representative flow cytometry plots from human breast tumor samples depicting two distinct phenotypes. "Cold tumors" (*left dot-plot*) are defined by the presence of low numbers of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) and dendritic cells (DCs), while "Hot tumors" (*right dot-plot*) present increased frequencies of both subsets

RNA-seq signatures are also emerging as an alternative approach to immunohistochemistry and/or flow cytometry to describe the qualities of the immune infiltrate of diverse tumor histologies, including breast, ovary, bladder, lung, kidney, and colon carcinomas, and melanoma (Pages et al. 2010). Accordingly, studies lead by Galon and colleagues also established the classification of colorectal carcinomas based on the analysis of immune-contexture in the TME (also called "Immunoscore") and defined gene signatures with prognostic value for cancer patients (Mlecnik et al. 2016).

Conversely, not only is the presence of T cell-inflammatory genes critical, but the presence of immune-inhibitory molecules as well as the tumor-intrinsic transcripts evaluated concomitantly, represent a great gain in the use of deep RNA sequencing technologies for tumor investigation. In this context, Danilova and colleagues (Danilova et al. 2016) recently found that PD-L1 and/or PD-L2 transcripts were positively correlated to host Th1/IFN-gamma signatures for various primary tumors, including renal cell carcinoma, bladder, lung adenocarcinoma, head and neck, breast, colon, and rectal cancers. In fact, PD−/L1 axis seems to be even better correlated to cytosolic pathways than the mutation load for some types of tumor. Additionally, for melanoma displaying a "hot" phenotype, increased presence of IDO, PD-L1, IL-10, LAG3, and Foxp3 molecules was also noted (Gajewski 2007; Taube et al. 2015). Some inhibitory molecules are induced upon combinatory events derived from the tumor microenvironment, probably due to the cross-talk of immune and cancer cells. In an elegant study, Spranger and collaborators (Spranger et al. 2013) suggested that the induction of the inhibitory signals PD-L1 and IDO, as well as regulatory T cell recruitment, in the melanoma microenvironment are mainly driven by $CD8^+$ T cell activity, operating as a homeostatic loop controlling the anti-tumor responses. This is consistent with previous studies showing that IFN-gamma can induce PD-L1 upregulation on macrophages (Loke and Allison 2003) and promotes IDO expression on human monocyte-derived DCs (Jurgens et al. 2009). Interestingly, two major evidences support the use of T cell inflammatory signatures as key elements for the design of immunotherapeutic strategies for cancer care: (1) CD8 infiltration is associated with better prognosis for several epithelial cancers (Fridman et al. 2012); (2) a pre-existing CD8 T cell infiltration is associated with responsiveness to immune checkpoint antibodies (Tumeh et al. 2014) and to neoadjuvant chemotherapy (Denkert et al. 2010).

Although recent efforts using inhibitory checkpoint antibodies have shown important benefit on the survival of cancer patients, in aggregate only about 20 to 40% of patients with metastatic solid cancers respond to anti-PD-1 therapy (Topalian et al. 2012) and only up to 20% of metastatic melanoma patients present long-term survival benefit under anti-CTLA4 treatment (Minn and Wherry 2016). One potential explanation for the failure in tumor elimination is the ability of tumor cells to escape the control of the adaptive immune system. Among these characteristics, the loss of tumor-antigen expression added to MHC down-regulation (Matsushita et al. 2012) and epigenetic tumor alterations (Schreiber et al. 2011) are some of the most prevalent mechanisms found when effective T

lymphocytes are present in the microenvironment. Thus, the increased accumulation of T lymphocytes within tumors is probably the most critical event triggering tumor cell mutation and escape. This concept has been lately strengthened by studies using big data analysis of gene signatures. Authors have lately clarified that tumors presenting a "hot" T cell-inflammatory phenotype are characterized by alterations in diverse tumor-intrinsic pathways. Most recent findings point out to molecular alterations in cellular pathways such as PI3K/AKT/mTOR, MAPK, Wnt/beta-catenin, EGFR, Jak, and Hippo, which are critically operating in different tumors and influence the degree of T cell infiltration and tumor inflammation. Alterations affecting these specific molecular pathways and their clinical significance will be reviewed and discussed in the following sections.

3 Alterations of Signaling Pathways Involved in Primary and/or Secondary Resistance to Checkpoint Inhibition

3.1 The PI3K/AKT/mTOR Pathway

This pathway is activated by receptor tyrosine kinases, downstream growth factor receptors, cytokine receptors, B and T cell receptors, and G-protein-coupled receptors. It regulates the cell cycle and different cellular functions such as cell growth, metabolism, proliferation, and survival, all key cellular processes participating to the initiation and the maintenance of cancer (Fig. 2).

The PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway is constitutively activated in a high proportion of tumors as a result of mutations in several components of the pathway. One frequent finding is the loss of expression of the tumor suppressor PTEN, which inhibits downstream PI3K signaling (Song et al. 2012). Other common mechanisms leading to pathway activation include amplification or mutation of *PI3K* or *Akt*, or the activation of growth factor receptors.

The loss of *PTEN* has been associated with immunosuppressive mechanisms. In human glioma, it has been described that the expression of PD-L1 is increased posttranscriptionally after the deletion of *PTEN* and the activation of the PI3K pathway (Parsa et al. 2007). However, this effect was not observed across melanoma cell lines (Atefi et al. 2014), suggesting that the effect of altered PI3K signaling on PD-L1 expression may also depend on the presence of other oncogenic alterations unique to each tumor cell line. Illustrating this last point, in human melanoma, *PTEN* alterations are frequently observed with concomitant mutation of *BRAF*, contributing to the metastatic potential of the tumors (Dankort et al. 2009). Interestingly, Jiang X. et al. demonstrated that melanoma cells resistant to BRAF inhibition showed an increased expression of PD-L1, mediated by c-jun (under the control of Braf/MEK) and STAT3 (under the control of PI3K). Consequently, they showed that combination of therapies inhibiting MEK and PIK3 induced the suppression of PD-L1 expression and apoptosis in cancer cells (Jiang et al. 2013). These results pave the way for the rationalized combination of targeted inhibitors and immunomodulatory therapies for optimized cancer treatment.

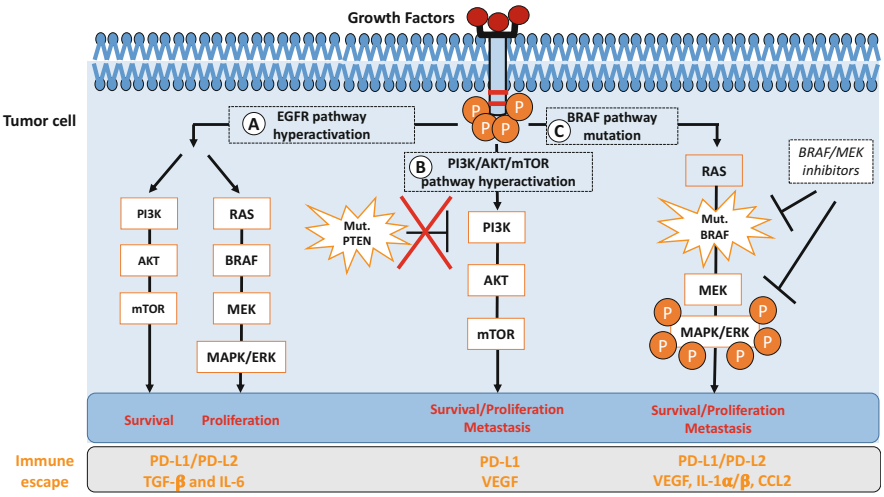


Fig. 2 Tumor immune resistance associated with genetic alterations in the EGFR, PI3K, and MAPK pathways. Representative scheme from collective studies describing tumor mutations found in the canonical EGFR, PI3K, and MAPK pathways. (**a**) Mutations responsible of EGFR pathway hyperactivation lead to increased proliferation and survival of tumor cells, while immune escape mechanisms are triggered by PD-L1/L2 upregulation, and the reselase of TGF-beta and IL-6. (**b**) PTEN loss of function induces hyper activation of the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway, resulting in enhanced tumor growth and spreading and immune escape mechanims via PD-L1 upregulation and VEGF secretion. (**c**) Activating BRAF mutations can lead to increased tumor growth and metastasis. Several strategies targeting activating BRAF mutations have been tested. However, a significant percentage of patients present acquired resistance to BRAF inhibitors, in which upregulation of PD-L1/L2 and increased production of VEGF, IL-1-alpha, and CCL2 emerge as acquired immune escape mechanisms

Sensitivity of tumors to immune checkpoint blockade seems to be dependent on the quality and quantity of the tumor immune infiltration. Consequently, it is of great importance to understand whether activation of the oncogenic PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathways in tumors hampers immune infiltration and resistance to immunotherapies. Along these lines, an interesting study by Peng and colleagues studied the impact of *Pten* loss and the consequent activation of the PI3K-AKT pathway on the anti-tumor T cell response (Peng et al. 2016). In experimental melanoma models they showed that *Pten*-silenced tumors were more resistant to T cell mediated killing in vitro and in vivo. In patients, they observed that tumors with lack of PTEN [defined as PTEN expression lower than 10% by immunohistochemistry (IHC)], had lower CD8+ T cell infiltration and TILs were more difficult to expand in vitro than patients with normal PTEN expression. Also, using TCGA data they observed that melanomas with low *PTEN* copy numbers had lower T cells infiltration by IHC, and lower transcripts of IFN-gamma and granzyme B, which are markers of cytolytic lymphocytes. They also showed that PTEN loss increased VEGF expression and that blocking VEGF in a mouse model increased infiltration of the tumor by T cells (Peng et al. 2016). Of note, VEGF has been involved in the

recruitment of suppressive myeloid and regulatory T cells, and several studies have also identified that active PI3K signaling was associated with an accumulation of immunosuppressive macrophages (Coussens et al. 2013). As inhibition of PI3K signaling in myeloid cells can block tumor progression in experimental tumor models (Schmid et al. 2011), it is tempting to speculate that pharmacological blocking of PI3K signaling could act at the same time on the tumor cells and inhibit myeloid cell suppression. Of translational importance also, Peng and colleagues showed that treatment of mice bearing melanomas with a PI3Kβ inhibitor improved the efficacy of anti-PD-1 and anti-CTLA4 antibodies (Peng et al. 2016), thus identifying a promising novel strategy to optimize immunotherapy in melanoma patients.

3.2 BRAF Activating Mutations as a Mechanism of Immune Resistance

Activating *BRAF* mutations are found in different types of cancer, including colorectal and thyroid carcinomas and it represents about half of all cases of human cutaneous melanomas (Davies et al. 2002). One of the major consequences of its genetic alteration results in the constitutive activation of the MAPK pathway, leading to an increased metastatic potential and to a reduced sensitivity to apoptosis of cancer cells (Lin et al. 2008) (Fig. 2). These features have an impact on the ability of the tumor cells to proliferate and on their interactions with the microenvironment and the immune infiltrating cells. Actually, approximately 40 different mutations were described in *BRAF* and, among them, about 70% of melanomas present the V600E modification, characterized by the substitution of valine for glutamic acid at the position 600 (Davies et al. 2002). In this scenario, multiple approaches for the inhibition of activating *BRAF* mutations have been tested in melanoma, leading to the registration of BRAF inhibitors in the mestastatic setting (Flaherty et al. 2010; Chapman et al. 2011). Furthermore, the advent of BRAF pathway inhibitors permitted a series of preclinical and clinical studies aiming to better understand the immune-related effects of *BRAF* mutations.

Reports in humans and mice have shown that activating BRAF mutations are associated with a weak or lack of T cell infiltration/activation on tumor sides (Boni et al. 2010; Ho et al. 2014; Tomei et al. 2015). Khalili and colleagues (Khalili et al. 2012) described that melanoma cells bearing *BRAF* mutations secreted elevated amounts of IL-1alpha and IL-1beta that potentially upregulates COX-2 and PD-L1/L2 expression on stromal fibroblasts, leading to T lymphocyte suppression. Another report using xenograft mouse models showed that *BRAF* V600E mutated cells produced high levels of VEGF, which is responsible for inhibiting the accumulation of T lymphocytes after adoptive cell transfer (ACT) (Liu et al. 2013). In agreement, Frederick and collaborators (Frederick et al. 2013) showed an increased CD8+ T cell infiltration and an upregulation of melanoma antigens in patients treated with BRAF and MEK inhibitors. Interestingly, TILs in these patients presented high expression of the exhaustion markers PD-1 and TIM-3. Other reports also described

the increase of intratumoral CD4+ T and cytotoxic CD8+ T cells following BRAF inhibition, which had an influence on tumor mass and metabolism (Wilmott et al. 2012) in addition to a noteworthy clonal change on the T cell repertoire after treatment (Cooper et al. 2013). Importantly, about 50% of melanoma-bearing patients develop resistance to BRAF inhibitors and may relapse early during treatment by evolving an array of compensatory mechanisms (Welsh et al. 2016). Actually, studies aimed at investigating the effects of secondary resistence to BRAF inhibitors demonstrated that both tumor cells and leukocytes upregulate checkpoints ligands as PD-L1 (Jiang et al. 2013; Kakavand et al. 2015). Thus, considering the importance of *BRAF* mutations on the suppression of anti-tumor immunity and the consequences on the TME following BRAF inhibition, some studies have recently tested the combination of BRAF pathway inhibition with several immunotherapeutic approaches, achieving encouraging results. Among them, the use of anti-CCL2 (Knight et al. 2013), adoptive cell therapy (Liu et al. 2013), and DC-based strategy (by using Flt3L + Poly-IC stimulation) (Salmon et al. 2016) have improved survival in tumor-bearing mice and induced adaptive immune activation. Using a Braf(V600E)/Pten(−/−) syngeneic tumor graft immunocompetent mouse model, Cooper and colleagues (Cooper et al. 2014) also showed prolonged anti-tumor effects when combining anti-PD1/PD-L1 with a BRAF inhibitor. Similarly, in a colon carcinoma mouse model, anti-PD-1 treatment showed advantages in tumor growth control and in increasing CD8+ T cell infiltration when administered with a MEK inhibitor (Liu et al. 2015). Collectively, rational strategies taking into account both the immune contexture of cancer patients and the intrinsic genetic alterations of cancer cells are further needed. Although clinical trials combining these targeted therapy and immunotherapy are ongoing, important questions still remain unanswered. Further studies using mouse models may provide therapeutic insights, including optimal timing and sequence of therapy. These experiments may also facilitate the prediction of potentially severe toxicities, as it has been observed when combining anti-CTLA4 therapy and BRAF inhibition (Ribas et al. 2013). The selection of patients based on T cell frequency/quality, checkpoint ligands expression, and *BRAF* status may provide a better understanding of the elements that ultimately influence the clinical outcome.

3.3 EGFR Pathway Activation and Its Suppressive Tumor Abilities

Mutations of the EGFR pathway were first reported in patients with non-small-cell lung cancer in 2004 (Lynch et al. 2004; Paez et al. 2004). Later, whole-genome sequencing in more than 180 lung cancer patients revealed *EGFR* as one of the most mutated genes in these individuals (Imielinski et al. 2012). Interestingly, the activation of EGFR pathway results not only in tumor growth/survival but also in the modulation of anti-tumor immune responses, as skin cancer-bearing mice treated with EGF-like growth factors showed an increased suppressive Treg activity (Zaiss et al. 2013) and loss of CCL27 expression, a chemokine involved in T cell attraction (Pivarcsi et al. 2007). In agreement with these observations, various

recent studies have reported that mutations affecting the EGFR pathway are associated with increased inhibitory immune signals as reviewed by Ji and collaborators (Ji et al. 2015) (Fig. 2). Also, Akbay and colleagues (Akbay et al. 2013) showed an upregulation of PD-L1, when mutant EGFR pathway was activated in murine lung tumors. Evaluating the TME, they also noted increased expression of PD-1 and CTLA-4 along with an increase in suppressive cytokines, such as TGF-β. The administration of anti-PD-1 antibody treatment led to enhanced T cell effector functions in those tumors, with an objective improvement in mice survival. In line with these findings, recent studies also showed PD-L1 upregulation on human tumor cell lines (Chen et al. 2015) and in primary tumor specimens from patients carrying EGFR mutations (Azuma et al. 2014).

3.4 HIPPO Pathway: Improving the Immunogenic Tumor Potential

The Hippo pathway is known as a tumor suppressor, acting on the survival and proliferation of normal cells, avoiding tumorigenesis (Harvey et al. 2013). Analysis of immune content in multiple human tumor types has revealed absent or weak presence/signature of TILs ("cold tumors"). This is probably due to poor immunogenicity of cancer cells, allowing silent growth and spread. Two kinases present in the Hippo pathway, LATS1/2 (large tumor suppressor 1 and 2), were recently described as important components controlling the immunogenic potential of malignant cells (Fig. 3). Moroishi and collaborators (Moroishi et al. 2016) demonstrated that LATS1/2 deletion abolishes tumor growth and diminishes metastasis in different mouse tumor models by an immune-mediated mechanism. In particular, tumor cells lacking LATS1/2 produced extracellular vesicles carrying concentrated amounts of nucleic acids that were able to stimulate APCs via the TLRs-MYD88/TRIF-IFN pathway. This generated an anti-tumor immune response leading to subsequent tumor elimination. In addition, analyzing human epidemiological data sets, the authors found significant correlation between both low LATS1 and LATS2 mRNA levels and favorable patient outcome. Additional studies using human specimens are needed to confirm these findings and to test combinations targeting the Hippo pathway on tumors with the aim of boosting immunity and reverting mechanisms associated with lack of immunogenicity.

3.5 Mutations in *JAK1* and *JAK2* Hamper IFN Signaling Pathway

A recent report from Ribas et al. (2016) demonstrated that about 25% of melanoma patients under anti-PD-1 treatment and having objective responses to therapy undergo disease progression within approximately 21 months. One way to explain these observations would be that the anti-tumor immune response restored by checkpoint antibodies may exert distinct "selective signals" triggering intrinsic genomic alterations in tumor cells, that, in turn, would alter its phenotype and

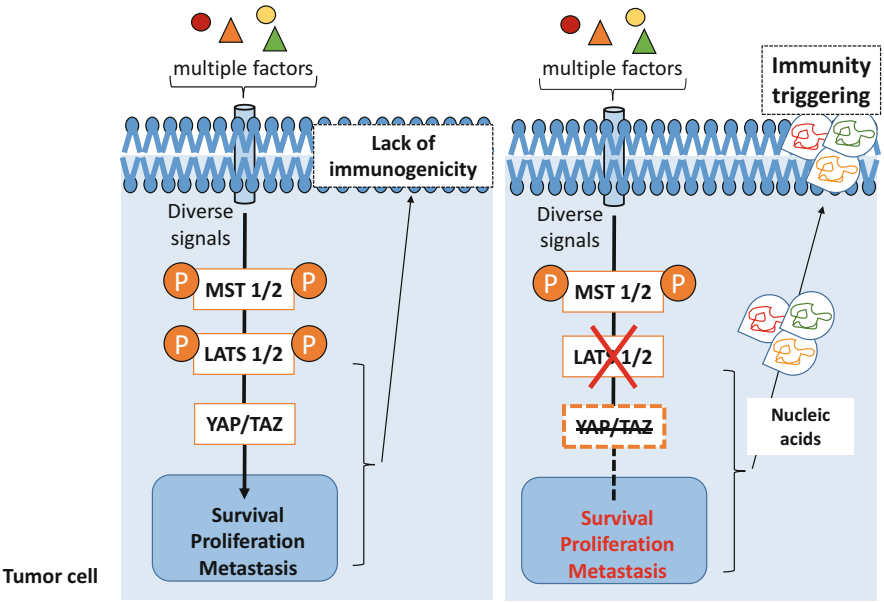


Fig. 3 The Hippo pathway as a tumor immunogenicity silencer. Activation of the Hippo pathway is responsible for sustained tumor survival and metastasis, in which no immunogenicity towards cancer cells is noted. Recent studies showed that the deletion of LATS1/2 components of the hippo pathway enables the release of nucleic acids, which, in turn, triggers APCs' activation and adaptive immunity and subsequent control of tumor growth

promote immune escape. In this scenario, Zaretsky and colleagues (Zaretsky et al. 2016) performed whole-exome sequencing in biopsies from 2 melanoma patients at baseline (before anti-PD-1 treatment) and after tumor relapse (post-anti-PD-1 treatment). Post-treatment changes in the TME were observed in both patients, which consisted of increased CD8+ T cells infiltration and PD-L1 expression in macrophages and stromal cells. Despite the fact that tumors at baseline and post-relapse showed more than 92% of similarities in non-synonymous mutations, the authors found two truncating mutations in the interferon-receptor–associated Janus kinase 1 and 2 (*JAK1*, *JAK2*), each one identified in one patient. As a consequence, *JAK1*- and *JAK2*-mutated tumor cells were insensitive to IFNgamma, including to its antiproliferative effects (Fig. 4). In agreement with these observations, another elegant study recently reported by Shin et al. (2016) suggested that loss-of-function mutations in the *JAK1* and *JAK2* genes could be also associated with primary resistance mechanisms to anti-PD-1 therapy. Evaluating the mutational load of melanoma and colon cancer patients that were refractory to anti-PD-1 treatment, the authors found pre-existing JAK1/2 inactivating mutations. Similarly, melanoma cell lines lacking functional IFN signaling pathway also failed to upregulate PD-L1 expression even in the presence of IFN-gamma. Importantly, using data from TCGA, similar mutations in *JAK1* and *JAK2* were found in other tumor histologies,

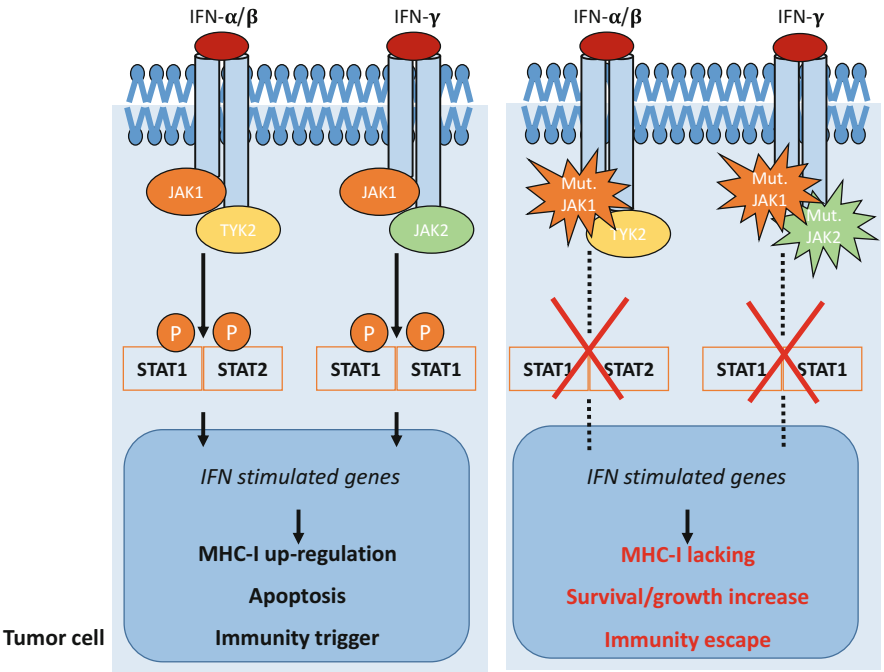


Fig. 4 JAK mutations and loss of IFN signaling are associated with resistance to checkpoint blockade. IFN signaling is dependent on the JAK/STAT pathway and is responsible for inducing immune-related effects on tumor cells, allowing their elimination. Recent data in mestastatic cancer patients showed the presence of primary and secondary resistence to checkpoint inhibition via loss-of-function mutations in JAK1 and/or JAK2 genes and subsequent lack of response to interferon-gamma, including insensitivity to its antiproliferative effects on cancer cells

including breast, prostate, lung, and colorectal adenocarcinoma, in which an impact on survival of patients was also noted. Thus, additional studies are needed to better define subgroups of patients exhibiting primary and/or secondary resistance via *JAK1/2* mutations.

3.6 The Wnt/β-Catenin Pathway and Immune Response

Tumors use multiple strategies to induce immunosuppression and evade immune recognition (Hanahan and Weinberg 2011) by directly inactivating effector T cells, altering DCs, promoting regulatory T cells and immune suppressive cell functions in the TME (Meyer et al. 2014; Romano et al. 2015). The Wnt/β-catenin pathway operates across many tumor types and it is critically involved in counteracting several steps of immune activation (Fig. 5). One of such underlying mechanisms has been demonstrated in DCs. The activation of β-catenin promotes DC-mediated CD4+ T cell tolerance and is associated with tumor-induced suppression of CD8+ T

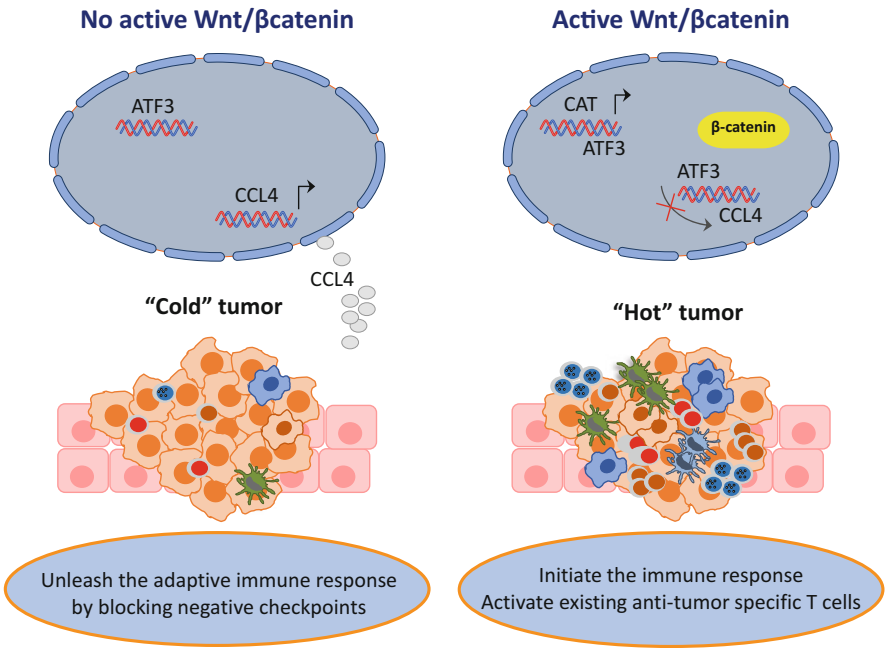


Fig. 5 Wnt/β-catenin signaling and the tumor immune infiltrate. In melanoma cells, β-catenin mediates immune ignorance in the TME through the induction of transcriptional repressor ATF3, which in turn inhibits CCL4 production via the transcriptional silencing of CCL4 gene. Lack of CCL4-secretion results in poor recruitment of CD103 dendritic cells, associated with an impaired cross-priming of antitumor T cells. In addition, the intratumoral T cells show predominantly a naïve phenotype with low PD-1, PD-L1, and LAG3 expression. Knock-down of β-catenin or ATF3 restores CCL4 production in these cells, which in turn leads to a T cell-inflamed melanoma, characterized by the presence of Batf3-lineage dendritic cells as well as transcripts encoding indoleamine-2, 3-dioxygenase (IDO), PD-L1, and FoxP3

cell immunity through the inhibition of the cross-priming capacity of DCs. This is consistent with the ability of β-catenin to negatively regulate T cell stimulatory functions in vitro (Jiang et al. 2007) and attenuate gut inflammation in vivo (Manicassamy et al. 2010). Liang and colleagues tested the hypothesis that tumor-induced suppression of CD8+ T cell immunity is mediated by β-catenin in DCs through the inhibition of the ability of DCs in cross-priming (Liang et al. 2014). When vaccinated with DC-targeting anti-DEC-205 mAb fused with tumor antigens, B16 melanoma-bearing mice exhibited dampened CD8+ immunity, similar to DC-β-catenin^{active} mice. DCs from DC-β-catenin^{active} and tumor-bearing mice were deficient in cross-priming, and antigen-specific CD8 + T cells primed in these mice resulted in dampened CD8+ lymphocytes-mediated memory responses. Importantly, DC-β-catenin deficient (DC$^{\beta\text{-catenin}-/-}$) mice completely abrogated tumor-mediated inhibition of cross-priming, suggesting that β-catenin is required for tumor-induced inhibition of cross-priming. Further mechanistic insight on the immune modulation of DC functions by β-catenin has been addressed with the

observation that activation of β-catenin signaling in DCs inhibited cross-priming of CD8+ T cells by the upregulation of IL-10 by mTOR (Fu et al. 2015).

Understanding DC biology is crucial in the design of vaccination strategies. Interestingly, vaccination of mice lacking β-catenin in CD11c + DC ($DC^{\beta\text{-catenin}-/-}$) failed to protect them against tumor challenge. In addition, $DC^{\beta\text{-catenin}-/-}$ mice were incapable of generating CD8+ T cell immunity despite normal clonal expansion, possibly a consequence of impaired IL-10 production in $DC^{\beta\text{-catenin}-/-}$. Deletion of β-catenin in DCs or blocking IL-10 post-clonal expansion resulted in comparable reduction of CD8+ T cells, suggesting that maintenance and post-clonal expansion of CD8+ T cells through IL-10 are fundamentally regulated by active β-catenin in DCs. These observations highlight mTOR/IL-10 as a mechanism for β-catenin-dependent inhibition of cross-priming and uncover a positive role of β-catenin in the maintenance of CD8+ T cells. Despite the opposite functions of β-catenin in regulating CD8+ T cell responses, selective blocking of β-catenin with a pharmacological inhibitor during the priming phase augmented DC vaccine-induced CD8+ T cell immunity and improved antitumor efficacy, suggesting that interfering with β-catenin signaling could represent a feasible therapeutic strategy to improve the efficacy of DC-based vaccines. Pharmacological targeting of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway remains, however, a challenge that requires further investigation.

In addition to its role in regulating the effector functions of DCs, active β-catenin signaling in tumor cells has been attributed to inflammation and impaired intratumoral T cell infiltration. Blocking antibodies targeting the receptor PD-1, or its ligand (PD-L1), have been identified as one of the breakthrough advances in cancer therapy that may induce a durable response rate of about 20–40% across several cancer types. Recent randomized phase II/III clinical trials with anti-PD-1 antibodies (nivolumab and pembrolizumab) have demonstrated an increased overall survival compared to previous standard treatments in melanoma, as well as in other tumor types including non-small cell lung cancer and renal cancer (Borghaei et al. 2015; Weber et al. 2015). These results lead to the accelerated approval of anti-PD-1 antibodies for metastatic melanoma, non-small cell lung cancer, and renal cell cancer. Full pipelines of immune modulatory agents are in different stages of clinical development for a wide variety of tumor types. It is still unclear, however, why only a limited number of patients harboring the same type of tumor respond to the therapy and why certain tumors do not respond at all. In the context of PD-1 blocking antibodies, preclinical and clinical data show that the tumor-specific CD8+ T cells express PD-1 in close proximity to PD-L1-expressing cells in the responding patients (Gandini et al. 2016; Tumeh et al. 2014). Gene expression analysis of metastatic human cutaneous melanoma indicated an inverse correlation of active β-catenin signaling with those genes associated with an endogenous immune response, such as APC2, SOX2, SOX11, and WNT7B (Spranger et al. 2015).

Using a genetically engineered murine tumor model driven by conditional BRAFV600E activation and *PTEN* deletion (BRAFV600E/ $PTEN^{-}/^{-}$) (Damsky et al. 2011), overexpression of a stabilized form of β-catenin almost completely

depleted T cells, and the few remaining intratumoral T cells showed predominantly a naïve phenotype with low PD-1, PD-L1, and LAG3 expression in the arisen melanomas. When a neo-antigen (SIY) was genetically engineered into the melanomas of these mice, adoptively transferred T cells with SIY–specific T cell receptor accumulated in the BRAFV600E/PTEN$^{-/-}$ tumors, but not in the BRAFV600E/PTEN$^{-/-}$ tumors expressing the non-degradable β-catenin (BRAFV600E/ PTEN$^{-/-}$ Bcat-STA), an indicative of defective homing of antigen-specific T cells in the tumors. In agreement with previous findings, these data suggest that tumor-intrinsic β-catenin signaling prevents early T cell priming. Following analysis of the Batf3-lineage DCs that are crucial in presenting tumor antigens to CD8+ T cells, it was found that CD8a + (skin-derived) and CD103+ (lymph node-derived) DCs were almost absent, with reduced IFN-β cytokine expression in BRAFV600E/ PTEN$^{-/-}$ Bcat-STA tumors but not in its counterpart BRAFV600E/ PTEN$^{-/-}$. Interestingly, BRAFV600E/PTEN$^{-/-}$ Batf3$^{-/-}$ bone marrow chimeras showed comparable decrease of T cell infiltration; however, intratumoral injection of DCs activated by poly I:C could restore T cell infiltration in BRAFV600E/ PTEN$^{-/-}$ Bcat-STA tumors, suggesting that defective recruitment of CD103+ DCs is a major immunologic defect in melanomas with high intrinsic β-catenin signaling. Finally, treatment of both mouse models with a combination of anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-L1 antibodies induced a significant delay in tumor growth in the BRAFV600E/ PTEN$^{-/-}$ model, but not in the BRAFV600E/PTEN$^{-/-}$ Bcat-STA model; while intratumoral injection of activated DCs into the BRAFV600E/PTEN$^{-/-}$ Bcat-STA tumors could partially restore the therapeutic effect of anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-L1 antibodies. Overall, these findings highlight the role of β-catenin in mediating inhibition of an adaptive immune response to tumors and could represent a new and potentially generalized mechanism that tumors employ to achieve immunosuppression. The understanding of β-catenin signaling in human tumors and its potential involvement in shaping the response to targeted as well as immune therapies is of great interest. It is important to underline that current studies have not been able to show evidence of a correlation between the β-catenin signaling with a differential responsiveness with immune modulatory therapies in human. Furthermore, since patients with "hot" melanomas seem to derive higher benefit from PD-1 therapy, the future challenge is to characterize immune signatures in patients lacking intratumoral T CD8+ infiltration.

4 Concluding Remarks and Future Prospects

Recent clinical trials using immune checkpoint inhibition therapy have demonstrated its potential to control cancer by disinhibiting the immune system. Immune checkpoint blocking antibodies against CTLA-4 or PD-1/L1 have reported durable clinical responses in various types of cancers and have been approved in the USA and EU in selected clinical settings; however, multiple mechanisms of resistance exist. In particular, tumor- and host-related factors have been established as common denominators responsible for the heterogeneity in the clinical outcome

to therapy with immune checkpoint inhibitors. Additional patient cases will need to be studied to assess how common these mechanisms of resistance might be; however, collectively the findings discussed in this chapter enable us to better understand immune features of the TME as well as tumor-intrinsic genetic alterations associated with primary and secondary resistance to immune checkpoint inhibitors and the potential to revert multiple resistance routes to improve immunotherapy.

Acknowledgment EP work is funded by SiRIC Curie (Grant INCA-DGOS-4654).

References

Akbay EA, Koyama S, Carretero J, Altabef A, Tchaicha JH, Christensen CL, Mikse OR, Cherniack AD, Beauchamp EM, Pugh TJ et al (2013) Activation of the PD-1 pathway contributes to immune escape in EGFR-driven lung tumors. Cancer Discov 3:1355–1363

Ansell SM, Lesokhin AM, Borrello I, Halwani A, Scott EC, Gutierrez M, Schuster SJ, Millenson MM, Cattry D, Freeman GJ et al (2015) PD-1 blockade with nivolumab in relapsed or refractory Hodgkin's lymphoma. N Engl J Med 372:311–319

Atefi M, Avramis E, Lassen A, Wong DJ, Robert L, Foulad D, Cerniglia M, Titz B, Chodon T, Graeber TG et al (2014) Effects of MAPK and PI3K pathways on PD-L1 expression in melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 20:3446–3457

Azuma K, Ota K, Kawahara A, Hattori S, Iwama E, Harada T, Matsumoto K, Takayama K, Takamori S, Kage M et al (2014) Association of PD-L1 overexpression with activating EGFR mutations in surgically resected nonsmall-cell lung cancer. Ann Oncol 25:1935–1940

Boni A, Cogdill AP, Dang P, Udayakumar D, Njauw CN, Sloss CM, Ferrone CR, Flaherty KT, Lawrence DP, Fisher DE et al (2010) Selective BRAFV600E inhibition enhances T-cell recognition of melanoma without affecting lymphocyte function. Cancer Res 70:5213–5219

Borghaei H, Paz-Ares L, Horn L, Spigel DR, Steins M, Ready NE, Chow LQ, Vokes EE, Felip E, Holgado E et al (2015) Nivolumab versus Docetaxel in advanced nonsquamous non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 373:1627–1639

Brouckaert PG, Fiers W, Lejeune FJ (1992) Coley's vaccine and TNF therapy. Nature 358:630

Chapman PB, Hauschild A, Robert C, Haanen JB, Ascierto P, Larkin J, Dummer R, Garbe C, Testori A, Maio M et al (2011) Improved survival with vemurafenib in melanoma with BRAF V600E mutation. N Engl J Med 364:2507–2516

Chen N, Fang W, Zhan J, Hong S, Tang Y, Kang S, Zhang Y, He X, Zhou T, Qin T et al (2015) Upregulation of PD-L1 by EGFR activation mediates the immune escape in EGFR-driven NSCLC: implication for optional immune targeted therapy for NSCLC patients with EGFR mutation. J Thorac Oncol 10:910–923

Cooper ZA, Frederick DT, Juneja VR, Sullivan RJ, Lawrence DP, Piris A, Sharpe AH, Fisher DE, Flaherty KT, Wargo JA (2013) BRAF inhibition is associated with increased clonality in tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes. Oncoimmunology 2:e26615

Cooper ZA, Juneja VR, Sage PT, Frederick DT, Piris A, Mitra D, Lo JA, Hodi FS, Freeman GJ, Bosenberg MW et al (2014) Response to BRAF inhibition in melanoma is enhanced when combined with immune checkpoint blockade. Cancer Immunol Res 2:643–654

Corrales L, McWhirter SM, Dubensky TW Jr, Gajewski TF (2016) The host STING pathway at the interface of cancer and immunity. J Clin Invest 126:2404–2411

Coussens LM, Zitvogel L, Palucka AK (2013) Neutralizing tumor-promoting chronic inflammation: a magic bullet? Science 339:286–291

Curran MA, Montalvo W, Yagita H, Allison JP (2010) PD-1 and CTLA-4 combination blockade expands infiltrating T cells and reduces regulatory T and myeloid cells within B16 melanoma tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:4275–4280

Damsky WE, Curley DP, Santhanakrishnan M, Rosenbaum LE, Platt JT, Gould Rothberg BE, Taketo MM, Dankort D, Rimm DL, McMahon M, Bosenberg M (2011) Beta-catenin signaling controls metastasis in Braf-activated Pten-deficient melanomas. Cancer Cell 20:741–754

Danilova L, Wang H, Sunshine J, Kaunitz GJ, Cottrell TR, Xu H, Esandrio J, Anders RA, Cope L, Pardoll DM et al (2016) Association of PD-1/PD-L axis expression with cytolytic activity, mutational load, and prognosis in melanoma and other solid tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113:E7769–E7777

Dankort D, Curley DP, Cartlidge RA, Nelson B, Karnezis AN, Damsky WE Jr, You MJ, DePinho RA, McMahon M, Bosenberg M (2009) Braf(V600E) cooperates with Pten loss to induce metastatic melanoma. Nat Genet 41:544–552

Davies H, Bignell GR, Cox C, Stephens P, Edkins S, Clegg S, Teague J, Woffendin H, Garnett MJ, Bottomley W et al (2002) Mutations of the BRAF gene in human cancer. Nature 417:949–954

Denkert C, Loibl S, Noske A, Roller M, Muller BM, Komor M, Budczies J, Darb-Esfahani S, Kronenwett R, Hanusch C et al (2010) Tumor-associated lymphocytes as an independent predictor of response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 28:105–113

Flaherty KT, Puzanov I, Kim KB, Ribas A, McArthur GA, Sosman JA, O'Dwyer PJ, Lee RJ, Grippo JF, Nolop K, Chapman PB (2010) Inhibition of mutated, activated BRAF in metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med 363:809–819

Frederick DT, Piris A, Cogdill AP, Cooper ZA, Lezcano C, Ferrone CR, Mitra D, Boni A, Newton LP, Liu C et al (2013) BRAF inhibition is associated with enhanced melanoma antigen expression and a more favorable TMEin patients with metastatic melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 19:1225–1231

Fridman WH, Pages F, Sautes-Fridman C, Galon J (2012) The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. Nat Rev Cancer 12:298–306

Fu C, Liang X, Cui W, Ober-Blobaum JL, Vazzana J, Shrikant PA, Lee KP, Clausen BE, Mellman I, Jiang A (2015) Beta-catenin in dendritic cells exerts opposite functions in cross-priming and maintenance of CD8+ T cells through regulation of IL-10. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112:2823–2828

Gajewski TF (2007) Failure at the effector phase: immune barriers at the level of the melanoma tumor microenvironment. Clin Cancer Res 13:5256–5261

Gandini S, Massi D, Mandala M (2016) PD-L1 expression in cancer patients receiving anti PD-1/PD-L1 antibodies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 100:88–98

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144:646–674

Harlin H, Meng Y, Peterson AC, Zha Y, Tretiakova M, Slingluff C, McKee M, Gajewski TF (2009) Chemokine expression in melanoma metastases associated with CD8+ T-cell recruitment. Cancer Res 69:3077–3085

Harvey KF, Zhang X, Thomas DM (2013) The hippo pathway and human cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 13:246–257

Ho PC, Meeth KM, Tsui YC, Srivastava B, Bosenberg MW, Kaech SM (2014) Immune-based antitumor effects of BRAF inhibitors rely on signaling by CD40L and IFNgamma. Cancer Res 74:3205–3217

Imielinski M, Berger AH, Hammerman PS, Hernandez B, Pugh TJ, Hodis E, Cho J, Suh J, Capelletti M, Sivachenko A et al (2012) Mapping the hallmarks of lung adenocarcinoma with massively parallel sequencing. Cell 150:1107–1120

Ji M, Liu Y, Li Q, Li XD, Zhao WQ, Zhang H, Zhang X, Jiang JT, Wu CP (2015) PD-1/PD-L1 pathway in non-small-cell lung cancer and its relation with EGFR mutation. J Transl Med 13:5

Jiang A, Bloom O, Ono S, Cui W, Unternaehrer J, Jiang S, Whitney JA, Connolly J, Banchereau J, Mellman I (2007) Disruption of E-cadherin-mediated adhesion induces a functionally distinct pathway of dendritic cell maturation. Immunity 27:610–624

Jiang X, Zhou J, Giobbie-Hurder A, Wargo J, Hodi FS (2013) The activation of MAPK in melanoma cells resistant to BRAF inhibition promotes PD-L1 expression that is reversible by MEK and PI3K inhibition. Clin Cancer Res 19:598–609

Jurgens B, Hainz U, Fuchs D, Felzmann T, Heitger A (2009) Interferon-gamma-triggered indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase competence in human monocyte-derived dendritic cells induces regulatory activity in allogeneic T cells. Blood 114:3235–3243

Kakavand H, Wilmott JS, Menzies AM, Vilain R, Haydu LE, Yearley JH, Thompson JF, Kefford RF, Hersey P, Long GV, Scolyer RA (2015) PD-L1 expression and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes define different subsets of MAPK inhibitor-treated melanoma patients. Clin Cancer Res 21:3140–3148

Keck MK, Zuo Z, Khattri A, Stricker TP, Brown CD, Imanguli M, Rieke D, Endhardt K, Fang P, Bragelmann J et al (2015) Integrative analysis of head and neck cancer identifies two biologically distinct HPV and three non-HPV subtypes. Clin Cancer Res 21:870–881

Khalili JS, Liu S, Rodriguez-Cruz TG, Whittington M, Wardell S, Liu C, Zhang M, Cooper ZA, Frederick DT, Li Y et al (2012) Oncogenic BRAF(V600E) promotes stromal cell-mediated immunosuppression via induction of interleukin-1 in melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 18:5329–5340

Knight DA, Ngiow SF, Li M, Parmenter T, Mok S, Cass A, Haynes NM, Kinross K, Yagita H, Koya RC et al (2013) Host immunity contributes to the anti-melanoma activity of BRAF inhibitors. J Clin Invest 123:1371–1381

Liang X, Fu C, Cui W, Ober-Blobaum JL, Zahner SP, Shrikant PA, Clausen BE, Flavell RA, Mellman I, Jiang A (2014) Beta-catenin mediates tumor-induced immunosuppression by inhibiting cross-priming of CD8(+) T cells. J Leukoc Biol 95:179–190

Lin J, Hocker TL, Singh M, Tsao H (2008) Genetics of melanoma predisposition. Br J Dermatol 159:286–291

Liu C, Peng W, Xu C, Lou Y, Zhang M, Wargo JA, Chen JQ, Li HS, Watowich SS, Yang Y et al (2013) BRAF inhibition increases tumor infiltration by T cells and enhances the antitumor activity of adoptive immunotherapy in mice. Clin Cancer Res 19:393–403

Liu L, Mayes PA, Eastman S, Shi H, Yadavilli S, Zhang T, Yang J, Seestaller-Wehr L, Zhang SY, Hopson C et al (2015) The BRAF and MEK inhibitors Dabrafenib and Trametinib: effects on immune function and in combination with immunomodulatory antibodies targeting PD-1, PD-L1, and CTLA-4. Clin Cancer Res 21:1639–1651

Loke P, Allison JP (2003) PD-L1 and PD-L2 are differentially regulated by Th1 and Th2 cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:5336–5341

Lynch TJ, Bell DW, Sordella R, Gurubhagavatula S, Okimoto RA, Brannigan BW, Harris PL, Haserlat SM, Supko JG, Haluska FG et al (2004) Activating mutations in the epidermal growth factor receptor underlying responsiveness of non-small-cell lung cancer to gefitinib. N Engl J Med 350:2129–2139

Manicassamy S, Reizis B, Ravindran R, Nakaya H, Salazar-Gonzalez RM, Wang YC, Pulendran B (2010) Activation of beta-catenin in dendritic cells regulates immunity versus tolerance in the intestine. Science 329:849–853

Matsushita H, Vesely MD, Koboldt DC, Rickert CG, Uppaluri R, Magrini VJ, Arthur CD, White JM, Chen YS, Shea LK et al (2012) Cancer exome analysis reveals a T-cell-dependent mechanism of cancer immunoediting. Nature 482:400–404

Meyer C, Cagnon L, Costa-Nunes CM, Baumgaertner P, Montandon N, Leyvraz L, Michielin O, Romano E, Speiser DE (2014) Frequencies of circulating MDSC correlate with clinical outcome of melanoma patients treated with ipilimumab. Cancer Immunol Immunother 63:247–257

Minn AJ, Wherry EJ (2016) Combination cancer therapies with immune checkpoint blockade: convergence on interferon signaling. Cell 165:272–275

Mlecnik B, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Fischer M, Fredriksen T et al (2016) Integrative analyses of colorectal cancer show

Immunoscore is a stronger predictor of patient survival than microsatellite instability. Immunity 44:698–711
Moroishi T, Hayashi T, Pan WW, Fujita Y, Holt MV, Qin J, Carson DA, Guan KL (2016) The hippo pathway kinases LATS1/2 suppress cancer immunity. Cell 167:1525–1539. e1517
Paez JG, Janne PA, Lee JC, Tracy S, Greulich H, Gabriel S, Herman P, Kaye FJ, Lindeman N, Boggon TJ et al (2004) EGFR mutations in lung cancer: correlation with clinical response to gefitinib therapy. Science 304:1497–1500
Pages F, Galon J, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Tartour E, Sautes-Fridman C, Fridman WH (2010) Immune infiltration in human tumors: a prognostic factor that should not be ignored. Oncogene 29:1093–1102
Parsa AT, Waldron JS, Panner A, Crane CA, Parney IF, Barry JJ, Cachola KE, Murray JC, Tihan T, Jensen MC et al (2007) Loss of tumor suppressor PTEN function increases B7-H1 expression and immunoresistance in glioma. Nat Med 13:84–88
Peng W, Chen JQ, Liu C, Malu S, Creasy C, Tetzlaff MT, Xu C, McKenzie JA, Zhang C, Liang X et al (2016) Loss of PTEN promotes resistance to T cell-mediated immunotherapy. Cancer Discov 6:202–216
Pivarcsi A, Muller A, Hippe A, Rieker J, van Lierop A, Steinhoff M, Seeliger S, Kubitza R, Pippirs U, Meller S et al (2007) Tumor immune escape by the loss of homeostatic chemokine expression. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:19055–19060
Ribas A, Hodi FS, Callahan M, Konto C, Wolchok J (2013) Hepatotoxicity with combination of vemurafenib and ipilimumab. N Engl J Med 368:1365–1366
Ribas A, Hamid O, Daud A, Hodi FS, Wolchok JD, Kefford R, Joshua AM, Patnaik A, Hwu WJ, Weber JS et al (2016) Association of pembrolizumab with tumor response and survival among patients with advanced melanoma. JAMA 315:1600–1609
Romano E, Kusio-Kobialka M, Foukas PG, Baumgaertner P, Meyer C, Ballabeni P, Michielin O, Weide B, Romero P, Speiser DE (2015) Ipilimumab-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity of regulatory T cells ex vivo by nonclassical monocytes in melanoma patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112:6140–6145
Rosenberg SA, Lotze MT, Yang JC, Linehan WM, Seipp C, Calabro S, Karp SE, Sherry RM, Steinberg S, White DE (1989) Combination therapy with interleukin-2 and alpha-interferon for the treatment of patients with advanced cancer. J Clin Oncol 7:1863–1874
Salmon H, Idoyaga J, Rahman A, Leboeuf M, Remark R, Jordan S, Casanova-Acebes M, Khudoynazarova M, Agudo J, Tung N et al (2016) Expansion and activation of CD103(+) dendritic cell progenitors at the tumor site enhances tumor responses to therapeutic PD-L1 and BRAF inhibition. Immunity 44:924–938
Schmid MC, Avraamides CJ, Dippold HC, Franco I, Foubert P, Ellies LG, Acevedo LM, Manglicmot JR, Song X, Wrasidlo W et al (2011) Receptor tyrosine kinases and TLR/IL1Rs unexpectedly activate myeloid cell PI3kgamma, a single convergent point promoting tumor inflammation and progression. Cancer Cell 19:715–727
Schreiber RD, Old LJ, Smyth MJ (2011) Cancer immunoediting: integrating immunity's roles in cancer suppression and promotion. Science 331:1565–1570
Shin DS, Zaretsky JM, Escuin-Ordinas H, Garcia-Diaz A, Hu-Lieskovan S, Kalbasi A, Grasso CS, Hugo W, Sandoval S, Torrejon DY et al (2016) Primary resistance to PD-1 blockade mediated by JAK1/2 mutations. Cancer Discov. doi: 10.1158/2159-8290
Song MS, Salmena L, Pandolfi PP (2012) The functions and regulation of the PTEN tumour suppressor. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 13:283–296
Spranger S, Spaapen RM, Zha Y, Williams J, Meng Y, Ha TT, Gajewski TF (2013) Up-regulation of PD-L1, IDO, and T(regs) in the melanoma TMEis driven by CD8(+) T cells. Sci Transl Med 5:200ra116
Spranger S, Bao R, Gajewski TF (2015) Melanoma-intrinsic beta-catenin signalling prevents anti-tumour immunity. Nature 523:231–235

Sweis RF, Spranger S, Bao R, Paner GP, Stadler WM, Steinberg G, Gajewski TF (2016) Molecular drivers of the non-T-cell-inflamed TMEin urothelial bladder cancer. Cancer Immunol Res 4:563–568

Taube JM, Young GD, McMiller TL, Chen S, Salas JT, Pritchard TS, Xu H, Meeker AK, Fan J, Cheadle C et al (2015) Differential expression of immune-regulatory genes associated with PD-L1 display in melanoma: implications for PD-1 pathway blockade. Clin Cancer Res 21:3969–3976

Tomei S, Bedognetti D, De Giorgi V, Sommariva M, Civini S, Reinboth J, Al Hashmi M, Ascierto ML, Liu Q, Ayotte BD et al (2015) The immune-related role of BRAF in melanoma. Mol Oncol 9:93–104

Topalian SL, Hodi FS, Brahmer JR, Gettinger SN, Smith DC, McDermott DF, Powderly JD, Carvajal RD, Sosman JA, Atkins MB et al (2012) Safety, activity, and immune correlates of anti-PD-1 antibody in cancer. N Engl J Med 366:2443–2454

Tumeh PC, Harview CL, Yearley JH, Shintaku IP, Taylor EJ, Robert L, Chmielowski B, Spasic M, Henry G, Ciobanu V et al (2014) PD-1 blockade induces responses by inhibiting adaptive immune resistance. Nature 515:568–571

Weber JS, D'Angelo SP, Minor D, Hodi FS, Gutzmer R, Neyns B, Hoeller C, Khushalani NI, Miller WH Jr, Lao CD et al (2015) Nivolumab versus chemotherapy in patients with advanced melanoma who progressed after anti-CTLA-4 treatment (CheckMate 037): a randomised, controlled, open-label, phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol 16:375–384

Welsh SJ, Rizos H, Scolyer RA, Long GV (2016) Resistance to combination BRAF and MEK inhibition in metastatic melanoma: where to next? Eur J Cancer 62:76–85

Wilmott JS, Long GV, Howle JR, Haydu LE, Sharma RN, Thompson JF, Kefford RF, Hersey P, Scolyer RA (2012) Selective BRAF inhibitors induce marked T-cell infiltration into human metastatic melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 18:1386–1394

Zaiss DM, van Loosdregt J, Gorlani A, Bekker CP, Grone A, Sibilia M, van Bergen en Henegouwen PM, Roovers RC, Coffer PJ, Sijts AJ (2013) Amphiregulin enhances regulatory T cell-suppressive function via the epidermal growth factor receptor. Immunity 38:275–284

Zaretsky JM, Garcia-Diaz A, Shin DS, Escuin-Ordinas H, Hugo W, Hu-Lieskovan S, Torrejon DY, Abril-Rodriguez G, Sandoval S, Barthly L et al (2016) Mutations associated with acquired resistance to PD-1 blockade in melanoma. N Engl J Med 375:819–829

Immunotolerance as a Mechanism of Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Melanoma

Mario Mandalà and Daniela Massi

Contents

1 Introduction 130
2 BRAF and Immune Suppression Are Two Key Hallmarks in Melanoma 132
3 Immune-Mediated Resistance to BRAFI and MEKI 134
4 Biology-Driven Strategy to Combine Immunotherapy and Target Therapy and Its Impact on the Design of Clinical Studies 136
4.1 New Combinations: Opportunity and Challenges 136
4.2 Are We Using the Best Schedule? 141
4.3 Study Design According to the Tumour Biology 141
5 Conclusions 141
References 142

Abstract

The therapy of metastatic melanoma (MM) was radically changed by the introduction of inhibitors of BRAF, an oncogene mutated in ≈40–50% of patients. Oncogenic BRAF promotes an immune-compromised tumour microenvironment (TME). Inhibition of MAPK pathway signaling with BRAF (BRAFi) and MEK inhibitors (MEKi) attenuates immune escape and increases the melanoma immunogenicity through multiple mechanisms, including elevation of melanoma antigen expression and improved T cell infiltration and function. These changes sustain the TME for response to immunotherapy. In this chapter we discuss preclinical and clinical data supporting the immunomodulating activities of targeted therapies, the

M. Mandalà (✉)
Unit of Medical Oncology, Department of Oncology and Haematology, Papa Giovanni XXIII Cancer Center Hospital, Piazza OMS 1, 24100 Bergamo, Italy
e-mail: mariomandala@tin.it; mmandala@asst-pg23.it

D. Massi
Division of Pathological Anatomy, Department of Surgery and Translational Medicine, University of Florence, Florence, Italy

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_5

immunotolerance as a mechanisms of resistance and highlight the rationale for novel combinations of targeted therapies and immunotherapies with the potential to significantly improve the future treatment of MM patients.

Keywords
BRAF • BRAF inhibitors • Immunotolerance • MEK inhibitors • Resistance

1 Introduction

Over the past 5 years, the FDA approval of the targeted therapy with inhibitors of the BRAF/MAPK pathway and novel immunotherapy with immune checkpoint inhibitors has significantly advanced the treatment of metastatic melanoma (MM) patients.

Approximately 50% of melanomas harbor activating (V600E) mutations in the serine-threonine protein kinase B-RAF (BRAFV600E) and the BRAF inhibitors vemurafenib and dabrafenib have shown to improve tumour regressions in patients with BRAFV600E mutant MM (Flaherty et al. 2010; Sosman et al. 2012; Falchook et al. 2012; Hauschild et al. 2012). Vemurafenib, the first type I BRAF inhibitor to enter clinical development, has shown more than 50% confirmed response rates in phase 1, 2 and 3 clinical trials (Flaherty et al. 2010; Sosman et al. 2012; Chapman et al. 2011), with an improved median overall survival (14–16 months) (Sosman et al. 2012; Chapman et al. 2011) in patients with melanoma harbouring the BRAF V600E mutation when compared with conventional chemotherapy. Unfortunately, after an initial improvement, most patients experience progression, with a median progression-free survival of 5–7 months. Like vemurafenib, dabrafenib, a second type I BRAF inhibitor, induces confirmed responses in more than 50% of MM patients (Falchook et al. 2012).

Recently, several MEK inhibitors have entered clinical development and trametinib has shown confirmed response rates of more than 20% in BRAF mutant melanoma, a phase 3 trial illustrating significant progression-free and overall survival benefit compared with dacarbazine or paclitaxel (Flaherty et al. 2012). Emerging data showed that the combination of BRAF and MEK inhibitors reduces single-agent toxicity of each agent thus delaying or even preventing the onset of resistance. Notably, no increase in the risk of developing secondary cancers was observed. Therefore, this combination approach is now regarded the new standard for the treatment of MM patients (Robert et al. 2015a; Long et al. 2015; Larkin et al. 2014).

Following these important advancements, a further major breakthrough in the treatment of melanoma has occurred by the introduction of immune checkpoint inhibition. This novel strategy has proved an exciting opportunity of long-term responses in clinically significant proportion of patients. Monoclonal antibodies targeting immunomodulatory molecules such as cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4) and programmed death receptor-1 (PD-1) have shown objective response rates ranging between 15% and 40%, respectively, when used as

monotherapy, and up to 60% when combined in large randomized clinical trials (Schadendorf et al. 2015; Ribas et al. 2016; Robert et al. 2015b).

Of importance, oncogenic BRAF can promote an immune-compromised tumour microenvironment (TME) (Sumimoto et al. 2006; Khalili et al. 2012) and inhibition of MAPK pathway signaling with BRAF (BRAFi) and MEK inhibitors (MEKi) attenuate mechanisms of immune escape and increase the melanoma immunogenicity via multiple mechanisms, including elevation of melanoma antigen expression and improved T cell infiltration and function (Frederick et al. 2013; Wilmott et al. 2012). These changes may serve to prime the TME for response to immunotherapy (Figs. 1 and 2).

In this chapter we discuss preclinical and clinical data supporting the immunomodulating activities of targeted therapies, the immunotolerance as a mechanisms of resistance and highlight the rationale for novel combinations of targeted therapies and immunotherapies with the potential to significantly improve the future treatments of MM patients.

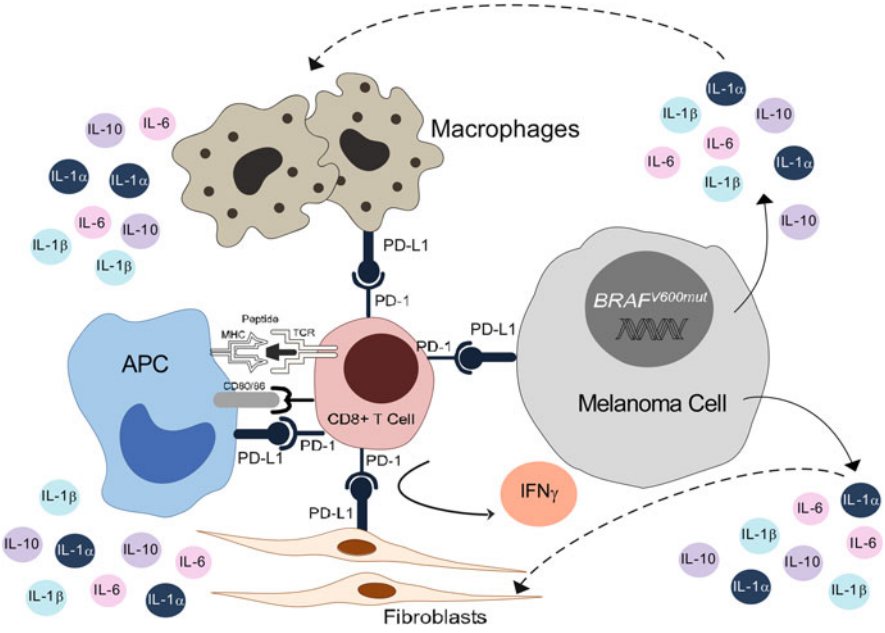


Fig. 1 BRAFV600 melanoma and tumour microenvironment

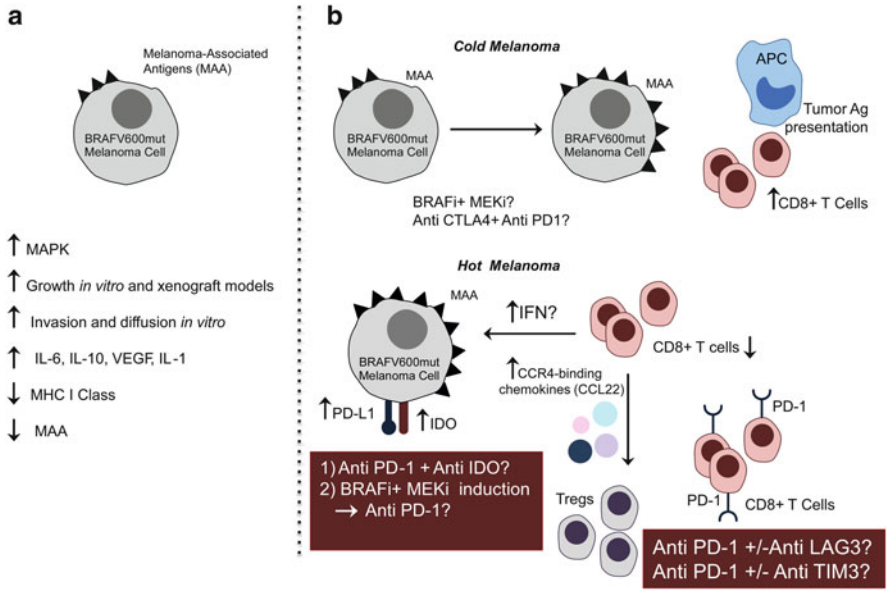


Fig. 2 (**a**) BRAFV600 melanoma and immunotolerant TME. (**b**) Biology-driven treatment strategy

2 BRAF and Immune Suppression Are Two Key Hallmarks in Melanoma

In 2000, Hanahan and Weinberg described six biological hallmarks, acquired during the multistep cancer development: (1) sustaining proliferative signaling, (2) evading growth suppressors, (3) resisting cell death, (4) enabling replicative immortality, (5) inducing angiogenesis, and (6) activating invasion and metastasis (Hanahan and Weinberg 2000). In the last two decades, based on new experimental data, two further hallmarks have been added: (7) reprogramming of energy metabolism and (8) evading immune destruction. Two hallmarks are of paramount importance in melanoma: (1) the MAPK pathway-activating oncogenic mutations and (2) immune suppression in the TME (Hanahan and Weinberg 2011).

BRAF mutation is present in 40–50% of cutaneous melanomas and results in the constitutive activation of the MAPK pathway, responsible for controlling cellular proliferation, apoptosis, and migration. A valine-to-glutamate substitution in the glycine-rich loop is the most frequent BRAF mutation (V600E). This gain-of-function BRAF mutation accounts for nearly 70–80% of the BRAF alterations described in melanoma, with alternative point mutations at the same position (V600D, V600K, V600R) contributing in the remaining cases, specifically, 15% are V600K, while V600R mutations constitute approximately 3–5% of all BRAF mutations. Immunosuppression involves active evasion by cancer cells from attack

and elimination by immune cells; this capability reflects the dichotomous roles of an immune system that both antagonizes and facilitates tumour development and progression.

Several studies support the notion that these two hallmarks are strictly linked, with MAPK signaling regulating the transcription of genes that downregulate the antitumour immune response (Sumimoto et al. 2006; Khalili et al. 2012; Hugo et al. 2015). For instance, oncogenic BRAF induces T cell suppression directly through the secretion of inhibitory cytokines such as IL-10, TGF-β, or VEGF, IL-1 or through membrane expression of co-inhibitory molecules such as the PD-1 and its ligands: PD-L1 and PD-L2. Furthermore, the presence of oncogenic BRAF leads to an immune suppressive TME characterized by the presence of inhibitory immune cells such as regulatory T cells (Tregs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), and tumour-associated macrophages, which can in turn inhibit the function of tumour-infiltrating T cells. It has been reported that melanoma cell lines with constitutively activated MAPK, due to BRAFV600 mutation, produce various immunosuppressive factors (IL-10, VEGF, or IL-6, IL-1), which promote recruitment of Tregs, MDSCs (categorized by CD11bþ/Gr-1þ surface staining), alternative activated macrophages (often referred to as M2-like macrophages), and immature dendritic cells, which also accumulate within the TME (Mandalà et al. 2016). Furthermore, IL-1 up-regulates the transcription of several genes known to promote immune suppression, such as COX-2, PD-L1 and PD-L2, which may also contribute to the induction of a functional T-cell inhibition (Mandalà et al. 2016).

Another immunosuppressive effect of mutant BRAF derives from its ability to down-regulate MHC class I (MHC-I) molecules by melanoma cells. MHC-I expression is reduced in melanoma cells overexpressing mutant BRAFV600. BRAFV600 mutation drives rapid and constitutive internalization of MHC-I from the cell surface and subsequent sequestration within endocytic compartments (Johansen et al. 2016). As a corollary of the immunosuppressive microenvironment driven by oncogenic BRAF, melanomas treated with BRAFi show increased T lymphocyte infiltration and expression of melanoma derived antigens (MDA). Related to T cell infiltration, increased MDA expression in melanoma samples as well as decreased VEGF and the immunosuppressive cytokines (IL-6 and IL-8), associated with an enriched granzyme B and perforin + T-cell infiltrate within 14 days of the initiation of BRAFi therapy has been described (Mandalà et al. 2016).

More importantly, in paired biopsies, the addition of MEKi to BRAFi did not reduce immune infiltration of CD4+ and CD8+ lymphocytes in the early phase of treatment (Hu-Lieskovan et al. 2015).

However, three major issues remain to be clarified: (1) there is remarkable heterogeneity and variability in the MDAs induced by BRAFi and or MEKi across different melanoma cell lines. For instance, although MDAs are proportionally up-regulated in different cell lines, the level of induction varies significantly between different melanoma cell lines; (2) although MAPK blockade by BRAFi or MEKi leads to increased MDAs expression, MDAs are not neoantigens, which are primarily recognized by the immune system. Upregulation of generic MDAs does not warrant a better identification of the immune system as only neoantigens

are a major factors for immune recognition thus promoting and optimization of immunotherapies; (3) functional studies to investigate specificity and clonality of T cell infiltration are strongly needed to better characterize the TME upon treatment with BRAFi and/or MEKi.

3 Immune-Mediated Resistance to BRAFI and MEKI

Approximately 80% and 95% of MM patients treated, respectively, with BRAFi and MEKi or BRAFi alone, respectively, progress at 3 years (Menzies and Long 2014). Furthermore, 20% of patients does not respond to therapy due to intrinsic or acquired resistance mediated by hyperactivation of receptor serine/threonine kinases, MAP kinase and alternative PI3K/Akt signaling, and interactions with TME. In the context of MAPKi treatment, there is an intrinsic inter-patient variability in the degree and duration of response. Therefore, identification of biomarkers that can allow accurate selection of the individual patient tailored treatment in BRAF-mutated melanoma is required.

Clinically, acquired resistance to MAPKi therapies for melanoma cannot be fully explained by genomic mechanisms and may be accompanied by co-evolution of intra-tumoural immunity. There is now enough evidence that TME plays a role in the developing of resistance during treatment with BRAFi or BRAFi and MEKi. Although BRAFi and MEKi enhance MDAs expression and promote the immune response against tumour cells, this more favourable microenvironment during BRAFi treatment seems to be counterbalanced by an increased expression of PD-1 and PD-L1 within 2 weeks upon starting BRAFi, a finding that suggests a potential immune-mediated resistance mechanism to BRAF inhibition (Wargo et al. 2014; Frederick et al. 2013).

Regulation of PD-L1 expression by melanoma is currently an area of intense translational and clinical investigation. PD-L1 expression can be induced by microenvironmental signals, including interferon-gamma, which is produced by activated CD8+ T lymphocyte. On the other side, PD-L1 expression may be enhanced through an oncogenic signalling pathway (Massi et al. 2014, 2015; Merelli et al. 2014).

Four different types of TME can be distinguished based on the presence or absence of tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes and PD-L1 expression has been described. These include type I (PD-L1 positive with TILs driving adaptive immune resistance), type II (PD-L1 negative with no TIL indicating immune ignorance), type III (PD-L1 positive with no TIL indicating intrinsic induction), and type IV (PD-L1 negative with TIL indicating the role of other suppressor(s) in promoting immune tolerance) (Teng et al. 2015).

We recently demonstrated that in BRAFi-treated MM patients, the presence of PD-L1 immunohistochemical expression in melanoma cells in the absence of tumour-infiltrating mononuclear cells (TIMC) is significantly associated with shorter progression-free survival and melanoma-specific survival (Massi et al. 2015). Furthermore, the absence of tumoural PD-L1 staining and the presence of

TIMC are associated with a better response to treatment. These results highlight the importance of the pre-existing immunological status in determining the response and outcome of MM patients treated with MAPKi.

Additional findings provide further information on the immune-mediated resistance to BRAFi and MEKi. Hugo et al. showed that LEF1 down-expression and ß-catenin modulation cause acquired MAPKi-resistance (Hugo et al. 2015). Similarly, Biechele et al. showed that β-catenin activation could modulate innate BRAFi sensitivity in melanoma cell lines (Biechele et al. 2012). Tumour-intrinsic ß-catenin pathway activation is mechanistically involved in the exclusion of T cells as well as CD103 dendritic cells via inhibition of CCL4 secretion (Spranger et al. 2015). The inverse relationship of active ß-catenin signaling and T cell infiltration in both human melanoma samples and transgenic melanoma mouse models by Spranger and colleagues provided a first insight into a potential new mechanism of immune resistance. No correlation was found between these findings and MAPKi treatment. Recently, our group extended these observations showing that the presence of CD8+ T cell infiltration as well as the subset of CD8+CD103+ T cells in melanoma samples obtained before starting treatment with MAPKi correlated with the therapeutic response (Massi unpublished observations). Furthermore, responding patients showed a significantly increased expression of mRNA transcripts associated with adaptive immunity and antigen presentation. In a multivariate analysis, the presence of CD8+ T cells was found to predict prognosis.

About 50% of MM patients with acquired MAPKi-resistance exhibit a profound CD8 T-cell deficiency and/or an exhaustion of the phenotype (Hugo et al. 2015). There is evidence that *CD8A* expression in MM patients progressing during BRAFi treatment decreases not only with respect to patient-matched baseline expression level but also to the general expression range at baseline. Thus, distinctive expression patterns of *CD8A,* in both relative and absolute terms, suggest both CD8 T-cell depletion and exhaustion. As overexpression of PD-L1 during the process of the immune adaptive resistance correlates with a better response to anti PD-1, the anti-PD-1 has been proposed as the first line treatment. However, it must be underlined that definition of best first line treatment (immune checkpoint inhibitors or MAPKi) remains uncertain and should only derive from appropriate clinical trials. Finally, the high intra-tumoral CD8+ T cell infiltration upon response disappears at disease progression. Thus, understanding the functional contributions of immune evasion to acquired MAPKi-resistance may contribute to develop combined treatments and improve the anti-tumor response of BRAFi alone.

In addition to the lymphocytes' orchestrated mechanisms of resistance, also secreted, soluble factors originating from the stroma can induce resistance. These include: (1) the stromal fibroblast-derived hepatocyte growth factor that activates receptor tyrosine kinases resulting in the reactivation of the pathway by signalling through RAS (Straussman et al. 2012); and (2) the TNFα, which has been described to block apoptosis in BRAF-depleted melanoma cells (Gray-Schopfer et al. 2007). TNFα promotes tumour growth, angiogenesis, and invasion. Recently, it has been reported that MAPK pathway inhibition directly influences the TME by increasing

the number of macrophages. Macrophages release TNFα, which, in turn, increases resistance due to its ability to enhance the expression of the melanoma survival factor MITF (Smith et al. 2014).

MITF-dependent resistance is probably due to its crucial role in regulating multiple survival and antiapoptotic genes, including BCL2A1 (Haq et al. 2013). Furthermore, components of the differentiation program that stimulates up-regulation of MITF are also involved in MAPK pathway inhibitor resistance (Johannessen et al. 2010).

Overall, insights from these studies provide a framework for considering the immune microenvironment as a target to be exploited in combination strategies between targeted therapies and immunotherapy.

4 Biology-Driven Strategy to Combine Immunotherapy and Target Therapy and Its Impact on the Design of Clinical Studies

The systemic treatment of MM has evolved with the introduction of BRAFi and MEKi and immunotherapy to the complementary therapeutic strategy, with the aim to restore immune functions, boosting T cell specific responses against the tumour. Elucidating mechanisms of response and resistance to each of these therapeutical strategies is key to better understand how to combine these medicines. Translational research studies conducted in parallel and in sequence in in vitro, in murine models as well as in patient tissue samples are of paramount instrumental value. Table 1 reports ongoing studies, which evaluate the best combination or sequencing strategy with immunotherapy and targeted therapy. All these trials have been planned following the classical clinical design of oncological studies. Nevertheless, several questions still remain unanswered. The acute and late toxicity of new combinations, the best schedule indicate the need of new clinical trails strictly based on the biology of the disease.

4.1 New Combinations: Opportunity and Challenges

Several interferon-inducible genes that are part of the negative immune regulatory loops could limit T cell responses to cancer and could provide novel targets for immunotherapy. Among them T-cell immunoglobulin domain and mucin domain-3 (TIM-3), the lymphocyte activation gene 3 (LAG-3) as well as the carcinoembryonic antigen cell adhesion molecule-1 (CEACAM1), which has been reported to be a partner of TIM-3, can be blocked therapeutically using antibodies resulting in antitumour activity (Smyth et al. 2016).

Furthermore, cancer treatment with agents that inhibit immunosuppressive metabolites is another promising strategy. These targets include adenosine, indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO), which is expressed by both tumour cells and infiltrating myeloid cells, and arginase, which is produced by MDSCs. IDO and

Table 1 Ongoing clinical trials with targeted therapy combined (combination or sequential) to immunotherapy in advanced melanoma patients (from www.clinicaltrials.gov, updated at December 31, 2016)

Targeted therapy + immune checkpoint inhibitors				
Drugs (*clinical trial*)	Phase	Pathology	Primary endpoint(s)	Secondary endpoint(s)
Phase III Sequential strategy of immunotherapy and targeted therapy in melanoma				
SECOMBIT STUDY (*NCT02631447*) *Arm A* LGX 818 + Mek 162 until PD followed by Ipi and Nivo *Arm B* Ipi and Nivo until PD followed by LGX 818 + Mek 162 *Arm C* LGX 818 + Mek 162 for 8 weeks followed by Ipi and Nivo until PD and then LGX 818 + Mek 162	**3**	Unresectable stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	**OS**	**PFS** **ORR**
Arm A Dabrafenib + Trametinib until PD followed by Ipi and Nivo *Arm B* Ipi and Nivo until PD followed by Dabrafenib + Trametinib	**3**	Unresectable stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	**OS**	**PFS** **ORR**
Combination strategy of immunotherapy and targeted therapy in melanoma				
Dabrafenib +/− trametinib +/− ipilimumab (*NCT01767454*)	1	Unresectable stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD	● ORR ● PK
Atezolizumab + vemurafenib +/− cobimetinib (*NCT01656642*)	1b	Unresectable stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD	● PK ● BOR ● OR ● OS ● PFS

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Targeted therapy + immune checkpoint inhibitors				
Drugs (*clinical trial*)	Phase	Pathology	Primary endpoint(s)	Secondary endpoint(s)
				● **Ancillary endpoints** (mean Atezolizumab dose, presence of anti-Atezolizumab antibodies)
Dabrafenib +/− trametinib +/− pembrolizumab (*NCT02130466*)	1/2	Unresectable stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD ● PFS	● ORR
Trametinib +/− Dabrafenib +/− MEDI4736 (*NCT02027961*)	1	Unresectable stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD	● Antitumour activity (OR, DR, PFS, OS) **Ancillary endpoints** ● PK of MEDI4736 presence of anti-MEDI4736 antibodies
Ipilimumab + imatinib mesylate (*NCT01738139*)	1	C-KIT positive metastatic or unresectable GIST, melanoma, other tumour histotype	● MTD	–
Vemurafenib + ipilimumab (*NCT01400451*)	1	Stage IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● Hepatic DLT ● MTD	–
Vemurafenib + Pembrolizumab (*NCT02818023*)	1	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● DLT ● ORR*	● PFS ● OS
Ipilimumab +/− Dabrafenib +/− Trametinib +/− Nivolumab (*NCT01940809*)	1	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● G3 or higher irAEs	● Disease control-rate ● RR

Ipilimumab + dabrafenib (*NCT02200562*)	1/2	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD	–
Dabrafenib + trametinib + pembrolizumab (*NCT02625337*)	2	Stage IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD ● Feasibility	● RR ● PFS ● Long-term toxicities
Imatinib + pembrolizumab (*NCT02812693*)	1/2	Unresectable stage III/ IV melanoma with c-KIT mutation/ amplification	● BORR	● Change in PD-1 and PDL-1 expression levels ● Incidence of AEs ● OS ● PFS ● TTP
Targeted therapy + cytokines				
Vemurafenib + IL-2 (*NCT01754376*)	2	Stage IIIc/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E mutation	● PFS	● ORR ● OS ● Toxicity and Safety of IL-2 and Vemurafenib **Ancillary endpoints** ● Biomarkers
Vemurafenib + high dose IL-2 (*NCT01683188*)	4	Stage IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● CR rate	–
Vemurafenib + IL-2 (infusional 96 h) + INF alfa-2b (*NCT01603212*)	1/2	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD ● PFS	–
Vemurafenib + pegylated IFN (*NCT01959633*)	1/2	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs	● ORR
Vemurafenib + high-dose INF alfa-2b (*NCT01943422*)	1/2	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs	● PFS ● OS

(continued)

Table 1 (continued)

Targeted therapy + immune checkpoint inhibitors				
Drugs (*clinical trial*)	Phase	Pathology	Primary endpoint(s)	Secondary endpoint(s)
Targeted therapy + T-cell				
Vemurafenib + cyclophosphamide and fludarabine + TIL + high dose IL-2 (*NCT 01585415*)	1	Stage IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs ● MTD	/
Vemurafenib + ACT with TIL infusion + High Dose IL-2 (*NCT01659151*)	2	Unresectable stage III/IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K/D mutation	● ORR ● Drop Out Rate	● PFS
Vemurafenib + ACT + TIL infusion (*NCT02354690*)	1/2	Unresectable stage III/ IV melanoma with BRAF V600E/K mutation	● AEs MTD	● Immune-related responses ● ORR ● OS ● PFS

DLT dose-limiting toxicity, *ORR* overall response rate, *AEs* adverse events, *SAEs* serious adverse events, *BOR* best overall response, *OS* overall survival, *PFS* progression free survival, *MTD* maximum tolerated dose, *DR* duration of response, *PK* pharmacokinetic, *CR* complete response, *IL-2* interleukin-2, *IFN* interferon, *irAEs* immune-related adverse events, *TTP* time to progression, *OR** overall response, *TIL* tumour infiltrating lymphocytes, *ACT* adoptive cell transfer

arginase are able to inhibit immune responses through the local depletion of amino acids functionally important in lymphocytes, or through the generation of specific ligands for cytosolic receptors that can alter lymphocyte functions. Overall, these new molecules introduce new challenges and difficulties. For example, acute and late toxicity as well as long-term benefit with these new agents is poorly known and combination may be tested without precise and predictive estimates, that are key elements for the design of clinical trials.

4.2 Are We Using the Best Schedule?

Another issue is debate regards treatment schedule. It has been suggested that an intermittent dosing may both delay the development of acquired resistance and postpone clinical disease progression once resistant clones have emerged (Das Thakur et al. 2013). Exploring the role of intermittent schedule of BRAFi and MEKi with immunotherapy introduced during target therapy holidays will allow shedding the light on the best integration between targeted therapy and immunotherapy.

4.3 Study Design According to the Tumour Biology

Biology based investigation has recognized that the adaptive immune resistance is a process through which cancer reactively expresses molecules that actively turn off a potential effective antitumour immune response. The antitumour activity of PD-1 blockade therapy is particularly effective in the subset of T-cell inflamed melanomas that show high expression of PD-L1, IDO, and FOXP3+ Tregs (Tumeh et al. 2014). However, how to target "cold" melanomas with lack of detectable immune reaction (without TILs and with no PD-L1 expression), which represent approximately 41% of patients, is still unknown. In this group of patients, single-agent checkpoint blockade would most likely not to be successful given the lack of pre-existing T cell infiltrates. In this poorly predictable clinical scenario, BRAFi and MEKi could increase MDAs expression and elicit T cell activation, bringing T cells into tumours and then avoiding them being turned off. Recognizing adaptive immune resistance in baseline biopsies may lead to precision immunotherapy.

5 Conclusions

The presence of oncogenic BRAF protein recapitulates several well-known immune suppressive mechanisms, including the inhibition of T cell function, which are common to multiple cancers, with their presence frequently associated with poor patient prognosis. In addition to these established molecular mechanisms of resistance, there is growing evidence that the therapeutic efficacy of BRAFi relies on additional factors involved in tumour–host interactions, including the enhancement of melanoma antigen expression and the increase in immune response against tumour cells,

following antigen release. Based on preclinical and clinical data supporting the immunomodulating activities of targeted therapies, novel combinations of targeted therapies and immunotherapies with the potential to significantly ameliorate the future treatment of MM patients are ongoing and will tell us if the survival bar can be further raised in MM patients.

References

Biechele TL, Kulikauskas RM, Toroni RA et al (2012) Wnt/β-catenin signaling and AXIN1 regulate apoptosis triggered by inhibition of the mutant kinase BRAFV600E in human melanoma. Sci Signal 5(206):ra3

Chapman PB, Hauschild A, Robert C et al (2011) Improved survival with vemurafenib in melanoma with BRAF V600E mutation. N Engl J Med 364(26):2507–2516

Das Thakur M, Salangsang F, Landman AS et al (2013) Modelling vemurafenib resistance in melanoma reveals a strategy to forestall drug resistance. Nature 494(7436):251–255

Falchook GS, Long GV, Kurzrock R et al (2012) Dabrafenib in patients with melanoma, untreated brain metastases, and other solid tumours: a phase 1 dose-escalation trial. Lancet 379 (9829):1893–1901

Flaherty KT, Puzanov I, Kim KB et al (2010) Inhibition of mutated, activated BRAF in metastatic melanoma. N Engl J Med 363(9):809–819

Flaherty KT, Robert C, Hersey P et al (2012) Improved survival with MEK inhibition in BRAF-mutated melanoma. N Engl J Med 367(2):107–114

Frederick DT, Piris A, Cogdill AP et al (2013) BRAF inhibition is associated with enhanced melanoma antigen expression and a more favorable tumor microenvironment in patients with metastatic melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 19(5):1225–1231

Gray-Schopfer VC, Karasarides M, Hayward R, Marais R (2007) Tumor necrosis factor-alpha blocks apoptosis in melanoma cells when BRAF signaling is inhibited. Cancer Res 67 (1):122–129. Erratum in: Cancer Res. 2007; 67(4):1877

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2000) The hallmarks of cancer. Cell 100(1):57–70

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144(5):646–674

Haq R, Yokoyama S, Hawryluk EB et al (2013) BCL2A1 is a lineage-specific antiapoptotic melanoma oncogene that confers resistance to BRAF inhibition. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(11):4321–4326

Hauschild A, Grob JJ, Demidov LV et al (2012) Dabrafenib in BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma: a multicentre, open-label, phase 3 randomised controlled trial. Lancet 380 (9839):358–365

Hugo W, Shi H, Sun L et al (2015) Non-genomic and immune evolution of melanoma acquiring MAPKi resistance. Cell 162(6):1271–1285

Hu-Lieskovan S, Mok S, Homet Moreno B et al (2015) Improved antitumor activity of immunotherapy with BRAF and MEK inhibitors in BRAF(V600E) melanoma. Sci Transl Med 7 (279):279ra41

Johannessen CM, Boehm JS, Kim SY et al (2010) COT drives resistance to RAF inhibition through MAP kinase pathway reactivation. Nature 468(7326):968–972

Johansen LL, Lock-Andersen J, Hviid TV (2016) The pathophysiological impact of HLA class Ia and HLA-G expression and regulatory T cells in malignant melanoma: a review. J Immunol Res 2016:6829283

Khalili JS, Liu S, Rodríguez-Cruz TG et al (2012) Oncogenic BRAF(V600E) promotes stromal cell-mediated immunosuppression via induction of interleukin-1 in melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 18(19):5329–5340

Larkin J, Ascierto PA, Dréno B et al (2014) Combined vemurafenib and cobimetinib in BRAF-mutated melanoma. N Engl J Med 371(20):1867–1876

Long GV, Stroyakovskiy D, Gogas H et al (2015) Dabrafenib and trametinib versus dabrafenib and placebo for Val600 BRAF-mutant melanoma: a multicentre, double-blind, phase 3 randomised controlled trial. Lancet 386(9992):444–451

Mandalà M, De Logu F, Merelli B, Nassini R, Massi D (2016) Immunomodulating property of MAPK inhibitors: from translational knowledge to clinical implementation. Lab Investig. doi:10.1038/labinvest.2016.132. [Epub ahead of print]

Massi D, Brusa D, Merelli B et al (2014) PD-L1 marks a subset of melanomas with a shorter overall survival and distinct genetic and morphological characteristics. Ann Oncol 25 (12):2433–2442

Massi D, Brusa D, Merelli B et al (2015) The status of PD-L1 and tumor-infiltrating immune cells predict resistance and poor prognosis in BRAFi-treated melanoma patients harboring mutant BRAFV600. Ann Oncol 26(9):1980–1987

Menzies AM, Long GV (2014) Systemic treatment for BRAF-mutant melanoma: where do we go next? Lancet Oncol 15(9):e371–e381

Merelli B, Massi D, Cattaneo L, Mandalà M (2014) Targeting the PD1/PD-L1 axis in melanoma: biological rationale, clinical challenges and opportunities. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 89 (1):140–165

Ribas A, Hamid O, Daud A et al (2016) Association of Pembrolizumab with Tumor Response and Survival Among Patients with Advanced Melanoma. JAMA 315(15):1600–1609. Erratum in: JAMA 2016 Jun 14;315(22):2472

Robert C, Karaszewska B, Schachter J et al (2015a) Improved overall survival in melanoma with combined dabrafenib and trametinib. N Engl J Med 372(1):30–39

Robert C, Schachter J, Long GV et al (2015b) Pembrolizumab versus ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med 372(26):2521–2532

Schadendorf D, Hodi FS, Robert C et al (2015) Pooled analysis of long-term survival data from phase II and phase III trials of ipilimumab in unresectable or metastatic melanoma. J Clin Oncol 33(17):1889–1894

Smith MP, Sanchez-Laorden B, O'Brien K et al (2014) The immune microenvironment confers resistance to MAPK pathway inhibitors through macrophage-derived TNFα. Cancer Discov 4 (10):1214–1229

Smyth MJ, Ngiow SF, Ribas A, Teng MW (2016) Combination cancer immunotherapies tailored to the tumour microenvironment. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 13(3):143–158

Sosman JA, Kim KB, Schuchter L et al (2012) Survival in BRAF V600-mutant advanced melanoma treated with vemurafenib. N Engl J Med 366(8):707–714

Spranger S, Bao R, Gajewski TF (2015) Melanoma-intrinsic β-catenin signalling prevents anti-tumour immunity. Nature 523(7559):231–235

Straussman R, Morikawa T, Shee K et al (2012) Tumour micro-environment elicits innate resistance to RAF inhibitors through HGF secretion. Nature 487(7408):500–504

Sumimoto H, Imabayashi F, Iwata T, Kawakami Y (2006) The BRAF-MAPK signaling pathway is essential for cancer-immune evasion in human melanoma cells. J Exp Med 203(7):1651–1656

Teng MW, Ngiow SF, Ribas A, Smyth MJ (2015) Classifying cancers based on T-cell infiltration and PD-L1. Cancer Res 75(11):2139–2145

Tumeh PC, Harview CL, Yearley JH et al (2014) PD-1 blockade induces responses by inhibiting adaptive immune resistance. Nature 515(7528):568–571

Wargo JA, Cooper ZA, Flaherty KT (2014) Universes collide: combining immunotherapy with targeted therapy for cancer. Cancer Discov 4(12):1377–1386

Wilmott JS, Long GV, Howle JR et al (2012) Selective BRAF inhibitors induce marked T-cell infiltration into human metastatic melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 18(5):1386–1394

Plasticity of Resistance and Sensitivity to Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Inhibitors in Metastatic Colorectal Cancer

Andrea Sartore-Bianchi and Salvatore Siena

Contents

1 Introduction 146
2 Primary Resistance 147
3 Biomarkers of Sensitivity 151
4 Acquired (Secondary) Resistance 152
5 Conclusions 154
References 155

Abstract

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most prevalent cancers and the second leading cause of cancer mortality worldwide. Survival in the metastatic setting has been gradually improved by the addition to cytotoxic chemotherapy of agents targeting the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Considerable heterogeneity exists within CRC due to the varied genetic and epigenetic mechanisms involved in differing pathways of carcinogenesis. The knowledge of molecular abnormalities underlying colorectal tumourigenesis and the progression of dysplastic precursors to invasive and ultimately metastatic lesions has advanced in recent years by comprehensive sequencing studies. From these genome-scale analyses, we know that a handful of genes are commonly affected by somatic mutations,

A. Sartore-Bianchi (✉)
Niguarda Cancer Center, Grande Ospedale Metropolitano Niguarda, Piazza Ospedale Maggiore, 3, 20162 Milan, Italy
e-mail: andrea.sartorebianchi@ospedaleniguarda.it

S. Siena
Niguarda Cancer Center, Grande Ospedale Metropolitano Niguarda, Piazza Ospedale Maggiore, 3, 20162 Milan, Italy
Dipartimento di Oncologia ed Emato-Oncologia, Università degli Studi di Milano, Milan, Italy

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_19

whereas recurrent copy-number alterations and chromosomal translocations are rarer in this disease. Even though some of these molecular abnormalities make genes acting as drivers of cancer progression, translation of this recognition for therapeutic purposes is still limited, encompassing only as standard of care the exclusion of *RAS*-mutated cancers for better selecting patients to candidate to EGFR-targeted therapy with monoclonal antibodies. However, the effort of ameliorating molecular selection should not be considered exhausted by demonstration of *RAS* and *BRAF*-induced resistance, as the genomic landscape of response to EGFR blockade has been demonstrated to be wider and dynamically multifaceted. In this chapter we will review main molecular biomarkers of de novo (primary) and acquired (secondary) resistance to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies in metastatic CRC and discuss therapeutic implications.

Keywords
Cetuximab • Colorectal cancer • EGFR • Liquid biopsy • Panitumumab • RAS

1 Introduction

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most prevalent cancers and the second leading cause of cancer mortality worldwide (Siegel et al. 2017). Survival in the metastatic setting has been gradually improved by the use of fluorouracil/leucovorin in doublet or triplet combinations with oxaliplatin (FOLFOX) and/or irinotecan (FOLFIRI) together with agents targeting the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) (Ciombor et al. 2015). Nowadays, precision oncology significantly influences current and emerging therapies for metastatic CRC patients by the demonstration that the molecular refinement has led to substantial improvements in clinical outcomes (overall survival, OS and progression-free survival, PFS) (Douillard et al. 2013). This approach, together with advancement in surgical resection for selected patients with limited liver and/or lung involvement, has indeed significantly improved median overall survival to over 40 months from diagnosis (Heinemann et al. 2014; Schwartzberg et al. 2014; Van Cutsem et al. 2011; Venook et al. 2014).

Considerable heterogeneity exists within colorectal tumours due to the varied genetic and epigenetic mechanisms involved in differing pathways of carcinogenesis. The knowledge of molecular abnormalities underlying colorectal tumourigenesis and the progression of dysplastic precursors to invasive and ultimately metastatic lesions has advanced in recent years by comprehensive sequencing studies (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2012). From these genome-scale analyses, we know that a handful of genes are commonly affected by somatic mutations, whereas recurrent copy-number alterations and chromosomal translocations are rarer in this disease (Vogelstein et al. 2013). Even though some of these molecular abnormalities make genes acting as drivers of cancer progression, translation of this recognition for therapeutic purposes is still limited, encompassing only as standard of care the exclusion of *RAS*-mutated cancers for better selecting patients to candidate to EGFR-targeted therapy with monoclonal antibodies. It should be acknowledged

that the process of refining molecular selection for these therapeutics has paralleled, and in some instances enhanced the quest for targets actionable at the clinical level. In particular, well-known oncogenes such as *BRAF* and *ERBB2*, that are now among most promising targets in this tumour (Corcoran et al. 2014; Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016b), have been studied as biomarkers of resistance to anti-EGFR therapies. On the other hand, the effort of ameliorating molecular selection should not be considered exhausted by demonstration of *RAS* and *BRAF*-induced resistance, as the genomic landscape of response to EGFR blockade has been demonstrated to be wider (Bertotti et al. 2015) and dynamically multifaceted (Siravegna et al. 2015). In this chapter we will review main molecular biomarkers of de novo (primary) and acquired (secondary) resistance to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies in metastatic CRC and discuss therapeutic implications.

2 Primary Resistance

Primary resistance is defined as ab initio refractoriness to anticancer treatment. It could be explained by resistance-conferring factors pre-existing in the bulk of tumour cells (Leto and Trusolino 2014) that we may not recognize due to tumour heterogeneity (Tannock and Hickman 2016). Intratumour heterogeneity is present early in cancer development and cancer treatment selects for resistant subclones. The main therapeutic implication is that a single drug may not be adequate enough to treat a genetically heterogeneous tumour, since a pre-treatment cancer cell population harbouring resistance genetic alteration, even if present at a low frequency, can contribute to therapeutic failure and poor outcome in a Darwinian fashion (Fisher et al. 2013; Tannock and Hickman 2016; Misale et al. 2014; Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016a). Among molecular biomarkers of resistance to EGFR-targeted therapies in CRC, alterations in the *RAS/RAF/MAPK* pathway have been the most consistently shown to predict resistance, and *RAS* mutations have been the only reaching clinical grade. The landscape of molecular alterations impacting on sensitivity or resistance to these therapeutics is still interspersed with many other biomarkers, however they should be considered only in the context of translational research.

RAS In the EGFR signalling pathway a dominant downstream direction involves the activation of the G-protein intermediate *RAS*, and subsequent signalling through *BRAF*, *MEK*, and *ERK* (the *MAP* kinase pathway). Mutations in the *RAS* family of proto-oncogenes (*KRAS*, *NRAS*, *HRAS*) result in constitutive activation of *MAP* kinase pathway signalling that is independent of activation of receptor tyrosine kinases such as EGFR. In CRC *KRAS* is the predominantly mutated isoform, whereas *NRAS* mutations are found more rarely and the *HRAS* mutated isoform is extremely uncommon and therefore not tested by routine (Prior et al. 2012). As a consequence, the upstream pharmacological blockade of the receptor can be circumvented for cancer progression by constitutive signalling of activated GTP-bound *RAS* forms (Bardelli and Siena 2010). This discovery by our group and others has been acknowledged as a landmark step for the evolution of precision

medicine in the field of CRC (Benvenuti et al. 2007; Lièvre et al. 2006; Ushijima and Yoshino 2016). The most common *RAS* mutations in colon cancer occur at exon-2 (codons 12 and 13) of *KRAS*, and are present in about 42% of cases (Peeters et al. 2015). It is estimated that among tumours classified as *KRAS* exon 2 wild type, about one out of five carries other mutations in *KRAS* exon 3 (3.8–4.3%), *KRAS* exon 4 (6.2–6.7%), *NRAS* exon 2 (2.9–3.8%), *NRAS* exon 3 (4.2–4.8%) or *NRAS* exon 4 (0.3–0.5%), overall accounting for an additional total 11% of the so-called extended *RAS* or pan-*RAS* mutated CRCs (Peeters et al. 2015; Sorich et al. 2015). Initially, resistance to anti-EGFR mAbs was reported as associated with mutations confined to those occurring in codons 12 and 13 of exon 2 of the *KRAS* gene (Benvenuti et al. 2007; Lièvre et al. 2006). These findings were subsequently confirmed in retrospective analyses of large clinical trials (Amado et al. 2008; Van Cutsem et al. 2011) and reached clinical grade (Schmoll et al. 2012). However, retrospective analyses of multiple trials demonstrated that also additional mutations in exons 2, 3 and 4 of *KRAS*/*NRAS* exerted a similar predictive negative effect (De Roock et al. 2010), and this has been confirmed by analyses of phase III pivotal studies for development of anti-EGFR moAbs (Douillard et al. 2013; Van Cutsem et al. 2015). A meta-analysis of nine randomized controlled trials also confirmed that the treatment with both cetuximab and panitumumab had superior efficacy in terms of PFS and OS for extended *RAS* WT (i.e. *KRAS* exons 3 and 4 and *NRAS* exons 2, 3 and 4) compared with the expanded *RAS* mutant subgroup, and the efficacy was not significantly different between the expanded *RAS* mutant and *KRAS* exon 2 mutant subgroups (Sorich et al. 2015). Based on these studies, the screening of expanded *RAS* mutations for patients with metastatic CRC is currently recommended by principal treatment guidelines and included in the license for panitumumab and cetuximab for metastatic CRC (Van Cutsem et al. 2016) (Fig. 1). However, even though the presence of *RAS* mutations is a prerequisite for anti-EGFR moAbs, efficacy, its absence does not warrant response, as only 40–50% of patients with *RAS* WT tumours achieve objective response to treatment (Misale et al. 2014). Finally, the *KRAS* gene has been found not only to be mutated but also amplified, although in a very small percentage of CRC patients (0.7%), and this amplification has been observed as a mechanism in both primary and acquired resistance to EGFR inhibitors (Valtorta et al. 2013).

BRAF *BRAF* is an oncogene that encodes a downstream effector of *KRAS* in the *MAPK* pathway. In CRC tumours, mutations leading to constitutive *BRAF* activation have been reported in 47% of hyper-mutated tumours and 3% of non-hypermutated tumours (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2012), and approximately 5–10% of CRC tumours overall (De Roock et al. 2010). Of note, *KRAS* and *BRAF* mutations are mainly mutually exclusive in CRC (Richman et al. 2009). The presence of an activating mutation in *BRAF* conveys a strong prognostic significance, with mutated tumours conferring a poor prognosis with aggressive tumour biology and shorter OS, regardless of the treatment regimen (Safaee Ardekani et al. 2012). It should be noted that this prognostic impact should be regarded as confined to the *BRAF* V600E mutation, whereas *BRAF* mutations affecting codons 594 and

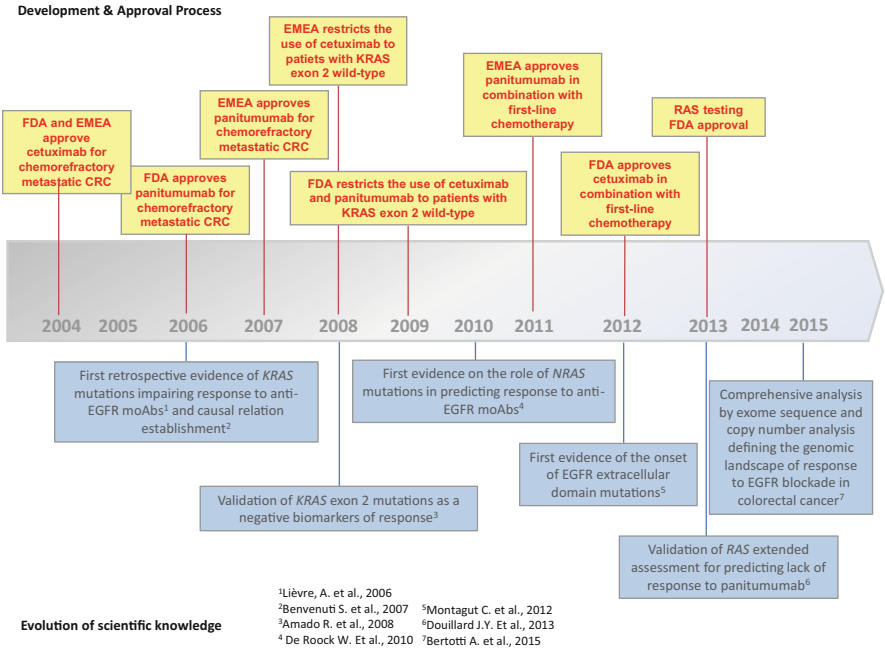


Fig. 1 Parallel development of approval processes and evolution of the knowledge of molecular mechanisms of resistance to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies in metastatic colorectal cancer

596, occurring in <1% of CRCs, display differences in terms of clinicopathologic features and less adverse clinical outcome (Cremolini et al. 2015).

Many different retrospective studies and meta-analyses by our group and others have suggested that the presence of a *BRAF* mutation also confers a weaker benefit from anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies, negatively interfering with EGFR blockade (Benvenuti et al. 2007; Bertotti et al. 2015; Di Nicolantonio et al. 2008; Yuan et al. 2013). For these patients, even though there is not a formal demonstration by first-line combination trials that cetuximab or panitumumab are not effective (Douillard et al. 2013; Van Cutsem et al. 2015; Rowland et al. 2015), a general consensus exists for using an ab initio more intense chemotherapy regimens or enrolling in clinical studies with *BRAF*-directed strategies (Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016a) to counteract the poor prognosis, making anti-EGFR treatment a less preferable option.

Family of HER *HER2* – the human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (*HER2*/neu) is a well-established oncogenic driver in breast and gastric cancer, and recent data are highlighting a renewed role for this molecular target in CRC (Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016a, c). Expression rates in historical series for CRC range widely from 1.6% (Ingold Heppner et al. 2014) to 47.4% (Park et al. 2007), but the sample

size inclusion of distinct subgroups and the use of different diagnostic methods and scoring systems may account for this variability. In three of the most recent series, the rate of *HER2* positivity (immunohistochemistry [IHC] score of 2+/3+, or *HER2* gene amplification by in-situ hybridization) ranged from 1.6 to 6.3% (Ingold Heppner et al. 2014; Seo et al. 2014; Richman et al. 2016). In a consensus study aimed at defining CRC-specific criteria for *HER2* positivity (Valtorta et al. 2015), we demonstrated that there is a clinically sizeable 5% fraction of *KRAS* wild-type CRC patients harbouring *HER2*-positive tumours, and this knowledge paralleled translational research with demonstration of *HER2* as a therapeutic target (Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016c).

On the other hand, *HER2* amplification has been proposed as a biomarker of resistance to anti-EGFR antibodies. In 2011, we recognized *HER2* amplification as a potential mechanism of primary resistance to cetuximab within a "quadruple wild type" population (*KRAS*, *NRAS*, *BRAF* and *PIK3CA* wild type) of immune-compromised mice harbouring CRC xenograft (patient-derived xenografts, PDX, a.k.a. "xenopatients") (Bertotti et al. 2011). The same adverse effect was shown by retrospective analyses of patients treated with cetuximab (Yonesaka et al. 2011) or panitumumab (Martin et al. 2013; Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016c). Interestingly, this effect has been demonstrated to be dependent on the level of amplification (Martin et al. 2013) and to contribute to both de novo and acquired drug resistance (Yonesaka et al. 2011). These results altogether suggest that patients with *HER2*-amplified CRC should be enrolled in clinical trials with *HER2*-targeted therapies regardless of having received a previous anti-EGFR inhibitor (Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016c).

Together with amplification, also *HER2* somatic mutations have been reported to occur in CRC at a frequency of about 3%, independently or concomitantly with amplification (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2012). *HER2* activating mutations tend to fall in several hotspots (residues 309–310 in the extracellular domain and residues 755–781 and 842 in the kinase domain), and cause oncogenic transformation of colon epithelial cells (Kavuri et al. 2015). It has been shown that these mutations produce resistance to cetuximab and panitumumab in preclinical models of CRC including PDXs and that dual *HER2*-targeted therapy with either trastuzumab plus neratinib or trastuzumab plus lapatinib can induce tumour regression (Kavuri et al. 2015).

HER3 also has been described to have a role as a potential biomarker of resistance to anti-EGFR treatments. In a cohort of metastatic CRC patients treated in second- or third-line therapy with irinotecan and cetuximab, *HER3* overexpression was associated with shorter PFS and OS (Scartozzi et al. 2011). *HER3* has been found to be also mutated in approximately 11% of CRC patients (Jaiswal et al. 2013), even though further studies are needed to elucidate the predictive role in conferring primary or acquired resistance to EGFR inhibitors.

cMET The mesenchymal-epithelial transition (*MET*) protooncogene encodes for *c-MET*, a receptor with tyrosine kinase activity targeting hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) (Trusolino et al. 2010). Activation of this pathway by gene amplification has

been implicated in metastatic progression of CRC, since *MET* has been historically reported to be overexpressed in 50% and amplified in 2–10% of primary CRCs, with the rate of amplification increasing up to 18–89% in metastases (Di Renzo et al. 1995; Zeng et al. 2008). However, more recent studies adopting ISH technologies together with newer NGS approaches clearly indicate that *MET* amplification ranges between 0.4 and 2.2% of cases (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2012; Raghav et al. 2016), in both primary tumours and metastatic deposits (Raghav et al. 2016). As far as resistance to anti-EGFR therapies is concerned, in a recent complete exome sequence and copy number analyses of 129 PDX and targeted genomic analyses of 55 patient tumours, *MET* amplification was identified as a cause of primary resistance to cetuximab in 2.3% of cases (Bertotti et al. 2015). All in all, *MET* amplification rarely occurs and accounts for primary resistance in CRC, even though it is among alterations predominantly involved in acquired resistance (see below section on acquired resistance).

3 Biomarkers of Sensitivity

EGFR Gene Copy Number Gain During the initial development of EGFR antibodies in metastatic CRC, it was predicted that EGFR protein expression would be required for therapeutic efficacy. Therefore, initially only EGFR-expressing CRCs were allowed into clinical trials (Saltz et al. 2004; Cunningham et al. 2004). However, subsequent analyses demonstrated a lack of association between EGFR expression and response (Chung et al. 2005; Moroni et al. 2008), eventually leading to decline of this restriction in label. On the other hand, an association was found with an *EGFR* gene copy number increase (Moroni et al. 2005) and this was originally postulated by our group as a biomarker of sensitivity to anti-EGFR therapy (Moroni et al. 2005). This finding was confirmed in preclinical experiments (Bertotti et al. 2015) as well as clinical cohorts (Personeni et al. 2008; Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2007; Scartozzi et al. 2009), however overt EGFR gene amplification is rarely observed in CRC, and correlation with response has been mainly based on balanced chromosome 7 polysomy rather than amplification, even though it is unknown whether the former could have an equivalent biologic effect in driving cancer progression and predicting response to EGFR-targeted agents. Also, detection by ISH methods of copy number gain suffers from issues of standardization, as it was shown by an interlaboratory reproducibility ring study conducted by our group (Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2012). In the end, even though an association between an increase in EGFR gene dosage and response has been established and confirmed especially in case of amplification (Bertotti et al. 2015), still this is not a validated biomarker for EGFR-targeted agents.

IRS2 The insulin receptor substrate (IRS) family of proteins are cytoplasmic adaptor that mediate through phosphorylation signalling between receptor tyrosine kinases of IGF1R and downstream effectors with roles in normal growth, metabolism and differentiation such as PI3K activation. IRS2 over-expression has been

reported in 6–7% of MSS CRCs (Cancer Genome Atlas Network 2012; Nunes et al. 2015). A preclinical study has shown that IRS2 over-expression in the absence of an upstream activator leads to AKT phosphorylation and also increases CRC cell adhesion (Day et al. 2013). Amplifications and sequence alterations in the tyrosine kinase receptor adaptor gene IRS2 have been identified also in tumours with increased sensitivity to anti-EGFR therapy. Expression analyses of 100 CRC PDXs with wild-type *KRAS*, *NRAS*, *BRAF* and *PIK3CA* showed increased IRS2 levels as a significant predictor of cetuximab sensitivity in cases without other mechanisms of resistance to EGFR therapy (Bertotti et al. 2015).

4 Acquired (Secondary) Resistance

Acquired (or secondary) resistance refers to disease progression during an ongoing treatment that was initially effective. This occurs eventually in all metastatic CRCs and can be caused by gene mutations of the molecular target arising during treatment, expansion of resistant subclones in the context of intratumour heterogeneity selected under the pressure of cancer treatment, upregulation of a partially inhibited pathway or activation of alternative pathways. Even in patients with a refined *RAS* extended wild-type status, the tumour becomes refractory after a median of 5.2 months by developing secondary resistance (Kim et al. 2016). Liquid biopsy for monitoring of circulating tumour DNA (ctDNA) has been demonstrated by our group and others to be a powerful diagnostic tool for understanding dynamic mechanisms of tumour evolution in CRC (Misale et al. 2014; Van Emburgh et al. 2014). Molecular analysis performed on a tissue biopsy from a tumour is indeed a single snapshot in time subjected to selection bias due to spatial tumour heterogeneity, whereas analyses performed by liquid biopsy overcome this limitation and unveiled main mechanisms of acquired resistance to EGFR inhibitors.

RAS and BRAF Various studies from our group and others have already demonstrated concordance between liquid biopsy and tumour-tissue biopsy for molecular characterization of clinically validated biomarkers for CRC such as *KRAS* and *BRAF* mutations (Thierry et al. 2014; Siravegna et al. 2015). At the same time, experiments in preclinical models (Misale et al. 2012) and translational studies with longitudinal monitoring by liquid biopsy have revealed clonal evolution during therapies with anti-EGFR antibodies showing that mutant *RAS* clones rise in blood during EGFR blockade (Misale et al. 2012) and decline upon withdrawal of treatment (Siravegna et al. 2015). It is conceivable that these subclones are less fit in the untreated tumour and acquire fitness as a consequence of adaptation to the perturbation induced by the treatment itself. Further, anti-EGFR pressure gives rise to multiple emergent circulating mutations of *MAPK* pathway within the same patient, with and individual average of almost three mutations (Bettegowda et al. 2014), in what has been called a “war of clones”. Interestingly, the relative frequency of individual *KRAS* alleles is similar but not identical in primary and acquired resistance: we firstly reported the secondary occurrence of codon

61 mutations (Misale et al. 2012) that rarely occur in anti-EGFR naïve patients, and now it is established that these mutations in either the *KRAS* or *NRAS* genes are more prevalent in the acquired than in the primary resistance setting (Bettegowda et al. 2014).

Family of HER *HER2* amplification has been associated also to acquired resistance to anti-EGFR moAbs. Yonesaka et al. showed that patients with acquired resistance to cetuximab had an increased percentage of *HER2* amplification in post-treatment samples compared to the proportion present in pretreatment tumour cells (Yonesaka et al. 2011). These authors reported that in this context hyper-activation of *HER2* signalling is triggered not only by *HER2* amplification but also by overproduction of heregulin, a *HER3* ligand.

MET HGF-induced *MET* activation has been proposed as a mechanism of cetuximab resistance in CRC (Liska et al. 2011). We firstly reported by tissue analysis and longitudinal ctDNA monitoring that *MET* amplification is also associated with secondary resistance to anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies (Bardelli et al. 2013). This observation was paralleled by functional analysis in CRC preclinical models indicating that HGF plays an important role in driving *MET*-mediated resistance to anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies. HGF stimulation was demonstrated to be sufficient to confer cetuximab and panitumumab resistance both in vitro and in vivo, thus supporting the possibility that HGF overexpression by cancer cells or the surrounding stroma might be an independent mechanism of acquired (or primary) resistance to cetuximab (Bardelli et al. 2013). Further, we recently showed that *MET* amplification can simultaneously arise together with *KRAS* amplification within the same patient after initial response to EGFR inhibition in a context of substantial intrapatient heterogeneity (Sartore-Bianchi et al. 2016d).

EGFR External Domain Mutations Mutations affecting the extracellular domain of the EGFR have not been reported in the absence of treatment with EGFR inhibitors in metastatic CRC (Esposito et al. 2013; Montagut et al. 2012). In 2012 it was firstly demonstrated that that cell lines with acquired resistance to cetuximab showed a mutation of the extracellular domain of the EGFR, 1476C>A, leading to a substitution of serine to arginine at amino acid 492 (S492R) (Montagut et al. 2012). This mutation interferes with binding to cetuximab but not to panitumumab in preclinical models and parallel observations in patients with acquired resistance to cetuximab. These findings have been confirmed subsequently in retrospective cohorts (Arena et al. 2015) and at the clinical level in the ASPECCT trial of cetuximab versus panitumumab for chemorefractory metastatic CRC, where the EGFR S492R was detected in 1% of patients in the panitumumab arm and 16% in the cetuximab arm in post-treatment plasma ctDNA samples (Newhall et al. 2014). It has been subsequently discovered that several other mutations in the EGFR extracellular domain can occur in preclinical models of cetuximab resistance (S464L, G465R and I491M) and in patients (R451C and K467T), mainly located in the cetuximab-binding region, except for the R451C mutant (Arena et al. 2015).

From a clinical standpoint there are important therapeutic implications, since *EGFR* ectodomain mutations prevent binding to cetuximab but a subset is permissive for interaction with panitumumab (Arena et al. 2015), and it has been shown that new generation EGFR inhibitors such as the anti-EGFR antibody mixture Sym004 that bound and abrogated ligand-induced phosphorylation of EGFR mutants can overcome cetuximab/panitumumab resistance mediated by EGFR mutations (Sánchez-Martín et al. 2016). Interestingly, emerging knowledge is also indicating that there is a differential kinetic in the appearance of *EGFR* versus *RAS* mutated alleles during EGFR-targeted treatment, since *RAS* mutations emerge earlier than *EGFR* ECD variants (Van Emburgh et al. 2014). Subclonal *RAS*, but not *EGFR* extracellular domain mutations, have been shown indeed to be present in CRC samples obtained before exposure to EGFR blockade. Finally, retrospective analysis in a clinical cohort indicates that patients who experience greater and longer responses to EGFR blockade preferentially develop EGFR extracellular domain mutations, while *RAS* mutations emerge more frequently in patients with smaller tumour shrinkage and shorter progression-free survival (Van Emburgh et al. 2016).

5 Conclusions

Approved anti-EGFR antibodies cetuximab and panitumumab provide significant clinical benefit for the treatment of CRC, with patients in the metastatic setting now reaching an OS of more than 30 months. These advances have been made thanks to evolution of surgical techniques for metastasectomy, introduction of new agents, but to an important extent also to a refinement of molecular selection based on newer pharmacogenomics strategies. In this regard, the discovery of mechanisms of resistance to anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies has enhanced clinical results, paving the way for a precision medicine approach in this disease. This effort should not be considered exhausted, as the genomic landscape of response to EGFR blockade has been demonstrated to be starred by a myriad of molecular abnormalities and, thanks to application of liquid biopsy for longitudinal analysis of the instable tumour genome, dynamically multifaceted (Fig. 2). Next challenges in this field will include the translation of current knowledge of tumour evolution mechanisms in the clinic for preventing or overcoming resistance at the individual patient level.

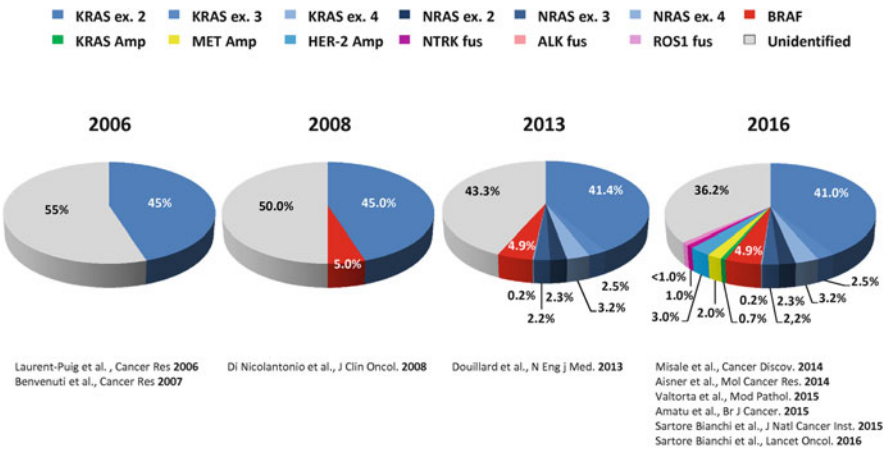


Fig. 2 Biomarkers of resistance to EGFR-targeted monoclonal antibodies and known actionable targets for therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer. Evolution from 2006 until today

References

Amado RG, Wolf M, Peeters M, Van Cutsem E, Siena S, Freeman DJ, Juan T, Sikorski R, Suggs S, Radinsky R, Patterson SD, Chang DD (2008) J Clin Oncol 26:1626–1634

Arena S, Bellosillo B, Siravegna G, Martínez A, Cañadas I, Lazzari L, Ferruz N, Russo M, Misale S, González I, Iglesias M, Gavilan E, Corti G, Hobor S, Crisafulli G, Salido M, Sánchez J, Dalmases A, Bellmunt J, De Fabritiis G, Rovira A, Di Nicolantonio F, Albanell J, Bardelli A, Montagut C (2015) Clin Cancer Res 21:2157–2166

Bardelli A, Siena S (2010) J Clin Oncol 28:1254–1261

Bardelli A, Corso S, Bertotti A, Hobor S, Valtorta E, Siravegna G, Sartore-Bianchi A, Scala E, Cassingena A, Zecchin D, Apicella M, Migliardi G, Galimi F, Lauricella C, Zanon C, Perera T, Veronese S, Corti G, Amatu A, Gambacorta M, Diaz LA, Sausen M, Velculescu VE, Comoglio P, Trusolino L, Di Nicolantonio F, Giordano S, Siena S (2013) Cancer Discov 3:658–673

Benvenuti S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Di Nicolantonio F, Zanon C, Moroni M, Veronese S, Siena S, Bardelli A (2007) Cancer Res 67:2643–2648

Bertotti A, Migliardi G, Galimi F, Sassi F, Torti D, Isella C, Corà D, Di Nicolantonio F, Buscarino M, Petti C, Ribero D, Russolillo N, Muratore A, Massucco P, Pisacane A, Molinaro L, Valtorta E, Sartore-Bianchi A, Risio M, Capussotti L, Gambacorta M, Siena S, Medico E, Sapino A, Marsoni S, Comoglio PM, Bardelli A, Trusolino L (2011) Cancer Discov 1:508–523

Bertotti A, Papp E, Jones S, Adleff V, Anagnostou V, Lupo B, Sausen M, Phallen J, Hruban CA, Tokheim C, Niknafs N, Nesselbush M, Lytle K, Sassi F, Cottino F, Migliardi G, Zanella ER, Ribero D, Russolillo N, Mellano A, Muratore A, Paraluppi G, Salizzoni M, Marsoni S, Kragh M, Lantto J, Cassingena A, Li QK, Karchin R, Scharpf R, Sartore-Bianchi A, Siena S, Diaz LA, Trusolino L, Velculescu VE (2015) Nature 526:263–267

Bettegowda C, Sausen M, Leary RJ, Kinde I, Wang Y, Agrawal N, Bartlett BR, Wang H, Luber B, Alani RM, Antonarakis ES, Azad NS, Bardelli A, Brem H, Cameron JL, Lee CC, Fecher LA, Gallia GL, Gibbs P, Le D, Giuntoli RL, Goggins M, Hogarty MD, Holdhoff M, Hong S-M,

Jiao Y, Juhl HH, Kim JJ, Siravegna G, Laheru DA, Lauricella C, Lim M, Lipson EJ, Marie SKN, Netto GJ, Oliner KS, Olivi A, Olsson L, Riggins GJ, Sartore-Bianchi A, Schmidt K, Shih L-M, Oba-Shinjo SM, Siena S, Theodorescu D, Tie J, Harkins TT, Veronese S, Wang T-L, Weingart JD, Wolfgang CL, Wood LD, Xing D, Hruban RH, Wu J, Allen PJ, Schmidt CM, Choti MA, Velculescu VE, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Papadopoulos N, Diaz LA (2014) Sci Transl Med 6:224ra24

Cancer Genome Atlas Network (2012) Nature 487:330–337

Chung KY, Shia J, Kemeny NE, Shah M, Schwartz GK, Tse A, Hamilton A, Pan D, Schrag D, Schwartz L, Klimstra DS, Fridman D, Kelsen DP, Saltz LB (2005) J Clin Oncol 23:1803–1810

Ciombor KK, Wu C, Goldberg RM (2015) Annu Rev Med 66:83–95

Corcoran RB, Atreya CE, Falchook GS, Infante JR, Hamid O, Messersmith WA, Daud A, Kwak EL, Ryan D, Kurzrock R, Sun P, Cunningham EA, Orford KW, Motwani M, Bai Y, Patel K, Venook AP, Kopetz S (2014) J Clin Oncol 32:5s

Cremolini C, Di Bartolomeo M, Amatu A, Antoniotti C, Moretto R, Berenato R, Perrone F, Tamborini E, Aprile G, Lonardi S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Fontanini G, Milione M, Lauricella C, Siena S, Falcone A, de Braud F, Loupakis F, Pietrantonio F (2015) Ann Oncol Off J Eur Soc Med Oncol 26:2092–2097

Cunningham D, Humblet Y, Siena S, Khayat D, Bleiberg H, Santoro A, Bets D, Mueser M, Harstrick A, Verslype C, Chau I, Van Cutsem E (2004) N Engl J Med 351:337–345

Day E, Poulogiannis G, McCaughan F, Mulholland S, Arends MJ, Ibrahim AEK, Dear PH (2013) Int J Exp Pathol 94:203–211

De Roock W, Claes B, Bernasconi D, De Schutter J, Biesmans B, Fountzilas G, Kalogeras KT, Kotoula V, Papamichael D, Laurent-Puig P, Penault-Llorca F, Rougier P, Vincenzi B, Santini D, Tonini G, Cappuzzo F, Frattini M, Molinari F, Saletti P, De Dosso S, Martini M, Bardelli A, Siena S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Tabernero J, Macarulla T, Di Fiore F, Gangloff AO, Ciardiello F, Pfeiffer P, Qvortrup C, Hansen TP, Van Cutsem E, Piessevaux H, Lambrechts D, Delorenzi M, Tejpar S (2010) Lancet Oncol. 11:753–762

Di Nicolantonio F, Martini M, Molinari F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Arena S, Saletti P, De Dosso S, Mazzucchelli L, Frattini M, Siena S, Bardelli A (2008) J Clin Oncol 26:5705–5712

Di Renzo MF, Olivero M, Giacomini A, Porte H, Chastre E, Mirossay L, Nordlinger B, Bretti S, Bottardi S, Giordano S (1995) Clin Cancer Res 1:147–154

Douillard J-Y, Oliner KS, Siena S, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, Humblet Y, Bodoky G, Cunningham D, Jassem J, Rivera F, Kocákova I, Ruff P, Błasińska-Morawiec M, Šmakal M, Canon JL, Rother M, Williams R, Rong A, Wiezorek J, Sidhu R, Patterson SD (2013) N Engl J Med 369:1023–1034

Esposito C, Rachiglio AM, La Porta ML, Sacco A, Roma C, Iannaccone A, Tatangelo F, Forgione L, Pasquale R, Barbaro A, Botti G, Ciardiello F, Normanno N (2013) Cancer Biol Ther 14:1143–1146

Fisher R, Pusztai L, Swanton C (2013) Br J Cancer 108:479–485

Heinemann V, von Weikersthal LF, Decker T, Kiani A, Vehling-Kaiser U, Al-Batran S-E, Heintges T, Lerchenmüller C, Kahl C, Seipelt G, Kullmann F, Stauch M, Scheithauer W, Hielscher J, Scholz M, Müller S, Link H, Niederle N, Rost A, Höffkes H-G, Moehler M, Lindig RU, Modest DP, Rossius L, Kirchner T, Jung A, Stintzing S (2014) Lancet Oncol 15:1065–1075

Ingold Heppner B, Behrens H-M, Balschun K, Haag J, Krüger S, Becker T, Röcken C (2014) Br J Cancer 111:1977–1984

Jaiswal BS, Kljavin NM, Stawiski EW, Chan E, Parikh C, Durinck S, Chaudhuri S, Pujara K, Guillory J, Edgar KA, Janakiraman V, Scholz R-P, Bowman KK, Lorenzo M, Li H, Wu J, Yuan W, Peters BA, Kan Z, Stinson J, Mak M, Modrusan Z, Eigenbrot C, Firestein R, Stern HM, Rajalingam K, Schaefer G, Merchant MA, Sliwkowski MX, de Sauvage FJ, Seshagiri S (2013) Cancer Cell 23:603–617

Kavuri SM, Jain N, Galimi F, Cottino F, Leto SM, Migliardi G, Searleman AC, Shen W, Monsey J, Trusolino L, Jacobs SA, Bertotti A, Bose R (2015) Cancer Discov 5:832–841

Kim TW, Elme A, Kusic Z, Park JO, Udrea AA, Kim SY, Ahn JB, Villalobos Valencia R, Srinivasan K, Bilic A, Manojlovic N, Dong J, Guan X, Lofton-Day C, Jung AS, Vrdoljak E (2016) J Clin Oncol 34:642–642

Leto SM, Trusolino L (2014) J Mol Med Berl Ger 92:709–722

Lièvre A, Bachet J-B, Le Corre D, Boige V, Landi B, Emile J-F, Côté J-F, Tomasic G, Penna C, Ducreux M, Rougier P, Penault-Llorca F, Laurent-Puig P (2006) Cancer Res 66:3992–3995

Liska D, Chen C-T, Bachleitner-Hofmann T, Christensen JG, Weiser MR (2011) Clin Cancer Res 17:472–482

Martin V, Landi L, Molinari F, Fountzilas G, Geva R, Riva A, Saletti P, De Dosso S, Spitale A, Tejpar S, Kalogeras KT, Mazzucchelli L, Frattini M, Cappuzzo F (2013) Br J Cancer 108:668–675

Misale S, Yaeger R, Hobor S, Scala E, Janakiraman M, Liska D, Valtorta E, Schiavo R, Buscarino M, Siravegna G, Bencardino K, Cercek A, Chen C-T, Veronese S, Zanon C, Sartore-Bianchi A, Gambacorta M, Gallicchio M, Vakiani E, Boscaro V, Medico E, Weiser M, Siena S, Di Nicolantonio F, Solit D, Bardelli A (2012) Nature 486:532–536

Misale S, Di Nicolantonio F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Siena S, Bardelli A (2014) Cancer Discov 4:1269–1280

Montagut C, Dalmases A, Bellosillo B, Crespo M, Pairet S, Iglesias M, Salido M, Gallen M, Marsters S, Tsai SP, Minoche A, Seshagiri S, Somasekar S, Serrano S, Himmelbauer H, Bellmunt J, Rovira A, Settleman J, Bosch F, Albanell J (2012) Nat Med 18:221–223

Moroni M, Veronese S, Benvenuti S, Marrapese G, Sartore-Bianchi A, Di Nicolantonio F, Gambacorta M, Siena S, Bardelli A (2005) Lancet Oncol 6:279–286

Moroni M, Veronese S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Artale S, Siena S (2008) Target Oncol 3:127–130

Newhall K, Price T, Peeters M, Kim TW, Li J, Cascinu S, Ruff P, Suresh AS, Thomas A, Tjulandin S, Ogbagabriel S, Boedigheimer M, Sexson S, Zhang K, Murugappan S, Sidhu R (2014) Ann Oncol 25:ii109

Nunes M, Vrignaud P, Vacher S, Richon S, Lièvre A, Cacheux W, Weiswald L-B, Massonnet G, Chateau-Joubert S, Nicolas A, Dib C, Zhang W, Watters J, Bergstrom D, Roman-Roman S, Bièche I, Dangles-Marie V (2015) Cancer Res 75:1560–1566

Park DI, Kang MS, Oh SJ, Kim HJ, Cho YK, Sohn CI, Jeon WK, Kim BI, Han WK, Kim H, Ryu SH, Sepulveda AR (2007) Int J Color Dis 22:491–497

Peeters M, Kafatos G, Taylor A, Gastanaga VM, Oliner KS, Hechmati G, Terwey J-H, van Krieken JH (2015) Eur J Cancer Oxford Engl 51:1704–1713

Personeni N, Fieuws S, Piessevaux H, De Hertogh G, De Schutter J, Biesmans B, De Roock W, Capoen A, Debiec-Rychter M, Van Laethem J-L, Peeters M, Humblet Y, Van Cutsem E, Tejpar S (2008) Clin Cancer Res 14:5869–5876

Prior IA, Lewis PD, Mattos C (2012) Cancer Res 72:2457–2467

Raghav K, Morris V, Tang C, Morelli P, Amin HM, Chen K, Manyam GC, Broom B, Overman MJ, Shaw K, Meric-Bernstam F, Maru D, Menter D, Ellis LM, Eng C, Hong D, Kopetz S (2016) Oncotarget 7:54627–54631

Richman SD, Seymour MT, Chambers P, Elliott F, Daly CL, Meade AM, Taylor G, Barrett JH, Quirke P (2009) J Clin Oncol 27:5931–5937

Richman SD, Southward K, Chambers P, Cross D, Barrett J, Hemmings G, Taylor M, Wood H, Hutchins G, Foster JM, Oumie A, Spink KG, Brown SR, Jones M, Kerr D, Handley K, Gray R, Seymour M, Quirke P (2016) J Pathol 238:562–570

Rowland A, Dias MM, Wiese MD, Kichenadasse G, McKinnon RA, Karapetis CS, Sorich MJ (2015) Br J Cancer 112:1888–1894

Safaee Ardekani G, Jafarnejad SM, Tan L, Saeedi A, Li G (2012) PLoS One 7:e47054

Saltz LB, Meropol NJ, Loehrer PJ, Needle MN, Kopit J, Mayer RJ (2004) J Clin Oncol 22:1201–1208

Sánchez-Martín FJ, Bellosillo B, Gelabert-Baldrich M, Dalmases A, Cañadas I, Vidal J, Martinez A, Argilés G, Siravegna G, Arena S, Koefoed K, Visa L, Arpí O, Horak ID,

Iglesias M, Stroh C, Kragh M, Rovira A, Albanell J, Tabernero J, Bardelli A, Montagut C (2016) Clin Cancer Res 22:3260–3267

Sartore-Bianchi A, Moroni M, Veronese S, Carnaghi C, Bajetta E, Luppi G, Sobrero A, Barone C, Cascinu S, Colucci G, Cortesi E, Nichelatti M, Gambacorta M, Siena S (2007) J Clin Oncol 25:3238–3245

Sartore-Bianchi A, Fieuws S, Veronese S, Moroni M, Personeni N, Frattini M, Torri V, Cappuzzo F, Vander Borght S, Martin V, Skokan M, Santoro A, Gambacorta M, Tejpar S, Varella-Garcia M, Siena S (2012) J Clin Pathol 65:218–223

Sartore-Bianchi A, Loupakis F, Argilés G, Prager GW (2016a) Ann. Oncol 27:1456–1466

Sartore-Bianchi A, Siena S, Tonini G, Bardelli A, Santini D (2016b) Cancer Treat Rev 51:54–62

Sartore-Bianchi A, Trusolino L, Martino C, Bencardino K, Lonardi S, Bergamo F, Zagonel V, Leone F, Depetris I, Martinelli E, Troiani T, Ciardiello F, Racca P, Bertotti A, Siravegna G, Torri V, Amatu A, Ghezzi S, Marrapese G, Palmeri L, Valtorta E, Cassingena A, Lauricella C, Vanzulli A, Regge D, Veronese S, Comoglio PM, Bardelli A, Marsoni S, Siena S (2016c) Lancet Oncol 17:738–746

Sartore-Bianchi A, Valtorta E, Amatu A, Veronese S, Lauricella C, Bonazzina E, Siravegna G, Truini M, Bardelli A, Siena S (2016d) ESMO Open 1:e000079

Scartozzi M, Bearzi I, Mandolesi A, Pierantoni C, Loupakis F, Zaniboni A, Negri F, Quadri A, Zorzi F, Galizia E, Berardi R, Biscotti T, Labianca R, Masi G, Falcone A, Cascinu S (2009) BMC Cancer 9:303

Scartozzi M, Mandolesi A, Giampieri R, Bittoni A, Pierantoni C, Zaniboni A, Galizia E, Giustini L, Silva RR, Bisonni R, Berardi R, Biscotti T, Biagetti S, Bearzi I, Cascinu S (2011) Oncologist 16:53–60

Schmoll HJ, Van Cutsem E, Stein A, Valentini V, Glimelius B, Haustermans K, Nordlinger B, van de Velde CJ, Balmana J, Regula J, Nagtegaal ID, Beets-Tan RG, Arnold D, Ciardiello F, Hoff P, Kerr D, Köhne CH, Labianca R, Price T, Scheithauer W, Sobrero A, Tabernero J, Aderka D, Barroso S, Bodoky G, Douillard JY, El Ghazaly H, Gallardo J, Garin A, Glynne-Jones R, Jordan K, Meshcheryakov A, Papamichail D, Pfeiffer P, Souglakos I, Turhal S, Cervantes A (2012) Ann Oncol 23:2479–2516

Schwartzberg LS, Rivera F, Karthaus M, Fasola G, Canon J-L, Hecht JR, Yu H, Oliner KS, Go WY (2014) J Clin Oncol 32:2240–2247

Seo AN, Kwak Y, Kim D-W, Kang S-B, Choe G, Kim WH, Lee HS (2014) PLoS One 9:e98528

Siegel RL, Miller KD, Jemal A (2017) CA Cancer J Clin 67:7–30

Siravegna G, Mussolin B, Buscarino M, Corti G, Cassingena A, Crisafulli G, Ponzetti A, Cremolini C, Amatu A, Lauricella C, Lamba S, Hobor S, Avallone A, Valtorta E, Rospo G, Medico E, Motta V, Antoniotti C, Tatangelo F, Bellosillo B, Veronese S, Budillon A, Montagut C, Racca P, Marsoni S, Falcone A, Corcoran RB, Di Nicolantonio F, Loupakis F, Siena S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Bardelli A (2015) Nat Med 21:795–801

Sorich MJ, Wiese MD, Rowland A, Kichenadasse G, McKinnon RA, Karapetis CS (2015) Ann Oncol 26:13–21

Tannock IF, Hickman JA (2016) N Engl J Med 375:1289–1294

Thierry AR, Mouliere F, El Messaoudi S, Mollevi C, Lopez-Crapez E, Rolet F, Gillet B, Gongora C, Dechelotte P, Robert B, Del Rio M, Lamy P-J, Bibeau F, Nouaille M, Loriot V, Jarrousse A-S, Molina F, Mathonnet M, Pezet D, Ychou M (2014) Nat Med 20:430–435

Trusolino L, Bertotti A, Comoglio PM (2010) Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 11:834–848

Ushijima T, Yoshino T (2016) Cancer Res 76:6443–6444

Valtorta E, Misale S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Nagtegaal ID, Paraf F, Lauricella C, Dimartino V, Hobor S, Jacobs B, Ercolani C, Lamba S, Scala E, Veronese S, Laurent-Puig P, Siena S, Tejpar S, Mottolese M, Punt CJA, Gambacorta M, Bardelli A, Di Nicolantonio F (2013) Int J Cancer 133:1259–1265

Valtorta E, Martino C, Sartore-Bianchi A, Penaullt-Llorca F, Viale G, Risio M, Rugge M, Grigioni W, Bencardino K, Lonardi S, Zagonel V, Leone F, Noe J, Ciardiello F, Pinto C, Labianca R, Mosconi S, Graiff C, Aprile G, Frau B, Garufi C, Loupakis F, Racca P, Tonini G,

Lauricella C, Veronese S, Truini M, Siena S, Marsoni S, Gambacorta M (2015) Mod Pathol 28:1481–1491

Van Cutsem E, Köhne C-H, Láng I, Folprecht G, Nowacki MP, Cascinu S, Shchepotin I, Maurel J, Cunningham D, Tejpar S, Schlichting M, Zubel A, Celik I, Rougier P, Ciardiello F (2011) J Clin Oncol 29:2011–2019

Van Cutsem E, Lenz H-J, Köhne C-H, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, Beier F, Stroh C, Rougier P, van Krieken JH, Ciardiello F (2015) J Clin Oncol 33:692–700

Van Cutsem E, Cervantes A, Adam R, Sobrero A, Van Krieken JH, Aderka D, Aranda Aguilar E, Bardelli A, Benson A, Bodoky G, Ciardiello F, D'Hoore A, Diaz-Rubio E, Douillard J-Y, Ducreux M, Falcone A, Grothey A, Gruenberger T, Haustermans K, Heinemann V, Hoff P, Köhne C-H, Labianca R, Laurent-Puig P, Ma B, Maughan T, Muro K, Normanno N, Österlund P, Oyen WJG, Papamichael D, Pentheroudakis G, Pfeiffer P, Price TJ, Punt C, Ricke J, Roth A, Salazar R, Scheithauer W, Schmoll HJ, Tabernero J, Taïeb J, Tejpar S, Wasan H, Yoshino T, Zaanan A, Arnold D (2016) Ann Oncol 27:1386–1422

Van Emburgh BO, Sartore-Bianchi A, Di Nicolantonio F, Siena S, Bardelli A (2014) Mol Oncol 8:1084–1094

Van Emburgh BO, Arena S, Siravegna G, Lazzari L, Crisafulli G, Corti G, Mussolin B, Baldi F, Buscarino M, Bartolini A, Valtorta E, Vidal J, Bellosillo B, Germano G, Pietrantonio F, Ponzetti A, Albanell J, Siena S, Sartore-Bianchi A, Di Nicolantonio F, Montagut C, Bardelli A (2016) Nat Commun 7:13665

Venook AP, Niedzwiecki D, Lenz H-J, Innocenti F, Mahoney MR, O'Neil BH, Shaw JE, Polite BN, Hochster HS, Atkins JN, Goldberg RM, Mayer RJ, Schilsky RL, Bertagnolli MM, Blanke CD, Alliance CLGB, SWOG, ECOG (2014) J Clin Oncol 32:5s

Vogelstein B, Papadopoulos N, Velculescu VE, Zhou S, Diaz LA, Kinzler KW (2013) Science 339:1546–1558

Yonesaka K, Zejnullahu K, Okamoto I, Satoh T, Cappuzzo F, Souglakos J, Ercan D, Rogers A, Roncalli M, Takeda M, Fujisaka Y, Philips J, Shimizu T, Maenishi O, Cho Y, Sun J, Destro A, Taira K, Takeda K, Okabe T, Swanson J, Itoh H, Takada M, Lifshits E, Okuno K, Engelman JA, Shivdasani RA, Nishio K, Fukuoka M, Varella-Garcia M, Nakagawa K, Jänne PA (2011) Sci Transl Med 3:99ra86

Yuan Z-X, Wang X-Y, Qin Q-Y, Chen D-F, Zhong Q-H, Wang L, Wang J-P (2013) PLoS One 8: e65995

Zeng Z-S, Weiser MR, Kuntz E, Chen C-T, Khan SA, Forslund A, Nash GM, Gimbel M, Yamaguchi Y, Culliford AT, D'Alessio M, Barany F, Paty PB (2008) Cancer Lett 265:258–269

Targeting DNA Repair

Giuseppe Curigliano

Contents

1 Introduction 162
2 Hereditary Versus Sporadic Cancers 162
3 Cellular Mechanisms that Prevent or Promote Genomic Instability 163
3.1 Telomere Damage 163
3.2 Centrosomes 164
3.3 DNA Methylation and Chromatin Remodeling 165
3.4 Mitochondrial DNA Alteration in Human Cancers 165
4 DNA-Repair Pathways 165
5 Therapeutic Targeting of Genomic Instability in BC 169
6 Conclusion 176
References 177

Abstract

Genomic instability is a characteristic of most human cancers and plays critical roles in both cancer development and progression. There are various forms of genomic instability arising from many different pathways, such as DNA damage from endogenous and exogenous sources, centrosome amplification, telomere damage, and epigenetic modifications. DNA-repair pathways can enable tumor cells to survive DNA damage. The failure to respond to DNA damage is a characteristic associated with genomic instability. Understanding of genomic instability in cancer is still very limited, but the further understanding of the molecular mechanisms through which the DNA damage response (DDR) operates, in combination with the elucidation of the genetic interactions between DDR pathways

G. Curigliano (✉)
Early Drug Development for Innovative Therapy Division, European Institute of Oncology, Via Ripamonti, 435 20141 Milan, Italy
e-mail: Giuseppe.curigliano@ieo.it

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_31

and other cell pathways, will provide therapeutic opportunities for the personalized medicine of cancer.

Keywords
Cancer • DNA damage • Instability • Resistance

1 Introduction

Genomic instability is a characteristic of most human cancers and plays critical roles in both cancer development and progression.

Genomic stability is dependent on faithful DNA repair and chromosome segregation during cell division (Ferguson et al. 2015).

To maintain genomic integrity, eukaryotes have evolved a system called the DNA damage response (DDR). DDR is a complex signal transduction pathway that allows cells to sense DNA damage and transduce this information to the cell to arrange the appropriate cellular responses to DNA damage (Lee et al. 2015; Ciccia and Elledge 2010). The failure to respond to DNA damage is a characteristic associated with genomic instability. This instability can manifest itself genetically on several different levels, ranging from simple DNA sequence changes to structural and numerical abnormalities at the chromosomal level. During S phase, the centrosome and genomic material are replicated concurrently, and replication errors are repaired prior to mitotic entry. During mitosis, equal segregation of chromosomes requires a bipolar mitotic spindle, telomeric preservation, and completion of the spindle assembly checkpoint. Ectopic amplification of centrosomes, telomerase dysfunction, and failure of the spindle assembly checkpoint may result in aborted mitosis. The majority of cancers exhibits chromosomal instability (CIN), which refers to the high rate by which chromosome structure and number changes over time in cancer cells compared with normal cells (Negrini et al. 2010). Although CIN is the major form of genomic instability in human cancers, other forms of genomic instability have also been described. These include accumulation of DNA base mutations and microsatellite instability (MSI), a form of genomic instability that is characterized by the expansion or contraction of the number of oligonucleotide repeats present in microsatellite sequences (Negrini et al. 2010; Lengauer et al. 1997; Fishel et al. 1993), and forms of genomic instability that are characterized by increased frequencies of base pair mutations (Leach et al. 1993).

2 Hereditary Versus Sporadic Cancers

Familial breast cancer (BC) accounts for approximately 5%–10% of BC cases. The most prevalent mutations leading to hereditary breast and ovarian cancer affect the homologous recombination (HR) genes BRCA1 and BRCA2. Heterozygous individuals carrying mutations of the BRCA1 or BRCA2 genes have a 40%–80% risk of developing BC (Fackenthal and Olopade 2007).

Patients (pts) with BRCA2 mutations have increased incidence of male breast, pancreas, and prostate cancer (Ciccia and Elledge 2010). Tumors with BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations are significantly associated with low level of 53BP1, indicating that 53BP1 mutation might confer a survival advantage in the absence of BRCA1 and BRCA2 (Bouwman et al. 2010). Moreover, mutations in three additional HR genes, BACH1, PALB2, and RAD51C, have been identified in approximately 3% of familial BC pts and have been associated with a twofold increased risk of BC (Levy-Lahad 2010). Mutations of CHK2, ATM, NBS1, and RAD50 have also been associated with a doubled risk of BC, indicating the importance of the ATM pathway, together with HR, in preventing BC formation. In hereditary cancers that are characterized by the presence of CIN, the genomic instability can also be attributed to mutations in DNA-repair genes. The identification of mutations in DNA-repair genes in hereditary cancers provides strong support for the *mutator hypothesis*, which states that genomic instability is present in precancerous lesions and drives tumor initiation by increasing the spontaneous mutation rate (Negrini et al. 2010; Nowell 1976; Loeb 1991). According to mutator hypothesis, the genomic instability in precancerous lesions results from mutations in caretaker genes; that is, genes that primarily function to maintain genomic stability (Negrini et al. 2010; Nowell 1976; Loeb 1991). Indeed, in inherited cancers, germline mutations targeting DNA-repair genes are present in every cell of the patient's body. Thus, a single event – loss of the remaining wild-type allele – would lead to genomic instability and drive tumor development, as predicted by the mutator hypothesis. The classical caretaker genes are DNA-repair genes and mitotic checkpoint genes (Negrini et al. 2010). Germline mutations in caretaker genes can explain the presence of genomic instability in inherited cancers. However, efforts to identify caretaker genes, the inactivation of which leads to genomic instability in sporadic (nonhereditary) cancers, have met with limited success (Negrini et al. 2010; Rajagopalan and Lengauer 2004). Thus, unlike hereditary cancers, the molecular basis of genomic instability in sporadic cancers remains unclear. A second hypothesis could explain the presence of CIN in sporadic cancers. That is, *the oncogene induced DNA replication stress model for cancer development* (Halazonetis et al. 2008; Gorgoulis et al. 2005; Bartkova et al. 2005, 2006; Di Micco et al. 2006). According to the second model, CIN in sporadic cancers results from the oncogene induced collapse of DNA replication forks, which in turn leads to DNA double-strand breaks (DSBs) and genomic instability (Negrini et al. 2010).

3 Cellular Mechanisms that Prevent or Promote Genomic Instability

3.1 Telomere Damage

Telomeres, which are located at the ends of each chromosome, consist of approximately 5–10 kbp of specialized, tandem repeat, noncoding DNA complexed with a variety of telomere associated proteins (Ferguson et al. 2015; Blackburn 2000; Greider 1991). These elements create a protective cap that prevents the recognition

of the chromosomal termini as DSBs and their consequent aberrant repair via non-homologous end joining (NHEJ) or HR (Ferguson et al. 2015; Konishi and de Lange 2008; Karlseder et al. 2004; Hockemeyer et al. 2005; de Lange 2010). Due to the inability of DNA polymerase to fully replicate the ends of linear DNA molecules, in the absence of compensatory mechanisms, telomeric DNA is lost at the rate of approximately 100 base pairs (bp) per telomere per cell division (Ferguson et al. 2015; Harley 1991; Levy et al. 1992; Aubert and Lansdorp 2008). In normal somatic cells, this telomere erosion is used by the cell to monitor its division history, with moderate telomere shortening triggering either irreversible cell-cycle arrest, termed replicative senescence, or apoptosis (Ferguson et al. 2015). This block to continued proliferation is thought to have evolved to prevent the development of cancer in long-lived organisms by restricting the uncontrolled outgrowth of transformed cell clones, and also by preventing further telomere erosion which would accompany such abnormal growth and eventually destabilize the telomeres leading to CIN (Ferguson et al. 2015; Harley 1991; Harley and Sherwood 1997).

3.2 Centrosomes

Centrosome amplification, the presence of greater than two centrosomes during mitosis, is a common characteristic of most solid and hematological tumors that may induce multipolar mitoses, chromosome missegregation, and subsequent genetic imbalances that promote tumorigenesis (Ferguson et al. 2015; Nigg 2002).

The centrosome is the primary microtubule organizing center in dividing mammalian cells (Ferguson et al. 2015). The centrosome is duplicated in a semiconservative fashion with one daughter centriole formed next to a preexisting mother centriole, and this process only occurs once in every cell cycle (Ferguson et al. 2015; Nigg and Stearns 2011; Doxsey 2001).

Centrosome amplification arises from many different mechanisms, including centrosome over duplication (Ferguson et al. 2015; Doxsey 2001; Ko et al. 2005), de novo assembly (Ferguson et al. 2015; Khodjakov 2002), and mitotic failure downstream from mono- (Glover et al. 1995) or multipolar division (Maxwell et al. 2005). Given that centrosome clustering may be advantageous for cancer cell survival, this process may be an attractive and specific therapeutic target (Ogden et al. 2012; Gergely and Basto 2008; Marthien et al. 2012). Bipolar chromosome attachment during mitosis is ensured by a quality control mechanism known as the spindle assembly checkpoint (Ferguson et al. 2015). The assembly checkpoint relies upon kinase signaling to delay cell-cycle progression and correct attachment errors. Aurora kinase B, for example, detects misattached chromosomes (Ferguson et al. 2015) and overexpression of the kinase is sufficient to disrupt the checkpoint and promote tetraploidy (Ferguson et al. 2015). Moreover, mutations or expression changes in other checkpoint gene products may compromise the checkpoint and favor tumorigenesis (Fang and Zhang 2011).

3.3 DNA Methylation and Chromatin Remodeling

A vast array of epigenetic mechanisms contribute to the genomic instability in cancer cells (Sharma et al. 2010). One of them is the DNA methylation, which consists of the addition of a methyl group at the carbon 5 position of the cytosine pyrimidine ring or the number 6 nitrogen of the adenine purine ring (Cedar and Bergman 2009). Most cytosine methylation occurs in the context of cytosine-phosphate-guanine (CpG) dinucleotides, and occurs via a group of DNA methyl-transferase enzymes resulting in silencing of gene transcription (Ferguson et al. 2015). A prominent example is the aberrant methylation of CpG islands in the promoter regions of DNA mismatch repair (MMR) genes that result in cancer cells with a "mutator phenotype" (Ferguson et al. 2015; Hitchins 2010). In addition to DNA methylation, histone molecules that form the primary protein component of chromatin also regulate genome stability as well as gene transcription (Sproul et al. 2005). A number of posttranslational modifications such as acetylation, deacetylation, methylation, phosphorylation, and ubiquitination have been identified that alter the function of histones (Ferguson et al. 2015). Various combinations of these posttranslational histone modifications have been hypothesized to form a "histone code" that dictates distinct chromatin structures that can affect genome stability pathways and transcription (Ferguson et al. 2015). Therefore, in most cases, histone acetylation enhances transcription while histone deacetylation represses transcription. In addition, histone acetylation can affect DNA repair. Similarly, histone ubiquitination can also modify DNA-repair capacity (Ferguson et al. 2015; Mailand et al. 2007). Finally, histone phosphorylation is an early event following DNA damage and required for efficient DNA repair (Ferguson et al. 2015).

3.4 Mitochondrial DNA Alteration in Human Cancers

Mitochondria are the key component of the oxidative phosphorylation system to generate cellular adenosine triphosphate. Mitochondrial genetic reprogramming and energy balance within cancer cells play a pivotal role in tumorigenesis (Ferguson et al. 2015). Most human cells contain hundreds of nearly identical copies of mt-DNA, which are maternally inherited. A substantial number of studies identified somatic mt-DNA mutations involving coding and noncoding mt-DNA regions in various cancers (Ferguson et al. 2015).

4 DNA-Repair Pathways

Repeated exposure to both exogenous and endogenous insults challenges the integrity of cellular genomic material. To maintain genomic integrity, DNA must be protected from damage induced by environmental agents or generated spontaneously during DNA metabolism.

Environmental DNA damage can be produced by physical or chemical sources. For example, the ultraviolet (UV) component of sunlight can cause up to 1×105 DNA lesions per cell per day, many of which are pyrimidine dimers. If left unrepaired, dimers that contain cytosine residues are prone to deamination, which can ultimately result in cytosine being replaced with thymine in the DNA sequence. Likewise, ionizing radiation (for example, from sunlight or cosmic radiation) can cause single-strand breaks (SSBs) and DSBs in the DNA double helix backbone. If misrepaired – for example, the inaccurate rejoining of broken DNA ends at DSBs, these breaks can induce mutations and lead to widespread structural rearrangement of the genome (Lord and Ashworth 2012). Table 1 (Lindahl and Barnes 2000; Hoeijmakers 2009) showed environmental agents that cause DNA damage and mutations.

Spontaneous DNA alterations can be due to dNTP misincorporation during DNA replication, interconversion between DNA bases caused by deamination, loss of DNA bases following DNA depurination, and modification of DNA bases by alkylation. Additionally, DNA breaks and oxidized DNA bases can be generated by reactive oxygen species (ROS) derived from normal cellular metabolism.

Organisms respond to chromosomal insults by activating a complex damage response pathway. This pathway regulates known responses such as cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis (programmed cell death), and has been shown to control additional processes including direct activation of DNA-repair mechanisms. Most of the subtle changes to DNA, such as oxidative lesions, alkylation products, and SSBs, are repaired through a series of mechanisms that are termed base excision repair (BER). In BER, damaged bases are first removed from the double helix, and the "injured" section of the DNA backbone is then excised and replaced with newly synthesized

Table 1 DNA lesions generated by endogenous and exogenous DNA damage (Ciccia and Elledge 2010)

Exogenous DNA damage	Dose exposure (mSV)	DNA lesions generated
Peak hour sunlight	–	Pyrimidine dimers (6–4) photoproducts
Cigarette smoke	–	DSBs
Chest X-ray	0.02	DSBs
Mammography	0.4	DSBs
Body CT scan	7	DSBs
Tumor PET scan	10	DSBs
Airline travel	0.005/h	DSBs
Endogenous DNA damage	**Dose lesions generated**	**Number of lesions/cell/day**
Depurination	AP site	10,000
Cytosine deamination	Base transition	100–500 s
SAM-induced methylation	3meA	600
	7meA	4,000
	O^6 meG	10–30
Oxidation	8oxoG	400–1,500

DNA (David et al. 2007). Key to this process are members of the poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) family. The PARP family has 16 members, but only PARP1 and PARP2 have been implicated in the DDR (Schreiber et al. 2006). PARP1 and PARP2 are activated by SSBs and DSBs and catalyze the addition of poly (ADP-ribose) chains on proteins to recruit DDR factors to chromatin at breaks (Ciccia and Elledge 2010). Mispaired DNA bases are replaced with correct bases by MMR (Jirincy 2006). In addition to BER, the pool of deoxynucleotides (deoxyadenosine triphosphate (dATP), deoxythymidine triphosphate (dTTP), deoxyguanosine triphosphate (dGTP), and deoxycytidine triphosphate (dCTP)) that provide the building blocks of DNA can be chemically modified before they are incorporated into the double helix. The nucleotide pool is, therefore, continually "sanitized" by enzymes such as nudix-type motif 5 (NUDT5). Whereas small base adducts are repaired by BER, some of the bulkier single-strand lesions that distort the DNA helical structure, such as those caused by ultraviolet light, are processed by nucleotide excision repair (NER) through the removal of an oligonucleotide of approximately 30 bp containing the damaged bases. NER is often subclassified into transcription-coupled NER, which occurs where the lesion blocks, and is detected by elongating RNA polymerase, and global-genome NER, in which the lesion is detected not as part of a blocked transcription process but because it disrupts base pairing and distorts the DNA helix. Although these processes detect lesions using different mechanisms, they repair them in a similar way: DNA surrounding the lesion is excised and then replaced using the normal DNA replication machinery. Excision repair cross-complementing protein 1 (ERCC1) is the key to this excision step. The major mechanisms that cope with DSBs are HR (Moynahan and Jasin 2010) and NHEJ (Lieber 2010). HR acts mainly in the S and G2 phases of the cell cycle and is a conservative process in that it tends to restore the original DNA sequence to the site of damage. Part of the DNA sequence around the DSB is removed (known as resection) and the DNA sequence on a homologous sister chromatid is used as a template for the synthesis of new DNA at the DSB site. Crucial proteins involved in mediating HR include those encoded by the BRCA1, BRCA2, RAD51, and PALB2 genes. In contrast to HR, NHEJ occurs throughout the cell cycle. Rather than using a homologous DNA sequence to guide DNA repair, NHEJ mediates repair by directly ligating the ends of a DSB together. Sometimes this process can cause the deletion or mutation of DNA sequences at or around the DSB site. Therefore, compared with HR, NHEJ, although mechanistically simpler, can often be mutagenic.

SSBs are repaired by single-strand break repair (SSBR), whereas DSBs are processed either by NHEJ or by HR (Ciccia and Elledge 2010). DNA repair is carried out by a plethora of enzymatic activities that chemically modify DNA to repair DNA damage, including nucleases, helicases, polymerases, topoisomerases, recombinases, ligases, glycosylases, demethylases, kinases, and phosphatases.

In summary, DDR can be divided into a series of distinct, but functionally interwoven, pathways, which are defined largely by the type of DNA lesion they process (Fig. 1). DDR pathways encompass a similar set of tightly coordinated processes: namely, the detection of DNA damage, the accumulation of DNA-repair factors at the site of damage, and finally the physical repair of the lesion.

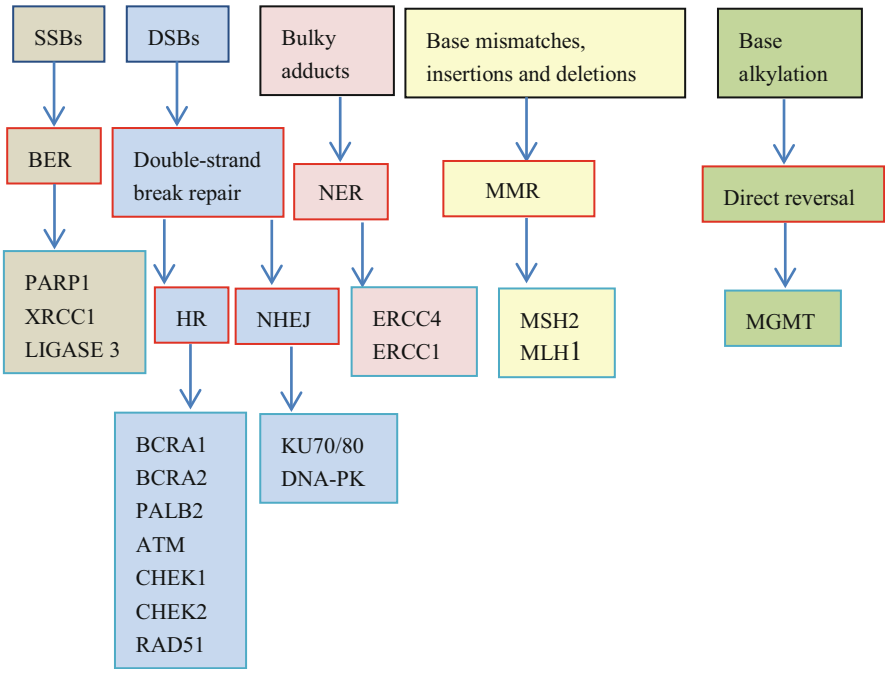


Fig. 1 DNA-repair mechanisms maintain genomic stability. *SSBs* single-strand breaks, *DSBs* double-strand breaks, *HR* homologous recombination, *NHEJ* nonhomologous and joining, *MMR* mismatch repair

MMR (Jirincy 2006) is crucial to the DDR. Key to the process of MMR are proteins encoded by the mutS and mutL homologue genes, such as MSH2 and MLH1.

Finally, translesion synthesis and template switching allow DNA to continue to replicate in the presence of DNA lesions that would otherwise halt the process. Translesion synthesis and template switching are therefore usually considered to be part of the DDR. In translesion synthesis, relatively high-fidelity DNA replication polymerases are transiently replaced with low-fidelity "translesion" polymerases that are able to synthesize DNA using a template strand encompassing a DNA lesion. Once the replication fork passes the site of the lesion, the low-fidelity DNA polymerases are normally replaced with the usual high-fidelity enzyme, which allows DNA synthesis to continue as normal. In template switching, the DNA lesion is bypassed at the replication fork by simply leaving a gap in DNA synthesis opposite the lesion. After the lesion has passed the replication fork, the single-strand gap is repaired using template DNA on a sister chromatid, similar to the process used during HR.

Although sometimes considered distinct from the DDR, the mechanisms that control the integrity of telomeric DNA at the end of each human chromosome also act as a barrier against genomic instability and mutation (Artandi and DePinho 2010).

The core DDR machinery does not work alone but is coordinated with a set of complementary mechanisms that are also crucial to maintaining the integrity of the genome. For example, chromatin-remodeling proteins allow the DNA-repair apparatus to gain access to the damaged DNA (Bell et al. 2011). DDR core components interact with the cell-cycle checkpoint and chromosome-segregation machinery. These interactions allow DNA repair to occur before mitosis takes place and ensure that the correct complement of genetic material is passed on to daughter cells (Warmerdam and Kanaar 2010).

5 Therapeutic Targeting of Genomic Instability in BC

When as CIN, and as changes to the structure of DNA, such as nucleotide substitutions, insertions, and deletions they occur in crucial "driver" genes (of which there are probably fewer than ten per tumor), these mutations can alter cell behavior, confer a selective advantage, and drive the development of the disease. Importantly, these mutations can also influence how the tumor will respond to therapy. Alongside key driver mutations, emerging data from cancer genome sequencing suggests that a typical tumor may contain many thousands of other genetic changes. These "passenger" mutations do not contribute directly to the disease but are probably collateral damage from exposure to various environmental factors or defects in the molecular mechanisms that maintain the integrity of the genome. DNA damage causes cell-cycle arrest and cell death either directly or following DNA replication during the S phase of the cell cycle. Cellular attempts to replicate damaged DNA can cause increased cell killing, thus making DNA-damaging treatments more toxic to replicating cells than to nonreplicating cells. However, the toxicity of DNA-damaging drugs can be reduced by the activities of several DNA-repair pathways that remove lesions before they become toxic. The efficacy of DNA damage-based cancer therapy can thus be modulated by DNA-repair pathways. In addition, some of these pathways are inactivated in some cancer types. These two features make DNA-repair mechanisms a promising target for novel cancer treatments. Increasing knowledge of DNA repair permits rational combination of cytotoxic agents and inhibitors of DNA repair to enhance tumor-cell killing. Thus, DNA-repair inhibitors can be used in combination with a DNA-damaging anticancer agent. This will increase the efficiency of the cancer treatment by inhibiting DNA repair-mediated removal of toxic DNA lesions.

Moreover, DNA-repair inhibitors can be used as monotherapy to selectively kill cancer cells with a defect in the DDR or DNA repair. Synthetic lethal interactions between a tumor defect and DNA-repair pathway can be used to identify novel treatment strategies.

High levels of DNA damage cause cell-cycle arrest and cell death. Furthermore, DNA lesions that persist into the S phase of the cell cycle can obstruct replication fork progression, resulting in the formation of replication-associated DSBs. Evidence is also building that the DDR is not only invoked but also dysfunctional at an early stage in the development of neoplasia. Markers of DSBs, such as nuclear γH2AX foci (a histone phosphorylation event that occurs on chromatin surrounding

a DSB), are markedly elevated in some precancerous lesions (Halazonetis et al. 2008; Bartkova et al. 2006). The activation of oncogenes such as MYC and RAS stimulates the firing of multiple replication forks as part of a proliferative program. These forks rapidly stall, collapse, and form DSBs because they exhaust the available dNTP pool or because multiple forks collide on the same chromosome. Regardless of the mechanism, stalled and collapsed forks normally invoke the DDR and cell-cycle checkpoints that enable DNA lesions to be repaired before mitosis takes place. For precancerous lesions to progress to mature tumors, it is thought that critical DSB signal transduction and cell-cycle checkpoint proteins, such as ataxia telangiectasia (ATM) and ATM-Rad3 related (ATR), and the master "gatekeeper" protein p53 become inactivated. With these DDR components rendered dysfunctional, collapsed forks are not effectively repaired, and cells proceed through the cell cycle with DNA lesions intact, increasing the chance of mutagenesis (Halazonetis et al. 2008; Bartkova et al. 2006).

Common types of DNA damage that interfere with replication fork progression are chemical modifications (adducts) of DNA bases, which are created by reactive drugs that covalently bind DNA either directly or after being metabolized in the body. These ***alkylating agents*** are grouped into two categories: *monofunctional alkylating agents* with one active moiety that modifies single bases and *bifunctional alkylating agents* that have two reactive sites and crosslink DNA with proteins or, alternatively, crosslink two DNA bases within the same DNA strand (intrastrand crosslinks) or on opposite DNA strands (interstrand crosslinks). Interstrand crosslinks pose a severe block to replication forks.

Despite the adverse side effects caused by alkylating agents on bone marrow and other normal tissues, drugs such as cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, chlorambucil, melphalan, and dacarbazine remain some of the most commonly prescribed chemotherapies in adults and children with various solid and hematological malignancies, particularly in combination with anthracyclines and steroids in multi-agent regimens. The repair of alkylated lesions is thought to be quick, with the majority of lesions probably being repaired within 1 h. If the lesions are removed before the initiation of replication, the efficiency of alkylating agents in killing the tumor is significantly reduced. Thus, modulation of DNA repair that clearly influences the efficacy of alkylating agents is often explained by increased expression and/or activity of DNA-repair proteins.

Antimetabolites, such as 5-fluorouracil (5FU) and thiopurines, resemble nucleotides, nucleotide precursors, or cofactors required for nucleotide biosynthesis and act by inhibiting nucleotide metabolism pathways, thus depleting cells of dNTPs. They can also impair replication fork progression by becoming incorporated into the DNA (Swann et al. 1996).

An alternative approach of interfering with replication is to target specific DDR components. Topoisomerase inhibitors, such as irinotecan (a topoisomerase I inhibitor) and etoposide (a topoisomerase II inhibitor), could be considered as the first generation of DDR targeted agents (Lord and Ashworth 2012). Topoisomerases are a group of enzymes that resolve torsional strains imposed on the double helix during DNA transcription and replication. They induce transient DNA breaks to relax supercoiled DNA

or allow DNA strands to pass through each other (Helleday et al. 2008). Etoposide and Irinotecan that inhibit this function leave DNA breaks across the genome. Topoisomerase II poisons cause DSBs, and topoisomerase I poisons cause positive supercoils in advance of replication forks and replication-associated DSBs (Helleday et al. 2008).

PARP inhibitors as targeted therapy: PARP inhibitors are the next generation of DDR inhibitors.

It has been reported that the expression levels of DNA-repair genes are frequently associated with chemotherapy sensitivity and prognosis in BC subtypes. The poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase-1 (PARP1), one of the best characterized nuclear enzymes of the 17-member PARP family, participates in the repair of DNA SSB via the BER pathway.

PARP1 and PARP2 catalyze the polymerization of ADP-ribose moieties onto target proteins (PARsylation) using NAD^+ as a substrate, releasing nicotinamide in the process. This modification often modulates the conformation, stability, or activity of the target protein (Lord and Ashworth 2012). The best understood role of PARP1 is in SSBR, a form of BER. PARP1 initiates this process by detecting and binding SSBs through a zinc finger in the PARP protein. Catalytic activity of PARP1 results in the PARsylation of PARP1 itself and the PARsylation of a series of additional proteins, such as XRCC1 and the histone H1 and H2B; when PARP activity is inhibited, SSBR is compromised (Lord and Ashworth 2012).

The PARP inhibitors have been shown a substantial efficacy for hereditary BRCA1/2-related and triple-negative BC (TNBC) therapy (Bryant et al. 2005; O'Shaughnessy et al. 2011; Zhai et al. 2015). Meanwhile, there are reports demonstrating that PARP inhibitors might be also active in nonhereditary BC cells lacking mutations in BRCA1 or BRCA2 (Zhai et al. 2015; Frizzell and Kraus 2009). From a historical perspective, PARP-1 inhibitors entered the arena as promising co-adjuvant components of standard chemo- and radiotherapy regimens. Later, the discovery that tumor-cell lines bearing deficiencies or mutation in DNA-repair genes (e.g., BRCA1 or BRCA2) do not tolerate PARP-1 inhibition fuelled the application of PARP inhibitors as single agent therapies in breast and ovarian BRCA-mutated cancer settings. More recently, the discovery of new potential combinative synergisms (e.g., PI3K, NAMPT, and EFR inhibitors) as well as the broadening of "synthetic lethality" context (e.g., PTEN and ATM mutations, MSI colorectal cancer phenotypes, and Ewing's sarcomas) in which the inhibition of PARP-1 can be therapeutically valuable has further raised interest in this target.

PARP inhibitors were designed to imitate the nicotinamide portion of NAD^+ with which they compete for the corresponding PARP-1 binding site. PARP inhibition probably works by allowing the persistence of spontaneously occurring SSBs, or by inhibiting PARP release from a DNA lesion. Whichever is the case, both of these DNA lesion types could credibly stall and collapse replication forks, potentially creating lethal DSBs (Lord and Ashworth 2012). Recent data propose an indirect mechanism, according to which PARP1 activity would be dispensable for BER sheer execution, and would be rather engaged to seize potentially detrimental SSB intermediates and to promote their resolution. Recently, PARP1 contribution to SSB repair has also been

extended to MMR and NER. In normal cells, the effects of PARP inhibition are protected by HR, which repairs the resultant DSB. However, effective HR is reliant on functioning BRCA1 and BRCA2, so when these genes are defective – as they are in tumors of germline BRCA-mutant carriers – DSBs are left unrepaired, and potent PARP inhibitors can cause cell death. BRCA1 plays a role in both the G1/S and G2/M cell-cycle checkpoint regulation in response to DNA damage, again preserving genomic integrity. Moreover, the sensitivity to PARP inhibitors seems to be defined more by the BRCA genotype of a cancer cell than by its tissue of origin. Breast, ovarian, and prostate cancers with BRCA mutations all seem to be profoundly sensitive to these drugs.

As early as in 1980s, Durkacz and colleagues used the still immature, low-potency PARP inhibitor 3-aminobenzamide (3-AB) to derail DNA damage repair and enhance the cytotoxicity of dimethyl sulfate, a DNA alkylating agent (Durkacz et al. 1980).

The first clinical trial in pts was initiated in 2003 and allowed safety, pharmacokinetic, and pharmacodynamic evaluation of the PARP inhibitor AG014699 (*rucaparib* (Rouleau et al. 2010)) in combination with temozolomide (TMZ), a DNA alkylator and methylator, in advanced solid tumors (Plummer et al. 2008). However, the subsequent phase II study in melanoma (Plummer et al. 2013), as well as additional independent clinical trials, featured a common (albeit not universal) shortcoming of combinatorial strategies with PARP inhibitors, namely, enhanced toxicity. Myelotoxicity was the main dose-limiting concern, in the face of variable response rates. The need to reduce the dosage of either chemotherapy or PARP inhibitor (or both) to overcome excessive toxicity raises obvious questions about the real contribution of PARP inactivation to combinatorial regimens.

Currently, almost eight PARP inhibitors are at different stages of clinical investigation, targeting several tumor types either as single agents or in combination (Table 2).

Veliparib (Veli, ABT-888) is a potent, oral inhibitor of PARP-1 and PARP-2 (Penning et al. 2009). It is orally bioavailable and crosses the blood–brain barrier. Veli potentiated the cytotoxic effect of TMZ in several human tumor models. ABT-888 was investigated in an innovative phase 0 trial, the first such study in oncology (Kummar et al. 2009). The primary study endpoint was target modulation by the PARPi. There is an extensive clinical trial program associated with this agent with 32 ongoing clinical trials of Veli in combination with cytotoxics in ovarian, breast, colorectal, prostate, liver cancers, neurologic malignancies, and leukemias. In a phase 2 study (Isakoff et al. 2010) combined ABT-888 and TMZ is active in metastatic BC (MBC). Exploratory correlative studies including BRCA mutation analysis are underway to determine predictors of response. The dose and schedule of Veli suggest that the clinical activity seen is not likely due to Veli alone but rather to the combination. Promising antitumor activity was observed in pts with BRCA mutations.

Olaparib (Ola, AZD2281) also inhibits PARP-1 and PARP-2 at nanomolar concentrations. Preclinical studies have largely concentrated on investigations of synthetic lethality in BRCA1 or BRCA2 defective models or combinations with platinum in these models. The first clinical study of PARP inhibition in BRCA-mutant cancers

Table 2 PARP inhibitors under investigation

PARP inhibitor	Cancer type
Veliparib	Ovarian, breast, gastric, colorectal and pancreatic tumors and a range of other solid tumors
Niraparib (Nira, MK4827)	Ovarian cancer and BRCA+ breast cancer
Olaparib (Ola, AZD2281)	Ovarian, breast, gastric, colorectal and pancreatic tumors and a range of other solid tumors
Iniparib (BSI-201)	Breast cancer, ovarian cancer, lung cancer, glioma, glioblastoma
Rucaparib (AG014699)	Breast and other solid tumors
BMN-673	Ovarian, breast, gastric, colorectal and pancreatic tumors and a range of other solid tumors
CEP9722	Lymphoma, breast, ovarian cancer
E7016	Melanoma
AZD-2641	Solid tumors
INO-1001	Melanoma, breast cancer
E7449	Melanoma, breast cancer, ovarian, B-cell malignancies

was with this agent. In this phase I study which enrolled 60 pts, Ola doses were escalated from 10 mg daily for 2 of every 3 weeks to 600 mg twice daily (Fong et al. 2009). Olaparib is one of the most investigated PARP inhibitors through clinical trials either as monotherapy (Yamamoto et al. 2012; Bundred et al. 2013) or in combination with other anticancer drugs (Samol et al. 2012; Rajan et al. 2012; Dean et al. 2012; Liu et al. 2013; Dent et al. 2013; Del Conte et al. 2014). There is general agreement that 400 mg b.i.d. is the maximum tolerable dose of Ola. At this dose, Ola exhibited an acceptable safety profile. Most common adverse effects reported are of Grade 1/2 type, such as procedural pain, nausea, and other gastrointestinal symptoms of mild to moderate intensity, and thus are manageable. An important outcome of combination phase I trials results is the general tolerance of Ola when given in combination with bevacizumab (Dean et al. 2012), cediranib (Liu et al. 2013), and liposomal doxorubicin (Del Conte et al. 2014). Ola-paclitaxel combination against TNBC (Dent et al. 2013) and the Ola–CDDP combination against breast or ovarian cancer in pts carrying germline BRCA1/BRCA2 also report partial efficacy. In both studies, dose-limiting hematological toxicities were neutropenia and thrombocytopenia.

Five phase II trials were conducted with Ola alone. As with the phase I clinical trials for Ola, despite inherent differences in the study design, cancer types, patient variability, and evaluation protocols, important similarities are evident in the outcomes of these phase II clinical trials. A study in pts with confirmed BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations and recurrent ovarian cancer (Audeh et al. 2010) yielded the objective response rate (ORR) of 33% for Ola 400 mg b.i.d. In pts with BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations and advanced BC, ORRs were significantly higher (41%) for the 400 mg dose (Tutt et al. 2010). In another study conducted at this dose level (Gelmon et al. 2011), TNBC pts with or without BRCA mutations failed to show any objective

response (OR). Interestingly, in the same study, a very strong ORR of 41% was obtained for ovarian cancer pts with BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations; pts without the BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations also responded at a robust ORR of 11% (Gelmon et al. 2011). In summary in phase II clinical studies, 40% of pts with breast or ovarian cancer with germline BRCA mutations had a favorable response to the drug. This is a particularly high response given that the pts in these trials had been heavily pretreated and had become resistant to a range of chemotherapies (Lord and Ashworth 2012; Plummer et al. 2008).

INO-1001 is an isoindolinone derivative and is being developed for both oncological and cardiovascular indications. Preclinical studies demonstrate its protective effect in models of cardiac dysfunction and reversal of TMZ resistance in MMR-defective xenografts. This agent is being developed in oncology in melanoma and glioma and as a single agent in cancer for BRCA1- and BRCA2-deficient tumors. In phase I trials, INO-001 was tested alone or in combination with TMZ (Bedikian et al. 2009). Pharmacokinetic analyses indicate lack of interactions between TMZ with INO1001 and establish a "safe to administer" dose of the combination for further evaluation of the efficacy of INO1001 against advanced melanoma. However, outcomes of some clinical trials are less encouraging.

CEP9722 in phase I trials was tested alone or in combination with TMZ (Plummer et al. 2014). These dose escalation phase I trials established what the authors call an "adequately tolerated" dose for these compounds. Thus, while no neutropenia and other hematological toxicities were noticed, dose-dependent PARP inhibition was also not observed, with only limited clinical activity.

Niraparib (Nira, MK4827) is a potent inhibitor of PARP-1 and PARP-2 that is currently in phase III clinical trials for ovarian cancer and BRCA+ BC. In a phase III, randomized, open label, multicenter, controlled trial, Nira has compared versus physician's choice in previously treated, HER2 negative, germline BRCA mutation-positive BC pts. MK4827 (in a 2:1 ratio) is administered once daily continuously during a 21-day cycle. Physician's choice will be administered on a 21-day cycle. Health-related quality of life will be measured. The safety and tolerability will be assessed by clinical review of adverse events (AEs), physical examinations, electrocardiograms (ECGs), and safety laboratory values.

Iniparib (BSI-201) is an anticancer agent with PARP inhibitory activity in preclinical models. Although the full mechanism of its antitumor activity is still under investigation, iniparib enhances the antiproliferative and cytotoxic effects of carboplatin and gemcitabine in vitro models of TNBC. Phase 1–1b studies of iniparib alone and iniparib in combination with chemotherapy in pts with advanced solid tumors have shown iniparib to have mild toxicity, with no maximal dose reached in terms of side effects. O'Shaughnessy et al. (2011), in a phase II trial, evaluate whether iniparib could potentiate the antitumor effects of gemcitabine and carboplatin with acceptable toxicity levels. A total of 123 pts were randomly assigned to receive gemcitabine (1,000 mg per square meter of body-surface area) and carboplatin (at a dose equivalent to an area under the concentration–time curve of 2) on days 1 and 8 – with or without iniparib (at a dose of 5.6 mg per kilogram of body weight) on days 1, 4, 8, and 11 – every 21 days. Primary end points were the rate of clinical benefit (CB) (i.e.,

the rate of OR [complete or partial response] plus the rate of stable disease (SD) for ≥6 months) and safety. Additional end points included the ORR, progression-free survival (PFS), and overall survival (OS). The addition of iniparib to chemotherapy improved the CB and OS of pts with metastatic TNBC without significantly increased toxic effects. On the basis of these results, a phase 3 trial adequately powered to evaluate overall survival and progression-free survival is being conducted.

In summary, there are many differences in the studies evaluating anticancer activity of PARP inhibitors used alone or in combination with one or more anticancer agents. While there are many differences in the studies, some common observations should be noted with particular emphasis on various enzymatic activities associated with this multi-domain group of proteins as it applies to developing new anticancer agents and/or regimens. Specifically, the discovery of activation of PARP-2 and PARP-3 by phosphorylated DNA ends mimicking substrates or intermediates in various DNA-repair pathways is quite important. These observations shed new light on the molecular functions of different PARPs. Additionally, better understanding of the substrate specificity of individual members of the PARP family will allow researchers to further refine inhibitor chemistry and minimize adverse effects of drugs currently under evaluation. Another area of considerable potential for research and development of PARP inhibitors as first-line anticancer drugs is their application to personalized medicine. Targeted therapy is rapidly becoming a hallmark of a number of anticancer drugs.

Platinum chemotherapies: cisplatin, carboplatin, and oxaliplatin have become three of the most commonly prescribed chemotherapeutic drugs used to treat solid cancers in pts (Helleday et al. 2008). Platinum resistance, either intrinsic or acquired during cyclical treatment, is a major clinical problem as additional agents that can be added to therapy in order to circumvent tumor resistance do not currently exist. Platinum chemotherapy is now being tested with PARP inhibition clinical trials. The rationale for combining PARP inhibition with platinum chemotherapy is based on preclinical observations that PARP inhibitors preferentially kill neoplastic cells and induce complete or partial regression of a wide variety of human tumor xenografts in nude mice treated with platinum chemotherapy (Helleday et al. 2008). For example, Veli has been shown to potentiate the regression of established tumors induced by cisplatin, carboplatin therapy in rodent orthotopic and xenografts models (Helleday et al. 2008). However, the biological mechanisms of chemo-sensitization of cancer cells to platinum chemotherapy by PARP inhibition remain to be resolved.

Ionizing radiation and radiomimetic agents such as bleomycin cause replication-independent DSBs that can kill nonreplicating cells. In addition, such treatments can also rapidly prevent DNA replication by activation of cell-cycle checkpoints to avoid formation of toxic DNA replication lesions (Helleday et al. 2008).

Targeting microsatellite instability (MSI). MSI is a marker of defective MMR. The predictive value of MMR status as a marker of response to 5FU, irinotecan, and other drugs is still controversial. Two large retrospective analyses from several randomized trials confirmed the detrimental effect of a 5FU-based adjuvant therapy in stage II colorectal patients (Bedikian et al. 2009), not applicable to stage III patients (Plummer et al. 2014). These latter authors, however, reported that MSI stage III

tumors harboring genetic mutation in the MMR genes seem to benefit from the 5FU adjuvant therapy. These data imply that molecular differences within the MSI subgroup influence the response to 5FU. Combination therapy with methotrexate (MTX) and PARP inhibitors may be effective against tumors with MMR mutations. MTX elevates ROS and DSBs and the combination of MMR mutation and PARP inhibition may attenuate repair and induce growth arrest or apoptosis (McCabe et al. 2006; Vilar et al. 2011; Miquel et al. 2007).

Targeting gene expression of cell cycle and DNA-repair components: Resveratrol, a phytoalexin produced by plants such as the Japanese knotweed, prevents hypermethylation of the BRCA1 promoter (Papoutsis et al. 2012), and maybe effective for TNBC or basal subtype BC. Other natural compounds, like genistein and lycopene, can alter DNA methylation of the glutathione S transferase p1 (GSTP1) tumor suppressor gene.

Targeting centrosome abnormalities: griseofulvin, an antifungal drug that suppresses proliferation in tumor cells without affecting non-transformed cells, declusters centrosome, although the precise mechanisms behind the drug's action remain unknown (Ogden et al. 2012). In a similar fashion, depletion of a kinesin-like motor protein can selectively kill tumor cells with supernumerary centrosomes (Ogden et al. 2012). Finally, the PARP inhibitor PJ34 also declusters super numerary centrosomes without deleterious effects on spindle morphology, centrosome integrity, mitosis, or cell viability in normal cells (Kwon et al. 2008).

6 Conclusion

Genomic instability plays a critical role in cancer initiation and progression. The fidelity of the genome is protected at every stage of the cell cycle. In cancer, the presence of aneuploid or tetraploid cells indicates the failure of one or many of these safety nets. The resultant genomic heterogeneity may offer the cancer "tissue" a selection advantage against standard of care and emerging therapies. Understanding these safety nets, and how they are bypassed in cancer cells, may highlight new and more specific mechanisms for cancer prevention or therapeutic attack. The therapeutic targeting of genomic instability may check and inhibit other enabling characteristic of tumors cells, such as replicative immortality, evasion of antigrowth signaling, and tumor promoting inflammation. To this end, vitamins, minerals, and antioxidants, such as vitamin B, vitamin D, carotenoids, and selenium, as well as nutraceuticals, such as resveratrol, have shown remarkable plasticity in elucidating antitumor responses. In addition to alleviating genomic instability, these compounds are known to inhibit proliferative signaling, attenuate oncogenic metabolism, and block inflammation.

References

Artandi SE, DePinho RA (2010) Telomeres and telomerase in cancer. Carcinogenesis 31:9–18
Aubert G, Lansdorp PM (2008) Telomeres and aging. Physiol Rev 88:557–579
Audeh MW, Carmichael J, Penson RT et al (2010) Oral poly(ADPribose) polymerase inhibitor olaparib in patients with BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations and recurrent ovarian cancer: a proof-of-concept trial. Lancet 376:245–251
Bartkova J, Hořejší Z, Koed K et al (2005) DNA damage response as a candidate anti-cancer barrier in early human tumorigenesis. Nature 434:864–870
Bartkova J, Rezaei N, Liontos M et al (2006) Oncogene-induced senescence is part of the tumorigenesis barrier imposed by DNA damage checkpoints. Nature 444:633–637
Bedikian AY, Papadopoulos NE, Kim KB et al (2009) A phase IB trial of intravenous INO-1001 plus oral temozolomide in subjects with unresectable stage-III or IV melanoma. Cancer Invest 27:756–763
Bell O, Tiwari VK, Thoma NH, Schubeler D (2011) Determinants and dynamics of genome accessibility. Nat Rev Genet 12:554–564
Blackburn EH (2000) Telomeres and telomerase. J Med 49:59–65
Bouwman P, Aly A, Escandell JM et al (2010) 53BP1 loss rescues BRCA1 deficiency and is associated with triple negative and BRCA-mutated breast cancers. Nat Struct Mol Biol 17:688–695
Bryant HE, Schultz N, Thomas HD et al (2005) Specific killing of BRCA2-deficient tumours with inhibitors of poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase. Nature 434:913–917
Bundred N, Gardovskis J, Jaskiewicz J et al (2013) Evaluation of the pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of the PARP inhibitor olaparib: a phase I multicenter trial in patients scheduled for elective breast cancer surgery. Invest New Drugs 31:949–958
Cedar H, Bergman Y (2009) Linking DNA methylation and histone modification: patterns and paradigms. Nat Rev Genet 10:295–304
Ciccia A, Elledge SJ (2010) The DNA damage response: making it safe to play with knives. Mol Cell 40:179–204
David SS, O'Shea VL, Kundu S (2007) Base-excision repair of oxidative DNA damage. Nature 447:941–950
de Lange T (2010) How shelterin solves the telomere end-protection problem. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol 75:167–177
Dean E, Middleton MR, Pwint T et al (2012) Phase I study to assess the safety and tolerability of olaparib in combination with bevacizumab in patients with advanced solid tumours. Br J Cancer 106:468–474
Del Conte G, Sessa C, von Moos R et al (2014) Phase I study of olaparib in combination with liposomal doxorubicin in patients with advanced solid tumours. Br J Cancer 111:651–659
Dent RA, Lindeman GJ, Clemons M et al (2013) Phase I trial of the oral PARP inhibitor olaparib in combination with paclitaxel for first- or second-line treatment of patients with metastatic triple-negative breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res 15:R88
Di Micco R, Fumagalli M, Cicalese A et al (2006) Oncogene-induced senescence is a DNA damage response triggered by DNA hyperreplication. Nature 444:638–642
Doxsey S (2001) Re-evaluating centrosome function. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 2:688–698
Durkacz BW, Omidiji O, Gray DA, Shall S (1980) (ADP-ribose)n participates in DNA excision repair. Nature 283:593–596
Fackenthal JD, Olopade OI (2007) Breast cancer risk associated with BRCA1 and BRCA2 in diverse populations. Nat Rev Cancer 7:937–948
Fang X, Zhang R (2011) Aneuploidy and tumourigenesis. Semin Cell Dev Biol 22:595–601
Ferguson LR, Chen H, Collins AR et al (2015) Genomic instability in human cancer: molecular insights and opportunities for therapeutic attack and prevention through diet and nutrition. Semin Cancer Biol 35:S5–S24
Fishel R, Lescoe MK, Rao MRS, Copeland NG (1993) The human mutator gene homolog MSH2 and its association with hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer. Cell 75:1027–1038

Fong PC, Yap TA, Boss DS et al (2009) Poly(ADP)-ribose polymerase inhibition: frequent durable responses in BRCA carrier ovarian cancer correlating with platinum-free interval. J Clin Oncol 28:2512–2519
Frizzell KM, Kraus WL (2009) PARP inhibitors and the treatment of breast cancer: beyond BRCA1/2? Breast Cancer Res 11:111
Gelmon KA, Tischkowitz M, Mackay H et al (2011) Olaparib in patients with recurrent high-grade serous or poorly differentiated ovarian carcinoma or triple-negative breast cancer: a phase 2, multicentre, open-label, non-randomised study. Lancet Oncol 12:852–861
Gergely F, Basto R (2008) Multiple centrosomes: together they stand, divided they fall. Genes Dev 22:2291–2296
Glover DM, Leibowitz MH, McLean DA et al (1995) Mutations in aurora prevent centrosome separation leading to the formation of monopolar spindles. Cell 891:95–105
Gorgoulis VG, Vassiliou LVF, Karakaidos P et al (2005) Activation of the DNA damage checkpoint and genomic instability in human precancerous lesions. Nature 434:907–913
Greider CW (1991) Telomeres. Curr Opin Cell Biol 3:444–451
Halazonetis TD, Gorgoulis VG, Bartek J (2008) An oncogene-induced DNA damage model for cancer development. Science 319:1352–1355
Harley CB (1991) Telomere loss: mitotic clock or genetic time bomb. Mutat Res 256:271–282
Harley CB, Sherwood SW (1997) Telomerase, checkpoints and cancer. Cancer Surv 29:263–284
Helleday T, Petermann E, Lundin C et al (2008) DNA repair pathways as targets for cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer 8:193–204
Hitchins MP (2010) Inheritance of epigenetic aberrations (constitutional epimutations) in cancer susceptibility. Adv Genet 70:201–243
Hockemeyer D, Sfeir AJ, Shay JW et al (2005) POT1 protects telomeres from a transient DNA damage response and determines how human chromosomes end. EMBO J 24:2667–2678
Hoeijmakers JH (2009) DNA damage, aging, and cancer. N Engl J Med 361:1475–1485
Isakoff SJ, Overmoyer B, Tung NM et al (2010) A phase II trial of the PARP inhibitor veliparib (ABT888) and temozolomide for metastatic breast cancer. ASCO annual meeting abstracts. J Clin Oncol 28(15_suppl):1019
Jirincy J (2006) The multifaceted mismatch-repair system. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 7:335–346
Karlseder J, Hoke K, Mirzoeva OK et al (2004) The telomeric protein TRF2 binds the ATM kinase and can inhibit the ATM-dependent DNA damage response. PLoS Biol 2:E240
Khodjakov A (2002) De novo formation of centrosomes in vertebrate cells arrested during S phase. J Cell Biol 158:1171–1181
Ko MA, Rosario CO, Hudson JW et al (2005) Plk4 haploinsufficiency causes mitotic infidelity and carcinogenesis. Nat Genet 37:883–888
Konishi A, de Lange T (2008) Cell cycle control of telomere protection and NHEJ revealed by a ts mutation in the DNA-binding domain of TRF2. Genes Dev 22:1221–1230
Kummar S, Kinders R, Gutierrez ME et al (2009) Phase 0 clinical trial of the poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitor ABT-888 in patients with advanced malignancies. J Clin Oncol 27:2705–2711
Kwon M, Godinho SA, Chandhok NS et al (2008) Mechanisms to suppress multipolar divisions in cancer cells with extra centrosomes. Genes Dev 22:2189–2203
Leach FS, Nicolaides NC, Papadopoulos N, Liu B (1993) Mutations of a mutS homolog in hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer. Cell 75:1215–1225
Lee JH, Jeong SY, Kim MJ et al (2015) MicroRNA-22 suppresses DNA repair and promotes genomic instability through targeting of MDC1. Cancer Res 75:1298
Lengauer C, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B (1997) Genetic instability in colorectal cancers. Nature 386:623–627
Levy MZ, Allsopp RC, Futcher AB et al (1992) Telomere end-replication problem and cell aging. J Mol Biol 225:951–960
Levy-Lahad E (2010) Fanconi anemia and breast cancer susceptibility meet again. Nat Genet 42:368–369

Lieber MR (2010) NHEJ and its backup pathways in chromosomal translocations. Nat Struct Mol Biol 17:393–395
Lindahl T, Barnes DE (2000) Repair of endogenous DNA damage. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol 65:127–133
Liu JF, Tolaney SM, Birrer M et al (2013) A phase 1 trial of the poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitor olaparib (AZD2281) in combination with the anti-angiogenic cediranib (AZD2171) in recurrent epithelial ovarian or triple-negative breast cancer. Eur J Cancer 49:2972–2978
Loeb LA (1991) Mutator phenotype may be required for multistage carcinogenesis. Cancer Res 51:3075–3079
Lord CJ, Ashworth A (2012) The DNA damage response and cancer therapy. Nature 481:287
Mailand N, Bekker-Jensen S, Faustrup H et al (2007) RNF8 ubiquitylates histones at DNA double-strand breaks and promotes assembly of repair proteins. Cell 131:887–900
Marthien V, Piel M, Basto RJ (2012) Never tear us apart – the importance of centrosome clustering. Cell Sci 125:3281–3292
Maxwell CA, Keats JJ, Belch AR et al (2005) Receptor forhyaluronan-mediated motility correlates with centrosome abnormalities in multiple myeloma and maintains mitotic integrity. Cancer Res 56:850–860
McCabe N, Turner NC, Lord CJ et al (2006) Deficiency in the repair of DNA damage by homologous recombination and sensitivity to poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibition. Cancer Res 66:8109–8115
Miquel C, Jacob S, Grandjouan S et al (2007) Frequent alteration of DNA damage signalling and repair pathways in human colorectal cancers with microsatellite instability. Oncogene 26:5919–5926
Moynahan ME, Jasin M (2010) Mitotic homologous recombination maintains genomic stability and suppresses tumorigenesis. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 11:196–207
Negrini S, Gorgoulis VG, Halazonetis TD (2010) Genomic instability – an evolving hallmark of cancer. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 11:220–228
Nigg EA (2002) Centrosome aberrations: cause or consequence of cancer progression. Nat Rev Cancer 2:815–825
Nigg EA, Stearns T (2011) The centrosome cycle: centriole biogenesis, duplication and inherent asymmetries. Nat Cell Biol 13:1154–1160
Nowell PC (1976) The clonal evolution of tumor cell populations. Science 194:23–28
O'Shaughnessy J, Osborne C, Pippen JE et al (2011) Iniparib plus chemotherapy in metastatic triple-negative breast cancer. N Engl J Med 364:205–214
Ogden A, Rida PC, Aneja R (2012) Let's huddle to prevent a muddle: centrosome declustering as an attractive anticancer strategy. Cell Death Differ 19:1255–1267
Papoutsis AJ, Borg JL, Selmin OI, Romagnolo DF (2012) BRCA-1 promoter hypermethylation and silencing induced by the aromatic hydrocarbon receptor-ligand TCDD are prevented by resveratrol in MCF-7 cells. J Nutr Biochem 23:1324–1332
Penning TD, Zhu GD, Gandhi VB et al (2009) Discovery of the poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitor 2-[(R)-2-methylpyrrolidin-2-Yl]-1h-benzimidazole-4-carboxamide (ABT-888) for the treatment of cancer. J Med Chem 52:514–523
Plummer R, Jones C, Middleton M et al (2008) Phase I study of the poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitor, AG014699, in combination with temozolomide in patients with advanced solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 14:7917–7923
Plummer R, Lorigan P, Steven N et al (2013) A phase II study of the potent PARP inhibitor, Rucaparib (PF-01367338, AG014699), with temozolomide in patients with metastatic melanoma demonstrating evidence of chemopotentiation. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 71:1191–1199
Plummer R, Stephens P, Aissat-Daudigny L et al (2014) Phase 1 dose escalation study of the PARP inhibitor CEP-9722 as monotherapy or in combination with temozolomide in patients with solid tumors. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 74:257–265
Rajagopalan H, Lengauer C (2004) Aneuploidy and cancer. Nature 432:338–341

Rajan A, Carter CA, Kelly RJ et al (2012) A phase I combination study of olaparib with cisplatin and gemcitabine in adults with solid tumors. Clin Cancer Res 18:2344–2351
Rouleau M, Patel A, Hendzel MJ et al (2010) PARP inhibition: PARP1 and beyond. Nat Rev Cancer 10:293–301
Samol J, Ranson M, Scott E et al (2012) Safety and tolerability of the poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) inhibitor, olaparib (AZD2281) in combination with topotecan for the treatment of patients with advanced solid tumors: a phase I study. Invest New Drugs 30:1493–1500
Schreiber V, Dantzer F, Ame JC, de Murcia G (2006) Poly(ADPribose): novel functions for an old molecule. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 7:517–528
Sharma S, Kelly TK, Jones PA (2010) Epigenetics in cancer. Carcinogenesis 31:27–36
Sproul D, Gilbert N, Bickmore WA (2005) The role of chromatin structure in regulating the expression of clustered genes. Nat Rev Genet 6:775–781
Swann PF, Waters TR, Moulton DC (1996) Role of postreplicative DNA mismatch repair in the cytotoxic action of thioguanine. Science 273:1109–1111
Tutt A, Robson M, Garber JE et al (2010) Oral poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibitor olaparib in patients with BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutations and advanced breast cancer: a proof-of-concept trial. Lancet 376:235–244
Vilar E, Bartnik CM, Stenzel SL et al (2011) MRE11 deficiency increases sensitivity to poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase inhibition in microsatellite unstable colorectal cancers. Cancer Res 71:2632–2642
Warmerdam DO, Kanaar R (2010) Dealing with DNA damage: relationships between checkpoint and repair pathways. Mutat Res 704:2–11
Yamamoto N, Nokihara H, Yamada Y et al (2012) A phase I, dosefinding and pharmacokinetic study of olaparib (AZD2281) in Japanese patients with advanced solid tumors. Cancer Sci 103:504–509
Zhai L, Li S, Li X et al (2015) The nuclear expression of poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase-1 (PARP1) in invasive primary breast tumors is associated with chemotherapy sensitivity. Pathol Res Pract 211:130–137

Resistance to Hormonal Therapy in Prostate Cancer

Alfredo Berruti and Alberto Dalla Volta

Contents

1 Introduction 182
2 Serum Testosterone and Intracrine and Paracrine Androgen Production 183
3 AR Splice Variants and Point Mutations 184
3.1 Androgen Receptor Splice Variants (ARVs) 184
3.2 Androgen Receptor Point Mutations 186
4 Glucocorticoid and Progesterone Receptor Upregulation 187
5 Other Oncogenic Signaling Pathways 189
6 AR Pathway Independent Mechanisms and Neuroendocrine Phenotype 190
7 Conclusions 191
References 191

Abstract

Several therapeutic strategies are actually available in the management of prostate cancer: Targeting the androgen receptor (AR) is the goal both for initial androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) and second-generation androgen ablative agents (abiraterone and enzalutamide). Chemotherapy with taxanes, administered upon progression or as first line approach in association with ADT, is another therapeutic option. Unfortunately, none of these therapies is curative and patients are destined to develop a resistant phenotype.

A. Berruti (✉)
Department of Medical and Surgical Specialties, Radiological Sciences, and Public Health, Medical Oncology, University of Brescia at ASST-Spedali Civili, Brescia, Italy

Oncologia Medica, ASST-Spedali Civili, Piazzale Spedali Civili 1, 25123 Brescia, Italy
e-mail: alfredo.berruti@gmail.com

A. Dalla Volta
Department of Oncology, Verona Comprehensive Cancer Network, G.B. Rossi Hospital, University of Verona, Piazzale L. A. Scuro 10, 37134 Verona, Italy

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_21

Progression to ADT leads to the attainment of a castration resistant disease whose mechanisms remain incompletely understood. Reactivation of AR has been shown to occur and second-generation of AR targeting drugs are usually prescribed. Upon progression to these agents AR signaling still remains the primary driver although it often becomes ligand independent, since it can be either restored through mutations on the ligand binding domain and/or formation of AR splicing variants or by passed through a cross talk with other oncogenic signaling pathways.

AR-independent signaling pathways may represent additional mechanisms underlying castration resistant progression. It is clear that castration resistant prostate cancer is a group of diverse diseases and new treatment paradigms need to be developed.

Keywords
Androgen receptor splice variant • Castration resistant prostate cancer • Endocrine therapy resistance

1 Introduction

Prostate cancer (PC) is a hormone-dependent disease that is treated with a variety of hormonal therapies targeting the androgen receptor (AR) pathway.

Androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) with luteinizing hormone releasing hormone agonists (LHRH-A) plus/minus antiandrogens is the first line management of metastatic prostate cancer, resulting in a delay in disease progression (Loblaw et al. 2007).

However, after an initial response, acquired castrate resistant disease inevitably occurs. Castration resistant PC (CRPC) still remains AR-driven since this phenotype is due in most cases to genomic alterations of the AR axis (Cornford et al. 2016).

In this setting, second-generation of AR targeting drugs, such as enzalutamide and abiraterone acetate (AA), have improved overall survival and quality of life.

AA is a CYP17A1 inhibitor blocking the production of androgens in the testes, adrenal glands, and tumor microenvironment by inhibiting both 17a-hydroxylase and 17,20 lyase activities of the CYP17A1 enzyme (Mostaghel 2014). In addition, the drug in is converted by the 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (3βHSD) to the more active Δ4-abiraterone (D4A) that blocks multiple steroidogenic enzymes and antagonizes the AR (Li et al. 2015). Enzalutamide is a novel antagonist of AR that inhibits nuclear translocation, chromatin binding, and interactions with AR coregulators (Schalken and Fitzpatrick 2016).

Both of AA and enzalutamide treatments are not curative and are associated with the emergence of resistance. This paper is focused on the major mechanisms of androgen pathway resistance.

2 Serum Testosterone and Intracrine and Paracrine Androgen Production

Testosterone (T) is the natural growth factor for PC. The attainment of serum T levels as low as possible (i.e. below 20 ng/mL) during ADT is associated with a better outcome (Bertaglia et al. 2013). However, in untreated PC patients lower serum concentrations have been associated with worrisome features such as high grade and disease stage (Khera et al. 2014), suggesting that PC is stimulated to dedifferentiate in a T-deficient environment. More importantly, serum T levels measured in CRPC patients revealed longer survival in patients with higher levels (Ryan et al. 2013), suggesting that testosterone may maintain a differentiating role also when the tumor progresses to ADT. These data, however, do not take into account the intraprostatic hormone levels that are more important than circulating levels. Significant amounts of intraprostatic androgens still remain following ADT in localized PC (Nishiyama et al. 2004) and metastatic CRPC (Montgomery et al. 2008). Intraprostatic dihydrotestosterone (DHT) level, which is more potent than T, was shown to decrease only by 40% after ADT (Labrie 2011) and tissue biopsy studies have demonstrated higher levels of androgens in tumor tissue of CRPC patients than patients with androgen-sensitive disease (Montgomery et al. 2008).

Tissue androgen levels may be responsible of both primary and acquired resistance to ADT in PC. Dehydroepiandrosterone-sulphate DHEA-S is the major source of adrenal androgens that stimulates intratumoral androgen biosynthesis. DHEA-S is actively transported into the cells by membrane transporting peptides such as organic anion-transporting polypeptides (OATPs). The members of this family involved in steroid uptake in the prostate include *SLCO1A2* and *SLCO2B1* (Cho et al. 2014). The active form of *SLCO2B1* was found to be associated with prostate cancer progression under ADT (Yang et al. 2011). The HSD3B1 is the enzyme involved in either the conversion of DHEA to Δ4-androstene-3,17-dione (Δ4-AD) or the conversion of Δ5-androstene-3β17β-diol (Δ5-Adiol) to T in prostate cancer. The 1245C allele results in a coding change (N367T) leading to a gain-of-function 3βHSD1 without altering the enzymatic activity but leading to reduced ubiquitination and degradation of the enzyme. This results in increased enzyme abundance. In a recent retrospective study a strong correlation was found between the presence of the HSD3B1 (1245C) polymorphism and poorer outcome in 443 men who underwent ADT (Hearn et al. 2016). Both inherited SNPs of *SLCO* and HSD3B1 gene expression provide mechanisms of primary ADT resistance.

In prostate cells, Androstenedione is ultimately converted through the classic route to DHT by aldo-keto reductase family 1 member C3 (AKR1C3, also known as 17-β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 5) (Koh et al. 2002). Overexpression of AKR1C3 in CPRC would provide a mechanism to divert residual androgens after ADT to potent androgens via different pathways within the tumor. AKR1C3 upregulation is therefore an adaptive response to ADT, and could contribute to drug resistance observed with AA or enzalutamide (Penning 2015).

A neoadjuvant clinical trial evaluated the effect of Leuprolide alone (12 weeks) followed by Leuprolide plus AA (12 weeks) versus Leuprolide plus AA (for all

24 weeks) (Taplin et al. 2014). Serum hormones, measured at baseline and at 12 and 24 weeks reveled that once AA was administered the adrenal androgens were decreased by >90%. Also, levels of DHEA-S were significantly reduced, however a persistent pool of DHEA-S may stimulate intratumoral androgen biosynthesis, providing a potential mechanism for the clinical failure of AA.

3 AR Splice Variants and Point Mutations

The Androgen Receptor (AR) is a transmembrane protein whose structure includes four main regions:

1. N-terminal Domain (NTD),
2. DNA binding Domain (DBD),
3. Hinge region,
4. Ligand binding Domain (LBD)

Upon binding of DHT to the LBD, AR is switched to the active conformation and forms a homodimer, that is transferred to the nucleus where it binds to androgen response elements (AREs).

AR splice variants and point mutations are two mechanisms through which AR can be activated without the direct intervention of DHT (and testosterone).

3.1 Androgen Receptor Splice Variants (ARVs)

LBD-lacking ARVs were described in 2008, when nucleotide sequences transcribed from intronic regions of the DNA, causing alternatively spliced mRNAs, were identified (Dehm et al. 2008), The result of their transcription is a set of mRNAs presenting with a premature stop codon, that are translated into truncated proteins lacking the LBD. These ARV proteins are able to bind DNA in the absence of androgens, thus promoting constitutively active signals to the nucleus (Fig. 1).

The extensive search for AR intronic regions led to identify seven distinct ARVs, named ARV1-7 (Hu et al. 2009).

Other variants were subsequently found, one of them is the result of exon-skipping during mRNA splicing, leading to transcripts lacking exons 5, 6 and 7. Consequently this variant was named AR^{v567es} (Sun et al. 2010).

The ARV8-14 includes the variants 8–11 lacking the whole LBD, while ARV12-14 retains part of the LBD and shows functional inactivity (ARV13,14) (Watson et al. 2010; Hu et al. 2011).

Despite the abundance of AR variants, only ARV7 and AR^{v567es} have been extensively studied. Recent whole transcriptome analysis confirmed that ARV7 is the most abundant ARV expressed in human cell lines and clinical samples (Robinson et al. 2015).

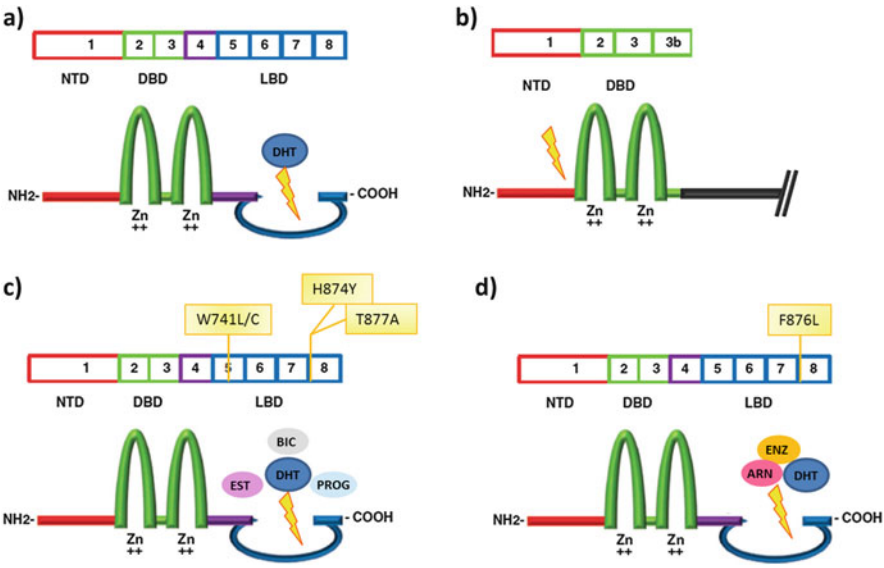


Fig. 1 (**a**) Wild-type AR activated by di-hydro-testosterone (DHT); (**b**) AP splice variant 7, activated regardless to the presence of ligands; (**c**, **d**) AR with point mutations, promiscuously activated by alternative ligands such as estradiol (EST), progesterone (PROG), bicalutamide (BIC), enzalutamide (ENZ), apalutamide (ARN)

ARV7 relies on full-length AR signaling to enhance its own transcription: in fact, ligand-dependent AR signaling reduces transcription of AR-FL, thereby decreasing ARV7 transcription as well. This observation is consistent with the selective advantage provided to ARV7^{+} cells by ADT, and with the report of negative correlation between ARV expression and testosterone serum levels.

ARVs are involved in oncogenesis and resistance to primary treatments. A study carried out on matched prostate specimens revealed progressive up-regulation of ARV7 in benign tissue, hormone-naïve and castrate-resistant adenocarcinoma (Hu et al. 2009).

Whether ARVs expression can assume the role of predictive and/or prognostic biomarker in the CRPC setting is a matter of debate.

The prognostic role of ARVs was demonstrated in a clinical study, in which these variants were evaluated on bone metastatic samples from 30 CRPC patients. ARV7 expression in the upper quartile and/or detectable expression of AR^{v567es} were associated with a decreased cancer-specific survival (Hornberg et al. 2011).

To assess the predictive role of ARV7 expression for response to enzalutamide, a prospective phase II trial was conducted in patients with bone metastatic CRPC who underwent transilial bone marrow biopsies prior to and after 8 weeks of enzalutamide treatment. Baseline expression of ARV7 by immunohistochemistry did not predict responsiveness to enzalutamide, however the samples collected after 8 weeks of enzalutamide showed a significant increase of ARV7 positive staining in

the resistance group, compared to the responsive group. In addition, none of the enzalutamide long-responders had ARV7 positive staining, either at baseline or after 8 weeks of treatment (Efstathiou et al. 2015).

In a subsequent paper, ARV7 expression was prospectively assessed on pooled epithelial cell adhesion molecule (EpCAM)-positive circulating tumor cells (CTCs) from peripheral venous blood of metastatic CRPC patients. Patients treated with enzalutamide or abiraterone whose CTCs at baseline proved to be ARV7-positive had significantly lower PSA response rate and shorter median overall survival compared with ARV7-negative patients (Antonarakis et al. 2014).

Another prospective study conducted on patients at multiple stages of disease confirmed that ARV7 expression on CTCs could identify responders to hormonal therapeutic strategies (including ADT, enzalutamide and abiraterone) (Steinestel et al. 2015).

The role of ARV7 expression in predicting the efficacy of taxane-based chemotherapy was also explored. Thirty-seven patients, stratified at baseline on the basis of ARV7 expression on CTCs, were treated with either docetaxel or cabazitaxel, $ARV7^-$ patients had a greater PSA response rate (41 vs 65%, $p = 0.19$) and a longer median PFS than $ARV7^+$ ones, although the differences failed to attain the statistical significance (Antonarakis et al. 2015).

Another prospective trial was conducted stratifying for ARV7 expression mCRPC patients that underwent systemic therapy with either taxanes or AR-directed treatment. $ARV7^+$ patients had better outcomes when treated with taxanes rather than AR-directed treatments (median OS 8.9 vs 4.6 months, HR 0.24 for risk of death), even adjusting for baseline known prognostic factors in a multivariable model (Scher et al. 2016).

3.2 Androgen Receptor Point Mutations

Similar to splice variants, point mutations of the AR coding sequence increase in prevalence and become detectable in the setting of advanced CRPC. It was shown that none of early stage prostate cancer patients had AR mutations, in front of 21% of patients with CRPC (Marcelli et al. 2000).

Two are the main mechanisms through which somatic mutations can uncouple AR activation from its ligand (Liu et al. 2015):

1. change in amino acids that have a stronger affinity for helix 12. This mechanism pulls helix 12 closer to the active position, thus increasing the AR sensitivity and making it less reliant on DHT for activation;
2. amino acids substitutions in the LBD, resulting in a larger pocket that can accommodate more ligands.

Although several mutations were identified, only a few of them are described to be significant in driving prostate cancer progression and drug resistance (Gottlieb et al. 2004) (Fig. 1).

The H874Y mutation applies to the first group, as it involves the substitution of a histidine with a tyrosine between helix 11 and 12, pushing the last one closer to the LBD and conferring transactivation from other ligands (such as estradiol or progesterone) (Duff and Mcewan 2005).

H874Y also enhances the association between the AR and p160 co-activators.

The F876L missense mutation (phenylalanine for leucine) also favors helix 12 movement closer to the LBD and enhance AR activation. In this case the AR is made sensitive to antagonists like enzalutamide (Korpal et al. 2013).

The T877A mutation is the primary AR mutation in LNCaP cell line, frequently detected in CRPC (Veldscholte et al. 1992); it lays in the second group, as above described, in that the incorporation of alanine in the helix 11 results in a larger ligand-binding pocket thereby accommodating more ligands with different shapes (particularly preferring estradiol) (Steketee et al. 2002).

Finally, W741L/C mutation alters the tertiary structure of helix 12 in a way that lowers the affinity of the LBD for androgens, but conversely causes bicalutamide to act as an AR agonist (Taplin et al. 1999).

Available data suggest that AR point mutations may have a major role in resistance to anti-androgens rather than to ADT. In a clinical study, in fact, only one out of 17 patients treated with ADT had a somatic point mutation in their AR coding sequence (Carreira et al. 2014). Conversely, 5 of the 16 patients treated with the androgen antagonist flutamide had the T877A missense mutation (Urushibara et al. 2007).

Enzalutamide resistance could be driven by the expression of F876L, which switches the potent AR-antagonist to an agonist. The expression of this AR mutation was detected in all enzalutamide resistant cell lines, but not in weakly resistant or control lines (Korpal et al. 2013).

Furthermore, F876L mutation has also been correlated with PSA rising after chronic exposure to the new anti-androgen ARN-509 (Joseph et al. 2013). As to the involvement of AR point mutations in the resistance to Abiraterone, a clinical study detected both H874Y and T877A mutations in circulating cell-free DNA of abiraterone-resistant patients (Azad et al. 2015).

4 Glucocorticoid and Progesterone Receptor Upregulation

Glucocorticoid treatment has resulted in both subjective and objective responses in patients with advanced prostate cancer (Venkitaraman et al. 2008). Glucocorticoids inhibit adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) production by the pituitary and this mechanism results in reduced androgen levels, providing explanation of the efficacy of glucocorticoid in PC patients. With the use of the new therapeutic agents, however, glucocorticoid-related mechanisms can cause iatrogenic stimulation of prostate cancer growth, which might contribute to drug resistance and disease progression. The glucocorticoid receptor (GR) and AR belong to class I nuclear steroid receptors and therefore share several transcriptional targets, including the antiapoptotic genes serum and glucocorticoid-regulated kinase 1 (SGK1) and Map

kinase phosphatase 1 (MKP1)/dual specificity phosphatase 1 (DUSP1). In men whose prostate cancers express high GR levels as a consequence of iatrogenic stimulation, GR activation in tumor PC cells prevails (Fig. 2) (Watson et al. 2015). GR bypass may be an alternative strategy adopted by the tumor as a consequence of the increased selection pressure conferred by second-generation antiandrogens.

In a pre-clinical and clinical study (Arora et al. 2013), many common gene that are targets of AR and GR were upregulated in LNCaP xenografts expressing wild-type AR that became resistant enzalutamide and ARN-509. In addition, knockdown of GR in cells derived from resistant tumors restored the sensitivity to enzalutamide when administrated in VCaP cells. Moreover, analysis of bone marrow biopsies from patients treated with enzalutamide confirmed the role for GR induction in the clinical resistance to enzalutamide (Arora et al. 2013). In a biological study performed on tissue samples of the previously mentioned neoadjuvant study of AA + Leuprolide versus Leuprolide (Taplin et al. 2014), AA + prednisone administration was associated with greater upregulation of GR than Leuprolide alone. These data notwithstanding, whether increased GR expression plays a role in abiraterone resistance remains to be determined and needs to be studied, however this study shows for the first time that acquired GR induction after ADT + AA may occur early.

In addition to GR, the progesterone receptor (PGR) also belong to the steroid hormone nuclear receptor family structurally related to AR, sharing substantial homology within the DNA binding domain. As with GR, PGR could transcriptionally regulate a subset of AR target genes in PCa, and thereby bypass AR. PGR expression has been demonstrated in prostate tumor cells in some studies.

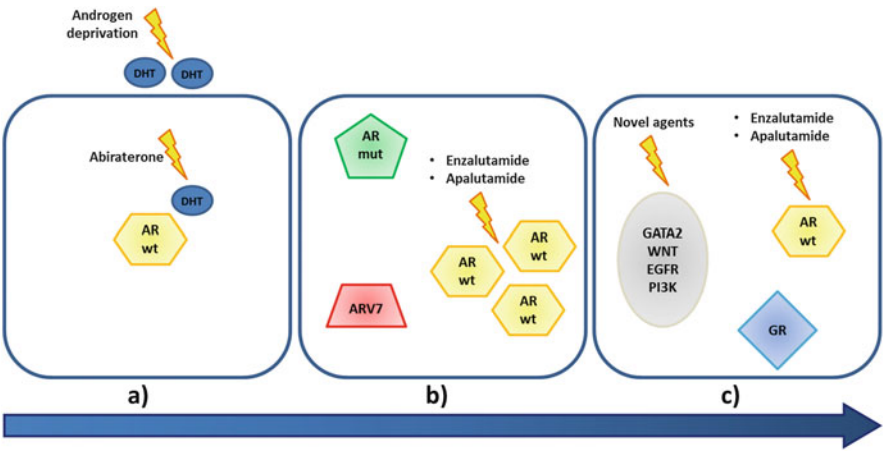


Fig. 2 Prostatic adenocarcinoma could escape from androgen deprivation and anti-androgenic therapies, through different mechanisms: (**a**) androgen biosynthesis, (**b**) AR amplification, AR point mutations (AR mut), AR truncated variants (es. ARV7), (**c**) expression of glucocorticoid receptor (GR) and other alternative oncogenic pathways (GATA-2, WNT/Bcatenin, EGFR, PI3K/Akt)

Interestingly, high PGR staining in primary PCa was associated with clinical recurrence in a recent, large retrospective analysis (Grindstad et al. 2015).

5 Other Oncogenic Signaling Pathways

Complementary signaling pathways may also drive prostate cancer growth in conjunction with the AR, therefore numerous alternative oncogenic pathways are activated and promote the transcriptional activities of AR after androgen deprivation and AR inhibition.

The loss of the tumor suppressor gene phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) and activation of PI3K signaling was found in almost 70% of metastatic PC (Taylor et al. 2010). PI3K is an intracellular kinase that is activated by G-protein coupled receptors or receptor tyrosine kinases. Activation of PI3K leads to phosphorylation of AKT and mTOR. This leads to downstream effects including cellular proliferation, survival and angiogenesis. Akt-mediated AR phosphorylation increases the interaction of AR with the transcriptional factor p300, inhibiting AR ubiquitination and degradation (Debes et al. 2002).

P300 is an essential co-activator in gene transcription control. This protein bridges DNA binding factors and transcription factors; catalyzes histone acetylation via its intrinsic histone acetyltransferase activity; and acetylates transcriptional factors to further facilitate their activity. P300 is involved in the regulation of expression and function of a large number of tumor-associated proteins, including AR. Therefore, it is a major promoter of PC and high expression of this protein is critical for the androgen-dependent and androgen-independent transactivation of AR (Karantanos et al. 2015).

The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) and HER2 have been implicated in activation of AR and promotion of PC growth (Karantanos et al. 2015). HER2 and HER3 in vitro stabilize AR and increase its binding to AREs, while knockdown of HER2 inhibits the AR transcriptional activity. A recent paper also showed that EGFR promotes survival of prostate cancer cells that metastasize to bone (Day et al. 2017).

The Wnt/B-catenin is an additional pathway involved in AR signaling that has a role in PCa progression to an androgen independent phenotype. AR has been shown to signal through Wnt/B-catenin in a ligand-independent manner as an adaptation to androgen deprivation therapy (Schweizer et al. 2008). Increased levels and nuclear co-localization in vivo of AR and Beta-catenin occur in CRPC, suggesting an aberrant B-catenin-dependent AR activation in the progression to CRPC (Wang et al. 2008). Moreover, simultaneous inhibition of both Wnt and AR pathways have shown antitumor activities in xenograft PCa models (Lee et al. 2013). However, B-catenin might also have an AR-independent oncogenic role in CRPC. High levels of nuclear B-catenin in association to low or no AR expression have been identified in a subgroup of bone metastatic PCa patients (Wan et al. 2012).

Forkhead Box A1 (FOXA1) is not a classic transcriptional coactivator but it rather serves to open sites of condensed chromatin to facilitate AR binding,

resulting in enhanced transcriptional activity (Wang et al. 2008). Amplification and overexpression of FOXA1 have been detected in primary tumors but is more common in metastatic CRPC, highlighting its role in persistent AR signaling in the castrate state (Grasso et al. 2012).

GATA2 is another AR regulating factor with multiple roles in the AR signaling axis: it is required for AR transcriptional activity, enhances AR:chromatin associations and promotes AR (and AR-V) expression. GATA2 is overexpressed in CRPC and its expression is associated with poor outcome (Chiang et al. 2014). GATA2 also has an intimate, bidirectional relationship with FOXA1, with important implications for development and progression of CRPC (Zhao et al. 2016).

6 AR Pathway Independent Mechanisms and Neuroendocrine Phenotype

While most research to date has focused on the continued importance of AR in CRPC, alternative signaling pathways supporting proliferation and survival of CRPC cells have been shown to be capable of completely bypassing AR.

DNA repair pathways have emerged recently as a clinically relevant way for therapeutic manipulation. The identification of a subgroup of metastatic CRPC with DNA repair defects provides a strong rationale for developing specific therapeutic strategies (Mateo et al. 2017).

Poly (ADP-ribose) polymerases (PARP) are a family of proteins involved in a number of cellular processes involving mainly DNA repair and programmed cell death. Activation of PARP1 and PARP2 triggers the damage response and recruits key effectors of repair. A recent study showed that patients with defects in certain DNA repair enzymes (including BRCA1/2, ATM, Fanconi's anemia genes, and CHEK2) had an 88% response rate to the PARP inhibitor olaparib (Mateo et al. 2015).

Noteworthy, BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations are associated with only a small fraction of prostate cancer cases, however recent genomic analysis has revealed that germline or somatic inactivating mutations in BRCA1 or BRCA2, or other genes involved in the homologous recombination pathway of DNA repair, collectively occur in as much as 20–25% of advanced CRPCs. This provides an opportunity for the use of PARP inhibitors as a therapeutic strategy for the treatment of metastatic CRPC with either germline or somatic defects in BRCA2, ATM, PALB2, and other DNA repair genes (the so called "BRCAness"). The finding that PARP enzymes also have a role in AR transcriptional regulation (Mateo et al. 2017) further reinforce the rationale for their use in this setting that is being studied in multiple clinical trials.

A subset of patients with advanced prostate cancer may eventually evolve into an androgen receptor (AR)–independent neuroendocrine phenotype. Although aggressive NE phenotype can arise de novo, it usually occurs as recurrent tumor in men who have received hormonal therapy for prostatic adenocarcinoma. The prevalence of neuroendocrine aggressive phenotype is estimated to be

approximately 1% of primary prostate cancers and up to 25–30% in metastatic castrate-resistant prostate cancers (Terry and Beltran 2014). Recent genomic profiling studies have demonstrated that prostate cancers with an aggressive neuroendocrine phenotype are enriched for loss of RB, loss or mutation of TP53, loss of AR and AR target gene expression, and overexpression of MYCN and AURKA (Beltran et al. 2016) Thus, neuroendocrine differentiation represents a viable option for prostate cancer to escape hormone therapy and progress to a condition of true hormone refractoriness. The typical clinical picture of a patient bearing treatment induced neuroendocrine prostate cancer (NEPC) is characterized by rapidly progressive disease involving visceral, bone (with typical lytic lesions) often in the setting of a low or modestly rising serum prostate-specific antigen level. Traditionally, NEPC are managed clinically with cisplatin-based chemotherapy regimens, but the prognosis is poor. A systematic review and pooled analysis of published cases revealed a median time to NEPC of 20 months and a median overall survival after NEPC diagnosis of 7 months (Wang et al. 2014).

7 Conclusions

The androgen receptor signaling axis remains a crucial driver of prostate cancer progression and treatment resistance. However, AR often become ligand independent, since it can be either restored through mutations on the ligand binding domain and/or formation of AR splicing variants or by passed through a cross talk with other oncogenic signaling pathways. AR-independent signaling pathways may represent additional mechanisms underlying castration resistant progression. It is clear that prostate cancer that has become resistant to conventional and newer therapeutic agents is a group of diverse diseases and new treatment paradigms need to be developed.

References

Antonarakis ES, Lu C, Wang H et al (2014) Ar-v7 and resistance to enzalutamide and abiraterone in prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 371(11):1028–1038

Antonarakis ES, Lu C, Luber B et al (2015) Androgen receptor splice variant 7 and efficacy of taxane chemotherapy in patients with metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. JAMA Oncol 1(5):582–591

Arora VK, Schenkein E, Murali R et al (2013) Glucocorticoid receptor confers resistance to antiandrogens by bypassing androgen receptor blockade. Cell 155(6):1309–1322

Azad AA, Volik SV, Wyatt AW et al (2015) Androgen receptor gene aberrations in circulating cell-free DNA: biomarkers of therapeutic resistance in castration-resistant prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res 21(10):2315–2324

Beltran H, Prandi D, Mosquera JM et al (2016) Divergent clonal evolution of castration-resistant neuroendocrine prostate cancer. Nat Med 22(3):298–305

Bertaglia V, Tucci M, Fiori C et al (2013) Effects of serum testosterone levels after 6 months of androgen deprivation therapy on the outcome of patients with prostate cancer. Clin Genitourin Cancer 11(3):325–330.e1

Carreira S, Romanel A, Goodall J et al (2014) Tumor clone dynamics in lethal prostate cancer. Sci Transl Med 6(254):254ra125

Chiang YT, Wang K, Fazli L et al (2014) Gata2 as a potential metastasis-driving gene in prostate cancer. Oncotarget 5(2):451–461

Cho E, Montgomery RB, Mostaghel EA (2014) Minireview: Slco and abc transporters: a role for steroid transport in prostate cancer progression. Endocrinology 155(11):4124–4132

Cornford P, Bellmunt J, Bolla M, Briers E, De Santis M, Gross T, Henry AM, Joniau S, Lam TB, Mason MD, van der Poel HG, van der Kwast TH, Rouvière O, Wiegel T, Mottet N (2017) Eau-estro-siog guidelines on prostate cancer. Part II: Treatment of relapsing, metastatic, and castration-resistant prostate cancer. Eur Urol 71(4):630–642. doi:10.1016/j.eururo.2016.08.002

Day KC, Hiles GL, Kozminsky M et al (2017) Her2 and egfr overexpression support metastatic progression of prostate cancer to bone. Cancer Res 77(1):74–85

Debes JD, Schmidt LJ, Huang H, Tindall DJ (2002) P300 mediates androgen-independent transactivation of the androgen receptor by interleukin 6. Cancer Res 62(20):5632–5636

Dehm SM, Schmidt LJ, Heemers HV, Vessella RL, Tindall DJ (2008) Splicing of a novel androgen receptor exon generates a constitutively active androgen receptor that mediates prostate cancer therapy resistance. Cancer Res 68(13):5469–5477

Duff J, Mcewan IJ (2005) Mutation of histidine 874 in the androgen receptor ligand-binding domain leads to promiscuous ligand activation and altered p160 coactivator interactions. Mol Endocrinol 19(12):2943–2954

Efstathiou E, Titus M, Wen S et al (2015) Molecular characterization of enzalutamide-treated bone metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. Eur Urol 67(1):53–60

Gottlieb B, Beitel LK, Wu JH, Trifiro M (2004) The androgen receptor gene mutations database (ardb): 2004 update. Hum Mutat 23(6):527–533

Grasso CS, Wu YM, Robinson DR et al (2012) The mutational landscape of lethal castration-resistant prostate cancer. Nature 487(7406):239–243

Grindstad T, Andersen S, Al-Saad S et al (2015) High progesterone receptor expression in prostate cancer is associated with clinical failure. PLoS One 10(2):e0116691

Hearn JW, Abuali G, Reichard CA et al (2016) Hsd3b1 and resistance to androgen-deprivation therapy in prostate cancer: a retrospective, multicohort study. Lancet Oncol 17(10):1435–1444

Hornberg E, Ylitalo EB, Crnalic S et al (2011) Expression of androgen receptor splice variants in prostate cancer bone metastases is associated with castration-resistance and short survival. PLoS One 6(4):e19059

Hu R, Dunn TA, Wei S et al (2009) Ligand-independent androgen receptor variants derived from splicing of cryptic exons signify hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Cancer Res 69(1):16–22

Hu R, Isaacs WB, Luo J (2011) A snapshot of the expression signature of androgen receptor splicing variants and their distinctive transcriptional activities. Prostate 71(15):1656–1667

Joseph JD, Lu N, Qian J et al (2013) A clinically relevant androgen receptor mutation confers resistance to second-generation antiandrogens enzalutamide and arn-509. Cancer Discov 3 (9):1020–1029

Karantanos T, Evans CP, Tombal B, Thompson TC, Montironi R, Isaacs WB (2015) Understanding the mechanisms of androgen deprivation resistance in prostate cancer at the molecular level. Eur Urol 67(3):470–479

Khera M, Crawford D, Morales A, Salonia A, Morgentaler A (2014) A new era of testosterone and prostate cancer: from physiology to clinical implications. Eur Urol 65(1):115–123

Koh E, Noda T, Kanaya J, Namiki M (2002) Differential expression of 17beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase isozyme genes in prostate cancer and noncancer tissues. Prostate 53 (2):154–159

Korpal M, Korn JM, Gao X et al (2013) An f876l mutation in androgen receptor confers genetic and phenotypic resistance to mdv3100 (enzalutamide). Cancer Discov 3(9):1030–1043

Labrie F (2011) Blockade of testicular and adrenal androgens in prostate cancer treatment. Nat Rev Urol 8(2):73–85

Lee E, Madar A, David G, Garabedian MJ, Dasgupta R, Logan SK (2013) Inhibition of androgen receptor and beta-catenin activity in prostate cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110 (39):15710–15715

Li Z, Bishop AC, Alyamani M et al (2015) Conversion of abiraterone to d4a drives anti-tumour activity in prostate cancer. Nature 523(7560):347–351

Liu H, An X, Li S, Wang Y, Li J, Liu H (2015) Interaction mechanism exploration of r-bicalutamide/s-1 with wt/w741l ar using molecular dynamics simulations. Mol BioSyst 11 (12):3347–3354

Loblaw DA, Virgo KS, Nam R et al (2007) Initial hormonal management of androgen-sensitive metastatic, recurrent, or progressive prostate cancer: 2006 update of an american society of clinical oncology practice guideline. J Clin Oncol 25(12):1596–1605

Marcelli M, Ittmann M, Mariani S et al (2000) Androgen receptor mutations in prostate cancer. Cancer Res 60(4):944–949

Mateo J, Carreira S, Sandhu S et al (2015) DNA-repair defects and olaparib in metastatic prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 373(18):1697–1708

Mateo J, Boysen G, Barbieri CE et al (2017) DNA repair in prostate cancer: biology and clinical implications. Eur Urol 71(3):417–425

Montgomery RB, Mostaghel EA, Vessella R et al (2008) Maintenance of intratumoral androgens in metastatic prostate cancer: a mechanism for castration-resistant tumor growth. Cancer Res 68(11):4447–4454

Mostaghel EA (2014) Abiraterone in the treatment of metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. Cancer Manag Res 6:39–51

Nishiyama T, Hashimoto Y, Takahashi K (2004) The influence of androgen deprivation therapy on dihydrotestosterone levels in the prostatic tissue of patients with prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res 10(21):7121–7126

Penning TM (2015) Mechanisms of drug resistance that target the androgen axis in castration resistant prostate cancer (crpc). J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 153:105–113

Robinson D, Van Allen EM, Wu YM et al (2015) Integrative clinical genomics of advanced prostate cancer. Cell 161(5):1215–1228

Ryan CJ, Molina A, Li J et al (2013) Serum androgens as prognostic biomarkers in castration-resistant prostate cancer: results from an analysis of a randomized phase iii trial. J Clin Oncol 31(22):2791–2798

Schalken J, Fitzpatrick JM (2016) Enzalutamide: targeting the androgen signalling pathway in metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer. BJU Int 117(2):215–225

Scher HI, Lu D, Schreiber NA et al (2016) Association of ar-v7 on circulating tumor cells as a treatment-specific biomarker with outcomes and survival in castration-resistant prostate cancer. JAMA Oncol 2(11):1441–1449

Schweizer L, Rizzo CA, Spires TE et al (2008) The androgen receptor can signal through wnt/beta-catenin in prostate cancer cells as an adaptation mechanism to castration levels of androgens. BMC Cell Biol 9:4

Steinestel J, Luedeke M, Arndt A, Schnoeller TJ, Lennerz JK, Wurm C, Maier C, Cronauer MV, Steinestel K, Schrader AJ, Steinestel J, Luedeke M, Arndt A, Schnoeller TJ, Lennerz JK, Wurm C, Maier C, Cronauer MV, Steinestel K, Schrader AJ (2015) Detecting predictive androgen receptor modifications in circulating prostate cancer cells. Oncotarget. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.3925

Steketee K, Timmerman L, Ziel-Van Der Made AC, Doesburg P, Brinkmann AO, Trapman J (2002) Broadened ligand responsiveness of androgen receptor mutants obtained by random amino acid substitution of h874 and mutation hot spot t877 in prostate cancer. Int J Cancer 100 (3):309–317

Sun S, Sprenger CC, Vessella RL et al (2010) Castration resistance in human prostate cancer is conferred by a frequently occurring androgen receptor splice variant. J Clin Invest 120 (8):2715–2730

Taplin ME, Bubley GJ, Ko YJ et al (1999) Selection for androgen receptor mutations in prostate cancers treated with androgen antagonist. Cancer Res 59(11):2511–2515
Taplin ME, Montgomery B, Logothetis CJ et al (2014) Intense androgen-deprivation therapy with abiraterone acetate plus leuprolide acetate in patients with localized high-risk prostate cancer: results of a randomized phase ii neoadjuvant study. J Clin Oncol 32(33):3705–3715
Taylor BS, Schultz N, Hieronymus H et al (2010) Integrative genomic profiling of human prostate cancer. Cancer Cell 18(1):11–22
Terry S, Beltran H (2014) The many faces of neuroendocrine differentiation in prostate cancer progression. Front Oncol 4:60
Urushibara M, Ishioka J, Hyochi N et al (2007) Effects of steroidal and non-steroidal antiandrogens on wild-type and mutant androgen receptors. Prostate 67(8):799–807
Veldscholte J, Berrevoets CA, Brinkmann AO, Grootegoed JA, Mulder E (1992) Anti-androgens and the mutated androgen receptor of lncap cells: differential effects on binding affinity, heat-shock protein interaction, and transcription activation. Biochemistry 31(8):2393–2399
Venkitaraman R, Thomas K, Huddart RA, Horwich A, Dearnaley DP, Parker CC (2008) Efficacy of low-dose dexamethasone in castration-refractory prostate cancer. BJU Int 101(4):440–443
Wan X, Liu J, Lu JF et al (2012) Activation of beta-catenin signaling in androgen receptor-negative prostate cancer cells. Clin Cancer Res 18(3):726–736
Wang G, Wang J, Sadar MD (2008) Crosstalk between the androgen receptor and beta-catenin in castrate-resistant prostate cancer. Cancer Res 68(23):9918–9927
Wang HT, Yao YH, Li BG, Tang Y, Chang JW, Zhang J (2014) Neuroendocrine prostate cancer (nepc) progressing from conventional prostatic adenocarcinoma: factors associated with time to development of nepc and survival from nepc diagnosis-a systematic review and pooled analysis. J Clin Oncol 32(30):3383–3390
Watson PA, Chen YF, Balbas MD et al (2010) Constitutively active androgen receptor splice variants expressed in castration-resistant prostate cancer require full-length androgen receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(39):16759–16765
Watson PA, Arora VK, Sawyers CL (2015) Emerging mechanisms of resistance to androgen receptor inhibitors in prostate cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 15(12):701–711
Yang M, Xie W, Mostaghel E et al (2011) Slco2b1 and slco1b3 may determine time to progression for patients receiving androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 29 (18):2565–2573
Zhao JC, Fong KW, Jin HJ, Yang YA, Kim J, Yu J (2016) Foxa1 acts upstream of gata2 and ar in hormonal regulation of gene expression. Oncogene 35(33):4335–4344

Mechanism of Resistance in Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumors

E. Tamborini

Contents

1 Introduction 196
2 History of GIST 196
3 Mechanisms of Acquired Resistance 198
3.1 Secondary Point Mutations 198
3.2 Gene Amplification 199
3.3 Autophagy and Apoptosis 199
3.4 Resistance Due to Other Mechanisms 200
References 201

Abstract

Imatinib has revolutionized the treatment of GIST since this drug is able to inhibit tumoral growth by blocking the activity of receptor tyrosine kinases, KIT or PDGFRA, that in these tumors are constitutively activated because of the presence of mutations that alters their catalytic activity. However, despite this enormous improvement in the RFS and OS and in the quality of life of GIST patients, imatinib is not able to eradicate the disease: recurrences occur and acquired resistance is a common event which develops during targeted treatments. Several mechanisms have been demonstrated to be responsible for tumoral growth reactivation which is due to the reactivation of the altered KIT/PDGFRA receptors, no more blocked by the drug. Secondary point mutations are generally observed in the regrowing tumors, and it has been demonstrated that they alter the architectural structure of the site in which the interaction between the drug and the receptor happens. Other mechanisms causing drug resistance have been investigated, indicating that many aspects need to be still explicated and fully understood in order to define a strategy able to fight definitively GIST growth.

E. Tamborini (✉)
Laboratory of Molecular Pathology, Department of Pathology, Fondazione IRCCS Istituto Nazionale dei Tumori, Milan, Italy
e-mail: elena.tamborini@istitutotumori.mi.it

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, https://doi.org/10.1007/164_2017_74

Keywords
Acquired resistance · Gastrointestinal stromal tumor · KIT · PDGFRA · TK inhibitors

1 Introduction

Gastrointestinal stromal tumors represent an exquisite paradigm of target therapy related to genotype in solid tumors: oncogenic driver mutations affecting the receptor tyrosine kinase KIT (or alternatively PDGFRA) are blocked by imatinib, thus leading to the stop of tumor growth.

Imatinib changed totally GIST history, making this tumor histotype, in the past a nonresponding tumor for which no efficacious chemotherapeutic option existed, a tumor in which target therapy alone is able to prolonged survival for many years.

GISTs parallel the same revolution observed in CML with the same drug. These successes led to an accelerated approval process by the FDA, and imatinib was approved for the treatment of CML in 2001 and, 1 year later, of GIST.

In 2012 imatinib was approved by the FDA and EMEA as adjuvant therapy following surgical removal of KIT-positive tumors, since data from the multicenter international, phase III trial demonstrated that 36 months of imatinib prolonged recurrence-free survival (RFS) compared to 12 months, improving also the overall survival (OS). In addition, 36 months of imatinib treatment resulted in a 55% reduction in the risk of death compared to 12 months of treatment ($P = 0.0187$). However, the risk of recurrence remained almost unchanged ($P < 0.0001$), indicating that imatinib secondary resistance is still a unresolved problem (Joensuu et al. 2012).

Despite this enormous success, represented by more than 80% of patients showing clinical benefit from imatinib monotherapy, more than half will develop progressive disease in 2 years (Kee and Zalcberg 2012).

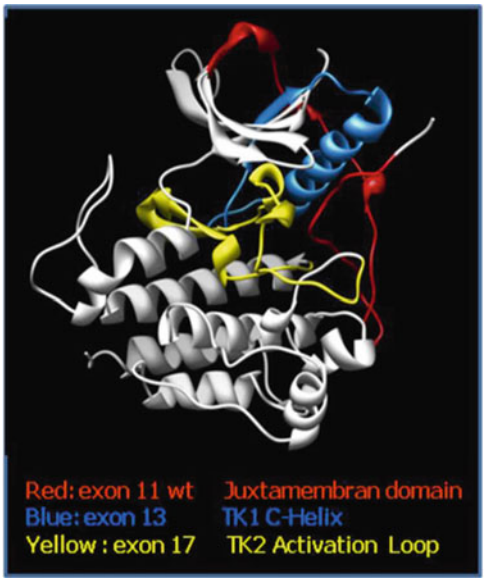
2 History of GIST

Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST) are the most common mesenchymal malignancy of the gastrointestinal tract and are characterized by a proliferation of spindle-shaped (70% of the cases), rarely epithelioid (20%), cells, and 10% have mixed histology. They commonly express the KIT protein (CD117) as well as DOG1 (Miettinen et al. 2009), and approximately 60–70% of GISTs are $CD34^+$, while 30–40% are positive for SMA. Only rare GISTs are positive for desmin and about 5% of GISTs are $S\text{-}100^+$ (Miettinen and Lasota 2006). GIST carrying mutation in PDGFRA resulted immunohistochemically positive for this protein, often with a dot-like staining (Tamborini et al. 2012).

GISTs are characterized by the presence of constitutively activated receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) KIT (CD117) and PDGFRA in the 80–85% and 10–5% of the cases, respectively (Hirota et al. 1998; Heinrich et al. 2003). The mechanism responsible for the constitutive activation is the presence of gain-of-function mutations in the corresponding genes. In the heterogeneous group of wild-type GISTs with no mutations in both KIT and PDGFRA genes, cases carrying loss of function alterations in SDH genes represent the bigger fraction (Janeway et al. 2011).

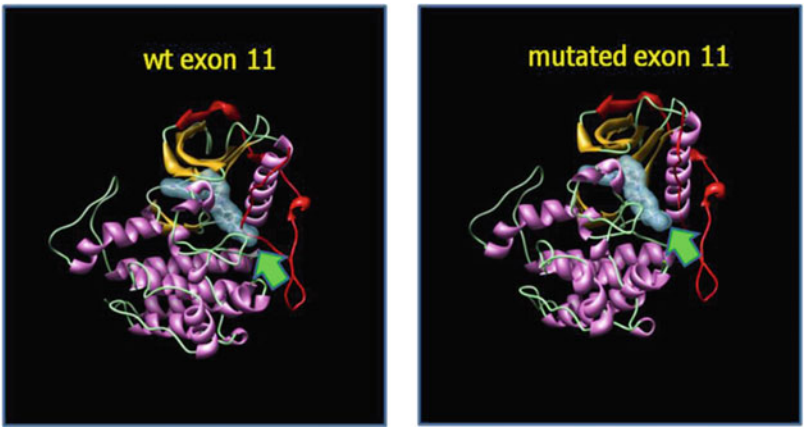
Evidence derived from the clinical experience points out that generally all *c-Kit* exon 11 mutation types, with the exception of L576P substitution, demonstrated to be refractory to imatinib inhibition (Conca et al. 2009) and correlate with a good response rate to imatinib at 400 mg/day (Heinrich et al. 2008). Other *c-Kit* mutations instead need a higher dose to achieve a clinical response. This is observed with KIT exon 13 or 17 or 9 alterations.

This behavior can be ascribed to the conformation of the ATP pocket of the two receptors (where imatinib is positioned), and in which way, all the common *c-Kit* or *PDGFRA* mutations can alter the ATP pocket shape. The explanation lies on the tridimensional conformation of these two receptors, derived from both the kinase domain crystallography of KIT (ref) and recently of PDGFRA (Liang et al. 2016) and molecular modeling techniques (Pierotti et al. 2011). This double approach shows how exons, site of mutation in GISTs, are shaped into the space. Exons 13 and 17 (corresponding to TK1 and TK2, respectively) and their respective exons in PDGFRA delimit a cave in which ATP is located. In particular, the activation loop (exon 17), whose position controls the opening of the cave itself, plays a fundamental role for correct RTK behavior, governing the receptor in the active or inactive form.



A major role is played by exon 11, conformed as a hairpin (juxtamembrane domain) that is able to modulate the wideness of the opening of the cave (see below).

Mutations affecting all these domains, thus destroying the peculiar architecture of this "perfect world," lead to a deregulation of the physiological KIT/PDGFRA functions. The final result is a constitutive activation of these receptors, irrespectively to the physiological activation caused by their specific ligand binding. In particular exon 11 mutations of KIT, by deforming the position of the hairpin, permit a bigger opening of the cave, and as consequence, imatinib itself has a major possibility of entering, and this provides the first tridimensional explanation of imatinib's successful inhibition in tumors carrying KIT exon 11 mutations.



Courtesy of S. Pricl, University of Trieste

3 Mechanisms of Acquired Resistance

3.1 Secondary Point Mutations

These mechanisms are complex, often heterogeneous, and not fully understood.

It is undoubtedly clear that about 70–85% of the patients carrying exon 11 mutations showing acquired resistance to imatinib develop secondary mutations affecting KIT receptor (Antonescu et al. 2005). Intriguingly, a lower percentage of secondary mutations is detected in patients showing exon 9 primary mutations (Heinrich et al. 2008; Antonescu et al. 2005). The secondary acquired point mutations are always on the same allele, thus corroborating the idea that the destruction of a suitable ATP pocket in which imatinib can stay is an actual explanation. They generally affect the A loop (secondary mutations affecting

exon 17 of KIT or exon 18 of PDGFRA), stabilizing the receptor in the active conformation: i.e., always unlocked and open to accept ATP. Alternatively, they affect the ATP pocket itself (secondary mutations in exon 14 or 13) preventing the perfect imatinib allocation in the kinase domain itself. It has been reported that more than one secondary point mutation can arise during the treatment, thus revealing a polyclonal nature of this phenomenon.

No published studies have been done with new and very sensitive techniques (such as NGS or digital PCR), demonstrating the presence of these secondary mutations before treatment and definitively demonstrating the heterogeneous genotype of GISTs. However, the clonal evolution under selective drug selection of cells carrying secondary and insensitive imatinib mutations (resistant sub-clones) seems the most reliable explanation of this phenomenon.

Even though this mechanism of drug resistance is perfectly understandable, it is observed only in a fraction of patient undergoing imatinib resistance.

In an even more restricted set of patients, secondary mutations affecting the downstream pathway can be observed, affecting BRAF (even if this alteration is principally present in wild-type GISTs) (Agaram et al. 2008) and in KRAS genes (Miranda et al. 2012). Recently, Lasota and collaborators demonstrated also the presence of PIK3CA mutations, suggesting a proliferative advantage during disease progression, as well as a possible role in the reactivation of PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway (Lasota et al. 2016).

3.2 Gene Amplification

An alternative explanation can be found in KIT gene amplification, observed both in treated and nontreated GIST tumors (Miselli et al. 2007). This mechanism causes a reactivation of the oncogene with or without secondary mutations. However, the analysis of phosphorylation levels of KIT does not correlate with amplification status of the gene, nor with clinical response, indicating a heterogeneity linked to tumor diversity (Wardelmann et al. 2006).

3.3 Autophagy and Apoptosis

Other more complex mechanisms involving several cellular pathways have been demonstrated to play important roles during imatinib treatment, such as autophagy and apoptosis. Autophagy describes a dynamic and specifically regulated mechanism by which cells principally protect themselves from a variety of stresses, including starvation, hypoxia, and oxidative stress. Alternative survival pathways, normally present in eukaryotic cells, are then activated, leading to sequestration of the cytoplasmic material into lysosomes which are degraded. This degradation can promote cell survival by recycling the degraded nucleotides, amino acids, and fatty acids that maintain energy production or can promote cell death as a result of self-cannibalization. Fenotipically, autophagy is recognized by the presence of

vacuolated cells that are typically present in GIST tumors derived from surgical resection after imatinib treatment (El-Khattouti et al. 2013; Miselli et al. 2008). Genotipically, autophagy is regulated by a tumor-suppressor mechanism in which the major players are the activating beclin1/PI3KIII complex, the suppressing beclin1/bcl2 complex, and the presence of LC3-II strictly bound to autophagosomes. These autophagic markers have been demonstrated in imatinib-treated tumors (Miselli et al. 2008) and in GIST cell lines (Gupta et al. 2010). Thus, imatinib instead to induce cell death can also induce cell survival; and in this finding, an explanation for tumor cell reactivation in case of imatinib suspension can be found. Moreover, these opposite behaviors give also a justification for the incomplete tumoral remission often observed in GIST patients (Miselli et al. 2008; Gupta et al. 2010; Ravegnini et al. 2017). The "tumor dormancy" that fits well with the metabolic characteristics of autophagy, on the other hand, fits also with the activation of ANAPC-FZR1/CDH1-SKP2-CDKN1-p27^{Kip1} signaling axis mainly important for reinforcing a prolonged G1 phase of the cell division cycle and was demonstrated to be present in imatinib-induced quiescent GIST cells derived from PDX models (Boichuk et al. 2013).

By contrast, apoptosis demonstrated in GIST cell lines was not observed in GIST surgical specimens as sustained by the negative results of the biochemical and IHC experiments using caspase 3, caspase 7, and lamin A/C antibodies (Miselli et al. 2008). This is in keeping with the observation that in GIST, pro-apoptotic proteins, as BAX, are downregulated, while expression of anti-apoptotic factors, for example, the BCL2 family members, is generally observed. These data, all together, indicate that autophagy and apoptosis and their balance during imatinib treatment in GIST cells are governed by multi-factors, including the differential expression of miRNA and that we are only at the beginning of a road which has to be explored in detail.

3.4 Resistance Due to Other Mechanisms

By analyzing tumors derived from patients undergoing progression during imatinib treatment, or sunitinib treatment, only for a few percentage of them a molecular explanation has been determined. For this reason, alternative mechanisms of escape, not yet understood, should be present. It has also to be pointed out that surgical removal of the progressing disease in metastatic patients is not a common medical intervention; thus, the unavailability of the right material to investigate resistance represents a big limitation.

It has been proposed that the activation of other RTKs, such as AXL expression in gefitinib-treated lung adenocarcinomas, and the expression of an alternative receptor are generally accompanied by KIT loss of expression. The result is always a reactivation of the pathways leading to cell proliferation (Mahadevan et al. 2007).

Also, an upregulation of SRC and integrins possibly mediated by FAK has been observed. These interesting data point the attention on a possible role of microenvironment in which cells remain embedded as result of the pathological remission

of tumor cells due to imatinib. A deep analysis of this myxoid stroma can reveal the presence of growth factors able to keep the survival cells into a quiescent status which immediately disappears with imatinib suspension. Recently, in melanomas BRAF mutated and progressing to vemurafenib, it has been proposed that high levels of integrin beta 1 and FAK, which, in turn, reactivated ERK and MAPK, are responsible for drug resistance (Hirata et al. 2015). Intriguingly the reactivation of the ERK/MAPK pathway was observed in areas of high stromal density. It could happen also in GISTs. It is not speculation to imagine that through the block of tumoral cells inside (by imatinib or other inhibitors) and outside by inhibiting the stromal cells, an efficacious therapy can be achieved, and this perhaps represents a real challenge to definitively eradicate GIST tumor cells.

References

Agaram NP, Wong GC, Guo T et al (2008) Novel V600E Braf mutations in imatinib-naïve and imatinib-resistant gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 47:853–859

Antonescu CR, Besmer P, Guo T et al (2005) Acquired resistance to imatinib in gastrointestinal stromal tumor occurs through secondary gene mutation. Clin Cancer Res 11(11):4182–4190

Boichuk S, Parry JA, Makielski KR et al (2013) The DREAM complex mediates GIST cell quiescence and is a novel therapeutic target to enhance imatinib-induced apoptosis. Cancer Res 73(16):5120–5129

Conca E, Negri T, Gronchi A et al (2009) Activate and resist: L576P-KIT in GIST. Mol Cancer Ther 8(9):2491–2495

El-Khattouti A, Selimovic D, Haikel Y et al (2013) Crosstalk between apoptosis and autophagy: molecular mechanisms and therapeutic strategies in cancer. J Cell Death 6:37–55

Gupta A, Roy S, Lazar AJ et al (2010) Autophagy inhibition and antimalarials promote cell death in gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST). Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(32):14333–14338

Heinrich MC, Corless CL, Duensing A et al (2003) Pdgfra activating mutations in gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Science 299:708–710

Heinrich MC, Owzar K, Corless CL et al (2008) Correlation of kinase genotype and clinical outcome in the North American Intergroup phase III trial of imatinib mesylate for treatment of advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumor: CALGB 150105 study by Cancer and Leukemia Group B and Southwest Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol 26:5360–5367

Hirata E, Girotti MR, Viros A et al (2015) Intravital imaging reveals how BRAF inhibition generates drug-tolerant microenvironments with high integrin β1/FAK signaling. Cancer Cell 27(4):574–588

Hirota S, Isozaki K, Moriyama Y et al (1998) Gain-of-function mutations of C-kit in human gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Science 279:577–580

Janeway KA, Kim SY, Lodish M et al (2011) Defects in succinate dehydrogenase in gastrointestinal stromal tumors lacking KIT and PDGFRA mutations. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108 (1):314–318

Joensuu H, Eriksson M, Sundby Hall K et al (2012) One vs three years of adjuvant imatinib for operable gastrointestinal stromal tumor: a randomized trial. JAMA 307:1265–1272

Kee D, Zalcberg JR (2012) Current and emerging strategies for the management of imatinib-refractory advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Ther Adv Med Oncol 4(5):255–270

Lasota J, Felisiak-Golabek A, Wasag B et al (2016) Frequency and clinicopathologic profile of PIK3CA mutant GISTs: molecular genetic study of 529 cases. Mod Pathol 29:275–282

Liang L, Yan XE, Yin Y et al (2016) Structural and biochemical studies of the PDGFRA kinase domain. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 477(4):667–672

Mahadevan D, Cooke L, Riley C et al (2007) A novel tyrosine kinase switch is a mechanism of imatinib resistance in gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Oncogene 26(27):3909–3919
Miettinen M, Lasota J (2006) Gastrointestinal stromal tumors: review on morphology, molecular pathology, prognosis, and differential diagnosis. Arch Pathol Lab Med 130(10):1466–1478
Miettinen M, Wang ZF, Lasota J (2009) DOG1 antibody in the differential diagnosis of gastrointestinal stromal tumors: a study of 1840 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 33(9):1401–1408
Miranda C, Nucifora M, Molinari F et al (2012) KRAS and BRAF mutations predict primary resistance to imatinib in gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Clin Cancer Res 18(6):1769–1776
Miselli FC, Casieri P, Negri T et al (2007) c-Kit/PDGFRA gene status alterations possibly related to primary imatinib resistance in gastrointestinal stromal tumors. Clin Cancer Res 13 (8):2369–2377
Miselli F, Negri T, Gronchi A et al (2008) Is autophagy rather than apoptosis the regression driver in imatinib-treated gastrointestinal stromal tumors? Transl Oncol 1(4):177–186
Pierotti MA, Tamborini E, Negri T et al (2011) Targeted therapy in GIST: in silico modeling for prediction of resistance. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 8(3):161–170
Ravegnini G, Sammarini G, Nannini M et al (2017) Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST): facing cell death between autophagy and apoptosis. Autophagy 13(3):452–463
Tamborini E, Rossi S, Tarantino E et al (2012) Platelet-derived growth factor receptor alpha expression improves the diagnostic assessment of gastrointestinal stromal tumours. Histopathology 61(6):1240–1245
Wardelmann E, Merkelbach-Bruse S, Pauls K et al (2006) Polyclonal evolution of multiple secondary KIT mutations in gastrointestinal stromal tumors under treatment with imatinib mesylate. Clin Cancer Res 12(6):1743–1749

Mechanisms of Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia

Francesca Arruga and Silvia Deaglio

Contents

1 Introduction 204
2 Treatment Options for CLL Patients 206
3 Resistance to Chemotherapy and Chemoimmunotherapy: The Role of p53, NOTCH1, and Other Genetic Lesions 209
4 From Mechanisms of Resistance to Novel Therapeutic Approaches 214
5 Microenvironment and Therapy Resistance 216
6 Concluding Remarks and Future Directions 220
References 221

Abstract

Even if treatment options for Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia (CLL) patients have changed dramatically in the past few years, with the approval of targeted therapeutic agents, the disease remains incurable. Beside intrinsic genetic features characterizing the leukemic cell, signals coming from the microenvironment have a key role in promoting cell survival and in protecting CLL cells from the action of drugs. Consequently, the identification of previously unrecognized genetic lesions is important in risk-stratification of CLL patients and is progressively becoming a critical tool for choosing the best therapeutic strategy. Significant efforts have also been dedicated to define microenvironment-dependent mechanisms that sustain leukemic cells favoring survival, proliferation, and accumulation of additional genetic lesions. Furthermore, understanding

F. Arruga (✉)
Human Genetics Foundation, via Nizza 52, Turin 10126, Italy
e-mail: francesca.arruga@hugef-torino.org

S. Deaglio
Human Genetics Foundation, via Nizza 52, Turin 10126, Italy
Department of Medical Sciences, University of Turin, Turin, Italy
e-mail: silvia.deaglio@unito.it

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_12

the molecular and biological mechanisms, potentially driving disease progression and chemoresistance, is the first step to design therapies that could be effective in high-risk patients. Significant progress has been made in the identification of the different mechanisms through which patients relapse after "new" and "old" therapies. These studies have led to the development of targeted strategies to overcome, or even prevent, resistance through the design of novel agents or their combination.

In this chapter we will give an overview of the main therapeutic options for CLL patients and review the mechanisms of resistance responsible for treatment failure. Potential strategies to overcome or prevent resistance will be also discussed.

Keywords
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia • Resistance • Target therapy

1 Introduction

Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) is the most common adult leukemia in the Western world, with an incidence rate of approximately 3.9/100,000/year, representing 30–40% of all adult leukemias (Hallek 2015). It is characterized by the progressive accumulation of mature $CD5^+/CD23^+$ B lymphocytes in the peripheral blood (PB), bone marrow (BM), and lymphoid tissues, with lymphocyte counts in the PB usually $\geq$5,000/mm^3 (Dighiero and Hamblin 2008). The clinical course is highly heterogeneous: some patients exhibit an indolent non-progressive disease, showing a life expectancy more or less identical to individuals of the same age. Other patients, on the contrary, experience an aggressive disease, require early treatment, and become quickly resistant to treatment. These patients are characterized by a significantly worse prognosis. This subset of patients is at risk to develop an aggressive high-grade non-Hodgkin lymphoma, usually a diffuse large B-cell lymphoma termed Richter syndrome (RS), which is the final stage of CLL evolution (Hallek 2015; Rossi and Gaidano 2016; Tsimberidou and Keating 2005).

Given the wide heterogeneity in the clinical presentation, staging and prognostic assessment at the time of diagnosis are critical to anticipate the disease course and to allow proper monitoring. CLL staging system is based on the RAI (stage 0 to IV) and Binet (stage A-B-C) classifications (Binet et al. 1981; Rai et al. 1975) and is important to stratify patients, predict prognosis, and interpret treatment results. Both systems rely on and combine together clinical parameters such as lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, anemia, and thrombocytopenia. However, they do not take into account known biologic and molecular features of CLL cells that could also predict survival and response to treatment (Cramer and Hallek 2011; Kay et al. 2007). Beside clinical staging, in fact, several prognostic markers are used in clinical practice to improve patient stratification and to help assessing the need for therapy and selecting the best treatment option (Hallek et al. 2008; Pflug et al. 2014). These include cytogenetic profile, mutational status of immunoglobulin

heavy chain variable gene (*IGHV*), and expression of cell surface markers. In particular, unmutated *IGHV*, ZAP-70, CD49d, and CD38 overexpression, as well as specific chromosomal aberrations, such as trisomy 12, 11q, and 17p deletion or disruption of *TP53* gene, are considered unfavorable genomic and molecular prognostic markers (International CLL-IPI Working Group 2016; Damle et al. 1999; Dohner et al. 2000; Ghia et al. 2003; Rassenti et al. 2004). The advent of next generation sequencing (NGS) further implemented our knowledge of CLL mutational landscape by identifying previously unrecognized, recurrently mutated genes. Among others, mutations of *NOTCH1*, myeloid differentiation primary response 88 (*MYD88*), splicing factor 3b subunit 1 (*SF3B1*), and ataxia telangiectasia mutated (*ATM*) have offered new prognostic information and impacted CLL management, although the characterization of their functional contribution to CLL pathogenesis is still only partially understood and currently under investigation (Baliakas et al. 2015; Campregher and Hamerschlak 2014; Landau et al. 2015; Puente et al. 2011; Quesada et al. 2011).

Two essential features characterize CLL pathogenesis: first, an intrinsic genetic profile given by the different cytogenetic aberrations and genetic lesions impacting on cell homeostasis and genomic stability, and therefore likely promoting progressive accumulation of mutations (Landau et al. 2015). The most important in this respect are p53 lesions (mutations or 17p deletions) that disrupt the master regulator of DNA repair, cell proliferation, and apoptosis (Mohr et al. 2011). Among genetic defects, *SF3B1* mutations might be also linked to genomic stability and epigenetic modification, since evidence of altered pre-mRNA splicing has been detected in CLL cases with this genetic defect (Wan and Wu 2013).

Second, CLL cells display a characteristic dependence on extracellular stimuli coming from the microenvironment for survival and proliferation (Choi et al. 2016). Signals include those received through (auto)antigens via B-cell receptors (BCR), CD40/CD40L receptor-ligand pair, insulin-like growth factor, NOTCH1, chemokine- and toll-like receptors (Arruga et al. 2014; Burger 2010; Burger and Chiorazzi 2013; Lee et al. 2005; Muzio et al. 2009; Schattner 2000). In particular, NOTCH1 signaling is halfway between the genetic and the microenvironment-dependent pathogenic mechanisms. In fact, *NOTCH1* is one of the most recurrently mutated genes in CLL at diagnosis and is associated with aggressive/progressive chemorefractory disease (Villamor et al. 2013). Mutations impact on protein stability and prolong signaling, but the binding to the ligand, expressed by neighboring stromal cells, is indispensable to activate NOTCH1 pathway, even in the presence of mutations (Arruga et al. 2014). Activated NOTCH1 in turn contributes to remodeling of gene expression in leukemic cells through both a direct transcription-mediated regulation or by unbalancing nuclear protein interactions and fine-tuning of epigenetic mechanisms (Arruga et al. 2016). There is strong evidence that the microenvironment of the BM and secondary lymphoid organs exerts a protective effect on CLL cells, supported, for example, by the observation that CLL cells accumulate in vivo but invariably undergo spontaneous apoptosis in vitro, despite supporting culture conditions (Collins et al. 1989). Collectively, the pro-survival signals mentioned above attenuate the apoptotic network of CLL cells skewing towards survival. In line with this, apoptosis failure is considered a major

component in the dysregulation of B-cell homeostasis in all CLL subsets (Keating 1999). Of note, many pathways integrating extracellular survival stimuli ultimately converge on NF-κB activation that mediates CLL survival by driving the expression of anti-apoptotic genes, such as Bcl-XL and MCL1, which mediate resistance against p53-induced apoptosis (Leu et al. 2004; Pepper et al. 2009; Schott et al. 1995).

2 Treatment Options for CLL Patients

Treatment of CLL ranges from an observational approach with therapy indicated only in the presence of symptoms (the "watch and wait" approach) to a variety of therapeutic options, including alkylating agents, purine analogs, combination chemotherapy, monoclonal antibodies, tyrosine-kinase inhibitors, and transplant options (Gribben and O'Brien 2011). However, except for allogeneic BM transplants, which are infrequently considered an option for elderly patients, current treatments are not proven to be curative, making CLL a still incurable disease (Cassaday et al. 2015; Dreger et al. 2013). Since the probability of progression may vary from patient to patient, even in the presence of adverse prognostic markers at diagnosis, frequent and careful observation is required to monitor clinical course. Treatment of infectious, hemorrhagic, or immunologic complications is also part of the therapeutic management of CLL (Cooperative Group for the Study of Immunoglobulin in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia 1988; Kaufman et al. 2009; Mauro et al. 2000). Therapeutic decisions are essentially made on the basis of disease stage and the presence of clinical, cellular, and genetic markers. In general, treatment is delayed for as long as possible, until the patient becomes symptomatic or there are signs of bone marrow failure (Gribben and O'Brien 2011). The current treatment scenario for CLL includes different options, with significant variations between North America and Europe, due to a delay in the availability of targeted therapies in Europe, outside of clinical trials.

1. *Chemoimmunotherapy*. The current recommended frontline treatment of CLL includes a combination of cytotoxic chemotherapy together with a monoclonal antibody directed against CD20, an antigen selectively expressed on B-lymphocytes. Pivotal studies have shown better results coming from the combination of chemotherapy and immunotherapy compared to the same agents used alone. The combinations vary depending on the subset of patients: for younger and fit patients the most common choice is fludarabine, cyclophosphamide (FC), and rituximab (FCR), where the addition of the anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody resulted in a significant prolongation of the overall survival, compared to FC alone (Hallek et al. 2010; Robak et al. 2010). In elderly patients with major comorbidities, a combination of obinutuzumab (GA101, the novel humanized and glycoengineered anti-CD20) together with chlorambucil (G-Clb) was demonstrated to be effective and well tolerated (Goede et al. 2014, 2015). For the intermediate subset of elderly patients, with mild comorbidities, both the combination between bendamustine plus rituximab (BR) or dose reduced FCR

are therapeutic options considered feasible and effective (Eichhorst et al. 2016; Fischer et al. 2012; Foon et al. 2009, 2012). The presence of comorbidities raises the possibility of toxicities associated with FCR treatment, that are mainly represented by the high risk of infections due to severe myelosuppression, making FCR an unsuitable regimen for CLL patients >65 years. For its better tolerability, the combination of BR has been widely adopted as an alternative regimen in elderly patients (Eichhorst et al. 2016). However, FCR and BR are not indicated for patients with serious comorbidities. The majority of patients are diagnosed with CLL at an advanced age and, by the time the patients need therapy, they could have acquired additional medical comorbidities limiting their quality of life and performance status (Baumann et al. 2014). The goal for these patients is to choose a therapy that controls disease-related manifestations, at the same time preserving quality of life. In this respect, the G-Clb combination is a less intense regimen, proven to prolong survival (Goede et al. 2014).

2. *Ibrutinib*. Ibrutinib is an orally bioavailable selective and irreversible inhibitor of the Bruton tyrosine kinase (BTK), an essential player of the BCR signaling cascade (Byrd et al. 2013). It was recently approved for frontline use in CLL patients based on the randomized, multicenter, open-label phase 3 RESONATE-2 trial of ibrutinib vs. chlorambucil, in which ibrutinib achieved a 91% reduction in the risk for disease transformation and an 84% reduction in the death risk compared to chlorambucil (Burger et al. 2015). A significant number of clinical trials are still investigating the efficacy of ibrutinib both as a single agent and in combination in different subset of CLL patients (www.*clinicaltrials.gov*). Ibrutinib induces rapid and durable lymph node responses both in previously untreated CLL patients and in patients with relapsed or refractory CLL (Byrd et al. 2015; O'Brien et al. 2014). Similar to other kinase inhibitors developed for CLL therapy, ibrutinib interferes with the protective effect of stromal cells, prevents lymphocyte adhesion and homing, and interrupts the network of microenvironment-dependent stimuli by acting on leukemic cells (Wiestner 2012). For these reasons, during the first weeks of therapy, patients can undergo transient and massive lymphocytosis due to redistribution of CLL cells from the lymphoid niches to PB. This should not be confused with disease progression and should not lead to discontinuation of the drug (Woyach et al. 2014b). Although ibrutinib is currently approved for frontline therapy, particularly in CLL patients with 17p deletion, it must be taken into account that this therapeutic choice commits the patient to lifelong therapy and that continuous therapy started in a young patient can pose several issues, including lack of compliance with a daily oral medication and the possibility of long-term toxicities that have not yet been determined (Barrientos 2016).
   Novel btk inhibitors are currently in development and in clinical trials, showing promising effects as the non-specific effect on other Tec family kinases has been significantly reduced (Byrd et al. 2016; Herman et al. 2016; Walter et al. 2016; Wu et al. 2016).
3. *Idelalisib*. Idelalisib (CAL-101 or GS-1101) is an oral selective and reversible inhibitor of the p110δ isoform of the PI3K (Lannutti et al. 2011). In CLL, PI3K is a critical player in the BCR signaling cascade, but also integrates signals

coming from other cell-surface receptor, like CD40, CXCR4, and integrins (Herman et al. 2010; Hoellenriegel et al. 2011). As part of these pathways, PI3K also influences B cell trafficking by promoting chemotaxis towards a chemokine gradient, migration beneath stromal cells, and upregulation of chemokine secretion by CLL cells (Okkenhaug and Vanhaesebroeck 2003; Srinivasan et al. 2009). In the context of CLL pathogenesis, prosurvival and proliferative signals stimulated by BCR activation and stromal cell contact may be amplified by the convergence on common downstream players including PI3K (Brown 2016). Similar to ibrutinib, idelalisib is associated with early lymphocyte redistribution and mobilization from lymphoid tissues to blood circulation, with increased lymphocyte counts associated to nodal response (Cheson et al. 2012). Given that the lymphocytosis is often a persistent condition, a number of studies were designed based on the combination of agents, such as rituximab, in order to progressively abrogate lymphocytosis and to meet traditional IWCLL response criteria. For example, the idelalisib plus rituximab regimen is FDA approved since 2014 for relapsed CLL patients for whom rituximab would be an appropriate treatment option (Furman et al. 2014). In contrast, first-line treatment with idelalisib is not recommended given the high rate of toxicity, including an increased risk of opportunistic infection (Lampson et al. 2016).

4. *Venetoclax*. Venetoclax (ABT-199) is an orally administered small molecule that was recently FDA approved as monotherapy for second-line treatment of CLL patients who have relapsed or have been refractory to previous treatments and have *TP53* defects (Stilgenbauer et al. 2016). It is a selective inhibitor of the prosurvival protein BCL-2 and therefore acts by restoring the apoptotic machinery of malignant cells. BCL2 over-expression and activation are typical of the CLL founder clone and its selective inhibition by venetoclax acts on cancer cells in a TP53-independent way (Roberts et al. 2016). As for kinase inhibitors, venetoclax has been tested in trials as a continuous treatment, with all the potential implications on long-term safety, drug interactions, quality of life, compliance to treatment, and economic sustainability, which remain incompletely determined. In a phase 1 dose-escalation study, Roberts and colleagues observed a significant antitumor activity of daily oral venetoclax in patients with relapsed or refractory CLL. However, important side effects were reported to occur in a significant proportion of patients and including tumor lysis syndrome (prevented upon dose adjustment), mild diarrhea (in 52% of the patients), upper respiratory tract infections (in 48%), nausea (in 47%), and grade 3 or 4 neutropenia (in 41%) (Roberts et al. 2016). Nevertheless, in relapsed and refractory CLL with TP53 disruption, the response rates achieved by venetoclax treatment is so far the highest (excluding allogeneic stem-cell transplantation), and potentially translates into durable remissions (Rossi 2016).

Other novel treatment options, current trials, and future directions will be discussed later in the chapter.

3 Resistance to Chemotherapy and Chemoimmunotherapy: The Role of p53, NOTCH1, and Other Genetic Lesions

Despite the availability of different therapeutic options and novel targeted agents, *TP53* dysfunctions remain the most important adverse prognostic factor and have been shown to provide the most powerful predictive information on clinical outcome and on therapy responsiveness. Several studies indicated *TP53* aberrations as a negative prognostic factor, independent of other important negative features, and they represent the most important risk factor for treatment-free survival (TFS) and overall survival (OS). Thus far, *TP53* mutations or loss, as a result of 17p deletion, are the prognostic markers most influencing therapy decisions (Rosenquist et al. 2013; Te Raa and Kater 2016; Zenz et al. 2010). *TP53* alterations in CLL are most frequently represented by biallelic defects such as a deletion (17p-) in one allele together with a gene mutation on the other allele, although *TP53* mutations without a concurrent chromosome deletion are observed in ~30% of cases (Malcikova et al. 2009; Zenz et al. 2008b). Therefore, *TP53* status should be routinely analyzed both by FISH and by sequencing (Pospisilova et al. 2012). However, survival seems to be equally poor for patients carrying a biallelic defect or either the deletion or the mutation alone (Zenz et al. 2008a). More recently, given the increased prevalence of adverse outcome genetic defects in more advanced disease, NGS analysis has been used to improve the prognostic power of *TP53* alterations in the context of clonal evolution. The question here is whether more aggressive and chemoresistant subclones are already present at early stages of the disease, and are progressively selected, or whether they evolve and acquire driver defects during the treatment phase (Malcikova et al. 2014).

TP53 dysfunctions are a common feature in the majority of human cancers. The p53 protein is known as "the cellular gatekeeper" as it acts to transmit stress-inducing signals to antiproliferative cell responses. After activation as a consequence of DNA damage, oncogene signaling, or hypoxia, it subsequently orchestrates a wide spectrum of mechanisms including apoptosis, cell cycle arrest, senescence, or autophagy (Zilfou and Lowe 2009). In CLL, p53 is activated upon DNA damage through the activation of ATM and induces cell-cycle arrest through p21 and apoptosis through different targets including Puma. In addition, miR-34a is a direct transcriptional target of p53, and induces apoptosis and cell-cycle arrest through silencing of its potential targets as cyclin-dependent kinases 4 and 6, CCND1, MYCN, BCL2, and Sirtuin1 (Zenz et al. 2009) (Fig. 1). In keeping with its role as pivotal regulator of the DNA damage response, alterations of *TP53* are associated with resistance to conventional chemotherapy (i.e. fludarabine, cyclophosphamide) that target essentially every dividing cell by inducing double strand breaks (DSBs) (Te Raa and Kater 2016). Accordingly, none of the chemoimmunotherapy combinations that are available as frontline therapy for CLL has shown evidence of sustained clinical activity in patients with 17p deletion or in the presence of *TP53* mutations. As shown by the CLL8 trial, the FCR regimen, with the addition of rituximab to fludarabine and cyclophosphamide, significantly improved CLL management and was shown to induce long-term remission and prolong OS in the majority of CLL patient except for those with *TP53* defects (Hallek

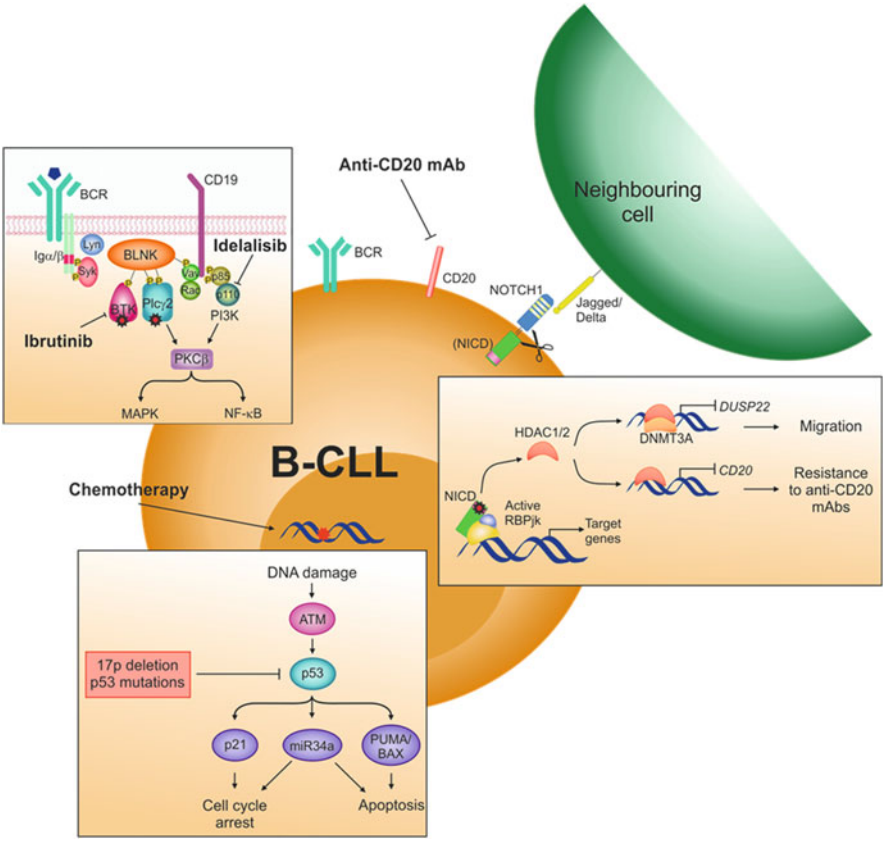


Fig. 1 Schematic view of the main molecular mechanisms that mediate therapy resistance in CLL. The upper box shows the BCR signaling pathway with drugs targeting key downstream players (e.g., ibrutinib and idelalisib). The red/black stars represent mutations of btk and Plcγ2, which represent the most frequent mechanisms of ibrutinib resistance. The box in the middle shows the effects of NOTCH1 pathway activation. Therapy resistance is the result of expression of NOTCH1 target genes and of gene expression remodeling mediated by HDAC1/2 displacement from RBP-jk complex. The red/black star indicates mutations in NOTCH1 PEST domain, which further exacerbate the effects. The bottom box shows the signaling cascade activated upon chemotherapy-mediated DNA damage. Activation of p53 is the master regulator of cell fate and genetic lesion disrupting the "cellular gatekeeper" are indicated

et al. 2010). Specifically, the FCR arm showed a median progression-free survival (PFS) of 51.8 months, compared to the PFS of 32.8 months in the FC group. FCR treatment didn't significantly modify the outcome in patients with 17p deletion and p53 mutations, as the median PFS was 11.3 and 15.4 months for FCR and FC, respectively (Stilgenbauer et al. 2014). A promising alternative strategy was represented by alemtuzumab, a recombinant, humanized, monoclonal antibody directed against CD52, and thus targeting both B and T lymphocytes. Alemtuzumab was found to be more effective than rituximab as a single agent in first-line therapy of

CLL and was believed to be effective also in the presence of TP53 defects (Lundin et al. 2002; Stilgenbauer and Dohner 2002). However, subsequent trials did not confirm that initial observation. Moreover, even if addition of alemtuzumab to fludarabine and cyclophosphamide resulted in a prolonged PFS in patients with high risk cytogenetics, this was not observed in 17p- patients showing a median PFS comparable to that observed in the CLL8 trial in patients with *TP53* defects (Geisler et al. 2014).

Different studies support ibrutinib as frontline treatment for patients with 17p- or *TP53* mutations (Byrd et al. 2013, 2015; O'Brien et al. 2016). The trial from Byrd et al., that included high-risk patients with relapsed or refractory CLL previously treated, showed a PFS at 30 months of 69%, with a median of 28 months for 17p- patients and 38.7 months for 11q– subjects. Despite the inferior PFS observed in patients with 17p-, compared to patients without this alteration, results are however significantly more promising than chemoimmunotherapy. For this reason ibrutinib is now approved for frontline use in this category of patients. Also, combination trials of ibrutinib with monoclonal antibodies are currently ongoing to determine whether addition of rituximab or other anti-CD20 antibodies could change long-term prognosis compared to ibrutinib monotherapy (Barrientos 2016).

It must be said that the response duration in CLL patients with *TP53* alterations is still very short even in the case of agents acting independently of p53 pathway, such as monoclonal antibodies. This is most likely because none of the therapeutic strategies currently used are able to achieve a complete eradication of the leukemic clone and small subclones of CLL cells, protected by microenvironmental niches, are prone to expand more rapidly when having a p53 defect (Malcikova et al. 2014).

Beside the well-defined role of TP53 defects in chemoresistance, other factors are emerging as markers of therapy resistance, even if their clinical significance is still a matter of debate and their biological mechanisms of action are only partially understood. Screening of recurrently mutated genes in fludarabine-refractory CLL (FR-CLL), combining approaches of whole-exome sequencing (WES) and copy number aberration (CNA) analysis, revealed that the majority of these patients carry mutations in genes that were recently recognized as recurrently mutated, including *NOTCH1* (~25%), *SF3B1* (~20%), and *BIRC3* (~15%) (Messina et al. 2014). These mutations are unfrequently simultaneous in the leukemic population, being more likely mutually exclusive within each other and with TP53 defects, and representing independent negative factors. Together with TP53 dysfunction they account for the majority of the genetic lesions underneath CLL chemorefractoriness. In particular, *BIRC3* abnormalities are specifically associated with a chemorefractory phenotype, as they were not observed in progressive, but fludarabine-sensitive, CLL. *BIRC3* disruption identifies patients with a poor outcome similar to patients with *TP53* defects and is associated with an abnormal microenvironment-independent activation of the noncanonical NF-κB pathway, which in turn sustains leukemic cell survival through the upregulation of anti-apoptotic genes (Rossi et al. 2012).

SF3B1 and *NOTCH1* mutations cluster in few spots within the gene and affect a relatively high number of patients (Fabbri et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2011). *SF3B1* is part of the splicing machinery and its mutations are frequently observed with

concurrent alternative splicing isoforms of protein-coding and non-coding genes, although SF3B1 functions and impact on RNA processing are still under investigation (Furney et al. 2013). In CLL, *SF3B1* mutations are enriched in the fludarabine-refractory cases, as their frequency was found significantly increased compared to CLL samples collected at diagnosis (Rossi et al. 2011). Mutations are somatically acquired and are generally represented by missense mutations clustering in three main hotspots (codons 662, 666 and 700). Given its role in pre-mRNA splicing, SF3B1 may contribute to CLL and chemoresistance through the generation of alternatively spliced transcripts. Recently, it was demonstrated that aberrant splicing, resulting from *SF3B1* mutations, may impact on multiple pathways that play a relevant role in CLL homeostasis, such as DNA damage response, telomerase activity, and NOTCH1 signaling (Wang et al. 2016). The final result is the accumulation of genetic lesions and a gene setting promoting leukemic cell survival. In particular, by perturbing the correct DNA damage response or by deregulating NOTCH1 activity through the disruption of the negative regulator *DVL2*, *SF3B1* mutations induce a phenotype largely similar to that of TP53 dysfunction or NOTCH1 mutations, respectively. The pleiotropic effects of *SF3B1* mutations, impacting on cellular processes that are frequently deregulated by genetic abnormalities in CLL, may also explain why *SF3B1* mutations, *TP53* defects, and *NOTCH1* mutations are mutually exclusive (Rossi et al. 2011).

Among the genetic lesions described in CLL, *NOTCH1* mutations represent the most frequent alteration, with prevalence increasing if we consider chemorefractory CLL. Mutations cluster at the exon 34 of the gene and hit the PEST domain, a region rich in proline, serine, and threonine residues. More recently, mutations in the the 3′ region (3′UTR) of NOTCH1 were also identified. These alterations cause aberrant splicing events, increase NOTCH1 activity, and result in a more aggressive disease (Puente et al. 2015). In a significant proportion of cases, *NOTCH1* mutations in CLL are represented by a 2 bp frameshift deletion at position 7,541–7,542 (c.7541-7542delCT), leading to the formation of a premature STOP codon, and resulting in a truncated protein. The final result is the loss of the PEST domain, that is determinant for the correct protein ubiquitination and degradation. For this reason, the mutations described in CLL are considered stabilizing mutations, rather than activating, as the resulting protein is predicted to remain transcriptionally active in the nucleus for a longer time (Arruga et al. 2014; Fabbri et al. 2011). In fact, NOTCH1 signaling is induced upon ligand binding, an event required also in the presence of PEST domain mutations, that triggers subsequent proteolytic cleavages resulting in the release of the intracellular portion of the protein (NICD). The NICD is the active form of NOTCH1 and acts as a transcription modulator through the interaction with the RBP-jk complex in the nucleus (Castel et al. 2013). On one side, this interaction activates a specific transcription pattern having *HES1* and *DTX1* as the most representative targets. On the other side, by displacing the repressor molecules bound to RBP-jk, NOTCH1 acts by remodeling nuclear protein interactions in a domino effect that in the end globally affects the genetic setting of the leukemic cell (Arruga et al. 2016; Pozzo et al. 2016). From a functional perspective, NOTCH1 mutations render CLL cells more

resistant to spontaneous or drug-induced apoptosis (Rosati et al. 2009; Secchiero et al. 2009). In particular, NOTCH1 activation by microenvironmental stimuli, mirrored in vitro by culturing CLL cells in the presence of nurse-like cells expressing NOTCH1 ligands, may favor chemoresistance and protect leukemic cells by fludarabine-induced apotosis, selectively in mutated cells, a condition that can be reverted by specific NOTCH1 inhibitors (Arruga et al. 2014). The association of *NOTCH1* mutations with poor response to therapy is also supported by the observations of the CLL8 trial that pointed the attention to the fact that, beside being more prone to undergo fludarabine resistance, *NOTCH1*-mutated patients did not benefit from the addition of rituximab, as the responses in the FC vs. the FCR arm of the trial were almost identical (Stilgenbauer et al. 2014). Clinical data are sustained by biological evidences that *NOTCH1*-mutated CLL cells express lower levels of CD20 on cell surface, and can therefore escape rituximab. Consistently, mutated cells are less efficiently lysed upon anti-CD20 exposure in vitro. Both phenotypes are rescued upon treatment of leukemic cells with γ-secretase inhibitors, small molecules acting on the key enzyme in NOTCH1 activation cascade. NOTCH1 is directly involved in the regulation of CD20 expression and it operates through the unbalance of nuclear protein interactions. In fact, it is known that in the absence of the NICD, RBP-jk is bound to negative regulators that repress its transcriptional activity. Among the negative interactors, the histone deacetylases (HDAC1 and HDAC2) play a fundamental role. The acetylation status of a chromatin region determines its accessibility for transcription and deacetylation results in a more condensed, less accessible, chromatin. When the NICD is released from the cell membrane and translocates to the nucleus, it binds RBP-jk and displaces the repressor complex. In particular, free HDACs can be recruited elsewhere in the genome and exert their epigenetic regulation on other targets. It was demonstrated that, in the presence of the NICD and particularly of a PEST mutated NICD, that persists in the nucleus for longer, HDACs were less complexed with RBP-jk and more bound to the CD20 promoter, resulting in epigenetic silencing of gene expression (Pozzo et al. 2016). This NICD-dependent epigenetic modulation of gene expression is likely to affect several targets and may contribute to CLL evolution by perturbing diverse cellular processes. Among them, the tumor suppressor gene *DUSP22* has been recently identified as a target, as its expression is downmodulated in the presence of an active NOTCH1 signaling through a methylation-dependent mechanism. In fact, the HDACs availability impacts on the activity of the DNA methyltransferase 3A (DNMT3A), being higher when the enzyme is complexed with HDACs. Consistently, in the presence of a PEST mutated NICD, *DUSP22* promoter is more methylated as the result of an increased amount of the HDAC-DNMT3A complex. *DUSP22* downregulation leads to constitutive MAPKs and STAT3 signaling and promotes leukemic cell growth and CCL19-driven chemotaxis (Arruga et al. 2016) (Fig. 1). As CCL19 regulates homing to lymphoid organs, it is conceivable that *NOTCH1* mutations might favor CLL recirculation to lymph nodes and spleen, where the local environment favors proliferation and protection from spontaneous and drug-induced

apoptosis, two conditions that are associated with more aggressive disease and unfavorable prognosis.

4 From Mechanisms of Resistance to Novel Therapeutic Approaches

Therapeutic opportunities for CLL patients have improved significantly with the advent of BCR signaling antagonists, such as ibrutinib and idelalisib. Before the approval of these agents, patients with relapsed disease or with evidence of a more aggressive disease had a generally poor outcome with standard chemoimmunotherapy. Stem cell transplantation can be an option for young and fit patients, but it can't be adopted as a strategy for the majority of CLL patients. Nevertheless, although both ibrutinib and idelalisib can induce rapid and durable remission, there are patients who fail to respond or who relapse even after long periods of remission (Woyach 2015).

Two main mechanisms underlying resistance to ibrutinib have been identified and observed in multiple CLL patients; in contrast, mechanisms of resistance to idelalisib are still to be fully elucidated. Whole exome sequencing, performed in six patients with late relapse after ibrutinib, revealed the presence of acquired mutations in BTK at the binding site of the inhibitor (C481) in which a cysteine was mutated to serine. In one patient, multiple mutations in phospholipase Cγ2 (PLCγ2; R665W, L845F and S707Y), the kinase immediately downstream of BTK, were identified (Woyach et al. 2014a). Functionally, the C481S mutation reduces the binding affinity of ibrutinib for BTK resulting in a reversible rather than irreversible inhibition. Given the relatively short half-life of the molecule, the result is only a transient inhibition of BTK phosphorylation. This mutation was confirmed in multiple patients, who relapsed under ibrutinib (Cheng et al. 2015) (Fig. 1). Recently, a novel BTK mutation potentially driving ibrutinb resistance has been described in a case report. Serial analysis of samples collected through the patient's clinical course pointed out a mutation at codon 316 post ibrutinib relapse. The mutation consists in the substitution of a threonine with an alanine (T316A) in the SH2 domain of BTK. However, this is not the kinase domain and it doesn't apparently directly interfere with ibrutinib binding to BTK, making the mechanism of resistance through this mutation still unclear (Sharma et al. 2016).

On the other hand, PLCγ2 mutations have been demonstrated to be potentially gain of function, with a consequent pathway activation overcoming the presence of inactive BTK (Liu et al. 2015; Zhou et al. 2012). More recently, additional CLL patients who relapsed after ibrutinib were genetically characterized using targeted deep sequencing, both at baseline and at relapse, and were all found to harbor mutations in BTK at C481S or in PLCγ2 (Maddocks et al. 2015) (Fig. 1). Importantly, while the association between BTK or PLCγ2 mutations and CLL progression was clear, they did not associate with increased risk of Richter transformation. Another study reported two patients who relapsed on ibrutinib but without BTK or PLCγ2 mutations, suggesting that there might be other mechanisms that can lead to

relapse (Woyach and Johnson 2015). Primary resistance to ibrutinib has been rarely observed and no mechanism has yet been identified. However, it is likely that activating mutations in central pathways such as MAPK or PI3K signaling might render a patient less sensitive to ibrutinib in the early phases of therapy.

CLL progression and relapse during ibrutinib therapy is, therefore, most likely the result of mutations in BTK or PLCγ2. What remains to be determined is whether these mutations are already present at the subclonal level when treatment is started, leading to the slow and progressive selection during ibrutibib, or whether they are acquired during therapy, as a result of drug-induced pressure. Computational evolutionary models suggest that resistance mutations should already be present before ibrutinib administration, but results in CLL samples remain controversial (Komarova et al. 2014). In fact, in some studies where mutations of BTK or PLCγ2 were identified as responsible for resistance, deep sequencing was performed in PB samples at baseline as well, and no mutations were found (Cheng et al. 2015; Liu et al. 2015; Maddocks et al. 2015; Woyach et al. 2014a; Zhou et al. 2012). In addition, another independent study reported deep sequencing in a large cohort of ibrutinib-naïve patients without finding mutations in BTK (Fama et al. 2014). However, these data suggest that BTK mutations are not commonly found in PB prior to ibrutinib exposure, but they do not exclude that mutations might be present in very small clones or in niches other than PB. Several groups studied and dissected evolution of ibrutinib resistance by using whole-exome and deep-targeted sequencing in small cohorts of serial CLL samples. Taking advantage of droplet-microfluidic technology, allowing single cell analysis, Burger et al. demonstrated the presence of ibrutinib resistant subclones before treatment initiation, supporting the idea that therapy may select and promote expansion of rare resistant subclones (Burger et al. 2016). Accordingly, in a recent study, Ahn et al. published results from a phase 2 clinical trial with ibrutinib as a single agent in a cohort of 86 patients and showed that mutations in BTK or in PLCγ2 could be detected up to 15 months before clinical manifestations of progression and resistance. Moreover, in a small group of patients, they described the presence of multiple subclones carrying different independent mutations, suggesting subclonal heterogeneity of resistant disease (Ahn et al. 2017).

Resistance to idelalisib has not yet been fully elucidated from the biological point of view and is currently under investigation, although some mechanisms of resistance and potential alternative targets have been proposed. Idelalisib selectively targets the p110δ isoform of the PI3K, that is encoded by the *PIK3CD* gene. A mechanism of resistance that is likely to occur is the upregulation of either *PI3KCD* or an alternative class 1A PI3K such as *PIK3CA* or *PIK3CB*. Research performed in cell line models of mantle cell lymphoma, for example, highlighted that a higher ratio of *PIK3CA*/*PIK3CD* predicts resistance to selective p110δ inhibition (Iyengar et al. 2013). Similar results were obtained in a breast cancer model harboring mutations of *PIK3CA*, where resistance to PI3Kα inhibitor was mediated by the upregulation of *PIK3CA*, so that signaling pathway and PI3K functions were maintained even in the presence of the inhibitor at saturating concentrations (Huw et al. 2013). Other studies in breast cancer models, performed

with PI3Kα inhibitors, observed and proposed other potentially relevant mechanisms of resistance outside the drug target, and having as a major player MYC amplification (Muellner et al. 2011). However, none of the mentioned mechanisms have yet been verified in CLL.

Mechanisms of resistance to venetoclax have not yet been described as well, also in consideration of the relatively recent entry in clinical practice. It must be considered, however, that the BCL2 family is composed of several members and therefore the most likely mechanism of resistance would be the upregulation of an alternative member of the family, such as BCL-XL, BCL-W, MCL1, or BCL2A1 (Youle and Strasser 2008). This hypothesis is also supported by evidence that ABT-737, an inhibitor of both BCL2 and BCL-XL, induced resistance in vitro by upregulating BCL-XL and BCL2A1 (Vogler et al. 2009). Similarly, other studies describe upregulation of BCL-XL or MCL1, as well as autophagy, as mechanisms underlying resistance to venetoclax (Woyach and Johnson 2015). Furthermore, acquired resistance in vitro has also been described after prolonged exposure to venetoclax and the appearance of mutations in the BCL2 BH3 domain and in BAX has been reported (Fresquet et al. 2014).

Strategies to overcome resistance to these agents are currently under establishment, but since they show distinct mechanisms of actions, the switch among the therapies is one of the first possibilities to be considered.

5 Microenvironment and Therapy Resistance

The dependence of cancer cells on a tumor microenvironment that promotes cell growth and allows escaping from apoptosis and immune surveillance is a central hallmark of cancer. This protective niche is characterized by the presence of multiple elements including tumor-associated macrophages, tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, or other stromal cells which provide various cytokines and chemokines sustaining cancer cells (Hanahan and Weinberg 2011). Tumor microenvironment is particularly important in CLL given the high dependence of leukemic cells on external factors for proliferation and survival. Indeed, whilst the fraction of $CD5^+$ leukemic cells circulating in the PB are arrested in the G0 phase of the cell cycle, those in the BM or residing in the lymphoid tissues proliferate at a rate of 0,1–1% of the total leukemic clone per day (Herndon et al. 2017). The CLL microenvironment in the lymphoid organs is organized in pseudofollicular structures named proliferation centers, focal aggregates of pro-lymphocytes and para-immunoblasts that represent the major sites of neoplastic cell proliferation (Soma et al. 2006). Proliferation centers are marked by the presence of Ki-67^+ proliferating CLL cells that interact with multiple signals coming from the heterogeneous non-neoplastic compartment. Beside the central role played by the BCR signaling, other features of CLL microenvironment are of relevance as they are part of a network of signals potentially driving disease evolution. CLL microenvironment is constituted by non-transformed elements that promote homing, retention, and proliferation of CLL through both soluble and contact-dependent mechanisms. These elements include principally stromal cells, monocyte-

derived nurse-like cells (NLC), and T-lymphocytes. On the other hand, CLL cells exert a role in microenvironment remodeling through immunomodulatory signals that promote evasion from immune surveillance and shape the stromal compartment. This network of bidirectional interactions favors the establishment of a progressively abnormal environment that sustains proliferation and survival of leukemic cells and, by protecting them from chemotherapy, maintains a reservoir of cells potentially accumulating novel genetic lesions from which disease relapse may occur (Audrito et al. 2013).

NLCs are similar to tumor-associated macrophages and, despite being primarily reported as an in vitro derived population, they have been also found in the lymph nodes and BM of CLL patients (Filip et al. 2013). NLCs support leukemic cells through the adhesion molecules and secrete chemokines and cytokines including the B-cell activating factor (BAFF) and a proliferation inducing lingand (APRIL). The final result is the upregulation of anti-apoptotic genes such as *BCL2*, *SURVIVIN*, *BCL2A1,* and *XIAP* that promote leukemic cell survival and escape from spontaneous and drug-induced apoptosis. Interestingly, this population can be differentiated from circulating monocytes only in the presence of CLL cells, suggesting a bidirectional effect and supporting the idea of a CLL-dependent microenvironment remodeling (Filip et al. 2015). For example, it was shown that CLL cells can produce, and secrete in the extracellular space, cytokines and cytokine-like molecules to polarize monocytes towards tumor-supportive M2 macrophages by activating MAPKs, STAT3 and NF-κB signaling (Audrito et al. 2015). Moreover, CLL can directly recruit NLC precursors through the secretion of CCL3 and CCL4 in response to signals triggered by the BCR activation and by CD38 (Aydin et al. 2008; Burger et al. 2009; Zucchetto et al. 2009). These findings suggest that the reciprocal cross-talk between the leukemic population and the surrounding microenvironment may occur not only through cell–cell contact but also through secreted factors acting in a paracrine way.

Similarly to NLCs, mesenchymal stromal cells (MSC) constitutively secrete chemokines that recruit CLL cells. This cell population represents the "feeder" layer for hemopoietic progenitor cells in physiological conditions and is commonly found in secondary lymphoid tissues in CLL patients (Choi et al. 2016). It was shown that, upon direct contact with leukemic cells, MSCs not only induce up-regulation of factors promoting CLL cell survival and proliferation, but they also favor a metabolic switch of leukemic cells by increasing glutathione synthesis and glycolysis through the NOTCH1-c-Myc axis, in turn impacting on cell survival and drug resistance (Jitschin et al. 2015; Purroy et al. 2015). Metabolic reprogramming represents a hallmark of malignant cells and the finding that stromal cells impact on the glucose dependency of leukemic cells, and that this mechanisms is mediated by oncogenic signaling pathways known to be deregulated in CLL, such as NOTCH1 and its target c-Myc, could be exploited therapeutically to overcome drug resistance. Furthermore, an increasing number of studies are focusing on the pro-survival Wnt5a/ROR1 pathway. Results have shown that MSCs express high levels of Wnt5a and that high levels of ROR1 on CLL cells are frequently associated with an accelerated disease progression (Cui et al. 2016; Fukuda et al.

2008) (Fig. 2). As for NLCs, the cross-talk between MSCs and CLL cells is at the basis of a bidirectional network of interactions in which MSCs sustain leukemic cells survival and proliferation and the CLL counterpart acts by remodeling stromal cells to be the utmost supportive. MSCs are activated by direct contact with CLL, for example through the induction of protein kinase C β II (PKCβII) expression and the subsequent activation of the canonical NF-κB pathway. Stromal NF-κB in turn regulates the expression and secretion of proinflammatory cytokines that are required for CLL survival, such as IL-1α and -1β, IL-6, IL-10, IL-15 (Lutzny et al. 2013). Moreover, CLL-derived vesicles such as exosomes contain proteins and microRNAs that can induce a pro-inflammatory phenotype in target cells, such as MSCs, enhancing proliferation, migration, and secretion of cytokines, further supporting the idea that cell–cell contact is not necessarily required for tumor–host interactions (Paggetti et al. 2015).

CLL cells in the lymphoid niches are also in close contact with T lymphocytes that provide critical regulatory signals (Bagnara et al. 2011). Activated $CD4^+$ T lymphocytes are found in proliferation centers adjacent to leukemic cells, likely supporting the idea of adhesion-mediated bidirectional interactions. Furthermore, CLL cells themselves can drive T cells to the lymph nodes by secreting factors such as CCL22, CCL3, and CCL4, again suggesting a direct role of leukemic cells in

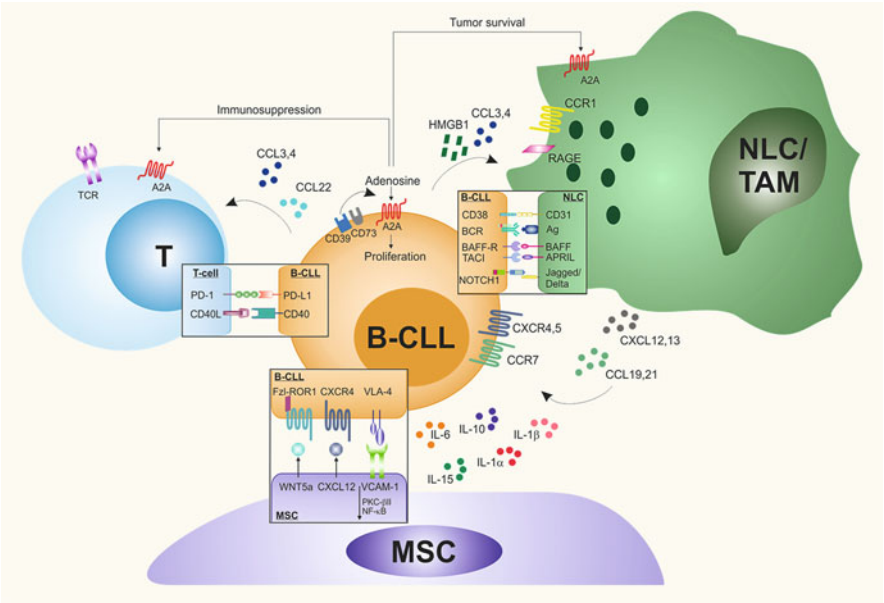


Fig. 2 Schematic view of the CLL microenvironment. In lymphoid niches, CLL cells interact with multiple partners, such as NLC, stromal cells (MSC), and T lymphocytes. All these elements provide signals promoting CLL survival and proliferation and release soluble mediators in the extracellular space, further sustaining leukemic cells. On the other side, CLL cells themselves reshape the microenvironment, by secreting chemokines and cytokines turning bystander cells into tumor-supportive elements

recruiting elements to shape the microenvironmental niche. T cells are thought to support CLL cells via the CD40L/CD40 axis that rescues leukemic cells from apoptosis by upregulating pro-survival and anti-apoptotic factors (Audrito et al. 2013; Gricks et al. 2004). In addition to a direct stimulation of leukemic cells, CLL T cells are notable for their functional defects as they are unable to form a fully functional immune synapse (Ramsay et al. 2008). Indeed, they show evidence of chronic activation and exhaustion with increased expression of markers such as CD244, CD160, and PD1. In particular, signaling through the PD-1/PD-L1 axis was shown to play an essential role in T cell dysfunction, with evidence of an active crosstalk between PD-1, expressed by $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ subsets, and PD-L1, expressed by the leukemic counterpart. This interaction in turn significantly decreases IL-4 and IFN-γ production and secretion by $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$, respectively, with the final effect of a pronounced Th2 skewing of T-cell responses (Brusa et al. 2013). The consequence is impaired cytotoxicity that contributes to the generation of an immunosuppressive environment further promoting CLL survival and expansion. Targeting the PD-1/PD-L1 axis may be therefore of clinical interest to disrupt the immune tolerance of CLL microenvironment (Fig. 2).

T cell responses can be also restored by reprogramming autologous T lymphocytes to target specific tumor antigens following approaches of targeted adoptive cellular therapies. The most successful strategy was developed by fusing together an antibody-derived antigen-binding moiety with an internal signaling domain as CDRζ to form a chimeric antigen receptor (CAR). The advantages of CARs, compared to other T-cell-based therapies, reside mainly in the use of autologous T cells, avoiding the risk of graft versus host disease, and in the fact that the same CAR can be adopted to prime T cells of multiple patients. In a pilot study, autologous T cells, engineered to express CD19-targeted CAR and infused at low doses into CLL patients, were able to achieve a robust in vivo activation and to induce a persistent clinical response (Porter et al. 2011). Over the past years, an increasing number of reports by different groups have shown potent clinical activity using this treatment paradigm, including eradication of disease in late-stage patients with a variety of CD19-positive leukemias (Kalos 2016).

Immunomodulation as a therapeutic strategy is also at the basis of the use of lenalidomide in CLL treatment. Lenalidomide has a wide range of activities, including stimulation of T cells through CD28, up-regulation of cytokines such as IL-2 and IFN-γ, suppression of regulatory T cells and increase of NK- and antibody-mediated cytotoxicity (Riches and Gribben 2016). In addition, its effects appear mediated also by suppression of CLL proliferation and reduction of pro-survival factors in CLL microenvironment. A number of clinical trials are ongoing to determine its activity both as single agent or as part of combination strategies (Buhler et al. 2016; Liang et al. 2016; Wendtner et al. 2016).

Additional elements in CLL microenvironment include endothelial cells (ECs) and follicular dendritic cells (FDCs), which play an essential role for tissue homing and CLL retention within lymphoid tissues. Adhesion to endothelial cells promotes CLL cell survival, activation and drug resistance, primarily through integrin binding. For example, ligation of CD44 on CLL cells up-regulates Mcl1, a member of

the BCL2 family of anti-apoptotic proteins, and also interacts with other surface molecules such as CD38, CD49d, MMP-9, and ZAP-70 (Zhang et al. 2013). The CD100/PlexinB1 axis also appears to play a role in FDCs/CLL crosstalk (Granziero et al. 2003).

In addition to cell–cell contact, soluble factors may as well drive CLL survival and proliferation. For example, extracellular nucleotides and nucleosides, such as adenosine triphosphate (ATP) and adenosine (ADO), together with their receptors and the enzymes involved in their metabolism, may participate in creating favorable conditions that promote tumor growth and survival, while suppressing the host immune responses. It was demonstrated that the accumulation of ADO, as a consequence of the overexpression and activation of the ectoenzymes CD39 and CD73, creates local conditions that protect leukemic cells from spontaneous and drug-induced apoptosis. Furthermore, CD73-generated ADO inhibits migration of CLL cells towards CXCL12, in the sense that leukemic cells are attracted to lymph nodes by CXCL12, that provides a long-range signal, whereas local ADO induces a short-range stop signal that keeps cells in a growth-favorable environment (Serra et al. 2011, 2016) (Fig. 2). Targeting the adenosinergic axis might therefore have a considerable therapeutic impact in CLL, particularly to potentiate the effects of chemotherapy, as it was proposed in other disease models. For example, it was shown that the dual inhibition of CD73 and of the A2A ADO receptor might be of significant therapeutic benefit as it results in the restoration of the immune response, with increased immune infiltrated, and in a significant reduction of tumor growth and metastasis (Young et al. 2016).

6 Concluding Remarks and Future Directions

Over the past few years the treatment scenario for CLL patients was revolutionized with the development of targeted therapies that are progressively replacing conventional chemotherapy- and chemoimmunotherapy-based schedules. So far therapeutic responses obtained with these drugs are highly significant, at the price of a limited toxicity, even if none of these drugs appears to cure the disease.

A significant proportion of patients undergo therapy resistance, particularly as a consequence of long-time treatment or after several lines of therapies, that invariably results in disease progression and relapse. Another major limit is that conventional chemotherapy is not always a recommended choice, due to the presence of comorbidities, or because it's unlikely to work in the case of specific genetic lesions. The genetic background and the host microenvironment play a critical role in determining treatment outcome and disease progression and the identification of high risk patients represents a challenge in CLL management. As other tumor models, CLL is entering the era of the "precision medicine" where information about a patient's genetic background, protein functional characterization, and environment are used to improve the diagnostic classification and treatment options. Applied to CLL, NGS not only contributes to a better understanding of the genetic landscape of this complex disease, but is also acquiring a growing

prognostic power to discriminate subsets of patients that could or could not benefit from specific therapeutic interventions. Nevertheless, functional studies, new technologies, and experimental models are essential to validate findings, dissect the network of interactions within microenvironment, and identify potential therapeutic targets. The development and establishment of novel therapeutic strategies, tailored on specific biologic features of CLL, or based on synergies with available treatment options, could represent the way to overcome resistance and cure this disease.

Acknowledgements Partly supported by the Italian Association for Cancer Research (IG17314), by the Ministry of Health (GR-2011-02346826 and RF-2011-02349712) and by Human Genetics Foundation institutional funds.

References

Ahn IE, Underbayev C, Albitar A, Herman SE, Tian X, Maric I, Arthur DC, Wake L, Pittaluga S, Yuan CM et al (2017) Clonal evolution leading to ibrutinib resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood [Epub ahead of print]. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-06-719294

Arruga F, Gizdic B, Bologna C, Cignetto S, Buonincontri R, Serra S, Vaisitti T, Gizzi K, Vitale N, Garaffo G et al (2016) Mutations in NOTCH1 PEST-domain orchestrate CCL19-driven homing of chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells by modulating the tumor suppressor gene DUSP22. Leukemia [Epub ahead of print]. doi:10.1038/leu.2016.383

Arruga F, Gizdic B, Serra S, Vaisitti T, Ciardullo C, Coscia M, Laurenti L, D'Arena G, Jaksic O, Inghirami G et al (2014) Functional impact of NOTCH1 mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leukemia 28:1060–1070

Audrito V, Serra S, Brusa D, Mazzola F, Arruga F, Vaisitti T, Coscia M, Maffei R, Rossi D, Wang T et al (2015) Extracellular nicotinamide phosphoribosyltransferase (NAMPT) promotes M2 macrophage polarization in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 125:111–123

Audrito V, Vaisitti T, Serra S, Bologna C, Brusa D, Malavasi F, Deaglio S (2013) Targeting the microenvironment in chronic lymphocytic leukemia offers novel therapeutic options. Cancer Lett 328:27–35

Aydin S, Rossi D, Bergui L, D'Arena G, Ferrero E, Bonello L, Omede P, Novero D, Morabito F, Carbone A et al (2008) CD38 gene polymorphism and chronic lymphocytic leukemia: a role in transformation to Richter syndrome? Blood 111:5646–5653

Bagnara D, Kaufman MS, Calissano C, Marsilio S, Patten PE, Simone R, Chum P, Yan XJ, Allen SL, Kolitz JE et al (2011) A novel adoptive transfer model of chronic lymphocytic leukemia suggests a key role for T lymphocytes in the disease. Blood 117:5463–5472

Baliakas P, Hadzidimitriou A, Sutton LA, Rossi D, Minga E, Villamor N, Larrayoz M, Kminkova J, Agathangelidis A, Davis Z et al (2015) Recurrent mutations refine prognosis in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leukemia 29:329–336

Barrientos JC (2016) Sequencing of chronic lymphocytic leukemia therapies. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2016:128–136

Baumann T, Delgado J, Santacruz R, Martinez-Trillos A, Royo C, Navarro A, Pinyol M, Rozman M, Pereira A, Villamor N et al (2014) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia in the elderly: clinico-biological features, outcomes, and proposal of a prognostic model. Haematologica 99:1599–1604

Binet JL, Auquier A, Dighiero G, Chastang C, Piguet H, Goasguen J, Vaugier G, Potron G, Colona P, Oberling F et al (1981) A new prognostic classification of chronic lymphocytic leukemia derived from a multivariate survival analysis. Cancer 48:198–206

Brown JR (2016) The PI3K pathway: clinical inhibition in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Semin Oncol 43:260–264

Brusa D, Serra S, Coscia M, Rossi D, D'Arena G, Laurenti L, Jaksic O, Fedele G, Inghirami G, Gaidano G et al (2013) The PD-1/PD-L1 axis contributes to T-cell dysfunction in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Haematologica 98:953–963

Buhler A, Wendtner CM, Kipps TJ, Rassenti L, Fraser GA, Michallet AS, Hillmen P, Durig J, Gregory SA, Kalaycio M et al (2016) Lenalidomide treatment and prognostic markers in relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia: data from the prospective, multicenter phase-II CLL-009 trial. Blood Cancer J 6:e404

Burger JA (2010) Chemokines and chemokine receptors in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL): from understanding the basics towards therapeutic targeting. Semin Cancer Biol 20:424–430

Burger JA, Chiorazzi N (2013) B cell receptor signaling in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Trends Immunol 34:592–601

Burger JA, Landau DA, Taylor-Weiner A, Bozic I, Zhang H, Sarosiek K, Wang L, Stewart C, Fan J, Hoellenriegel J et al (2016) Clonal evolution in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukaemia developing resistance to BTK inhibition. Nat Commun 7:11589

Burger JA, Quiroga MP, Hartmann E, Burkle A, Wierda WG, Keating MJ, Rosenwald A (2009) High-level expression of the T-cell chemokines CCL3 and CCL4 by chronic lymphocytic leukemia B cells in nurselike cell cocultures and after BCR stimulation. Blood 113:3050–3058

Burger JA, Tedeschi A, Barr PM, Robak T, Owen C, Ghia P, Bairey O, Hillmen P, Bartlett NL, Li J et al (2015) Ibrutinib as initial therapy for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 373:2425–2437

Byrd JC, Furman RR, Coutre SE, Burger JA, Blum KA, Coleman M, Wierda WG, Jones JA, Zhao W, Heerema NA et al (2015) Three-year follow-up of treatment-naive and previously treated patients with CLL and SLL receiving single-agent ibrutinib. Blood 125:2497–2506

Byrd JC, Furman RR, Coutre SE, Flinn IW, Burger JA, Blum KA, Grant B, Sharman JP, Coleman M, Wierda WG et al (2013) Targeting BTK with ibrutinib in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 369:32–42

Byrd JC, Harrington B, O'Brien S, Jones JA, Schuh A, Devereux S, Chaves J, Wierda WG, Awan FT, Brown JR et al (2016) Acalabrutinib (ACP-196) in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 374:323–332

Campregher PV, Hamerschlak N (2014) Novel prognostic gene mutations identified in chronic lymphocytic leukemia and their impact on clinical practice. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk 14:271–276

Cassaday RD, Storer BE, Sorror ML, Sandmaier BM, Guthrie KA, Maloney DG, Rajendran JG, Pagel JM, Flowers ME, Green DJ et al (2015) Long-term outcomes of patients with persistent indolent B cell malignancies undergoing nonmyeloablative allogeneic transplantation. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 21:281–287

Castel D, Mourikis P, Bartels SJ, Brinkman AB, Tajbakhsh S, Stunnenberg HG (2013) Dynamic binding of RBPJ is determined by Notch signaling status. Genes Dev 27:1059–1071

Cheng S, Guo A, Lu P, Ma J, Coleman M, Wang YL (2015) Functional characterization of BTK (C481S) mutation that confers ibrutinib resistance: exploration of alternative kinase inhibitors. Leukemia 29:895–900

Cheson BD, Byrd JC, Rai KR, Kay NE, O'Brien SM, Flinn IW, Wiestner A, Kipps TJ (2012) Novel targeted agents and the need to refine clinical end points in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol 30:2820–2822

Choi MY, Kashyap MK, Kumar D (2016) The chronic lymphocytic leukemia microenvironment: beyond the B-cell receptor. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol 29:40–53

Collins RJ, Verschuer LA, Harmon BV, Prentice RL, Pope JH, Kerr JF (1989) Spontaneous programmed death (apoptosis) of B-chronic lymphocytic leukaemia cells following their culture in vitro. Br J Haematol 71:343–350

Cooperative Group for the Study of Immunoglobulin in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia (1988) Intravenous immunoglobulin for the prevention of infection in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. A randomized, controlled clinical trial. N Engl J Med 319:902

Cramer P, Hallek M (2011) Prognostic factors in chronic lymphocytic leukemia-what do we need to know? Nat Rev Clin Oncol 8:38–47

Cui B, Ghia EM, Chen L, Rassenti LZ, DeBoever C, Widhopf GF 2nd, Yu J, Neuberg DS, Wierda WG, Rai KR et al (2016) High-level ROR1 associates with accelerated disease progression in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 128:2931–2940

Damle RN, Wasil T, Fais F, Ghiotto F, Valetto A, Allen SL, Buchbinder A, Budman D, Dittmar K, Kolitz J et al (1999) Ig V gene mutation status and CD38 expression as novel prognostic indicators in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 94:1840–1847

Dighiero G, Hamblin TJ (2008) Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Lancet 371:1017–1029

Dohner H, Stilgenbauer S, Benner A, Leupolt E, Krober A, Bullinger L, Dohner K, Bentz M, Lichter P (2000) Genomic aberrations and survival in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 343:1910–1916

Dreger P, Schnaiter A, Zenz T, Bottcher S, Rossi M, Paschka P, Buhler A, Dietrich S, Busch R, Ritgen M et al (2013) TP53, SF3B1, and NOTCH1 mutations and outcome of allotransplantation for chronic lymphocytic leukemia: six-year follow-up of the GCLLSG CLL3X trial. Blood 121:3284–3288

Eichhorst B, Fink AM, Bahlo J, Busch R, Kovacs G, Maurer C, Lange E, Koppler H, Kiehl M, Sokler M et al (2016) First-line chemoimmunotherapy with bendamustine and rituximab versus fludarabine, cyclophosphamide, and rituximab in patients with advanced chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL10): an international, open-label, randomised, phase 3, non-inferiority trial. Lancet Oncol 17:928–942

Fabbri G, Rasi S, Rossi D, Trifonov V, Khiabanian H, Ma J, Grunn A, Fangazio M, Capello D, Monti S et al (2011) Analysis of the chronic lymphocytic leukemia coding genome: role of NOTCH1 mutational activation. J Exp Med 208:1389–1401

Fama R, Bomben R, Rasi S, Dal Bo M, Ciardullo C, Monti S, Rossi F, D'Agaro T, Zucchetto A, Gattei V et al (2014) Ibrutinib-naive chronic lymphocytic leukemia lacks Bruton tyrosine kinase mutations associated with treatment resistance. Blood 124:3831–3833

Filip AA, Cisel B, Koczkodaj D, Wasik-Szczepanek E, Piersiak T, Dmoszynska A (2013) Circulating microenvironment of CLL: are nurse-like cells related to tumor-associated macrophages? Blood Cells Mol Dis 50:263–270

Filip AA, Cisel B, Wasik-Szczepanek E (2015) Guilty bystanders: nurse-like cells as a model of microenvironmental support for leukemic lymphocytes. Clin Exp Med 15:73–83

Fischer K, Cramer P, Busch R, Bottcher S, Bahlo J, Schubert J, Pfluger KH, Schott S, Goede V, Isfort S et al (2012) Bendamustine in combination with rituximab for previously untreated patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia: a multicenter phase II trial of the German Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia Study Group. J Clin Oncol 30:3209–3216

Foon KA, Boyiadzis M, Land SR, Marks S, Raptis A, Pietragallo L, Meisner D, Laman A, Sulecki M, Butchko A et al (2009) Chemoimmunotherapy with low-dose fludarabine and cyclophosphamide and high dose rituximab in previously untreated patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol 27:498–503

Foon KA, Mehta D, Lentzsch S, Kropf P, Marks S, Lenzner D, Pietragallo L, Sulecki M, Tarhini A, Boyiadzis M (2012) Long-term results of chemoimmunotherapy with low-dose fludarabine, cyclophosphamide and high-dose rituximab as initial treatment for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 119:3184–3185

Fresquet V, Rieger M, Carolis C, Garcia-Barchino MJ, Martinez-Climent JA (2014) Acquired mutations in BCL2 family proteins conferring resistance to the BH3 mimetic ABT-199 in lymphoma. Blood 123:4111–4119

Fukuda T, Chen L, Endo T, Tang L, Lu D, Castro JE, Widhopf GF 2nd, Rassenti LZ, Cantwell MJ, Prussak CE et al (2008) Antisera induced by infusions of autologous Ad-CD154-leukemia B cells identify ROR1 as an oncofetal antigen and receptor for Wnt5a. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:3047–3052

Furman RR, Sharman JP, Coutre SE, Cheson BD, Pagel JM, Hillmen P, Barrientos JC, Zelenetz AD, Kipps TJ, Flinn I et al (2014) Idelalisib and rituximab in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 370:997–1007

Furney SJ, Pedersen M, Gentien D, Dumont AG, Rapinat A, Desjardins L, Turajlic S, Piperno-Neumann S, de la Grange P, Roman-Roman S et al (2013) SF3B1 mutations are associated with alternative splicing in uveal melanoma. Cancer Discov 3:1122–1129

Geisler CH, van T'Veer MB, Jurlander J, Walewski J, Tjonnfjord G, Itala Remes M, Kimby E, Kozak T, Polliack A, Wu KL et al (2014) Frontline low-dose alemtuzumab with fludarabine and cyclophosphamide prolongs progression-free survival in high-risk CLL. Blood 123:3255–3262

Ghia P, Guida G, Stella S, Gottardi D, Geuna M, Strola G, Scielzo C, Caligaris-Cappio F (2003) The pattern of CD38 expression defines a distinct subset of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) patients at risk of disease progression. Blood 101:1262–1269

Goede V, Fischer K, Busch R, Engelke A, Eichhorst B, Wendtner CM, Chagorova T, de la Serna J, Dilhuydy MS, Illmer T et al (2014) Obinutuzumab plus chlorambucil in patients with CLL and coexisting conditions. N Engl J Med 370:1101–1110

Goede V, Fischer K, Engelke A, Schlag R, Lepretre S, Montero LF, Montillo M, Fegan C, Asikanius E, Humphrey K et al (2015) Obinutuzumab as frontline treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia: updated results of the CLL11 study. Leukemia 29:1602–1604

Granziero L, Circosta P, Scielzo C, Frisaldi E, Stella S, Geuna M, Giordano S, Ghia P, Caligaris-Cappio F (2003) CD100/Plexin-B1 interactions sustain proliferation and survival of normal and leukemic CD5+ B lymphocytes. Blood 101:1962–1969

Gribben JG, O'Brien S (2011) Update on therapy of chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol 29:544–550

Gricks CS, Zahrieh D, Zauls AJ, Gorgun G, Drandi D, Mauerer K, Neuberg D, Gribben JG (2004) Differential regulation of gene expression following CD40 activation of leukemic compared to healthy B cells. Blood 104:4002–4009

Hallek M (2015) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia: 2015 update on diagnosis, risk stratification, and treatment. Am J Hematol 90:446–460

Hallek M, Cheson BD, Catovsky D, Caligaris-Cappio F, Dighiero G, Dohner H, Hillmen P, Keating MJ, Montserrat E, Rai KR, Kipps TJ (2008) Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia: a report from the International Workshop on Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia updating the National Cancer Institute-Working Group 1996 guidelines. Blood 111:5446–5456

Hallek M, Fischer K, Fingerle-Rowson G, Fink AM, Busch R, Mayer J, Hensel M, Hopfinger G, Hess G, von Grunhagen U et al (2010) Addition of rituximab to fludarabine and cyclophosphamide in patients with chronic lymphocytic leukaemia: a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. Lancet 376:1164–1174

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144:646–674

Herman SE, Gordon AL, Wagner AJ, Heerema NA, Zhao W, Flynn JM, Jones J, Andritsos L, Puri KD, Lannutti BJ et al (2010) Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-delta inhibitor CAL-101 shows promising preclinical activity in chronic lymphocytic leukemia by antagonizing intrinsic and extrinsic cellular survival signals. Blood 116:2078–2088

Herman SE, Montraveta A, Niemann CU, Mora-Jensen H, Gulrajani M, Krantz F, Mantel R, Smith LL, McClanahan F, Harrington B et al (2016) The Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor acalabrutinib demonstrates potent on-target effects and efficacy in two mouse models of chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Clin Cancer Res [Epub ahead of print]

Herndon TM, Chen SS, Saba NS, Valdez J, Emson C, Gatmaitan M, Tian X, Hughes TE, Sun C, Arthur DC et al (2017) Direct in vivo evidence for increased proliferation of CLL cells in lymph nodes compared to bone marrow and peripheral blood. Leukemia [Epub ahead of print]. doi:10.1038/leu.2017.11

Hoellenriegel J, Meadows SA, Sivina M, Wierda WG, Kantarjian H, Keating MJ, Giese N, O'Brien S, Yu A, Miller LL et al (2011) The phosphoinositide 3′-kinase delta inhibitor,

CAL-101, inhibits B-cell receptor signaling and chemokine networks in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 118:3603–3612

Huw LY, O'Brien C, Pandita A, Mohan S, Spoerke JM, Lu S, Wang Y, Hampton GM, Wilson TR, Lackner MR (2013) Acquired PIK3CA amplification causes resistance to selective phosphoinositide 3-kinase inhibitors in breast cancer. Oncogenesis 2:e83

International CLL-IPI Working Group (2016) An international prognostic index for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (CLL-IPI): a meta-analysis of individual patient data. Lancet Oncol 17:779–790

Iyengar S, Clear A, Bodor C, Maharaj L, Lee A, Calaminici M, Matthews J, Iqbal S, Auer R, Gribben J, Joel S (2013) P110alpha-mediated constitutive PI3K signaling limits the efficacy of p110delta-selective inhibition in mantle cell lymphoma, particularly with multiple relapse. Blood 121:2274–2284

Jitschin R, Braun M, Qorraj M, Saul D, Le Blanc K, Zenz T, Mougiakakos D (2015) Stromal cell-mediated glycolytic switch in CLL cells involves Notch-c-Myc signaling. Blood 125:3432–3436

Kalos M (2016) Chimeric antigen receptor-engineered T cells in CLL: the next chapter unfolds. J Immunother Cancer 4:5

Kaufman M, Limaye SA, Driscoll N, Johnson C, Caramanica A, Lebowicz Y, Patel D, Kohn N, Rai K (2009) A combination of rituximab, cyclophosphamide and dexamethasone effectively treats immune cytopenias of chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma 50:892–899

Kay NE, O'Brien SM, Pettitt AR, Stilgenbauer S (2007) The role of prognostic factors in assessing "high-risk" subgroups of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leukemia 21:1885–1891

Keating MJ (1999) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Semin Oncol 26:107–114

Komarova NL, Burger JA, Wodarz D (2014) Evolution of ibrutinib resistance in chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL). Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111:13906–13911

Lampson BL, Kasar SN, Matos TR, Morgan EA, Rassenti L, Davids MS, Fisher DC, Freedman AS, Jacobson CA, Armand P et al (2016) Idelalisib given front-line for treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia causes frequent immune-mediated hepatotoxicity. Blood 128:195–203

Landau DA, Tausch E, Taylor-Weiner AN, Stewart C, Reiter JG, Bahlo J, Kluth S, Bozic I, Lawrence M, Bottcher S et al (2015) Mutations driving CLL and their evolution in progression and relapse. Nature 526:525–530

Lannutti BJ, Meadows SA, Herman SE, Kashishian A, Steiner B, Johnson AJ, Byrd JC, Tyner JW, Loriaux MM, Deininger M et al (2011) CAL-101, a p110delta selective phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase inhibitor for the treatment of B-cell malignancies, inhibits PI3K signaling and cellular viability. Blood 117:591–594

Lee YK, Shanafelt TD, Bone ND, Strege AK, Jelinek DF, Kay NE (2005) VEGF receptors on chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) B cells interact with STAT 1 and 3: implication for apoptosis resistance. Leukemia 19:513–523

Leu JI, Dumont P, Hafey M, Murphy ME, George DL (2004) Mitochondrial p53 activates Bak and causes disruption of a Bak-Mcl1 complex. Nat Cell Biol 6:443–450

Liang L, Zhao M, Zhu YC, Hu X, Yang LP, Liu H (2016) Efficacy of lenalidomide in relapsed/refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia patient: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ann Hematol 95:1473–1482

Liu TM, Woyach JA, Zhong Y, Lozanski A, Lozanski G, Dong S, Strattan E, Lehman A, Zhang X, Jones JA et al (2015) Hypermorphic mutation of phospholipase C, gamma2 acquired in ibrutinib-resistant CLL confers BTK independency upon B-cell receptor activation. Blood 126:61–68

Lundin J, Kimby E, Bjorkholm M, Broliden PA, Celsing F, Hjalmar V, Mollgard L, Rebello P, Hale G, Waldmann H et al (2002) Phase II trial of subcutaneous anti-CD52 monoclonal antibody alemtuzumab (Campath-1H) as first-line treatment for patients with B-cell chronic lymphocytic leukemia (B-CLL). Blood 100:768–773

Lutzny G, Kocher T, Schmidt-Supprian M, Rudelius M, Klein-Hitpass L, Finch AJ, Durig J, Wagner M, Haferlach C, Kohlmann A et al (2013) Protein kinase c-beta-dependent activation

of NF-kappaB in stromal cells is indispensable for the survival of chronic lymphocytic leukemia B cells in vivo. Cancer Cell 23:77–92

Maddocks KJ, Ruppert AS, Lozanski G, Heerema NA, Zhao W, Abruzzo L, Lozanski A, Davis M, Gordon A, Smith LL et al (2015) Etiology of Ibrutinib Therapy Discontinuation and Outcomes in Patients With Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia. JAMA Oncol 1:80–87

Malcikova J, Pavlova S, Kozubik KS, Pospisilova S (2014) TP53 mutation analysis in clinical practice: lessons from chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Hum Mutat 35:663–671

Malcikova J, Smardova J, Rocnova L, Tichy B, Kuglik P, Vranova V, Cejkova S, Svitakova M, Skuhrova Francova H, Brychtova Y et al (2009) Monoallelic and biallelic inactivation of TP53 gene in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: selection, impact on survival, and response to DNA damage. Blood 114:5307–5314

Mauro FR, Foa R, Cerretti R, Giannarelli D, Coluzzi S, Mandelli F, Girelli G (2000) Autoimmune hemolytic anemia in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: clinical, therapeutic, and prognostic features. Blood 95:2786–2792

Messina M, Del Giudice I, Khiabanian H, Rossi D, Chiaretti S, Rasi S, Spina V, Holmes AB, Marinelli M, Fabbri G et al (2014) Genetic lesions associated with chronic lymphocytic leukemia chemo-refractoriness. Blood 123:2378–2388

Mohr J, Helfrich H, Fuge M, Eldering E, Buhler A, Winkler D, Volden M, Kater AP, Mertens D, Te Raa D et al (2011) DNA damage-induced transcriptional program in CLL: biological and diagnostic implications for functional p53 testing. Blood 117:1622–1632

Muellner MK, Uras IZ, Gapp BV, Kerzendorfer C, Smida M, Lechtermann H, Craig-Mueller N, Colinge J, Duernberger G, Nijman SM (2011) A chemical-genetic screen reveals a mechanism of resistance to PI3K inhibitors in cancer. Nat Chem Biol 7:787–793

Muzio M, Scielzo C, Bertilaccio MT, Frenquelli M, Ghia P, Caligaris-Cappio F (2009) Expression and function of toll like receptors in chronic lymphocytic leukaemia cells. Br J Haematol 144:507–516

O'Brien S, Furman RR, Coutre SE, Sharman JP, Burger JA, Blum KA, Grant B, Richards DA, Coleman M, Wierda WG et al (2014) Ibrutinib as initial therapy for elderly patients with chronic lymphocytic leukaemia or small lymphocytic lymphoma: an open-label, multicentre, phase 1b/2 trial. Lancet Oncol 15:48–58

O'Brien S, Jones JA, Coutre SE, Mato AR, Hillmen P, Tam C, Osterborg A, Siddiqi T, Thirman MJ, Furman RR et al (2016) Ibrutinib for patients with relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukaemia with 17p deletion (RESONATE-17): a phase 2, open-label, multicentre study. Lancet Oncol 17:1409–1418

Okkenhaug K, Vanhaesebroeck B (2003) PI3K in lymphocyte development, differentiation and activation. Nat Rev Immunol 3:317–330

Paggetti J, Haderk F, Seiffert M, Janji B, Distler U, Ammerlaan W, Kim YJ, Adam J, Lichter P, Solary E et al (2015) Exosomes released by chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells induce the transition of stromal cells into cancer-associated fibroblasts. Blood 126:1106–1117

Pepper C, Hewamana S, Brennan P, Fegan C (2009) NF-kappaB as a prognostic marker and therapeutic target in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Future Oncol 5:1027–1037

Pflug N, Bahlo J, Shanafelt TD, Eichhorst BF, Bergmann MA, Elter T, Bauer K, Malchau G, Rabe KG, Stilgenbauer S et al (2014) Development of a comprehensive prognostic index for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 124:49–62

Porter DL, Levine BL, Kalos M, Bagg A, June CH (2011) Chimeric antigen receptor-modified T cells in chronic lymphoid leukemia. N Engl J Med 365:725–733

Pospisilova S, Gonzalez D, Malcikova J, Trbusek M, Rossi D, Kater AP, Cymbalista F, Eichhorst B, Hallek M, Dohner H et al (2012) ERIC recommendations on TP53 mutation analysis in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Leukemia 26:1458–1461

Pozzo F, Bittolo T, Arruga F, Bulian P, Macor P, Tissino E, Gizdic B, Rossi FM, Bomben R, Zucchetto A et al (2016) NOTCH1 mutations associate with low CD20 level in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: evidence for a NOTCH1 mutation-driven epigenetic dysregulation. Leukemia 30:182–189

Puente XS, Bea S, Valdes-Mas R, Villamor N, Gutierrez-Abril J, Martin-Subero JI, Munar M, Rubio-Perez C, Jares P, Aymerich M et al (2015) Non-coding recurrent mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Nature 526:519–524

Puente XS, Pinyol M, Quesada V, Conde L, Ordonez GR, Villamor N, Escaramis G, Jares P, Bea S, Gonzalez-Diaz M et al (2011) Whole-genome sequencing identifies recurrent mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. Nature 475:101–105

Purroy N, Abrisqueta P, Carabia J, Carpio C, Palacio C, Bosch F, Crespo M (2015) Co-culture of primary CLL cells with bone marrow mesenchymal cells, CD40 ligand and CpG ODN promotes proliferation of chemoresistant CLL cells phenotypically comparable to those proliferating in vivo. Oncotarget 6:7632–7643

Quesada V, Conde L, Villamor N, Ordonez GR, Jares P, Bassaganyas L, Ramsay AJ, Bea S, Pinyol M, Martinez-Trillos A et al (2011) Exome sequencing identifies recurrent mutations of the splicing factor SF3B1 gene in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Nat Genet 44:47–52

Rai KR, Sawitsky A, Cronkite EP, Chanana AD, Levy RN, Pasternack BS (1975) Clinical staging of chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 46:219–234

Ramsay AG, Johnson AJ, Lee AM, Gorgun G, Le Dieu R, Blum W, Byrd JC, Gribben JG (2008) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia T cells show impaired immunological synapse formation that can be reversed with an immunomodulating drug. J Clin Invest 118:2427–2437

Rassenti LZ, Huynh L, Toy TL, Chen L, Keating MJ, Gribben JG, Neuberg DS, Flinn IW, Rai KR, Byrd JC et al (2004) ZAP-70 compared with immunoglobulin heavy-chain gene mutation status as a predictor of disease progression in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 351:893–901

Riches JC, Gribben JG (2016) Mechanistic and clinical aspects of lenalidomide treatment for chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Curr Cancer Drug Targets 16:689–700

Robak T, Dmoszynska A, Solal-Celigny P, Warzocha K, Loscertales J, Catalano J, Afanasiev BV, Larratt L, Geisler CH, Montillo M et al (2010) Rituximab plus fludarabine and cyclophosphamide prolongs progression-free survival compared with fludarabine and cyclophosphamide alone in previously treated chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol 28:1756–1765

Roberts AW, Davids MS, Pagel JM, Kahl BS, Puvvada SD, Gerecitano JF, Kipps TJ, Anderson MA, Brown JR, Gressick L et al (2016) Targeting BCL2 with venetoclax in relapsed chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 374:311–322

Rosati E, Sabatini R, Rampino G, Tabilio A, Di Ianni M, Fettucciari K, Bartoli A, Coaccioli S, Screpanti I, Marconi P (2009) Constitutively activated Notch signaling is involved in survival and apoptosis resistance of B-CLL cells. Blood 113:856–865

Rosenquist R, Cortese D, Bhoi S, Mansouri L, Gunnarsson R (2013) Prognostic markers and their clinical applicability in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: where do we stand? Leuk Lymphoma 54:2351–2364

Rossi D (2016) Venetoclax: a new weapon to treat high-risk CLL. Lancet Oncol 17:690–691

Rossi D, Bruscaggin A, Spina V, Rasi S, Khiabanian H, Messina M, Fangazio M, Vaisitti T, Monti S, Chiaretti S et al (2011) Mutations of the SF3B1 splicing factor in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: association with progression and fludarabine-refractoriness. Blood 118:6904–6908

Rossi D, Fangazio M, Rasi S, Vaisitti T, Monti S, Cresta S, Chiaretti S, Del Giudice I, Fabbri G, Bruscaggin A et al (2012) Disruption of BIRC3 associates with fludarabine chemorefractoriness in TP53 wild-type chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 119:2854–2862

Rossi D, Gaidano G (2016) Richter syndrome: pathogenesis and management. Semin Oncol 43:311–319

Schattner EJ (2000) CD40 ligand in CLL pathogenesis and therapy. Leuk Lymphoma 37:461–472

Schott AF, Apel IJ, Nunez G, Clarke MF (1995) Bcl-XL protects cancer cells from p53-mediated apoptosis. Oncogene 11:1389–1394

Secchiero P, Melloni E, di Iasio MG, Tiribelli M, Rimondi E, Corallini F, Gattei V, Zauli G (2009) Nutlin-3 up-regulates the expression of Notch1 in both myeloid and lymphoid leukemic cells, as part of a negative feedback antiapoptotic mechanism. Blood 113:4300–4308

Serra S, Horenstein AL, Vaisitti T, Brusa D, Rossi D, Laurenti L, D'Arena G, Coscia M, Tripodo C, Inghirami G et al (2011) CD73-generated extracellular adenosine in chronic lymphocytic leukemia creates local conditions counteracting drug-induced cell death. Blood 118:6141–6152

Serra S, Vaisitti T, Audrito V, Bologna C, Buonincontri R, Chen SS, Arruga F, Brusa D, Coscia M, Jaksic O et al (2016) Adenosine signaling mediates hypoxic responses in the chronic lymphocytic leukemia microenvironment. Blood Adv 1:15

Sharma S, Galanina N, Guo A, Lee J, Kadri S, Van Slambrouck C, Long B, Wang W, Ming M, Furtado LV et al (2016) Identification of a structurally novel BTK mutation that drives ibrutinib resistance in CLL. Oncotarget 7:68833–68841

Soma LA, Craig FE, Swerdlow SH (2006) The proliferation center microenvironment and prognostic markers in chronic lymphocytic leukemia/small lymphocytic lymphoma. Hum Pathol 37:152–159

Srinivasan L, Sasaki Y, Calado DP, Zhang B, Paik JH, DePinho RA, Kutok JL, Kearney JF, Otipoby KL, Rajewsky K (2009) PI3 kinase signals BCR-dependent mature B cell survival. Cell 139:573–586

Stilgenbauer S, Dohner H (2002) Campath-1H-induced complete remission of chronic lymphocytic leukemia despite p53 gene mutation and resistance to chemotherapy. N Engl J Med 347:452–453

Stilgenbauer S, Eichhorst B, Schetelig J, Coutre S, Seymour JF, Munir T, Puvvada SD, Wendtner CM, Roberts AW, Jurczak W et al (2016) Venetoclax in relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukaemia with 17p deletion: a multicentre, open-label, phase 2 study. Lancet Oncol 17:768–778

Stilgenbauer S, Schnaiter A, Paschka P, Zenz T, Rossi M, Dohner K, Buhler A, Bottcher S, Ritgen M, Kneba M et al (2014) Gene mutations and treatment outcome in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: results from the CLL8 trial. Blood 123:3247–3254

Te Raa GD, Kater AP (2016) TP53 dysfunction in CLL: implications for prognosis and treatment. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol 29:90–99

Tsimberidou AM, Keating MJ (2005) Richter syndrome: biology, incidence, and therapeutic strategies. Cancer 103:216–228

Villamor N, Conde L, Martinez-Trillos A, Cazorla M, Navarro A, Bea S, Lopez C, Colomer D, Pinyol M, Aymerich M et al (2013) NOTCH1 mutations identify a genetic subgroup of chronic lymphocytic leukemia patients with high risk of transformation and poor outcome. Leukemia 27:1100–1106

Vogler M, Butterworth M, Majid A, Walewska RJ, Sun XM, Dyer MJ, Cohen GM (2009) Concurrent up-regulation of BCL-XL and BCL2A1 induces approximately 1000-fold resistance to ABT-737 in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 113:4403–4413

Walter HS, Rule SA, Dyer MJ, Karlin L, Jones C, Cazin B, Quittet P, Shah N, Hutchinson CV, Honda H et al (2016) A phase 1 clinical trial of the selective BTK inhibitor ONO/GS-4059 in relapsed and refractory mature B-cell malignancies. Blood 127:411–419

Wan Y, Wu CJ (2013) SF3B1 mutations in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 121:4627–4634

Wang L, Brooks AN, Fan J, Wan Y, Gambe R, Li S, Hergert S, Yin S, Freeman SS, Levin JZ et al (2016) Transcriptomic characterization of SF3B1 mutation reveals its pleiotropic effects in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Cancer Cell 30:750–763

Wang L, Lawrence MS, Wan Y, Stojanov P, Sougnez C, Stevenson K, Werner L, Sivachenko A, DeLuca DS, Zhang L et al (2011) SF3B1 and other novel cancer genes in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. N Engl J Med 365:2497–2506

Wendtner CM, Hallek M, Fraser GA, Michallet AS, Hillmen P, Durig J, Kalaycio M, Gribben JG, Stilgenbauer S, Buhler A et al (2016) Safety and efficacy of different lenalidomide starting doses in patients with relapsed or refractory chronic lymphocytic leukemia: results of an international multicenter double-blinded randomized phase II trial. Leuk Lymphoma 57:1291–1299

Wiestner A (2012) Emerging role of kinase-targeted strategies in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 120:4684–4691

Woyach JA (2015) Patterns of resistance to B cell-receptor pathway antagonists in chronic lymphocytic leukemia and strategies for management. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2015:355–360

Woyach JA, Furman RR, Liu TM, Ozer HG, Zapatka M, Ruppert AS, Xue L, Li DH, Steggerda SM, Versele M et al (2014a) Resistance mechanisms for the Bruton's tyrosine kinase inhibitor ibrutinib. N Engl J Med 370:2286–2294

Woyach JA, Smucker K, Smith LL, Lozanski A, Zhong Y, Ruppert AS, Lucas D, Williams K, Zhao W, Rassenti L et al (2014b) Prolonged lymphocytosis during ibrutinib therapy is associated with distinct molecular characteristics and does not indicate a suboptimal response to therapy. Blood 123:1810–1817

Woyach JA, Johnson AJ (2015) Targeted therapies in CLL: mechanisms of resistance and strategies for management. Blood 126:471–477

Wu J, Liu C, Tsui ST, Liu D (2016) Second-generation inhibitors of Bruton tyrosine kinase. J Hematol Oncol 9:80

Youle RJ, Strasser A (2008) The BCL-2 protein family: opposing activities that mediate cell death. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 9:47–59

Young A, Ngiow SF, Barkauskas DS, Sult E, Hay C, Blake SJ, Huang Q, Liu J, Takeda K, Teng MW et al (2016) Co-inhibition of CD73 and A2AR adenosine signaling improves anti-tumor immune responses. Cancer Cell 30:391–403

Zenz T, Benner A, Dohner H, Stilgenbauer S (2008a) Chronic lymphocytic leukemia and treatment resistance in cancer: the role of the p53 pathway. Cell Cycle 7:3810–3814

Zenz T, Krober A, Scherer K, Habe S, Buhler A, Benner A, Denzel T, Winkler D, Edelmann J, Schwanen C et al (2008b) Monoallelic TP53 inactivation is associated with poor prognosis in chronic lymphocytic leukemia: results from a detailed genetic characterization with long-term follow-up. Blood 112:3322–3329

Zenz T, Eichhorst B, Busch R, Denzel T, Habe S, Winkler D, Buhler A, Edelmann J, Bergmann M, Hopfinger G et al (2010) TP53 mutation and survival in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. J Clin Oncol 28:4473–4479

Zenz T, Mohr J, Eldering E, Kater AP, Buhler A, Kienle D, Winkler D, Durig J, van Oers MH, Mertens D et al (2009) miR-34a as part of the resistance network in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. Blood 113:3801–3808

Zhang S, Wu CC, Fecteau JF, Cui B, Chen L, Zhang L, Wu R, Rassenti L, Lao F, Weigand S, Kipps TJ (2013) Targeting chronic lymphocytic leukemia cells with a humanized monoclonal antibody specific for CD44. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110:6127–6132

Zhou Q, Lee GS, Brady J, Datta S, Katan M, Sheikh A, Martins MS, Bunney TD, Santich BH, Moir S et al (2012) A hypermorphic missense mutation in PLCG2, encoding phospholipase Cgamma2, causes a dominantly inherited autoinflammatory disease with immunodeficiency. Am J Hum Genet 91:713–720

Zilfou JT, Lowe SW (2009) Tumor suppressive functions of p53. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 1:a001883

Zucchetto A, Benedetti D, Tripodo C, Bomben R, Dal Bo M, Marconi D, Bossi F, Lorenzon D, Degan M, Rossi FM et al (2009) CD38/CD31, the CCL3 and CCL4 chemokines, and CD49d/vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 are interchained by sequential events sustaining chronic lymphocytic leukemia cell survival. Cancer Res 69:4001–4009

Mechanisms of Resistance to Targeted Therapies in Chronic Myeloid Leukemia

Federico Lussana, Tamara Intermesoli, Paola Stefanoni, and Alessandro Rambaldi

Contents

1 Introduction 232
2 Approved TKIs 233
2.1 First-Generation TKIs: Imatinib 233
2.2 Second-Generation TKIs 234
2.3 Third-Generation TKIs 237
3 Definition of TKI Resistance 238
4 BCR-ABL-Dependent Mechanisms of Resistance 239
4.1 Mutations in the BCR-ABL Domain 239
4.2 Overexpression of BCR-ABL 240
5 BCR-ABL-Independent Mechanisms of Resistance 241
5.1 TKI Influx and Efflux 241
5.2 Activation of Alternative Signaling Pathways 241
5.3 Liver Metabolism 242
5.4 CML Stem Cells 242
5.5 Patient Poor Compliance 243
6 Conclusions 243
References 245

Abstract

Patients with newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) usually received as first-line treatment a first- or second-generation tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI). Although initial responses are high, therapy fails in up to 40% of patients and initial response is lost within 2 years in approximately 25% of patients. In the last few years, intensive efforts have been spent to explain

F. Lussana · T. Intermesoli (✉) · P. Stefanoni
Hematology and Bone Marrow Transplant Unit, ASST Papa Giovanni XXIII Bergamo, Bergamo, Italy
e-mail: tintermesoli@asst-pg23.it

A. Rambaldi
Hematology and Bone Marrow Transplant Unit, ASST Papa Giovanni XXIII Bergamo, Bergamo, Italy

Department of Oncology and Hematology, Università degli Studi di Milano, Milan, Italy

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, https://doi.org/10.1007/164_2017_81

treatment failure, and different mechanisms of resistance have been identified, ranging from BCR-ABL1 kinase domain mutations to lack of adherence to therapy. In this review, we briefly summarize the clinical efficacy of approved TKIs and describe the main mechanisms of TKI resistance.

Keywords
Chronic myeloid leukemia • Mechanisms of TKI resistance • Tyrosine kinase inhibitors

1 Introduction

Chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) is a myeloproliferative disorder due to an uncontrolled expansion of pluripotent hematopoietic cells. CML is characterized by a singular chromosomal abnormality, the t(9;22) translocation responsible for Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome generation (Rowley 1973). The resulting chimeric gene (BCR-ABL) (Shtivelman et al. 1985) codes for a constitutively activated tyrosine kinase (TK) (Lugo et al. 1990). In the last two decades, the prognosis of this disease has dramatically changed, thanks to the clinical approval in 2001 of imatinib (IM), the first BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI). However, with the first imatinib-resistant cases, it became clear that Ph + cells could evolve to elude inhibition, leading investigators to intensive efforts in characterization of different mechanisms of resistance and subsequently in the development of novel inhibitors. In 2006 and 2007, second-generation TKIs were approved (nilotinib, NI, and dasatinib, DA) initially only for patients with CML intolerant or resistant to IM. More recently, due to their efficacy in obtaining faster cytogenetic and molecular response, NI and DA have been registered also for newly diagnosed CML (Kantarjian et al. 2010; Saglio et al. 2010). Bosutinib (BO) is the more recent second-generation TKI approved for CML patients resistant or intolerant to prior therapy (Cortes et al. 2012a), while ponatinib (PO), a third-generation TKI, is nowadays usable only in patients with T315I mutation or for those with unacceptable side effects emerging during treatment with DA or NI (Cortes et al. 2013).

These five drugs act occupying the nucleotide-binding pocket of the BCR-ABL protein and block the access to ATP (Fig. 1) with a consequent inactivation of the signal transduction pathways. The BCR-ABL kinase inactivity causes a transcriptional modulation of different genes involved in the control of the cell cycle determining the apoptotic death of Ph + cells (Druker and Lydon 2000; Hantschel et al. 2008; Liu and Gray 2006).

TKIs can be divided in two classes according to their molecular mechanism of action:

- Type 1 (DA and BO) target the ATP-binding site of the kinase in the catalytically active form.
- Type 2 (IM, NI, and PO) bind and stabilize the kinase domain in an inactive conformation.

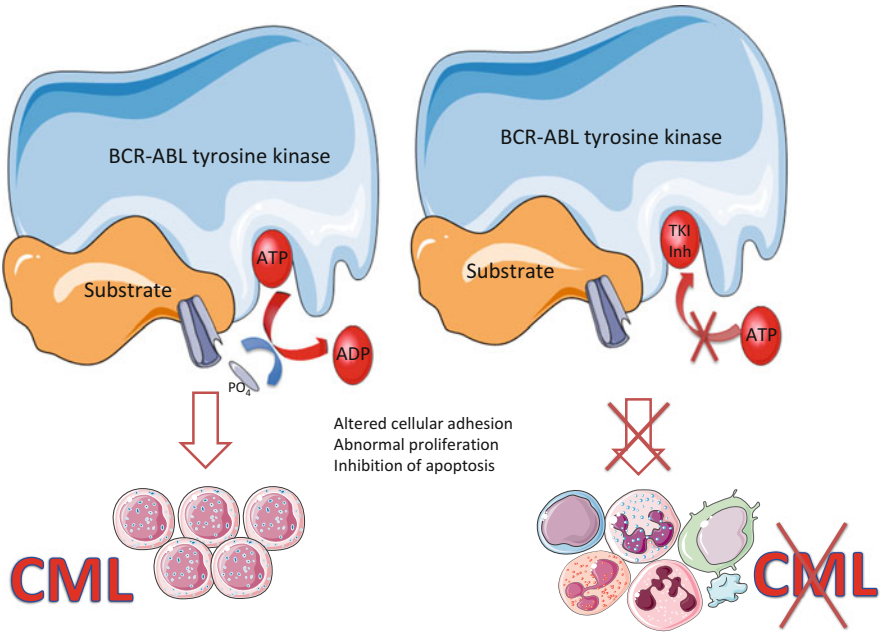


Fig. 1 Schematic representation of mechanism of action of TKI inhibitors

Despite the high rate of response using IM, NI, DA, and BO as frontline treatment of CML and TKIs, treatment failure occurs in some cases. According to European LeukemiaNet recommendations, the definition of TKI resistance has been defined as the inability to achieve an appropriate hematologic, cytogenetic, or molecular response at specific time points (primary resistance) or when the achieved response is lost (acquired or secondary resistance) (Baccarani et al. 2013). Different mechanisms potentially responsible for treatment failure have been described, such as mutations in the BCR-ABL domain, overexpression of BCR-ABL, elevated levels of the enzymes involved in the metabolism of TKIs, overexpression of drug influx and efflux pump, etc. In the daily clinical practice, a correct evaluation of the possible mechanisms of resistance is crucial to optimize the use of the different available TKIs with the key aim to prevent progression to the accelerated or the blastic phase of the disease.

2 Approved TKIs

2.1 First-Generation TKIs: Imatinib

The phase 3 International Randomized Study of Interferon and STI571 (IRIS) was the first clinical study showing a higher clinical activity and a lower toxicity of IM compared to interferon (IFN) plus cytarabine in CML (Hochhaus et al. 2009; O'Brien et al. 2003). In 2001, thanks to these results IM was approved for the

treatment of CML in any hematological phase. In the recent IRIS update, after a median follow-up of 10.9 years, about 65% of patients in the IFN arm switched to IM arm after a median duration therapy of 0.8 years. In the group of patients randomized to receive IM ($n = 553$), the rate of progression to the accelerated or blast phase was 6.9% with an estimated freedom from progression of 92%. The majority of events occurred during the first 4 years of treatment. The estimated event-free survival (EFS) and overall survival (OS) at 10 years were 80% and 83%, respectively. After 10 years of follow-up, 47% of patients are still alive receiving IM, 17.4% were alive not receiving the study drug, 15.6% died, and 20% had unknown survival status. About 25% of patients had cytogenetic assessment at 10 years; among these patients the complete cytogenetic response (CCyR) rate was 92%, while among 204 patients (40%) who had molecular evaluation, the major molecular response (MMR) was 93% and deep molecular response (MR) 63%. Imatinib was in general well tolerated; serious adverse events were registered in 9.3% of patients. Secondary benign or malignant neoplasms were reported in 11% of cases and cardiac events of any cause in 7.1% of patients (Hochhaus et al. 2017). Two independent studies aimed to assess the long-term outcome of patients treated with IM showed that CML-related deaths are very uncommon in patients achieving CCyR, and survival was not different from that of general population (Bower et al. 2016; Gambacorti-Passerini et al. 2011).

Consistent with these results is our experience of 203 consecutive CML patients treated in first line mostly with imatinib (92%). All patients received an accurate clinical, cytogenetic, and molecular follow-up according to ELN recommendations (Baccarani et al. 2013). The median age at diagnosis of the entire cohort was 58 years (range 15–85). After a median follow-up of 5.4 years (range 0.1–15.7), 175 patients (86%) are alive and 28 patients died. Most frequent causes of death were the development of other cancer (43%), CML progression (25%), and cardiac-related death (11%). Remarkably, the median age of patients dying for any reason was 74 (range 38–92). The 8-year OS is 85%, and the estimated risk of CML mortality at 8 years is only 5% (Fig. 2a, b). These findings confirm the reproducibility of the outstanding IRIS results in the daily clinical practice (Hochhaus et al. 2017).

2.2 Second-Generation TKIs

2.2.1 Dasatinib

Early in vitro studies conducted on IM-resistant cell lines showed the higher antileukemic activity of DA compared to IM (O'Hare et al. 2005). Among second-generation BCR-ABL inhibitors, DA was the first registered in 2006 initially for patients with CML resistant or intolerant to IM.

In the phase 3 randomized trial, DASISION patients were randomized to receive DA (100 mg once daily) or IM (400 mg daily) with the possibility to escalate the dose in case of suboptimal response (Kantarjian et al. 2010, 2012). The results of this study, now with a 5-year update, demonstrated the statistically significant higher rate of 5-year MMR and deep MR in patients randomized to DA (76% and 42%) compared

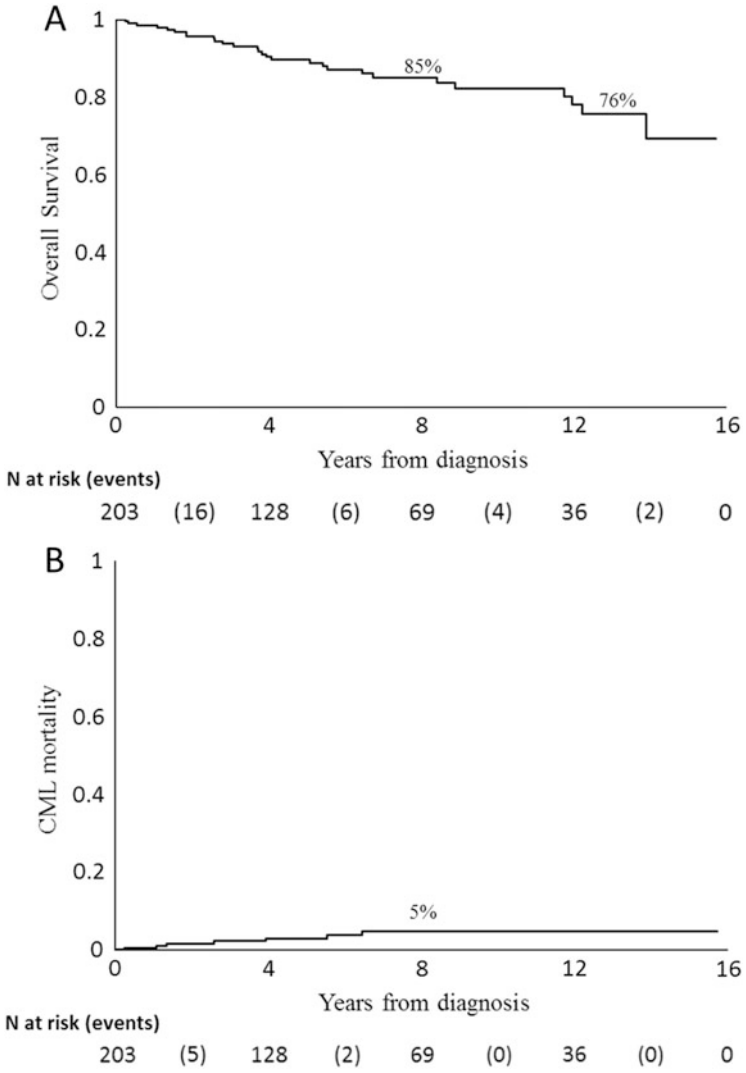


Fig. 2 Long-term results of CML treatment at the Hematology Unit, Ospedale Papa Giovanni XXIII, Bergamo. Panel (**a**), overall survival of the whole CML cohort diagnosed and treated front-line with a TKI. Panel (**b**), CML mortality of the same cohort of patients

to IM arm (64% and 33%). Despite that, the 5-year OS was similar in both arms 91% versus 90% as well as the 5-year PFS 85% versus 86% for DA and IM, respectively. In the intention to treat analysis, the risk of progression by 5 years was 4.6% in the DA group and 7.3% in IM group considering that two patients treated with IM had a CML progression between 3 and 5 years and none with DA. The probability to achieve a BCR/ABL reduction below 10% according to the international scale (IS) was

significantly higher in the DA arm (84% versus 64%). As it is known, achieving a BCR/ABL reduction $\leq$10% (IS) at 3 months is associated with a higher probability to reach a deep molecular response (Marin et al. 2012; Neelakantan et al. 2013).The risk of severe (grade 3 or 4) hematological toxicity was higher in patients treated with DA, as well as the risk of pleural effusion (28% in DA group with respect to 0.8% in IM); this side effect was more frequent in patients older than 65 years. The incidence of pulmonary hypertension (5% versus 0.4%) and arterial ischemic (5% versus 2%) was also higher and in patients treated with DA compared to IM, respectively.

Dasatinib was superior in achieving faster and deeper response with respect to IM, although 5-year PFS and OS were similar in the two arms with a survival rate comparable to that observed in the general population. In terms of safety, the most important side effect of DA is pleural effusion that occurred in about one third of patients, while pulmonary hypertension was reported only in some cases (5%).

2.2.2 Nilotinib

Nilotinib is a selected BCR-ABL second-generation inhibitor which is demonstrated to be more active than IM in vitro studies (Weisberg et al. 2005). The good results in terms of cytogenetic and molecular response in the first phase 3 randomized trial evaluating the efficacy of NI compared to IM for newly diagnosed CML patients named ENESTnd allowed to register NI in 2007 for the treatment of CML in first line (Saglio et al. 2010). The study was designed as a three-arm trial to evaluate two different doses of NI 300 and 400 mg twice a day compared to IM 400 mg single dose. Based on these results, NI was registered at the dose of 300 mg twice daily for first-line therapy (Saglio et al. 2010). The 2-year update of ENESTnd study showed that about 95% of patients in each arm were still in follow-up and the rate of drug discontinuation was 29% and 38% in NI 300 twice daily and IM 400 mg daily, respectively. Treatment discontinuation occurred in 20% of patients allocated to IM due to disease progression, treatment failure, or suboptimal response. In terms of efficacy by 3 years, the MMR rate was significantly higher in NI arm (73%) with respect to IM (53%) (Kantarjian et al. 2011). Considering the probability to achieve deep molecular response, the MR (Kantarjian et al. 2010) rate at 3 years was 50% in NI and 26% in IM ($P < 0.0001$), while the $MR^{4.5}$ rate was 32% versus 15%, respectively. The frequency of CML progression on treatment or during follow-up after drug discontinuation was 3.2% in the NI arm and 6.7% in the IM arm. The OS at 3 years was 95.1% and 94% in NI and IM group, respectively, while considering only CML-related deaths, the estimated rates of OS at 3 years were 98.1% and 95.2%. The principal concern of using NI was related to cardiovascular side effects. The ENESTnd update showed that the risk of peripheral arterial occlusive disease was 1.4% in the NI arm, while none of the case was registered in the IM arm; the risk of ischemic heart disease was higher for patients treated with NI (3.2%) with respect to those receiving IM (1.1%) (Larson et al. 2012). The more recent 5-year update of this study presented at ASCO Meeting in 2014 confirmed the significant superior

efficacy to achieve deep molecular response with NI despite the risk of cardiovascular toxicity which increased to 8% versus 2% in the IM group (Larson et al. 2014).

2.2.3 Bosutinib

In 2012 BO was approved by the FDA only for adult patients with CML resistant or intolerant to other TKIs (Cortes et al. 2011). The BELA (Bosutinib Efficacy and Safety in Newly Diagnosed Chronic Myeloid Leukemia) trial designed to evaluate the efficacy of BO (500 mg once a day) with respect to IM (400 mg) as frontline therapy failed to demonstrate a great superiority, and due to a major gastrointestinal toxicity, the drug did not receive the approval for first-line use (Cortes et al. 2012a). At the time of the recent 24-month analysis, 63% and 71% of patients were on treatment with BO and IM, respectively; the major reasons for discontinuation were severe toxicity (24% and 7%), disease progression/treatment failure (4% and 13%), and death (1% and <1%). As regard to the efficacy, at 24 months the rates of CCyR (58% versus 65%) and MMR (47% versus 41%) with 16% versus 12% of patients who achieved a deep molecular response (MR 4) for BO and IM, respectively, were not significantly different. More patients receiving BO had a BCR/ABL reduction below 10% according to the IS at 3 months, 86% versus 66%. The cumulative incidence of disease progression was 2% and 5% in the BO and IM arm, while the EFS at 24 months was 92% and 88%, respectively. The OS at 24 months was 97% for BO and 95% for IM; deaths due to CML occurred in 6 of 7 patients treated with BO and in 10 of 13 on IM. The major toxicity registered in the BO arm was due to gastrointestinal disorder: the rate of grade 3/4 diarrhea was 12% with respect to 1% in the IM arm. This side effect typically occurred during the first month of treatment. Another frequent side effect was the increase of the transaminase (grade 3/4) that occurred between 12 and 23% of patients in the BO arm with respect to less than 5% in the IM group. No cases of permanent hepatic damage were registered. Cardiovascular adverse effects were uncommon in both arms (<3% for grade >3); no cases of myocardial infarction or PAOD were registered (Brummendorf et al. 2015).

These results demonstrated the efficacy of BO to induce MMR faster than IM reducing the risk of disease progression with an acceptable safe profile characterized by a low to moderate gastrointestinal toxicity.

2.3 Third-Generation TKIs

2.3.1 Ponatinib

Ponatinib is a potent oral kinase inhibitor structurally designed to include a carbon-carbon triple bond that extends from the purine scaffold, permitting the molecule to occupy a position without steric hindrance from the bulky isoleucine residue at position 315 of the BCR-ABL mutant T315I (Cortes et al. 2012b; Goldman 2012). At concentration that is "clinically achievable," PO has shown preclinical activity

against all BCR-ABL mutants tested and has uniformly suppressed the emergency of single-mutant clones in a mutagenesis assay (O'Hare et al. 2009). In a phase 1 study, PO showed substantial antileukemic activity in patients with Ph + leukemias who had a resistance to or unacceptable side effects from previous treatment with tyrosine kinase inhibitors (Cortes et al. 2012b). The efficacy of PO was confirmed in an open-label multinational phase 2 trial enrolling 449 heavily pretreated patients who had CML or Ph + acute lymphoblastic leukemia with resistance to or unacceptable side effects from DA or NI or who had the BCR-ABL T315I mutation (Cortes et al. 2013). Among 267 patients with chronic-phase CML, 56% had a major cytogenetic response by 12 months, 46% had a CCyR, and 34% had a MMR. Responses were observed regardless of the baseline BCR-ABL kinase domain mutation status, and the estimated rate of sustained response of at least 12 months was 91%. Among 83 patients with accelerated-phase CML, the rate of major hematologic response and major cytogenetic response was 55% and 39%, respectively, while among 62 patients with blast-phase CML was 31% and 23%, respectively (Cortes et al. 2013). It is worth noting that serious arterial thrombotic events were observed in 9% of patients, prompting the FDA to issue boxed warnings. Thus, the European Medicines Agency recommends that patient's cardiovascular status be investigated before starting and during therapy with PO, with any risk factors actively managed and their treatment optimized (Hoy 2014).

3 Definition of TKI Resistance

The term "resistance" to a drug should be used when a drug is unable to hit its pharmacological target, due to inability to reach it (as a consequence of reduced bioavailability, in vivo inactivation, negative interaction with other substances) or to alterations of the target. In the last few years, the problem of "TKI resistance" has been largely emphasized in the medical literature, although the term has been used to refer more broadly to treatment failures based on clinical outcomes. The accepted definition of TKI resistance is treatment failure (primary resistance) or when the achieved response is lost (acquired or secondary resistance). Primary resistance can be subdivided in primary hematologic resistance that occurs in 2–4% of patients and cytogenetic resistance that occurs in 15–25% of patients (Shah 2007). Resistance to TKIs based on clinical outcomes can be explained by genomic mechanisms but also by BCR-ABL1-independent mechanisms that should never be laid aside. In this regard, a recent study showed that a lack of compliance accounted for the majority of poor TKI response and was the only significant mediator of poor clinical outcome (Noens et al. 2014). Therefore, a wide evaluation of potential different causes of clinical resistance ranging from patient-related to drug-related factors is necessary. In Table 1 are reported the main potential mechanisms of TKI resistance.

Table 1 Mechanisms of TKI resistance

Mechanisms of TKI resistance
BCR-ABL dependent
ABL1 kinase domain mutations
Increased BCR-ABL1 expression
BCR-ABL independent
Poor compliance
Drug influx and efflux
Activation of alternative signaling pathways
Plasma TKI concentration
Insensitivity of quiescent stem cells

4 BCR-ABL-Dependent Mechanisms of Resistance

4.1 Mutations in the BCR-ABL Domain

The most frequent mechanism of resistance is ABL kinase domain point mutation that directly or indirectly impairs appropriate TKIs binding to the kinase pocket either by altering BCR-ABL conformation with reduced affinity to the specific inhibitor or by interfering with a TKI-binding site. Mutations are located in different structural subunits of kinase domain and have been classified into four categories: (1) the direct binding site, (2) the phosphate-binding loop (P-loop), (3) the activation loop (A-loop), and (4) the catalytic loop (C-loop). The acquisition of point mutations in the ABL tyrosine kinase domain of BCR-ABL is observed in more than 50% of CML patients with clinical resistance and is more frequently found in patients with acquired resistance rather than primary resistance (Ernst et al. 2011; Hochhaus et al. 2002; Jabbour et al. 2006; Lahaye et al. 2005; Soverini et al. 2006). The first report of kinase domain mutation for IM-resistant was in 2001 when Sawyers and colleagues described that BCR-ABL1 could escape from inhibition by changing the shape of IM binding pocket (Gorre et al. 2001). The described mutation results in an amino acid substitution at position 315 in BCR-ABL, from a threonine (T) to an isoleucine group (I) (Soverini et al. 2006). This mutation is one of the most frequent mutations detected in 4–15% of IM-resistant patients (Jabbour et al. 2006, 2008; Soverini et al. 2006) and confers the highest resistance to IM and to the second-generation TKIs DA, NI, and BO (Mauro 2013). This mutation and others similarly affecting phosphate-binding loop (P-loop) of BCR-ABL are associated with a greater level of resistance (Khorashad et al. 2008; Nicolini et al. 2006), whereas other mutations have different clinical properties, and some of them are functionally irrelevant (Branford et al. 2003; Hochhaus 2003). To date, about 100 different BCR-ABL1 kinase domain mutations have been related to IM and to a lesser extent to second-generation TKI resistance (Milojkovic and Apperley 2009; O'Hare et al. 2012). The most frequent mutations detected in IM-resistant patients

were M244V, G250E, Y253F/H, E255K/V, T315I, F317L, M351T, E355T, F359V, and H396R/P (Soverini et al. 2011). Among patients relapsing on NI, the most frequent mutations observed were Y253H, E255K/V, F359V/C/I, or T315I, while among those relapsed on DA were V299L, F317L/V/I/C, and T315A/I mutations (Baccarani et al. 2013; Soverini et al. 2011; Cortes et al. 2016). For BO, L299V and T315I mutations induce a high degree of resistance. In Table 1, we summarize the sensitivity of more frequent BCR-ABL kinase mutations to second- and third-generation TKIs.

Patient carriers of TKI-resistant clones seem to be at higher risk to accumulate additional genomic aberrations leading to progression to blast crisis (Soverini et al. 2005). In particular, IM-resistant patients had higher likelihood of relapse associated with development of further mutations compared to patients who did not have mutations (Soverini et al. 2009).

Interestingly, resistance due to kinase domain mutations may pre-exist before any TKI exposure and selection pressure (Roche-Lestienne et al. 2002; Willis et al. 2005). Limited data are available from IM-naive patients regarding the incidence of BCR-ABL kinase domain mutations and their correlation with the therapeutic response (Carella et al. 2010). A study involving 100 patients with newly diagnosed CML showed that a pre-existing ABL kinase domain mutations in CD34+ cells were detected in about one third of patients, and their presence (including F311L, M351T, and T315I) was associated with IM resistance. These results suggest a potential importance to detect pre-existing BCR-ABL mutations as basis for selection of appropriate first-line drug therapy (Iqbal et al. 2013). However, at present, there is no definite demonstration of an association with clinical events conditioning cost-effective changes in patient management. In addition, highly resistant clones may pre-exist and emerge rapidly also in patients receiving second-generation TKIs at CML diagnosis (Kantarjian et al. 2012; Larson et al. 2012; Hochhaus et al. 2013; Rosti et al. 2009). Lastly, the probability to develop mutations increases with advancing phases of disease (Branford et al. 2009).

4.2 Overexpression of BCR-ABL

The mechanisms involved in resistance due to amplification of BCR-ABL remain to be elucidated. The first evidence of overexpression was observed in animal models (le Coutre et al. 2000) and subsequently in CML patients (Gorre et al. 2001). Recently it has been hypothesized a relationship between BCR-ABL overexpression and the generation of mutations (Tang et al. 2011), suggesting that this mechanism may represent a first step to the development of resistance. In addition, BCR-ABL overexpression seems to enhance self-renewal of leukemic stem cells (Abrahamsson et al. 2009).

5 BCR-ABL-Independent Mechanisms of Resistance

5.1 TKI Influx and Efflux

Drug efficacy depends also from its ability to reach the pharmacological target as a consequence of correct intracellular drug availability. In this regard, the relation between TKIs and their transporter proteins is very relevant, since these proteins regulate the intracellular drug concentrations. The mechanisms of resistance may be due to defective influx or conversely excessive efflux. Both mechanisms can be responsible for a decreased intracellular concentration of IM (Eechoute et al. 2011). The consequences of a reduced intracellular availability of IM might be an inferior ability to cause cell apoptosis, favoring the persistence of subclones that can acquire mutations of BCR-ABL kinase domain conferring insensitivity to the drug.

The drug-intake protein human organic cation transporter 1 (*h*OCT1) regulates the import of IM into the cell. Low activity of *h*OCT1 has been associated with suboptimal response to IM and OS (Crossman et al. 2005; White et al. 2007, 2010a). However, studies using single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) to evaluate the impact of *h*OCT1 variants in response to IM showed controversial results that may be partly due to the small sample size of studies or the use of different criteria for response evaluation and different ethnical population in the studies (Angelini et al. 2013; Giannoudis et al. 2013; Koren-Michowitz et al. 2014; Vine et al. 2014; White et al. 2010b).

Several members of the adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-binding cassette (ABC) transporter protein family have also been associated with resistance to TKIs. Overexpression of P-glycoprotein (P-gp) encoded by subfamily B, member 1 ABCB1 gene, known as multidrug resistance 1 (MDR1) gene, causes an excessive efflux that influences negatively the therapeutic efficacy of TKIs (Deenik et al. 2010; Galimberti et al. 2005; Hegedus et al. 2002; Mahon et al. 2003; Ni et al. 2011; Peng et al. 2012; Widmer et al. 2003). Furthermore, ABCA3, ABCC2, and ABCG2 also seem to confer resistance to IM, NI, and DA (Choudhuri and Klaassen 2006; Shukla et al. 2011).

5.2 Activation of Alternative Signaling Pathways

A mechanism of TKI resistance is the activation of alternative signaling pathways, such as PI3K/AKT, JAK/STAT, Ras/MAPK, and SRC, that compensate the suppression of BCR-ABL kinase activity (Agarwal et al. 2008; Burchert et al. 2005; Donato et al. 2003; Gioia et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2007). As a consequence, cells continue to proliferate despite an effective inhibition of BCR-ABL1. The clinical relevance for this ABL1-independent mechanism of resistance is that some CML patients may be refractory to all available TKIs. In this regard, Cortes and colleagues in patients with refractory Philadelphia-positive leukemia treated with PO observed

a lower molecular response in patients without evidence of BCR-ABL1 mutations compared with carriers of a mutation (Cortes et al. 2012b), suggesting that the involvement of a BCR-ABL-independent mechanism may be responsible for the poor response to PO.

5.3 Liver Metabolism

TKIs are metabolized by the liver, and a part of interindividual variability in response has been demonstrated to correlate with plasma concentration of the drug. The plasma concentration may be influenced by the metabolic activity of the hepatic cytochrome P450, 3A4, and 3A5 that can be inhibited or induced by several different drugs (Peng et al. 2005). Thus, the interference with TKI metabolism by other drugs that are frequently given to patients is very important and should be taken into account. All concomitant medications should be investigated for potential interactions, particularly in patients with several comorbidities and in those with unexpected unsatisfactory response to the treatment (Iurlo et al. 2014). However, at present, there is not enough evidence to recommend in the clinical setting the measurement of TKI concentration.

5.4 CML Stem Cells

There is increasing evidence that most patients relapse after discontinuing TKI therapy even if they had obtained a sustained deep molecular response before stopping treatment (Mahon et al. 2010; Ross et al. 2013). The main hypothesis to explain these results is related to the peculiar biology of CML stem cells, which quite often can be primarily resistant to TKIs (Graham et al. 2002). Leukemic stem cells are CD34+/CD38- and BCR-ABL1 positive and account for less than 1% of CD34+ cells at diagnosis (Copland et al. 2006). These cells are not dependent on BCR-ABL activity for their survival (Zhang and Li 2013) and, accordingly, are generally primarily resistant to TKIs. Thus, they persist dormant during treatment and represent a reservoir to the possible relapse (Chomel and Turhan 2011), as well as an obstacle to successful implement treatment discontinuation strategies. Understanding what controls the persistence of CML stem cells, what is necessary to fully eradicate them, and how that might be approached therapeutically are crucial questions in order to increase the possibility to obtain a definite cure of CML. The available TKIs targeting only mature proliferating cells may not be sufficient to cure CML, and, therefore, it is necessary to identify drugs with new targets to eradicate the residual stem cells of CML. In this regard, omacetaxine is a promising drug approved by FDA (Cortes et al. 2012c) that has been shown effectively targeting CML leukemia stem cells in vivo (Chen et al. 2009).

5.5 Patient Poor Compliance

A suboptimal adherence to the therapy is an important possible cause for an inadequate response (Noens et al. 2014). The main causes of poor compliance go from the perception of stable remission equating to have been cured to simply forgetting. A study analyzed the relation between adherence to IM measured with microelectronic monitoring systems and the probabilities of treatment failure in 87 patients on long-term therapy. An adherence rate less than or equal to 85% was associated with a higher probability of treatment failure (Ibrahim et al. 2011). In this regard, before defining a patient as having TKI resistance and modifying therapy treatment, the lack of adherence to the medication needs to be always considered and ruled out.

6 Conclusions

In the last few years, the problem of CML resistance has been greatly emphasized in the medical literature, and different mechanisms of resistance have been extensively described ranging from BCR-ABL kinase domain mutations to lack of adherence to therapy. In addition, most patients relapse after discontinuing TKI therapy, due to the existence of CML stem cells, which have been demonstrated to be primarily resistant to TKIs. As a consequence, although most patients with CML would have a life expectancy close to normal (Bower et al. 2016; Gambacorti-Passerini et al. 2011), they require to continue TKIs for life and to be carefully monitored for signs of resistance in order to change therapy promptly. The future challenge is to identify all mechanisms of resistance, to optimize the use of different TKIs, and to combine them with new drugs that specifically target CML leukemic stem cells with the aim to prevent transformation and to eradicate the disease. The clinical implications of obtaining the cure of CML are potentially important both for patients and health-care systems, considering the issues of compliance to indefinite treatment, side effects, and costs (Table 2).

In Fig. 3, we summarize our present suggestions in the management of CML patients, according to the mutation type and patients' risk profile.

Table 2 Sensitivity of more frequent BCR-ABL1 kinase mutations to second- and third-generation TKIs

	Nilotinib	Dasatinib	Bosutinib	Ponatinib
Less sensitive	E255K/V	E255K/V	E2555K/V	E255K/V
	Y253H	Q252H		
	F359C/V	V299L		
		F317L		
Resistant	T315I	T315A/I	T315I	T315M
			V299L	

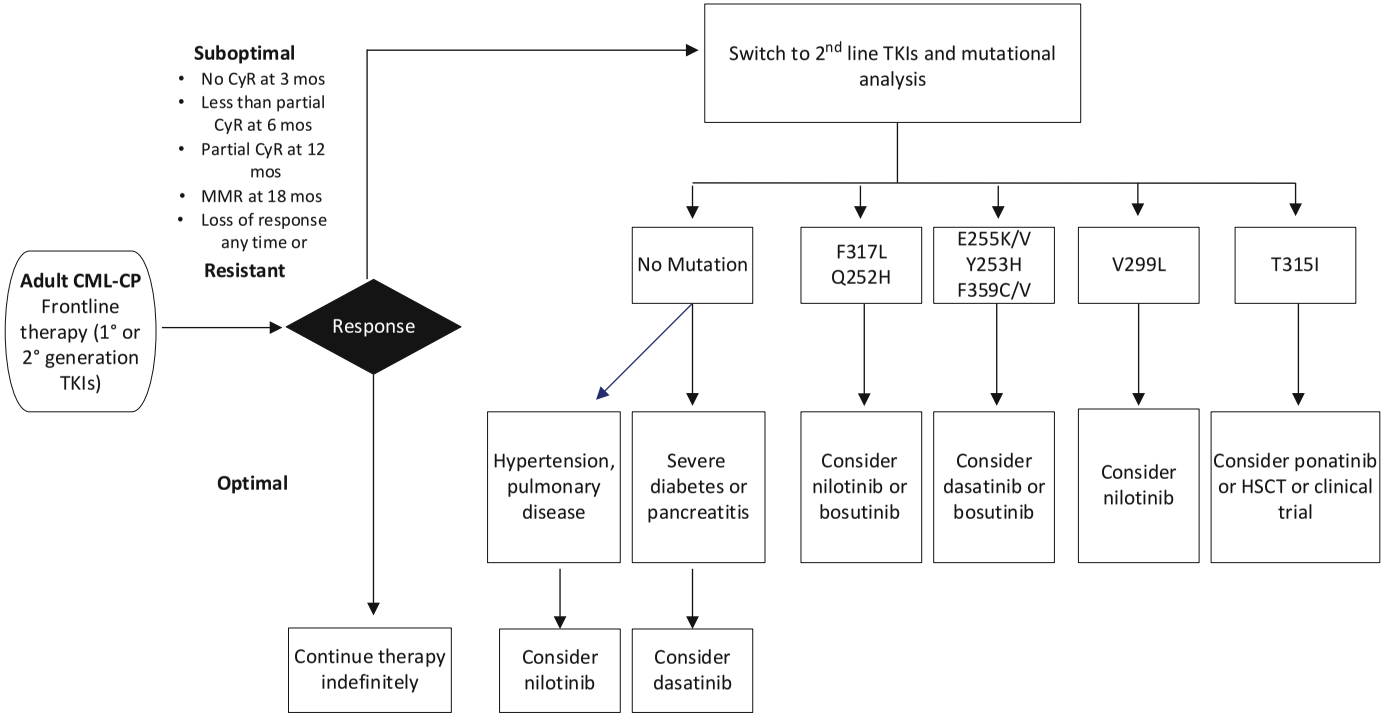


Fig. 3 Algorithm for management of CML patients, according to the mutation type and patients' risk profile. *CML* chronic myeloid leukemia, *CP* chronic phase, *CyR* cytogenetic response, *MMR* major molecular response, *HCST* hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, *mos* months

References

Abrahamsson AE, Geron I, Gotlib J, Dao KH, Barroga CF, Newton IG, Giles FJ, Durocher J, Creusot RS, Karimi M et al (2009) Glycogen synthase kinase 3beta missplicing contributes to leukemia stem cell generation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(10):3925–3929

Agarwal A, Eide CA, Harlow A, Corbin AS, Mauro MJ, Druker BJ, Corless CL, Heinrich MC, Deininger MW (2008) An activating KRAS mutation in imatinib-resistant chronic myeloid leukemia. Leukemia 22(12):2269–2272

Angelini S, Soverini S, Ravegnini G, Barnett M, Turrini E, Thornquist M, Pane F, Hughes TP, White DL, Radich J et al (2013) Association between imatinib transporters and metabolizing enzymes genotype and response in newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia patients receiving imatinib therapy. Haematologica 98(2):193–200

Baccarani M, Deininger MW, Rosti G, Hochhaus A, Soverini S, Apperley JF, Cervantes F, Clark RE, Cortes JE, Guilhot F et al (2013) European LeukemiaNet recommendations for the management of chronic myeloid leukemia: 2013. Blood 122(6):872–884

Bower H, Bjorkholm M, Dickman PW, Hoglund M, Lambert PC, Andersson TM (2016) Life expectancy of patients with chronic myeloid leukemia approaches the life expectancy of the general population. J Clin Oncol 34(24):2851–2857

Branford S, Rudzki Z, Walsh S, Parkinson I, Grigg A, Szer J, Taylor K, Herrmann R, Seymour JF, Arthur C et al (2003) Detection of BCR-ABL mutations in patients with CML treated with imatinib is virtually always accompanied by clinical resistance, and mutations in the ATP phosphate-binding loop (P-loop) are associated with a poor prognosis. Blood 102(1):276–283

Branford S, Melo JV, Hughes TP (2009) Selecting optimal second-line tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy for chronic myeloid leukemia patients after imatinib failure: does the BCR-ABL mutation status really matter? Blood 114(27):5426–5435

Brummendorf TH, Cortes JE, de Souza CA, Guilhot F, Duvillie L, Pavlov D, Gogat K, Countouriotis AM, Gambacorti-Passerini C (2015) Bosutinib versus imatinib in newly diagnosed chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukaemia: results from the 24-month follow-up of the BELA trial. Br J Haematol 168(1):69–81

Burchert A, Wang Y, Cai D, von Bubnoff N, Paschka P, Muller-Brusselbach S, Ottmann OG, Duyster J, Hochhaus A, Neubauer A (2005) Compensatory PI3-kinase/Akt/mTor activation regulates imatinib resistance development. Leukemia 19(10):1774–1782

Carella AM, Garuti A, Cirmena G, Catania G, Rocco I, Palermo C, Pica G, Pierri I, Miglino M, Ballestrero A et al (2010) Kinase domain mutations of BCR-ABL identified at diagnosis before imatinib-based therapy are associated with progression in patients with high Sokal risk chronic phase chronic myeloid leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma 51(2):275–278

Chen Y, Hu Y, Michaels S, Segal D, Brown D, Li S (2009) Inhibitory effects of omacetaxine on leukemic stem cells and BCR-ABL-induced chronic myeloid leukemia and acute lymphoblastic leukemia in mice. Leukemia 23(8):1446–1454

Chomel JC, Turhan AG (2011) Chronic myeloid leukemia stem cells in the era of targeted therapies: resistance, persistence and long-term dormancy. Oncotarget 2(9):713–727

Choudhuri S, Klaassen CD (2006) Structure, function, expression, genomic organization, and single nucleotide polymorphisms of human ABCB1 (MDR1), ABCC (MRP), and ABCG2 (BCRP) efflux transporters. Int J Toxicol 25(4):231–259

Copland M, Hamilton A, Elrick LJ, Baird JW, Allan EK, Jordanides N, Barow M, Mountford JC, Holyoake TL (2006) Dasatinib (BMS-354825) targets an earlier progenitor population than imatinib in primary CML but does not eliminate the quiescent fraction. Blood 107(11):4532–4539

Cortes JE, Kantarjian HM, Brummendorf TH, Kim DW, Turkina AG, Shen ZX, Pasquini R, Khoury HJ, Arkin S, Volkert A et al (2011) Safety and efficacy of bosutinib (SKI-606) in chronic phase Philadelphia chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukemia patients with resistance or intolerance to imatinib. Blood 118(17):4567–4576

Cortes JE, Kim DW, Kantarjian HM, Brummendorf TH, Dyagil I, Griskevicius L, Malhotra H, Powell C, Gogat K, Countouriotis AM et al (2012a) Bosutinib versus imatinib in newly diagnosed chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia: results from the BELA trial. J Clin Oncol 30(28):3486–3492

Cortes JE, Kantarjian H, Shah NP, Bixby D, Mauro MJ, Flinn I, O'Hare T, Hu S, Narasimhan NI, Rivera VM et al (2012b) Ponatinib in refractory Philadelphia chromosome-positive leukemias. N Engl J Med 367(22):2075–2088

Cortes J, Lipton JH, Rea D, Digumarti R, Chuah C, Nanda N, Benichou AC, Craig AR, Michallet M, Nicolini FE et al (2012c) Phase 2 study of subcutaneous omacetaxine mepesuccinate after TKI failure in patients with chronic-phase CML with T315I mutation. Blood 120(13):2573–2580

Cortes JE, Kim DW, Pinilla-Ibarz J, le Coutre P, Paquette R, Chuah C, Nicolini FE, Apperley JF, Khoury HJ, Talpaz M et al (2013) A phase 2 trial of ponatinib in Philadelphia chromosome-positive leukemias. N Engl J Med 369(19):1783–1796

Cortes JE, Saglio G, Kantarjian HM, Baccarani M, Mayer J, Boque C, Shah NP, Chuah C, Casanova L, Bradley-Garelik B et al (2016) Final 5-year study results of DASISION: the dasatinib versus imatinib study in treatment-naive chronic myeloid leukemia patients trial. J Clin Oncol 34(20):2333–2340

le Coutre P, Tassi E, Varella-Garcia M, Barni R, Mologni L, Cabrita G, Marchesi E, Supino R, Gambacorti-Passerini C (2000) Induction of resistance to the Abelson inhibitor STI571 in human leukemic cells through gene amplification. Blood 95(5):1758–1766

Crossman LC, Druker BJ, Deininger MW, Pirmohamed M, Wang L, Clark RE (2005) hOCT 1 and resistance to imatinib. Blood 106(3):1133–1134. Author reply 1134

Deenik W, van der Holt B, Janssen JJ, Chu IW, Valk PJ, Ossenkoppele GJ, van der Heiden IP, Sonneveld P, van Schaik RH, Cornelissen JJ (2010) Polymorphisms in the multidrug resistance gene MDR1 (ABCB1) predict for molecular resistance in patients with newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia receiving high-dose imatinib. Blood 116(26):6144–6145. Author reply 6145–6146

Donato NJ, Wu JY, Stapley J, Gallick G, Lin H, Arlinghaus R, Talpaz M (2003) BCR-ABL independence and LYN kinase overexpression in chronic myelogenous leukemia cells selected for resistance to STI571. Blood 101(2):690–698

Druker BJ, Lydon NB (2000) Lessons learned from the development of an abl tyrosine kinase inhibitor for chronic myelogenous leukemia. J Clin Invest 105(1):3–7

Eechoute K, Sparreboom A, Burger H, Franke RM, Schiavon G, Verweij J, Loos WJ, Wiemer EA, Mathijssen RH (2011) Drug transporters and imatinib treatment: implications for clinical practice. Clin Cancer Res 17(3):406–415

Ernst T, La Rosee P, Muller MC, Hochhaus A (2011) BCR-ABL mutations in chronic myeloid leukemia. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 25(5):997–1008. v-vi

Galimberti S, Cervetti G, Guerrini F, Testi R, Pacini S, Fazzi R, Simi P, Petrini M (2005) Quantitative molecular monitoring of BCR-ABL and MDR1 transcripts in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia during imatinib treatment. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 162(1):57–62

Gambacorti-Passerini C, Antolini L, Mahon FX, Guilhot F, Deininger M, Fava C, Nagler A, Della Casa CM, Morra E, Abruzzese E et al (2011) Multicenter independent assessment of outcomes in chronic myeloid leukemia patients treated with imatinib. J Natl Cancer Inst 103(7):553–561

Giannoudis A, Wang L, Jorgensen AL, Xinarianos G, Davies A, Pushpakom S, Liloglou T, Zhang JE, Austin G, Holyoake TL et al (2013) The hOCT1 SNPs M420del and M408V alter imatinib uptake and M420del modifies clinical outcome in imatinib-treated chronic myeloid leukemia. Blood 121(4):628–637

Gioia R, Leroy C, Drullion C, Lagarde V, Etienne G, Dulucq S, Lippert E, Roche S, Mahon FX, Pasquet JM (2011) Quantitative phosphoproteomics revealed interplay between Syk and Lyn in the resistance to nilotinib in chronic myeloid leukemia cells. Blood 118(8):2211–2221

Goldman JM (2012) Ponatinib for chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 367(22):2148–2149

Gorre ME, Mohammed M, Ellwood K, Hsu N, Paquette R, Rao PN, Sawyers CL (2001) Clinical resistance to STI-571 cancer therapy caused by BCR-ABL gene mutation or amplification. Science 293(5531):876–880

Graham SM, Jorgensen HG, Allan E, Pearson C, Alcorn MJ, Richmond L, Holyoake TL (2002) Primitive, quiescent, Philadelphia-positive stem cells from patients with chronic myeloid leukemia are insensitive to STI571 in vitro. Blood 99(1):319–325

Hantschel O, Rix U, Superti-Furga G (2008) Target spectrum of the BCR-ABL inhibitors imatinib, nilotinib and dasatinib. Leuk Lymphoma 49(4):615–619

Hegedus T, Orfi L, Seprodi A, Varadi A, Sarkadi B, Keri G (2002) Interaction of tyrosine kinase inhibitors with the human multidrug transporter proteins, MDR1 and MRP1. Biochim Biophys Acta 1587(2–3):318–325

Hochhaus A (2003) Cytogenetic and molecular mechanisms of resistance to imatinib. Semin Hematol 40(Supplement 2):69–79

Hochhaus A, Kreil S, Corbin AS, La Rosee P, Muller MC, Lahaye T, Hanfstein B, Schoch C, Cross NC, Berger U et al (2002) Molecular and chromosomal mechanisms of resistance to imatinib (STI571) therapy. Leukemia 16(11):2190–2196

Hochhaus A, O'Brien SG, Guilhot F, Druker BJ, Branford S, Foroni L, Goldman JM, Muller MC, Radich JP, Rudoltz M et al (2009) Six-year follow-up of patients receiving imatinib for the first-line treatment of chronic myeloid leukemia. Leukemia 23(6):1054–1061

Hochhaus A, Saglio G, Larson RA, Kim DW, Etienne G, Rosti G, De Souza C, Kurokawa M, Kalaycio ME, Hoenekopp A et al (2013) Nilotinib is associated with a reduced incidence of BCR-ABL mutations vs imatinib in patients with newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia in chronic phase. Blood 121(18):3703–3708

Hochhaus A, Larson RA, Guilhot F, Radich JP, Branford S, Hughes TP, Baccarani M, Deininger MW, Cervantes F, Fujihara S et al (2017) Long-term outcomes of imatinib treatment for chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 376(10):917–927

Hoy SM (2014) Ponatinib: a review of its use in adults with chronic myeloid leukaemia or Philadelphia chromosome-positive acute lymphoblastic leukaemia. Drugs 74(7):793–806

Ibrahim AR, Eliasson L, Apperley JF, Milojkovic D, Bua M, Szydlo R, Mahon FX, Kozlowski K, Paliompeis C, Foroni L et al (2011) Poor adherence is the main reason for loss of CCyR and imatinib failure for chronic myeloid leukemia patients on long-term therapy. Blood 117 (14):3733–3736

Iqbal Z, Aleem A, Iqbal M, Naqvi MI, Gill A, Taj AS, Qayyum A, ur-Rehman N, Khalid AM, Shah IH et al (2013) Sensitive detection of pre-existing BCR-ABL kinase domain mutations in CD34+ cells of newly diagnosed chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia patients is associated with imatinib resistance: implications in the post-imatinib era. PLoS One 8(2): e55717

Iurlo A, Ubertis A, Artuso S, Bucelli C, Radice T, Zappa M, Cattaneo D, Mari D, Cortelezzi A (2014) Comorbidities and polypharmacy impact on complete cytogenetic response in chronic myeloid leukaemia elderly patients. Eur J Intern Med 25(1):63–66

Jabbour E, Kantarjian H, Jones D, Talpaz M, Bekele N, O'Brien S, Zhou X, Luthra R, Garcia-Manero G, Giles F et al (2006) Frequency and clinical significance of BCR-ABL mutations in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia treated with imatinib mesylate. Leukemia 20 (10):1767–1773

Jabbour E, Kantarjian H, Jones D, Breeden M, Garcia-Manero G, O'Brien S, Ravandi F, Borthakur G, Cortes J (2008) Characteristics and outcomes of patients with chronic myeloid leukemia and T315I mutation following failure of imatinib mesylate therapy. Blood 112 (1):53–55

Kantarjian H, Shah NP, Hochhaus A, Cortes J, Shah S, Ayala M, Moiraghi B, Shen Z, Mayer J, Pasquini R et al (2010) Dasatinib versus imatinib in newly diagnosed chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 362(24):2260–2270

Kantarjian HM, Hochhaus A, Saglio G, De Souza C, Flinn IW, Stenke L, Goh YT, Rosti G, Nakamae H, Gallagher NJ et al (2011) Nilotinib versus imatinib for the treatment of patients with newly diagnosed chronic phase, Philadelphia chromosome-positive, chronic myeloid leukaemia: 24-month minimum follow-up of the phase 3 randomised ENESTnd trial. Lancet Oncol 12(9):841–851

Kantarjian HM, Shah NP, Cortes JE, Baccarani M, Agarwal MB, Undurraga MS, Wang J, Ipina JJ, Kim DW, Ogura M et al (2012) Dasatinib or imatinib in newly diagnosed chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia: 2-year follow-up from a randomized phase 3 trial (DASISION). Blood 119(5):1123–1129

Khorashad JS, de Lavallade H, Apperley JF, Milojkovic D, Reid AG, Bua M, Szydlo R, Olavarria E, Kaeda J, Goldman JM et al (2008) Finding of kinase domain mutations in patients with chronic phase chronic myeloid leukemia responding to imatinib may identify those at high risk of disease progression. J Clin Oncol 26(29):4806–4813

Koren-Michowitz M, Buzaglo Z, Ribakovsky E, Schwarz M, Pessach I, Shimoni A, Beider K, Amariglio N, le Coutre P, Nagler A (2014) OCT1 genetic variants are associated with long term outcomes in imatinib treated chronic myeloid leukemia patients. Eur J Haematol 92 (4):283–288

Lahaye T, Riehm B, Berger U, Paschka P, Muller MC, Kreil S, Merx K, Schwindel U, Schoch C, Hehlmann R et al (2005) Response and resistance in 300 patients with BCR-ABL-positive leukemias treated with imatinib in a single center: a 4.5-year follow-up. Cancer 103(8):1659–1669

Larson RA, Hochhaus A, Hughes TP, Clark RE, Etienne G, Kim DW, Flinn IW, Kurokawa M, Moiraghi B, Yu R et al (2012) Nilotinib vs imatinib in patients with newly diagnosed Philadelphia chromosome-positive chronic myeloid leukemia in chronic phase: ENESTnd 3-year follow-up. Leukemia 26(10):2197–2203

Larson RA, Kim D-W, Jootar S, Pasquini R, Clark RE, Lobo C, Goldberg SL, Shibayama H, Hochhaus A, Saglio G et al (2014) ENESTnd 5-year (y) update: long-term outcomes of patients (pts) with chronic myeloid leukemia in chronic phase (CML-CP) treated with frontline nilotinib (NIL) versus imatinib (IM). J Clin Oncol 32(15_suppl):7073–7073

Liu Y, Gray NS (2006) Rational design of inhibitors that bind to inactive kinase conformations. Nat Chem Biol 2(7):358–364

Lugo TG, Pendergast AM, Muller AJ, Witte ON (1990) Tyrosine kinase activity and transformation potency of bcr-abl oncogene products. Science 247(4946):1079–1082

Mahon FX, Belloc F, Lagarde V, Chollet C, Moreau-Gaudry F, Reiffers J, Goldman JM, Melo JV (2003) MDR1 gene overexpression confers resistance to imatinib mesylate in leukemia cell line models. Blood 101(6):2368–2373

Mahon FX, Rea D, Guilhot J, Guilhot F, Huguet F, Nicolini F, Legros L, Charbonnier A, Guerci A, Varet B et al (2010) Discontinuation of imatinib in patients with chronic myeloid leukaemia who have maintained complete molecular remission for at least 2 years: the prospective, multicentre stop imatinib (STIM) trial. Lancet Oncol 11(11):1029–1035

Marin D, Ibrahim AR, Lucas C, Gerrard G, Wang L, Szydlo RM, Clark RE, Apperley JF, Milojkovic D, Bua M et al (2012) Assessment of BCR-ABL1 transcript levels at 3 months is the only requirement for predicting outcome for patients with chronic myeloid leukemia treated with tyrosine kinase inhibitors. J Clin Oncol 30(3):232–238

Mauro MJ (2013) Overcoming resistance in chronic myelogenous leukemia. Am Soc Clin Oncol Educ Book 306–312

Milojkovic D, Apperley J (2009) Mechanisms of resistance to imatinib and second-generation tyrosine inhibitors in chronic myeloid leukemia. Clin Cancer Res 15(24):7519–7527

Neelakantan P, Gerrard G, Lucas C, Milojkovic D, May P, Wang L, Paliompeis C, Bua M, Reid A, Rezvani K et al (2013) Combining BCR-ABL1 transcript levels at 3 and 6 months in chronic myeloid leukemia: implications for early intervention strategies. Blood 121(14):2739–2742

Ni LN, Li JY, Miao KR, Qiao C, Zhang SJ, Qiu HR, Qian SX (2011) Multidrug resistance gene (MDR1) polymorphisms correlate with imatinib response in chronic myeloid leukemia. Med Oncol 28(1):265–269

Nicolini FE, Corm S, Le QH, Sorel N, Hayette S, Bories D, Leguay T, Roy L, Giraudier S, Tulliez M et al (2006) Mutation status and clinical outcome of 89 imatinib mesylate-resistant chronic myelogenous leukemia patients: a retrospective analysis from the French intergroup of CML (Fi(phi)-LMC GROUP). Leukemia 20(6):1061–1066

Noens L, Hensen M, Kucmin-Bemelmans I, Lofgren C, Gilloteau I, Vrijens B (2014) Measurement of adherence to BCR-ABL inhibitor therapy in chronic myeloid leukemia: current situation and future challenges. Haematologica 99(3):437–447

O'Brien SG, Guilhot F, Larson RA, Gathmann I, Baccarani M, Cervantes F, Cornelissen JJ, Fischer T, Hochhaus A, Hughes T et al (2003) Imatinib compared with interferon and low-dose cytarabine for newly diagnosed chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 348(11):994–1004

O'Hare T, Walters DK, Stoffregen EP, Jia T, Manley PW, Mestan J, Cowan-Jacob SW, Lee FY, Heinrich MC, Deininger MW et al (2005) In vitro activity of Bcr-Abl inhibitors AMN107 and BMS-354825 against clinically relevant imatinib-resistant Abl kinase domain mutants. Cancer Res 65(11):4500–4505

O'Hare T, Shakespeare WC, Zhu X, Eide CA, Rivera VM, Wang F, Adrian LT, Zhou T, Huang WS, Xu Q et al (2009) AP24534, a pan-BCR-ABL inhibitor for chronic myeloid leukemia, potently inhibits the T315I mutant and overcomes mutation-based resistance. Cancer Cell 16 (5):401–412

O'Hare T, Zabriskie MS, Eiring AM, Deininger MW (2012) Pushing the limits of targeted therapy in chronic myeloid leukaemia. Nat Rev Cancer 12(8):513–526

Peng B, Lloyd P, Schran H (2005) Clinical pharmacokinetics of imatinib. Clin Pharmacokinet 44 (9):879–894

Peng XX, Tiwari AK, Wu HC, Chen ZS (2012) Overexpression of P-glycoprotein induces acquired resistance to imatinib in chronic myelogenous leukemia cells. Chin J Cancer 31(2):110–118

Roche-Lestienne C, Soenen-Cornu V, Grardel-Duflos N, Lai JL, Philippe N, Facon T, Fenaux P, Preudhomme C (2002) Several types of mutations of the Abl gene can be found in chronic myeloid leukemia patients resistant to STI571, and they can pre-exist to the onset of treatment. Blood 100(3):1014–1018

Ross DM, Branford S, Seymour JF, Schwarer AP, Arthur C, Yeung DT, Dang P, Goyne JM, Slader C, Filshie RJ et al (2013) Safety and efficacy of imatinib cessation for CML patients with stable undetectable minimal residual disease: results from the TWISTER study. Blood 122 (4):515–522

Rosti G, Palandri F, Castagnetti F, Breccia M, Levato L, Gugliotta G, Capucci A, Cedrone M, Fava C, Intermesoli T et al (2009) Nilotinib for the frontline treatment of Ph(+) chronic myeloid leukemia. Blood 114(24):4933–4938

Rowley JD (1973) Letter: a new consistent chromosomal abnormality in chronic myelogenous leukaemia identified by quinacrine fluorescence and Giemsa staining. Nature 243(5405):290–293

Saglio G, Kim DW, Issaragrisil S, le Coutre P, Etienne G, Lobo C, Pasquini R, Clark RE, Hochhaus A, Hughes TP et al (2010) Nilotinib versus imatinib for newly diagnosed chronic myeloid leukemia. N Engl J Med 362(24):2251–2259

Shah NP (2007) Medical management of CML. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 371–375

Shtivelman E, Lifshitz B, Gale RP, Canaani E (1985) Fused transcript of abl and bcr genes in chronic myelogenous leukaemia. Nature 315(6020):550–554

Shukla S, Skoumbourdis AP, Walsh MJ, Hartz AM, Fung KL, Wu CP, Gottesman MM, Bauer B, Thomas CJ, Ambudkar SV (2011) Synthesis and characterization of a BODIPY conjugate of the BCR-ABL kinase inhibitor Tasigna (nilotinib): evidence for transport of Tasigna and its fluorescent derivative by ABC drug transporters. Mol Pharm 8(4):1292–1302

Soverini S, Martinelli G, Rosti G, Bassi S, Amabile M, Poerio A, Giannini B, Trabacchi E, Castagnetti F, Testoni N et al (2005) ABL mutations in late chronic phase chronic myeloid leukemia patients with up-front cytogenetic resistance to imatinib are associated with a greater likelihood of progression to blast crisis and shorter survival: a study by the GIMEMA working party on chronic myeloid leukemia. J Clin Oncol 23(18):4100–4109

Soverini S, Colarossi S, Gnani A, Rosti G, Castagnetti F, Poerio A, Iacobucci I, Amabile M, Abruzzese E, Orlandi E et al (2006) Contribution of ABL kinase domain mutations to imatinib resistance in different subsets of Philadelphia-positive patients: by the GIMEMA working party on chronic myeloid leukemia. Clin Cancer Res 12(24):7374–7379

Soverini S, Gnani A, Colarossi S, Castagnetti F, Abruzzese E, Paolini S, Merante S, Orlandi E, de Matteis S, Gozzini A et al (2009) Philadelphia-positive patients who already harbor imatinib-resistant Bcr-Abl kinase domain mutations have a higher likelihood of developing additional mutations associated with resistance to second- or third-line tyrosine kinase inhibitors. Blood 114(10):2168–2171

Soverini S, Hochhaus A, Nicolini FE, Gruber F, Lange T, Saglio G, Pane F, Muller MC, Ernst T, Rosti G et al (2011) BCR-ABL kinase domain mutation analysis in chronic myeloid leukemia patients treated with tyrosine kinase inhibitors: recommendations from an expert panel on behalf of European LeukemiaNet. Blood 118(5):1208–1215

Tang C, Schafranek L, Watkins DB, Parker WT, Moore S, Prime JA, White DL, Hughes TP (2011) Tyrosine kinase inhibitor resistance in chronic myeloid leukemia cell lines: investigating resistance pathways. Leuk Lymphoma 52(11):2139–2147

Vine J, Cohen SB, Ruchlemer R, Goldschmidt N, Levin M, Libster D, Gural A, Gatt ME, Lavie D, Ben-Yehuda D et al (2014) Polymorphisms in the human organic cation transporter and the multidrug resistance gene: correlation with imatinib levels and clinical course in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia. Leuk Lymphoma 55(11):2525–2531

Wang Y, Cai D, Brendel C, Barett C, Erben P, Manley PW, Hochhaus A, Neubauer A, Burchert A (2007) Adaptive secretion of granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) mediates imatinib and nilotinib resistance in BCR/ABL+ progenitors via JAK-2/STAT-5 pathway activation. Blood 109(5):2147–2155

Weisberg E, Manley PW, Breitenstein W, Bruggen J, Cowan-Jacob SW, Ray A, Huntly B, Fabbro D, Fendrich G, Hall-Meyers E et al (2005) Characterization of AMN107, a selective inhibitor of native and mutant Bcr-Abl. Cancer Cell 7(2):129–141

White DL, Saunders VA, Dang P, Engler J, Venables A, Zrim S, Zannettino A, Lynch K, Manley PW, Hughes T (2007) Most CML patients who have a suboptimal response to imatinib have low OCT-1 activity: higher doses of imatinib may overcome the negative impact of low OCT-1 activity. Blood 110(12):4064–4072

White DL, Dang P, Engler J, Frede A, Zrim S, Osborn M, Saunders VA, Manley PW, Hughes TP (2010a) Functional activity of the OCT-1 protein is predictive of long-term outcome in patients with chronic-phase chronic myeloid leukemia treated with imatinib. J Clin Oncol 28 (16):2761–2767

White DL, Saunders VA, Dang P, Engler J, Hughes TP (2010b) OCT-1 activity measurement provides a superior imatinib response predictor than screening for single-nucleotide polymorphisms of OCT-1. Leukemia 24(11):1962–1965

Widmer N, Colombo S, Buclin T, Decosterd LA (2003) Functional consequence of MDR1 expression on imatinib intracellular concentrations. Blood 102(3):1142

Willis SG, Lange T, Demehri S, Otto S, Crossman L, Niederwieser D, Stoffregen EP, McWeeney S, Kovacs I, Park B et al (2005) High-sensitivity detection of BCR-ABL kinase domain mutations in imatinib-naive patients: correlation with clonal cytogenetic evolution but not response to therapy. Blood 106(6):2128–2137

Zhang H, Li S (2013) Molecular mechanisms for survival regulation of chronic myeloid leukemia stem cells. Protein Cell 4(3):186–196

Mechanisms of Resistance in Multiple Myeloma

Athanasios Papadas and Fotis Asimakopoulos

Contents

1 Multiple Myeloma (MM): A Tumor of Plasma Cells, the "Snipers" of the Immune System 252
2 Molecular Features and Pathophysiology 253
2.1 Cytogenetic Abnormalities 253
2.2 Mutational Landscape 255
2.3 Cell of Origin 256
2.4 MM Cancer Stem Cells (MMSC) 256
2.5 MM Microenvironment: "Canonical" and "Non-canonical" MM Niches 257
2.6 Growth and Survival Factors and Pathways 257
2.7 Angiogenesis 260
2.8 Osteoclastogenesis 260
3 Drug Resistance in MM 261
3.1 Risk-Adapted Approaches to MM Therapy 261
3.2 Response Assessment and Minimal Residual Disease 263
3.3 Clonal Alternation and Clonal Tides 265
3.4 Resistance to Proteasome Inhibitors (PI) 265
3.5 Resistance to Traditional Chemotherapy and Corticosteroids 268
3.6 Resistance to Thalidomide Analogues 269
3.7 Resistance to Immunotherapies 269
4 Microenvironment-Dependent Mechanisms of Resistance 271
5 Deciding the Next Line of Therapy: Precision Medicine and Biomarkers 273
6 Overcoming Drug Resistance and Emerging Therapies 273
7 Concluding Remarks and Future Prospects 275
References 275

A. Papadas (✉) • F. Asimakopoulos
Division of Hematology and Oncology, Department of Medicine, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI 53705, USA

UW Carbone Cancer Center, Madison, WI 53705, USA
e-mail: apapadas@medicine.wisc.edu

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*, Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, DOI 10.1007/164_2017_10

Abstract

Multiple myeloma (MM) is an incurable hematopoietic cancer that is characterized by malignant plasma cell infiltration of the bone marrow and/or extramedullary sites. Multi-modality approaches including "novel agents," traditional chemotherapy, and/or stem cell transplantation are used in MM therapy. Drug resistance, however, ultimately develops and the disease remains incurable for the vast majority of patients. In this chapter, we review both tumor cell-autonomous and non-autonomous (microenvironment-dependent) mechanisms of drug resistance. MM provides an attractive paradigm highlighting a number of current concepts and challenges in oncology. Firstly, identification of MM cancer stem cells and their unique drug resistance attributes may provide rational avenues towards MM eradication and cure. Secondly, the oligoclonal evolution of MM and alternation of "clonal tides" upon therapy challenge our current understanding of treatment responses. Thirdly, the success of MM "novel agents" provides exemplary evidence for the impact of therapies that target the immune and non-immune microenvironment. Fourthly, the rapid pace of drug approvals for MM creates an impetus for development of precision medicine strategies and biomarkers that promote efficacy and mitigate toxicity and cost. While routine cure of the disease remains the ultimate and yet unattainable prize, MM advances in the last 10–15 years have provided an astounding paradigm for the treatment of blood cancers in the modern era and have radically transformed patient outcomes.

Keywords

Drug resistance • Immunotherapy • Microenvironment • Multiple myeloma • Signaling pathways

1 Multiple Myeloma (MM): A Tumor of Plasma Cells, the "Snipers" of the Immune System

MM is an (oligo)clonal malignancy characterized by the proliferation of plasma cells that produce clonal immunoglobulins (Ig). Plasma cells represent a terminal differentiation stage of B-lineage lymphocyte development. Plasma cells are endowed with expanded endoplasmic reticulum (ER) content, mechanisms for protein quality control, as well as active secretory pathways. Malignant plasma cells most commonly synthesize and secrete monoclonal Ig of the IgG and IgA isotypes (Maclennan and Chan 1991). MM plasma cells may secrete clonal intact immunoglobulin and/or Ig components (e.g., free light chains), known as M-protein. Excess M-protein accumulates in the bloodstream and/or the urine of MM patients (Bataille and Harousseau 1997). MM plasma cells thrive in a state of symbiosis with their microenvironment: they receive pro-survival signals from cellular components of their niche and in turn, remodel their immune and non-immune microenvironment to promote local expansion, immune evasion, and metastasis. One of the best-known and most prevalent consequences of this

bidirectional cross-talk is MM bone disease: malignant plasma cells promote aberrant osteoclast activation and osteoblast dysfunction that translates into significant clinical morbidity from pathological fractures and hypercalcemia. End-organ damage in addition to bone lytic disease includes renal damage and increased susceptibility to infections and cytopenias (Kyle and Rajkumar 2008).

MM is the second most common blood cancer (after non-Hodgkin's lymphoma) and represents approximately 1% of all cancers in white individuals and 2% of all cancers in black individuals (Rifkin et al. 2016). MM is almost always preceded by a premalignant disease known as monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS) (Landgren et al. 2009). Annual risk of progression of MGUS to MM is approximately 1% (Edwards et al. 2005) in low-risk cases.

Unusually for a hematological malignancy, MM is characterized by multiple and complex numerical and/or structural abnormalities, even at its pre-malignant stage, MGUS (Anderson and Carrasco 2011). Thus, MM has been called the hematological malignancy with "carcinoma-like" cytogenetics. The fact that overt MM is similar at the (cyto)genetic level to its pre-malignant counterpart (MGUS) has led to the hypothesis that progression is due to non-tumor cell autonomous mechanisms operating at the level of the microenvironment. These can be immune or non-immune in nature.

2 Molecular Features and Pathophysiology

Development of MM proceeds via a multistep transformation process that includes chromosomal abnormalities, oncogene activation, and microenvironmental remodeling (Zingone and Kuehl 2011).

2.1 Cytogenetic Abnormalities

Primary translocations occur as early and perhaps initiating events during the pathogenesis of MM, whereas secondary translocations occur as progression events (Bergsagel and Kuehl 2001). Primary translocations juxtapose a partner chromosome (at a breakpoint near an oncogene) to an Ig enhancer or other regulatory element at the IgH locus on chromosome 14. They are thought to occur in germinal center B cells. The prevalence of IgH translocations depends on the disease stage: nearly 50% in MGUS or SMM (smoldering MM) and 55–73% in symptomatic MM (Avet-Loiseau et al. 2002; Fonseca et al. 2003). There are five recurrent chromosomal partners (oncogenes) that are involved in IgH translocations in MGUS and MM: 4p16 (*MMSET* and usually *FGFR3*), 6p21 (*CCND3*), 11q13 (*CCND1*), 16q23 (*c-MAF*), and 20q11 (*MAFB*) (Chesi et al. 1996, 1997, 1998a, b; Kuehl and Bergsagel 2002; Shaughnessy et al. 2001). Breakpoints in primary translocations are characteristic of isotype switch recombination, an event dependent on the actions of activation-induced deaminase (AID) (Bergsagel et al. 1996). On the other hand, secondary translocations are typically not characteristic of antibody gene rearrangement processes. Secondary translocations may include unbalanced

and complex translocations and insertions that can involve three chromosomes, sometimes with associated amplification, duplication, inversion, or deletion (Bergsagel and Kuehl 2005).

Cytogenetic abnormalities constitute molecular drivers of disease and powerful prognostic factors. A combination of traditional cytogenetics and interphase fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is currently being employed to stratify tumors into high-and standard cytogenetic risk disease at diagnosis (Table 1). Kapoor et al. (2010) examined retrospectively 290 patients with newly diagnosed symptomatic MM treated with novel agents and demonstrated that high-risk cytogenetics (i.e., deletion 13, monosomy of chromosome 13 and/or hypoploidy) conferred significantly shorter median overall survival (29 versus 69 months).

Aneuploidy is one of the most common findings in MM. Two categories are recognized: Hyperdiploid MM ($\geq$47 and $<$75 chromosomes; H-MM) and non-hyperdiploid MM (NH-MM). NH-MM is further divided into three subgroups: hypodiploid ($\leq$44 chromosomes), pseudodiploid (45–46 chromosomes), and near tetraploid ($>$75 chromosomes). Hypodiploidy purports poorer survival, whereas hyperploidy indicates good prognosis (Smadja et al. 1995). Hyperdiploid MM is characterized by trisomies in odd numbered chromosomes (3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 15, 19, and 21). Non-hyperdiploid MM is characterized by high frequency of primary translocations.

Because MM cells are mostly non-cycling, interphase FISH has been used to detect chromosomal abnormalities with prognostic significance in quiescent MM cells. FISH is a cytogenetic technique that uses fluorescent probes that bind to only those parts of the chromosome with a high degree of sequence complementarity. Based on FISH analysis, prognostic groups can be delineated as as shown in Table 1 (Fonseca et al. 2003).

"Primary" translocations in MM involving 14q32, the site of the immunoglobulin heavy chain (IgH) locus, carry widely variable impacts on prognosis. t(11;14), which involves *BCL-1* oncogene [the locus encoding cyclin D1 (*CCND1*)] and results in the up-regulation of cyclin D1, is found in about 15% of patients, and appears to be associated with a favorable outcome (Garand et al. 2003; Robillard et al. 2003). t(4;14) translocation carries a relatively poor prognosis regardless of whether patients are undergoing conventional or high-dose therapies (Stewart and Fonseca 2005). However, San Miguel et al. (2008) indicated that bortezomib may overcome the adverse prognostic effect of t(4;14) and thus this abnormality is now considered of intermediate risk. On the other hand, deletion of 17p, including the *TP53* locus, is found in 10% of MM patients and is correlated with an adverse

Table 1 Cytogenetic risk stratification of MM

High risk	Intermediate risk	Standard risk
17p13 deletion	t(4;14)	Trisomies (hyperdiploidy)
t(14;16)	Deletion 13 or hypodiploidy by conventional karyotyping	t(11;14)
t(14;20)	Gain 1q	t(6;14)

prognosis, which is complicated by rapid disease progression (Reece et al. 2009; Xiong et al. 2008).

2.2 Mutational Landscape

Identification of driver mutations in MM provides insight into the pathogenesis of the disease and impetus towards the development of targeted therapies. The first study that elucidated MM genome content (Chapman et al. 2011) analyzed samples from 38 patients. Whole genome sequencing was performed for 23 patients and whole exome sequencing for 16 patients, with one analyzed by both approaches. The authors identified *KRAS* and *NRAS* mutations as the most common point mutations (10 and 9 cases, respectively), followed by *TP53* (3 cases). Two point mutations of *CCND1* (Cyclin D1) were identified. Notably, *CCND1* constitutes the target of the t(11;14) chromosomal translocation (Takimoto et al. 2008).

Mutations in *DIS3* locus were detected in 4 out of 38 patients. DIS3 encodes a highly conserved RNA exonuclease which regulates the processing and abundance of all RNA species (Dziembowski et al. 2007). The four observed mutations occurred at highly conserved regions facing the enzyme's catalytic pocket and likely resulted in loss of function (three of the tumors exhibited loss of heterozygosity via deletion of the remaining *DIS3* allele). Thus, *DIS3* mutations may dysregulate RNA processing as an oncogenic mechanism in MM (Chapman et al. 2011).

FAM46C gene mutations were observed in 5 out of 38 patients. To shed light on FAM46C function, Chapman et al. (2011) examined *FAM46C* expression across 414 MM samples and findings showed a strong correlation with eukaryotic initiation and elongation factors involved in protein translation.

LRRK2 gene mutations were detected in 3 out of 38 patients (Chapman et al. 2011). *LRRK2* encodes a kinase that phosphorylates translation initiation factor 4E-binding protein (4EBP). Although *LRRK2's* role is established in the context of Parkinson's disease (Zimprich et al. 2004), its role in MM remains still unclear. However, Parkinson's disease is characterized by dysfunctional unfolded protein responses (Forman et al. 2003), suggesting an analogous role for the product of this gene in MM. Consistent with this hypothesis, mutations in the unfolded protein response (UPR) gene *XBP1* were detected in 5% of cases (Chapman et al. 2011). Spliced *XBP1* induces an MM-like syndrome when expressed in transgenic mice (Carrasco et al. 2007). Together, these findings indicate that mutations affecting protein translation and its quality control are common in MM (42% of patients). Mutations affecting various components of the NF-κB pathway were also detected (*BTRC*, *CARD11*, *CYLD*, *IKBIP*, *IKBKB*, *MAP3K1*, *MAP3K14*, *RIPK4*, *TLR4*, *TNFRSF1A*, and *TRAF3*). These data were corroborated by Keats et al. (2007) who identified mutations in upstream components of the NF-κB pathway in 20% of patients.

Subsequent to the Chapman analysis Lohr et al. (2014) analyzed 203 cases. In line with Chapman et al. (2011), Lohr et al. (2014) identified frequently mutated

pathways that have been causally implicated in MM, such as NF-κB, chromatin-modifying enzymes (*MLL, MLL2, MLL3, UTX, WHSC1, WHSC1L1*) and RNA processing loci. MAPK pathway (*KRAS*, *NRA*S, and *BRAF*) mutations were again detected at high rates. Moreover, 39 coding and noncoding mutations were identified in the *CCND1* locus, target of the t(11;14) translocation.

2.3 Cell of Origin

The identity of the target cell undergoing mutations leading to myelomagenesis can be speculated upon but little definitive evidence exists. It is likely that primary translocations occur as by-products of isotype switch recombination in a cell participating in the germinal center reaction, as evidenced by the identification of characteristic breakpoints. However, it is unclear if secondary mutations occur in a cell that is committed to the plasma cell fate [i.e., a cycling plasmablast expressing the transcription factor PRDM1 (Blimp1)] or another, non-plasmacytic progenitor. Moreover, it is not established whether secondary mutations, such as *RAS* mutations, may occur before or after the migration to the bone marrow or other metastatic tissues. Rasmussen et al. (2010) detected products of primary translocations, but not *RAS* mutations, in flow-sorted B cells from a MM patient. *RAS* mutations were clearly present in malignant plasma cells from the same patient. These results indicate that *RAS* mutations occur in a plasma cell lineage-restricted fashion.

2.4 MM Cancer Stem Cells (MMSC)

The term "cancer stem cell" captures the idea that a stable, minor, quiescent, and phenotypically definable subpopulation with enhanced self-renewal and regenerative capacity sustains tumor propagation. Cancer stem cells may differ in their ability to resist challenges such as genotoxic stress compared to more mature tumor cells. It has been a matter of some dispute, whether MMSC represent clonotypic $CD138^-$ cells or $CD138^+$ cells. Matsui et al. (2004) suggested that MMSC may be $CD138^-$ clonotypic cells. In this work, $CD138^-$ cells from both human MM cell lines and primary patient samples had greater clonogenic potential both in vitro and in immunodeficient mice, compared to corresponding $CD138^+$ cells. In subsequent work from the same group (Matsui et al. 2008), $CD138^-$ clonogenic progenitors were proven to be resistant to dexamethasone, lenalidomide, bortezomib, and 4-hydroxycyclophosphamide. These findings were attributed to the high drug efflux capacity and intracellular drug detoxification activity characterizing this compartment. Recently, the clinical success of chimeric antigen receptor cells (CAR-T) targeting CD19 (Garfall et al. 2016), a molecule present on the surface of most B cells, but not normal or malignant plasma cells, has been interpreted to suggest that clinical activity of this cellular therapy is due to its targeting of a CD19-expressing, clonogenic MMSC, distinct from the tumor bulk that is CD19-negative.

However, the assertion that MM clonotypic cells may not be committed plasmacytic precursors has been controversial. Kim et al. (2012) compared the engraftment potential of $CD38^{high}/CD138^{+}$ and $CD19^{+}/CD38^{low}/CD138^{-}$ human B and plasma cells in immunodeficient mice. They concluded that only xenografts derived from $CD38^{high}/CD138^{+}$ cells were clonally identical to patient MM cells. Another approach taken to identify MM clonogenic cells has focused on the "side" population (SP cells). SP cells are known as enriched source of cancer initiating cells with stem cell properties and they show a distinct low-staining pattern with the Hoechst 33342 dye (Kim et al. 2014). Interestingly, Challen and Little (2006) described that SP cells show a strong ABC (ATP-binding cassette) transporter activity resulting in high ability to efflux compounds across the membrane, while Jakubikova et al. (2011) demonstrated that SP phenotype in MM contains both $CD138^{+}$ and $CD138^{low}$ cells.

2.5 MM Microenvironment: "Canonical" and "Non-canonical" MM Niches

The local microenvironment is of crucial importance for MM pathogenesis. MM typically propagates within the bone marrow ("canonical" MM niche) but malignant plasma cells can also thrive in extramedullary, "non-canonical" niches. The BM microenvironment (stroma) is a complex network of extracellular matrix, soluble mediators (e.g., cytokines), and MM accessory cells (mesenchymal stem/stromal cells (MSC), osteoclasts, osteoblasts, immune cells as well as vascular components). Our laboratory has had a longstanding interest in infiltrating myeloid cells ("the myeloid-in-myeloma" compartment) consisting of myeloma-associated macrophages and neutrophils, dysfunctional dendritic cells, and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSC) (Asimakopoulos et al. 2013, 2017). In MM, the interaction between tumor cells and microenvironment influences the survival, migration, and proliferation of malignant plasma cells as well as their response to therapy (Noonan and Borrello 2011). Thus the environment is crucial in supporting tumor progression (Reagan and Ghobrial 2012) (Fig. 1). This cross-talk is bidirectional: whereas proliferative and/or anti-apoptotic signaling pathways are activated in tumor cells (Borrello 2012), the latter remodel the microenvironment in crucial aspects, for example to promote osteoclastogenesis and angiogenesis (Di Raimondo et al. 2000).

2.6 Growth and Survival Factors and Pathways

Numerous studies have identified MM cell growth factors and signaling pathways supporting survival and proliferation of MM cells. These factors can be further classified into three groups. The first group of factors activate the NF-κB pathway (BAFF, APRIL, TNF) (Klein et al. 2003), the second one triggers JAK/STAT and

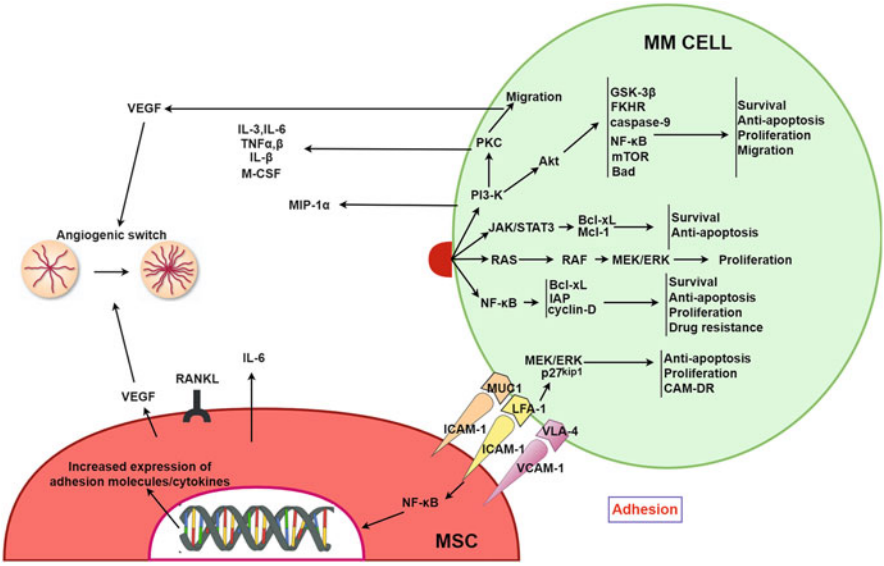


Fig. 1 Tumor-stromal cell interactions in the MM niche and their functional consequences. Cross-talk between MM stromal tumor and stromal cells results in activation of key growth and apoptosis pathways. This interaction is also a key regulator of neo-angiogenesis in the nascent MM lesion

MAP-kinase pathways (IL-6, IFNα, IL-10, IL-21), while the third group triggers PI3-Kinase/AKT and MAP-kinase pathways (IGF-1, insulin, EGF family, HGF).

2.6.1 NF-κB

Consititutive activation of the NF-κB pathway, whether intrinsic or extrinsic, is essential for the homeostasis of MM cells. Extrinsic ligands include BAFF and APRIL, which belong to TNF family. They can activate at least three receptors of the TNF receptor family: BAFF-R, BCMA, and TACI (Mackay and Kalled 2002). The receptors for BAFF and APRIL are mainly expressed by B cells (Darce et al. 2007; Ng et al. 2004). Activation of the former receptors triggers the NF-κB pathway in MM cells (Mackay and Schneider 2009). BAFF and APRIL are potent survival and proliferation factors for MM cells and can protect malignant MM cells from dexamethasone-induced apoptosis (Moreaux et al. 2004).

NF-κB may contribute to MM pathogenesis through various mechanisms. Firstly, by triggering antiapoptotic mediators (Li et al. 2008); secondly, through promotion of cell-cycle progression (Duyao et al. 1990; Guttridge et al. 1999), and thirdly, through facilitating MM cell invasion and metastasis (Hecht et al. 2008).

2.6.2 Interleukin-6 (IL-6)

IL-6 is a key growth and survival factor in MM predominantly produced by bone marrow stromal cells (BMSCs) and osteoblasts (OBs) (Hope et al. 2014; Klein et al.

1995). It mediates paracrine MM cell growth and can also be secreted by MM tumor cells in an autocrine manner, particularly in advanced and drug-resistant stages (Hideshima et al. 2001). In addition, IL-6 secretion is upregulated by other molecules/cytokines including CD40, TNF-α, VEGF, IL-1β, TGF-β. For instance, the paracrine production of IL-6 by BMSCs is mainly driven by the secretion of IL-1β by the MM cells and/or immune accessory cells (Dinarello 2011; Hope et al. 2014). IL-6 in its turn functions as a survival and proliferation factor for neoplastic plasma cells, thus creating an amplification loop. After binding to its receptor, IL-6 triggers activation of JAK/STAT3, PI3K/Akt, and MAPK signaling pathways (Hideshima et al. 2007; Podar et al. 2005). Specifically, IL-6 activation of the JAK/STAT3 pathway induces tumor cell survival by upregulation of Mcl-1, Bcl-xL, and c-Myc (Podar et al. 2005), whereas blockade of IL-6 induces upregulation of the pro-apoptotic BH3-only protein Bim and activation of Bax, thus inducing MM cell apoptosis (Le et al. 2004). Moreover, IL-6 may inhibit the antiproliferative effects of cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) inhibitors p21 and p27 in MM cells through the PI3K/Akt pathway (Hideshima et al. 2001b), while IL-6 induced tyrosine phosphorylation of scaffolding proteins Gab1 and Gab2, which are expressed by MM cells, can also promote tumor cell survival through MAPK pathway (Podar et al. 2004). Interestingly, Carrasco et al. (2007) demonstrated that IL-6 may upregulate *XBP1* gene expression and therefore trigger plasma cell differentiation: serum IL-6 levels were increased in *Eμ-Xbp-1s* transgenic mice relative to control littermates.

2.6.3 Other Growth Factors and Pathways

Besides IL-6, other important cytokines such as IL-10 and growth factors (IGF-1, TGF-β, HB-EGF, TNF-α) are considered regulators of the proliferation and homeostasis of MM cells. IL-10 is a potent immunosuppressive factor produced by various normal and malignant cell types of hematopoietic origin (Benjamin et al. 1994). IL-10 induces LIFR (leukemia inhibitory factor receptor) and IL-11R expression on MM cells, thus promoting MM proliferation (Gu et al. 1996; Lu et al. 1995). Otsuki et al. (2000) described a paracrine network for IL-10-mediated support of MM cells. Alexandrakis et al. (2015) reported a strong association between the expression of angiogenic cytokines (VEGF and Ang-2) and IL-10.

IGF-1 is a survival and proliferation factor for most MM cell lines independently of IL-6 (Ferlin et al. 2000). IGF-1 induces the PI-3Kinase pathway, triggering an anti-apoptotic response, through activation of anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 and Bcl-xL (Jourdan et al. 2000) and downregulation of pro-apoptotic Bim (De Bruyne et al. 2010). Sprynski et al. (2009) also demonstrated a major effect of IGF-1 in MM cell growth: autocrine IGF-1/IGF-1R stimulation was active in 4 out of 5 CD45+ human MM cell lines. This autocrine loop (IGF-1/IGF-1R) synergized with growth-promoting IL-6, HB-EGF, or HGF when MM cells expressed IGF-1R.

TGF-β triggers IL-6 and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) secretion by BMSCs, therefore enhancing paracrine IL-6 and VEGF-related tumor cell growth in the BM microenvironment (Yasui et al. 2008). HB-EGF (heparin-binding epidermal growth factor-like growth factor) cooperates with IL-6 to induce an optimal

survival of MM cells mainly through PI-3K/AKT pathway (Wang et al. 2002), while TNF-α also works synergistically with IL-6. Moreover, TNF-α accounts for NF-κB activation and induction of ICAM-1 or VCAM-1, thus promoting adhesion of MM cells to BMSCs (Hideshima et al. 2001).

2.7 Angiogenesis

Neo-angiogenesis is crucial to the success of the nascent MM tumor. Angiogenesis is partly driven by release of pro-angiogenetic factors from the tumor plasma cells, BMSC, and osteoclasts: these factors include VEGF, bFGF, and matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs). Adhesion between MM cells and BMSCs upregulates angiogenic cytokines especially VEGF and bFGF (Podar and Anderson 2005). Pro-angiogenic factors may also be produced cell-autonomously as a result of oncogene activation (Rajkumar and Witzig 2000). However, inflammatory cells such as macrophages and mast cells may also participate in angiogenesis through "vasculogenic mimicry" (Nico et al. 2008; Scavelli et al. 2008). Blood vessels are required for tumor growth and progression for provision of vital oxygen and nutrients. Scavelli et al. (2008) demonstrated that MM macrophages exposed to VEGF and bFGF acquired endothelial cell markers and formed capillary-like structures mimicking bone marrow endothelial cells. Bone marrow biopsies of active MM harbored "mosaic" pattern vasculature, being formed by MMECs and macrophages. Conversely, macrophages from nonactive MM, MGUS, or controls displayed weaker potential for vasculogenic mimicry than macrophages derived from overt MM.

2.8 Osteoclastogenesis

The balance between bone resorption and new bone formation is radically redressed in many cases of MM, resulting in clinically significant bone destruction and osteolytic lesions (Bataille and Harousseau 1997). Malignant plasma cells stimulate osteoclastogenesis mainly by increasing RANKL and reducing the levels of osteoprotegerin (OPG) (Terpos et al. 2003). RANKL is a member of TNF family that plays a pivotal role in the increased osteoclastogenesis implicated in MM bone disease. RANK is a transmembrane signaling receptor expressed by osteoclast cells. OPG is a decoy receptor for RANKL and by binding RANKL, OPG blocks the RANKL-RANK interaction between osteoblast/stromal cells and osteoclasts, thus preventing excessive bone resorption. MM cell binding to BMSC results in increased RANKL expression. Moreover, MM cells may promote antiapoptotic effects on osteoclasts through M-CSF secretion, which in turn potentiates bone resorption (Dib et al. 2008). Restoring the balance between RANKL and OPG not only reverses MM-induced osteolysis, but also prevents development of resistance to chemotherapeutics (Liu et al. 2012).

Tian et al. (2003) demonstrated that osteoblast dysfunction in MM is due to inhibition of WNT signaling through MM-secreted WNT inhibitor, DKK1. Qiang

et al. (2008) showed that DKK1 directly increased RANKL to OPG ratio in the MM microenvironment. Blocking DKK1 resulted in a bone anabolic effect and reduced tumor burden in MM mice (Yaccoby et al. 2007).

3 Drug Resistance in MM

The last 10–15 years have witnessed a revolution in MM treatment with the introduction of "novel agents" and advances in stem cell transplantation. The first generation of "novel agents" included proteasome inhibitors (PIs) and the immunomodulatory drugs (IMiDs) (thalidomide, lenalidomide, and pomalidomide). The incorporation of "novel agents" into induction, consolidation, maintenance, and salvage therapies has markedly improved progression-free and overall survival. However in spite of multiple efficient therapeutic regimens for MM patients, drug resistance is still the major culprit for relapse and the chief harbinger of adverse clinical outcomes.

3.1 Risk-Adapted Approaches to MM Therapy

The initial therapy of patients with symptomatic MM varies depending on risk stratification, eligibility for autologous hematopoietic cell transplantation (HCT), and the resources available (Fig. 2). All patients receive induction therapy, although there is no general consensus as to the preferred induction regimen. Hence, patients eligible for HCT receive induction therapy for 2–4 months prior to stem cell collection, in order to reduce the number of tumor cells in the bone marrow and peripheral blood, whereas standard-risk patients ineligible for HCT receive induction lenalidomide plus dexamethasone (Palumbo et al. 2014a). Post induction therapy for HCT-eligible patients consists of high dose chemotherapy (usually melphalan 200 mg/m^2) followed by single or tandem autologous HCT (early transplant strategy). Alternatively, "late transplant" approach may be taken, consisting of continued therapy usually with the same induction regimen, reserving autologous HCT until first relapse.

For a variety of practical and reimbursement-related issues, many patients in the USA opt for few induction cycles followed by upfront ("early") transplant. In early trials evaluating the efficacy of autologous HCT vs. conventional chemotherapy alone, autologous HCT-treated arms demonstrated superior event-free survival and overall survival (Attal and Harousseau 2001; Attal et al. 1996; Barlogie et al. 1997; Child et al. 2003; Palumbo et al. 2004, 2014b). Taking into account that virtually all patients who receive autologous HCT for MM eventually develop relapsed disease, various trials have investigated the use of chemotherapeutic and biologic agents in an attempt to control residual cancer MM cells after HCT (Attal et al. 2012, 2013; Holstein et al. 2015; McCarthy et al. 2012, 2016; Palumbo et al. 2014b). Maintenance therapy after HCT is now routinely recommended. In HCT-ineligible patients, maintenance therapy after limited-duration induction has not proven to

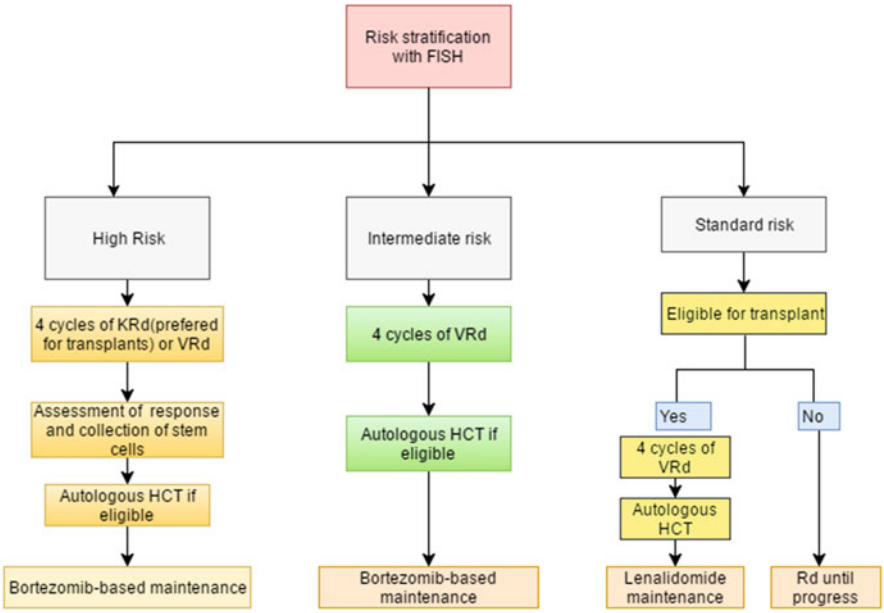


Fig. 2 MM state-of-the-art treatment algorithm. VRd: bortezomib, lenalidomide, low-dose dexamethasone, KRd: carfilzomib, lenalidomide, low-dose dexamethasone; Rd: lenalidomide plus low-dose dexamethasone; HCT: hematopoietic cell transplantation

increase overall survival so far (Benboubker et al. 2014; Dimopoulos et al. 2013; Palumbo et al. 2012; Stewart et al. 2015; Zweegman et al. 2016). Until more data are available, many authorities recommend observation with retreatment at the time of progression rather than maintenance therapy for transplant-ineligible standard-risk patients who have been treated with a triplet regimen. For intermediate or high-risk patients maintenance therapy is suggested, since the risk for relapse is high (Palumbo et al. 2014a, 2015). Transplant-ineligible patients receiving the combination of lenalidomide and dexamethasone continue until progression.

Patients who relapse after regimens containing bortezomib may respond to a newer proteasome inhibitor such as carfilzomib or ixazomib. Similarly, patients who relapse on lenalidomide-containing regimens may respond to a regimen containing pomalidomide. Patients whose disease progresses despite IMiDs and PIs can be treated with regimens containing the recently FDA-approved monoclonal antibody, daratumumab. Promising evidence from latest clinical trial data (Dimopoulos et al. 2016) points out that the addition of daratumumab to lenalidomide and dexamethasone significantly lengthened progression-free survival among patients with relapsed or refractory MM. Moreover panobinostat, a histone deacetylase inhibitor, has demonstrated activity in MM when administered with bortezomib and dexamethasone. Its approval was based on PANORAMA 1 trial, which evaluated the addition of panobinostat to bortezomib plus dexamethasone in 768 patients with relapsed/refractory MM. The panobinostat-treated arm showed

longer median progression-free survival (PFS) (San-Miguel et al. 2014). Finally, elotuzumab [an antibody targeting signaling lymphocytic activation molecule F7 (SLAMF7)] has also been approved from the FDA for use in combination with lenalidomide (Rev) and dexamethasone (Dex) for MM patients who have received one to three prior therapies (Lonial et al. 2015). Likewise, a randomized phase 2 trial pointed out improved PFS for patients assigned to etoluzumab plus bortezomib/dexamethasone compared to those assigned to bortezomib/dexamethasone for relapsed/refractory MM (Jakubowiak et al. 2016).

3.2 Response Assessment and Minimal Residual Disease

Patients should be evaluated before each treatment cycle to determine how their disease is responding to therapy. The International Myeloma Working Group (IMWG) uniform response criteria are the preferred criteria to determine the patient's best response to treatment and to define when relapse has occurred (Palumbo et al. 2014a; Rajkumar et al. 2011) (Table 2). The preferred method is the measurement of monoclonal (M) protein in serum and urine. Additional methods include the evaluation of bone marrow plasma cell percentage and serum free light chain (FLC) measurements. The latter is particularly valuable for patients with unmeasurable M protein in the serum and urine or oligosecretory disease (serum M protein levels $\leq$1 g/dL and/or urine M protein levels $\leq$200 mg/24 h) (Durie et al. 2006). At present, it is generally accepted that there is a positive correlation between the depth of response, particularly complete response, and prolonged progression-free survival (PFS) as well as overall survival (OS), particularly in high-risk patients. This association has been demonstrated in many different individual studies (Cavo et al. 2010; Dimopoulos et al. 2007; Rosiñol et al. 2012; San Miguel et al. 2008) and proved in meta-analyses among transplant-eligible and transplant-ineligible patients (Gay et al. 2011; van de Velde et al. 2007). However, almost all patients with MM who survive initial treatment will eventually relapse and require further therapy. Therapy for relapsed disease is indicated if there is a clinical deterioration or a rapid rise in paraproteins (Palumbo et al. 2014a; Rajkumar et al. 2011).

In the last few years, principles of measuring minimal residual disease (MRD), extrapolated from other hematological malignancy paradigms, have been explored in MM. MRD monitoring is one of the most relevant prognostic factors in MM patients regardless of age and cytogenetic risk in both transplant-eligible and -ineligible settings (Paiva et al. 2008, 2016). A meta-analysis by Munshi et al. (2016) provided sufficient evidence to support the integration of MRD-assessment as an end point in MM clinical trials.

There are several techniques for MRD assessment. Multiparametric flow cytometry (MFC) has been used to differentiate between normal and abnormal plasma cells in patients with MM by enabling detection of aberrant cell-surface marker expression (Mailankody et al. 2010). Its prognostic value in MRD monitoring was first introduced in 2002 by the Spanish (San Miguel et al. 2002) and British groups (Rawstron et al. 2002); both studies demonstrated improved

Table 2 Treatment response criteria

IMWG 2011 treatment response criteria for multiple MM
Immunophenotypic complete response
Stringent complete response, plus an absence of phenotypically aberrant plasma cells in bone marrow with a minimum of 1 m cells analyzed by multicolor flow cytometry (4 or more colors)
Molecular complete response
Stringent complete response, plus a negative ASO-PCR test
Stringent complete response
Meets the criteria for complete response, plus normal FLC ratio and an absence of clonal plasma cells by immunohistochemistry or 2–4-color flow cytometry
Complete response
• Negative immunofixation results in serum and urine
• Disappearance of any soft-tissue plasmacytomas
Very good partial response
Serum and urine M-component detectable by immunofixation but not by electrophoresis, or $\geq$90% reduction in serum M-component plus urine M-component $<$100 mg per 24 h
Partial response
$\geq$50% reduction of serum M-protein levels and reduction in 24-h urinary M-protein levels by $\geq$90% or to $<$200 mg per 24 h
In addition, a 50% reduction in the size of soft tissue plasmacytomas (if present at baseline)
Stable disease
• Criteria not met for complete response, very good partial response, partial response or progressive disease
Progressive disease
• Increase of 25% from lowest response value in any of the following: serum M-component (absolute increase must be $\geq$0.5 g/dL); and/or urine M-component (absolute increase must be $\geq$200 mg per 24 h); and/or definite development of new bone lesions or soft-tissue plasmacytomas, or definite increase in the size of existing bone lesions or soft-tissue plasmacytomas

FLC: free light chain, IMWG: International Myeloma Working Group. Modified with permission from the American Society of Hematology (Mailankody et al. 2015; Rajkumar et al. 2011)

progression-free survival and overall survival in MRD-negative patients regardless of their cytogenetic risk. The major limitation of MFC was the variability between different studies in what is considered MRD-positive or MRD-negative disease: recently a consensus statement has proposed a threshold limit of detection of 0.001%, and ideally a limit of quantification of 0.001% (Arroz et al. 2016). Besides MFC, ASO-PCR (allele-specific oligonucleotide PCR) of variable diverse joining (VDJ) heavy rearrangements is used for the assessment of MRD status in patients with MM (Puig et al. 2014). Similarly to MFC, the clinical utility of ASO-PCR has been established in a range of studies (Korthals et al. 2012; Martinez-Lopez et al. 2014). Finally, next generation sequencing (sensitive type of VDJ sequencing) may detect one clonal cell in 10^6 background cells. Martinez-Lopez et al. (2014) demonstrated that MRD-negative status detected by next generation sequencing was correlated with prolonged time to disease progression and overall survival.

3.3 Clonal Alternation and Clonal Tides

The contribution of clonal heterogeneity to disease progression and resistance to therapy is increasingly being recognized in MM. Deep sequencing of plasma cell genomes at different time points over the course of the disease has uncovered a previously unsuspected model of genomic evolution in MM. Keats et al. (2007) described three distinct evolutionary patterns between initial treatment and subsequent relapses. One third of patients had stable genomes that were associated with hyperploidy and favorable outcomes. The second third included either differential clonal response or "clonal tides," where distinct subclones dominated at different time points. The final third of patients displayed a pattern consistent with linear evolution, where a new subclone emerged later in the natural history. The presence of variants detectable only at alternating time points suggests that all clonal precursors were present at diagnosis, but selection pressures from treatment and clonal evolution caused dominance of these clones to rise and fall over time. In line with this study, Lohr et al. (2014) demonstrated that MM tumors are highly heterogenous with point mutations in the most significantly mutated genes (*BRAF*, *NRAS*, *KRAS*) being found to be clonal in some patients but subclonal in others.

Egan et al. (2012) analyzed a single case, harboring a t(4;14) mutation, that progressed to secondary plasma cell leukemia (sPCL) after 53 months of treatment. They perfomed whole-genome sequencing (WGS) to investigate the genetic events associated with the natural history of progressive MM in this patient. WGS was conducted at 4 time points during tumor evolution (diagnosis, first relapse, second relapse, and sPCL). They identified variants that were only detectable at alternating points, suggesting the "waxing and waning"of different clones with time and treatment. The concept of clonal tides and inta-clonal heterogeneity becomes very important in terms of treatment strategies for relapsed disease. It may be appropriate to retreat a patient with the same regimen that proved to be effective at an earlier point, since the current clone may not have been selected for resistance to that treatment (Egan et al. 2012; Keats et al. 2012). It will be of crucial importance to evaluate the extent of clonal heterogeneity in patients being evaluated for response to targeted therapies and probably employ drug combination regimens targeting multiple subclones simultaneously.

3.4 Resistance to Proteasome Inhibitors (PI)

26S proteasomes are composed of a 20S core which binds one or two 19S regulatory subunits (Voges et al. 1999). PI agents that target specific catalytic subunits have been introduced in MM clinical practice over the last 15 years: bortezomib and carfilzomib obtained FDA approval for treatment of relapsed/refractory MM in 2003 and 2012, respectively. Many hypotheses have been put forward to explain why MM cells may be sensitive to PIs: their copious immunoglobulin production likely contributes to synthetic lethality with PI therapy. This increased protein load lowers the threshold for proteotoxic stress, rendering the cells susceptible to

unfolded/misfolded proteins and apoptotic signals triggered by endoplasmic reticulum stress response (Obeng et al. 2006). PIs are thought to exert their cytotoxic effects through additional mechanisms including activation of c-Jun NH2 terminal kinase (JNK), inhibition of NF-κB pathway, and induction of reactive oxygen species.

One of the first reported mechanisms of PI resistance was the presence of mutations and/or aberrant expression of proteasome subunits, which impedes the ability of the drug to bind and inhibit proteasomes. Oerlemans et al. (2008) showed that PSMB5 (a β5-proteasome subunit) overexpression is associated with bortezomib resistance. Moreover, point mutation of the *PSMB5* gene (G322A mutant) conferred resistance to bortezomib. Ri et al. (2010) showed that mutated G322A allele contributed to resistance against bortezomib-induced apoptosis in MM cells. Expression of G322A-mutant PSMB5 was associated with the prevention of accumulation of unfolded proteins and thus suppression of apoptotic cell signaling. However, although *PSMB5* mutations have been identified in various in vitro studies, their clinical relevance is still unclear. On the other hand, Kortum et al. (2016) revealed that drug-refractory MM patients harbored mutations in the MAPK pathway genes *KRAS*, *NRAS*, and/or *BRAF* (72%). Resistance to bortezomib has also been associated with activation of the PI3K/AKT pathway (Ikeda et al. 2010; Meng et al. 2008).

Bortezomib may inhibit NF-κB activation by blocking proteasome degradation of IκBα (nuclear factor of κ light polypeptide gene enhancer in B cells inhibitor α) and decreasing NF-κB nuclear translocation (Mitsiades et al. 2002). However, whether aberrant NF-κB activation constitutes a mechanism of underlying resistance to proteasome inhibitors, or a compensatory strategy that only minimally affects cytotoxicity, remains a matter of controversy. Interestingly, Markovina et al. (2008) demonstrated that primary tumor cells from MM have relatively high constitutive NF-κB activation due to genetic abnormalities or microenvironment alterations. Subsequent analysis revealed that lack of inhibition of constitutive NF-κB activity by bortezomib was not due to ineffective proteasome inhibition: rather, NF-κB activity was triggered by an NF-κB canonical inducer, TNF-α. Taking into account that components of the microenvironment, such as bone marrow stromal cells (BMSCs), are well known to support MM disease, Markovina et al. (2010) further demonstrated that MM BMSCs may activate bortezomib-resistant NF-κB activity through secretion of soluble proteinaceous factors in conjunction with IL-8. Intriguingly, Hideshima et al. (2009) showed that bortezomib induces canonical NF-κB activation in MM cells through proteasome-independent downregulation of IκBα linked with IKKβ activation, which potentiates bortezomib-induced cytotoxicity. The authors suggested the potentially synergistic combination of bortezomib with IKKβ inhibitor. Finally, Fabre et al. (2012) showed that PBS-1086, a promising dual inhibitor of canonical and noncanonical NF-κB pathway, overcame the proliferative and antiapoptotic effects of the bone marrow milieu and strongly enhanced the cytotoxicity of bortezomib in resistant MM cell lines.

Efflux transporters have been implicated in resistance to proteasome inhibitors. Up-regulation of P-glycoprotein (also referred to as MDR1), a member of the ABC

(ATP-binding cassette) superfamily of transporters encoded by *ABCB1*, has frequently been observed in MM and strongly associated with relapse and drug resistance (Epstein et al. 1989; Grogan et al. 1993). O'Connor et al. (2013) examined the interaction of bortezomib with multidrug transporters including P-gp. The P-gp-overexpressing cell line, DLKP-A, was less sensitive to bortezomib than its parental non-P-gp-overexpressing line, DLKP, and the combination of a potent P-gp inhibitor, elacridar, with bortezomib produced strongly synergistic toxicity in the DLKP-A cell model. These observations suggest that P-gp can play an important role in bortezomib resistance. Moreover, Hawley et al. (2013) also showed that overexpression of P-gp is related to carfilzomib resistance, a newly FDA-approved, second-generation PI. Finally, Zhou et al. (2013) showed that a chromosomal instability (CIN) gene, *NEK2*, was highly correlated with bortezomib resistance, rapid relapse, and poor outcome in MM. High expression of *NEK2* induced drug resistance mainly through activation of the efflux pumps and it was demonstrated that down-regulation of *NEK2* reversed bortezomib resistance and induced bortezomib-mediated tumor growth inhibition.

Alonso et al. (2016) suggested that crosstalk between Hedgehog and retinoid signaling may confer bortezomib resistance. Expression of CYP26 [P450-like retinoic acid (RA) 4-hydroxylase] in BM stromal cells promotes a retinoic acid-low (RA-low) microenvironment that prevents the differentiation of normal and malignant hematopoietic cells (Ghiaur et al. 2013; Su et al. 2015). Since retinoid signaling promotes plasma cell differentiation and Ig production (Ertesvag et al. 2007) and low-secretory B cell phenotype is correlated with bortezomib resistance (Obeng et al. 2006), Alonso et al. (2016) found that the BM niche triggers bortezomib resistance by preventing plasma cell differentiation through stromal CYP26 activity. Moreover, paracrine Hedgehog secretion by MM cells upregulated stromal CYP26 and further reinforced a bortezomib-resistant microenvironment. Notch signaling has also been reported to contribute to bortezomib resistance. Notch receptors are expressed by MM cells and Notch ligand Dll1 is present on bone marrow (BM) stromal cells (Xu et al. 2012). In this study, Xu et al. (2012) demonstrated that Dll1 can activate Notch signaling mostly through Notch2 receptor and can promote drug resistance to bortezomib by upregulating CYP1A1, a cytochrome P450 enzyme involved in drug metabolism, both in murine and human MM cells. Finally, heat shock proteins (HSPs) have been implicated in bortezomib resistance. HSPs are molecular chaperones that are rapidly upregulated when cells are exposed to stress conditions, such as genotoxic stress or ER stress. Chauhan et al. (2003) showed that silencing Hsp27 in bortezomib-resistant SUDHL4 cells restores sensitivity to bortezomib, while overexpression of Hsp27 induces bortezomib resistance in bortezomib-sensitive SUDHL6 cells. The mechanism behind this interesting observation remains to be elucidated.

3.5 Resistance to Traditional Chemotherapy and Corticosteroids

3.5.1 Efflux Pump-Mediated Resistance to Chemotherapy

The development of drug resistance to chemotherapeutic agents remains one of the primary obstacles in cancer treatment. Membrane drug-efflux pumps such as P-glycoprotein (P-gp), multidrug resistance-associated protein 1 (MRP1) and ABCG2 have been demonstrated to produce resistance to several commonly used chemotherapeutic agents. Turner et al. (2006) found that ABCG2 expression in MM cell lines increased after exposure to topotecan and doxorubicin, and was higher in log-phase cells when compared to growth-inactive cells. Notably, MM cells obtained from patients treated with high-dose melphalan and topotecan demonstrated increased ABCG2 expression after treatment and at relapse. Methylation-specific PCR indicated that expression of ABCG2 was regulated by promoter methylation both in cell lines and in patient plasma cells. Hence, drug-induced demethylation of the promoter increased ABCG2 mRNA and protein expression in response to topotecan. In addition, Grogan et al. (1993) and Cornelissen et al. (1994) demonstrated that expression of P-gp was increased upon exposure to "traditional" chemotherapy agents such as vincristine, doxorubicin, and dexamethasone.

3.5.2 Resistance to Alkylating Agents

Alkylating agents, such as melphalan and cyclophosphamide, act by forming cross-links between the two strands of DNA, therefore impairing DNA synthesis and cell replication. Spanswick et al. (2002) suggested that the principal mechanism of resistance to melphalan was the increased repair rate of DNA inner strand cross-links, mediated by the Fanconi anemia (FA)/BRCA pathway (Chen et al. 2005). Chen et al. (2005) demonstrated that knocking down Fanconi anemia genes using siRNA in melphalan-resistant cells could reverse drug resistance, while their overexpression leads to increased cell survival following melphalan treatment. A novel mechanism of resistance to alkylating agents was proposed by Cho et al. (2016): the authors showed that *MAGE-A* gene expression (Type I Melanoma Antigen Genes of the *MAGE-A* family) promoted drug resistance through differential regulation of anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-2. MAGE-A expression conferred resistance not only to melphalan but also to vorinostat (pan-histone deacetylase inhibitor) and bortezomib.

3.5.3 Resistance to Corticosteroids

Prednisone and dexamethasone are among the most commonly used drugs in the treatment of MM. Resistance to dexamethasone has been found to be due to steroid-receptor mutations. Moalli et al. (1992) reported that a truncated glucocorticoid receptor lacking the C-terminal hormone binding domain rendered MM cells resistant to dexamethasone. Sánchez-Vega and Gandhi (2009) suggested that glucocorticoid resistance can be induced by transcription elongation block in the glucocorticoid receptor gene *NR3C1*. In addition, Nojima et al. (2009) showed that epigenetic inactivation of *RASD1* (a small GTPase, member of Ras superfamily) plays a key role in the development of dexamethasone resistance in MM.

3.6 Resistance to Thalidomide Analogues

Although several mechanisms have been put forward to explain the activity of thalidomide, lenalidomide, and pomalidomide in MM, including demonstrable antiangiogenic, anti-proliferative, and immunomodulatory effects, the precise targets and the underlying molecular mechanisms have only recently become clearer. A landmark study (Ito et al. 2010) revealed that CRBN (cereblon) is the primary mediator of thalidomide-induced teratogenicity. Later, it was demonstrated that CRBN is also required for the anti-MM activity of thalidomide analogues, collectively called immunomodulatory drugs (IMiDs). Cereblon (CRBN) forms an E3 ligase complex with damaged DNA binding protein 1 (DDB1) and Cul4A, known as the CRL4 (CRBN). Krönke et al. (2014) and Lu et al. (2014) reported that treatment with lenalidomide, and other agents in this class, selectively promotes the ubiquitination and degradation of two lymphoid transcription factors, Ikaros (IKZF1) and Aiolos (IKZF3) by the CRL4 (CRBN) ubiquitin ligase. Lower CRBN expression was associated with lenalidomide resistance, indicating that CRBN is essential for lenalidomide and related IMiDs activity (Zhu et al. 2011).

Kortum et al. (2016) confirmed the crucial role of CRBN mutations in MM progression and responsiveness to treatment. The authors found 3 CRBN mutations in MM patients with acquired resistance to lenalidomide (these mutations were undetectable before MM became refractory). These mutations conferred lenalidomide-resistance in vitro. Xu et al. (2016a, b) identified AGO2 as a CRBN-binding protein. Silencing AGO2 halted MM cell growth and was associated with concomitant high CRBN expression (Fig. 3). Thus, AGO2 could be considered as a novel drug target to overcome IMiD resistance in MM cells.

3.7 Resistance to Immunotherapies

Antibody-based immunotherapy is a promising area of continued progress that has expanded our therapeutic armamentarium against MM. Daratumumab, which was granted FDA approval in 2015 for treatment of relapsed/refractory MM, is directed against CD38, a transmembrane protein that is highly expressed on malignant plasma cells. Daratumumab acts through induction of CDC (complement-dependent cytotoxicity), modulation of enzymatic activation, and ADCC (Tai et al. 2009). Despite the well-established clinical efficacy of daratumumab, not all heavily pretreated patients respond well to single-agent daratumumab, and the majority of patients who initially respond eventually progress. This implies the need for new insights into mechanisms of resistance. Upregulation of CD38 expression correlates with improved ADCC- and CDC-mediated activity in vitro and hence better daratumumab efficacy (Nijhof et al. 2015). Pretreatment CD38 levels on MM cells were significantly higher in patients who achieved at least partial response compared with patients who achieved less than partial responses (Nijhof et al. 2016). Complement-inhibitory proteins (CD55 and CD59) may

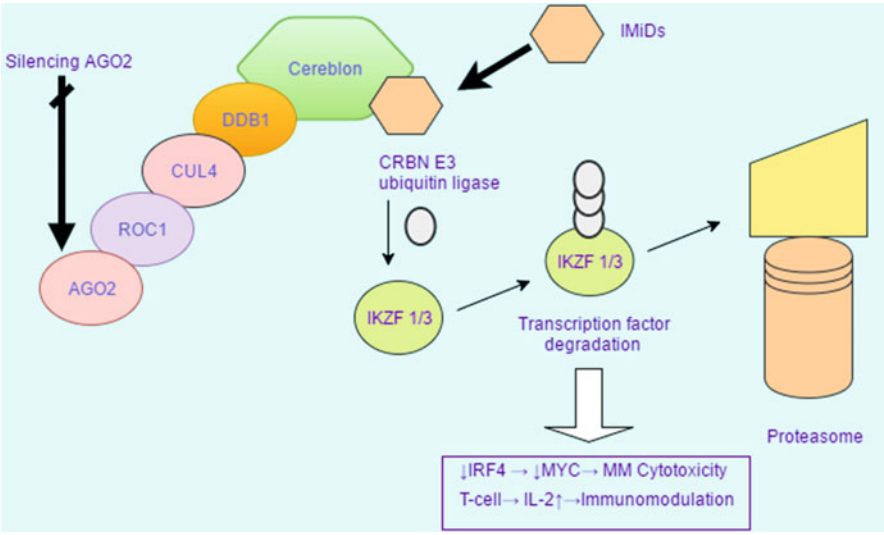


Fig. 3 Key downstream targets of cereblon (CRBN). Resistance against IMiDs, whose anti-MM activity depends heavily on CRBN downstream signaling, is observed in CRBN-depleted MM cells. Silencing AGO2 (cereblon binding protein argonaute 2) may restore responsiveness to IMiDs

represent a broad resistance mechanism for monoclonal antibodies that function through CDC. In particular, although expression levels of CD55 and CD59 were not associated with response in MM patients treated with daratumumab monotherapy, analysis of serial blood and BM samples revealed that CD55 and CD59 levels were increased on MM cells at the time of progression compared with baseline values. ATRA (all trans retinoic acid) may overcome daratumumab resistance by increasing CD38 levels.

PD-L1/PD-1 axis has recently emerged as a master immune checkpoint that controls antitumor immune responses against MM (Fig. 4). PD-L1-expressing tumor cells in the tumor microenvironment engage PD-1 on tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes to repress antigen-driven activation (Pardoll 2012). Currently, two ongoing phase III clinical trials (*KEYNOTE 183* and *KEYNOTE 185*) are examining the efficacy of checkpoint inhibitors in combination with pomalidomide and low-dose dexamethasone in refractory and in newly diagnosed/naïve MM, respectively. Although it is premature to draw broad conclusions, findings from *KEYNOTE-023* clinical trial (San Miguel et al. 2015) demonstrated progression-free survival benefit when checkpoint inhibitors were combined with lenalidomide and dexamethasone.

Zaretsky et al. (2016) sought to identify mutations associated with resistance to anti-PD1 therapy in melanoma. In this study, it was demonstrated that loss of function of interferon-gamma signaling through acquired *JAK1* and *JAK2* truncating mutations rendered cancer cells resistant to interferon-induced growth arrest. Another patient demonstrated a truncating mutation in β_2 microglobulin (B2M), as

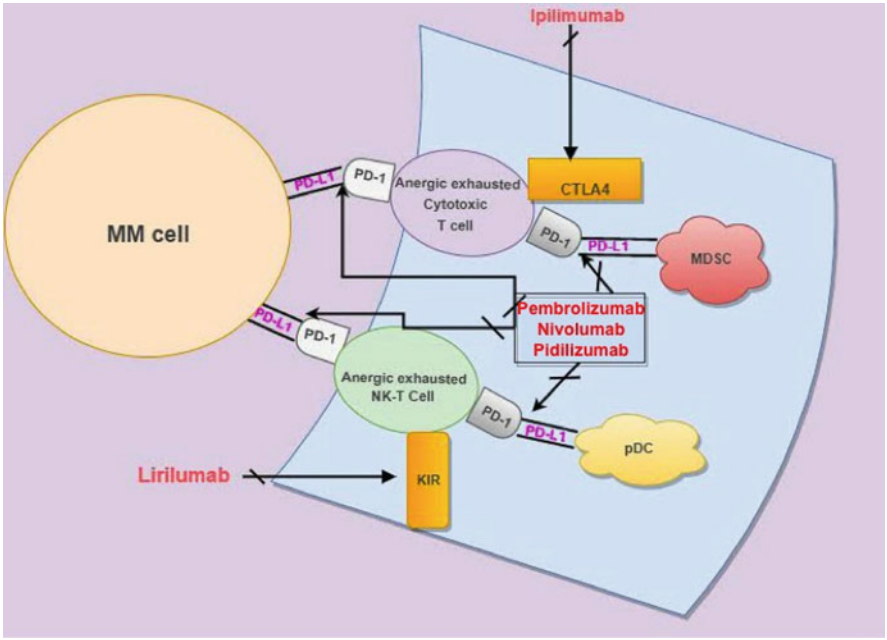


Fig. 4 Immune checkpoint inhibitors in MM therapy. PD-1 and its ligand PD-L1 are depicted as complementary transmembrane structures on effector and target cells (MMCs [multiple myeloma cells], MDSCs [myeloid-derived suppressor cells], pDCs [plasmacytoid dendritic cells]), respectively. CTLA4 (cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4) and killer cell immunoglobulin-like (KIR) are also presented on effector cells (Bianchi et al. 2015)

previously alluded to by Restifo et al. (1996). B2M is a structural component shared by all major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I molecules. The loss of B2M from tumor cells prevents recognition by tumor-specific CD8+ T cells.

4 Microenvironment-Dependent Mechanisms of Resistance

MM microenvironment-mediated drug resistance can be subdivided into two categories: (1) soluble factor-mediated resistance (SFM-DR), which relies on cytokines, chemokines, and growth factors, and (2) cell adhesion-mediated resistance (CAM-DR) resulting from adhesion of tumor cells to BM stromal cells or to ECM components.

Key components of the SFM-DR include the interleukins IL-6 and IL-8, the growth factor IGF and the chemokine SDF-1. The important role of IL-6 in MM cell growth and survival has been previously addressed (Sect. 2.6.2). Additionally, IL-6 plays a role in therapy resistance. Frassanito et al. (2001) reported that autocrine IL-6 production was associated with high tumor burden and conferred resistance to dexamethasone-mediated apoptosis. Grigorieva et al. (1998) described a protective

effect of BMSCs toward glucocorticoid-induced apoptosis of MM cells through IL-6 production. In addition, IL-6 was found to induce antioxidant pathways by upregulation of NF-κB dependent MnSOD (manganese superoxide dismutase) expression, therefore rendering MM cells resistant to radiation and dexamethasone. Finally, it has been demonstrated that neutralizing IL-6 with the monoclonal antibody siltuximab increases sensitivity of MM cells to bortezomib (Voorhees et al. 2007). IL-8 also contributes to BM stromal cell-induced NF-κB activity in MM cells and the consequent resistance to bortezomib (Markovina et al. 2010). IGF-1 and the stromal cell-derived factor (SDF-1)/CXCR4 axis play also important role in MM survival, growth, and angiogenesis. IGF-1, which is produced by both MM cells and BM stromal cells, has been proven in vitro and in vivo to confer resistance to bortezomib (Kuhn et al. 2012). Several preclinical studies targeting the IGF-1/IGF-1R pathway are underway (Bieghs et al. 2016). Activation of the SDF-1/CXCR4 axis promotes formation of pro-metastatic BM niches and confers resistance to treatment (Alsayed et al. 2007). In vivo CXCR4 blockade (Roccaro et al. 2015) as well as SDF-1 inhibition (Roccaro et al. 2014) in murine xenografted mouse models inhibited MM bone-to-bone cell dissemination and disease progression. Likewise, Azab et al. (2009) found that AMD3100, an inhibitor of CXCR4, disrupted the interaction of MM cells with the bone microenvironment and sensitized them to therapy.

CAM-DR denotes mechanisms whereby MM cells overcome the cytotoxic effects of anti-cancer therapy via adhesive interactions with BM stromal cells and/or ECM components. Hazlehurst et al. (2000) demonstrated that integrin β1-mediated adhesion of MM cells to fibronectin resulted in G_1 arrest, whereas disruption of binding led to a rapid recruitment of cells into S phase and sensitized them to etoposide. Neri et al. (2011) showed that integrin β_7 silencing reduced CAM-DR and sensitized MM cells to melphalan and bortezomib. Signaling by another member of the integrin family, VLA-4 (Pulido et al. 1991) conferred resistance to vincristine and dexamethasone, while bortezomib was able to overcome VLA-4-mediated resistance (Noborio-Hatano et al. 2009). Bjorklund et al. (2014) demonstrated that CD44-expressing MM cells were resistant to lenalidomide by binding to the glycosaminoglycan hyaluronan (HA), while blocking the CD44/HA interaction sensitized MM cells to lenalidomide. Lin et al. (2016) showed that the ECM protein, reelin, produced by MM cells, enhances the adhesion of tumor cells to fibronectin via activation of α5β1 integrin, therefore potentiating drug resistance.

Oncogene activation can directly promote CAM-DR. Bustany et al. (2016) showed that ectopic cyclin D1 overexpression increased MM cell adhesion to stromal cells and fibronectin, upregulated expression of ICAM-1, as well as the synthesis of pro-inflammatory chemokines IL-8, IP10 and RANTES, collectively re-shaping the interplay between tumor microenvironment and MM cell. The 1q– amplicon contains *CHD1L* (chromodomain helicase/ATPase DNA binding protein) whose overexpression induced the expression of adhesion molecule CD49d (α4 integrin, a subunit of VLA-4) as well as CXCR4 (Xu et al. 2016a, b). Finally, epigenetic regulators can modulate CAM-DR. Direct contact of MM cells with

BMSCs triggered phosphorylation-mediated inactivation of the H3K27 histone methyltransferase, EZH2, that led to induction of antiapoptotic gene expression in MM cells (Kikuchi et al. 2015).

5 Deciding the Next Line of Therapy: Precision Medicine and Biomarkers

Precision medicine embodies the principle of matching the right drug to the right patient. Ex vivo cultivation and manipulation of tumor cells not only provides deep biological insight into tumor components and tumor–stroma interactions, but also permits the rapid evaluation of tumor responses to specific drugs (Friedman et al. 2015). Our group has previously described the development of such an ex vivo chemosensitivity and resistance assay (CSRA) based on a microfluidic system, MicroC^3 (microfluid cis-coculture) (Young et al. 2012). The reprise of key aspects of tumor microenvironment constitutes a major advantage of MicroC^3, enabling patient-specific microscale prediction of individual drug responses. Considering the promising responses of MM cells to bortezomib in MicroC^3 (Pak et al. 2015), further preclinical studies are required to establish ex vivo CSRA's role in everyday clinical practice.

Another critical question that should be addressed in the near future is whether time is ripe for predictive biomarker-driven MM therapy. A biomarker is typically defined as any characteristic (e.g., gene, protein, clinicopathologic variable, imaging feature) that can be objectively and reproducibly measured to serve as indicator of disease biology or response to a therapeutic intervention (Biomarkers Definitions Working Group 2001). When it comes to MM, the new generation of prognostic biomarkers, including cytogenetics (Avet-Loiseau et al. 2007; Fonseca et al. 2009), novel imaging (Usmani et al. 2013), bone turnover (Patel et al. 2014), gene expression profile (GEP) signature (Decaux et al. 2008; Dickens et al. 2010; Kuiper et al. 2012; Shaughnessy et al. 2007) may provide promising tools for improved classification of MM patients into specific therapies and trials. As discussed in Sect. 3.2, flow cytometric biomarkers have gained popularity in MRD monitoring (Rawstron et al. 2008). While traditional cytogenetics and FISH biomarkers along with whole gene expression profiling play a major role in risk stratification and overall prognosis, little progress has been made in applying predictive biomarkers routinely in clinical decision-making. Prognostic value does not always imply clinical utility; thus, emphasis should be placed on the optimization of predictive biomarker-guided treatments in the foreseeable future.

6 Overcoming Drug Resistance and Emerging Therapies

Manipulating p53 turnover in MM has been considered as a promising strategy to re-sensitize drug-resistant cells to therapy. Stuhmer et al. (2005) and Saha et al. (2010) showed that direct inhibition of the p53-negative regulator MDM2, through

treatment with an MDM2 antagonist (nutlin), or by blocking proteasomal degradation of p53 by bortezomib, can stabilize p53 and activate the p53 apoptotic signaling pathway. Moreover, Chauhan et al. (2012) showed that inhibition of ubiquitin-specific-protease 7 (USP7), which normally stabilizes MDM2, induces apoptosis in MM cells resistant to conventional and bortezomib-based therapies.

Another promising approach is to target drug resistance pathways through epigenetic modulation. Recently, small molecule inhibitors of oncogenic, chromatin-dependent signal transduction (e.g., bromodomain inhibitor JQ1) have been shown to possess activity against myeloma cells, acting through MYC transcriptional regulation, both in vitro and in vivo (Delmore et al. 2011).

Overcoming drug resistance through BH-3 mimetics that target anti-apoptotic proteins has recently been shown to possess significant activity against relapsed/refractory myeloma. In a phase 1 open-label study, venetoclax, a potent, selective small molecule Bcl-2 inhibitor demonstrated clear anti-myeloma activity in a cohort of 66 patients. Best responses correlated with presence of t(11;14) and high Bcl-2 as well as low Bcl-xL and/or MCL-1 expression levels (Kumar et al. 2016).

Inhibitors of nuclear export (e.g., selinexor) have been shown to produce meaningful clinical responses in patients who have progressed following therapy with IMiDS, PIs as well as the novel anti-CD38 antibody, daratumumab (penta-refractory MM population). This population of MM patients has exhausted all currently approved treatment options. Selinexor, a selective exportin XPO1 inhibitor, showed potent induction of apoptosis of MM cells independent of p53 signaling (Rosebeck et al. 2016). These principles were tested in a phase II clinical study (STORM): Vogl et al. (2016) reported significant anti-tumor activity of selinexor in combination with low-dose dexamethasone in penta-refractory MM as well as MM with adverse cytogenetic risk factors.

Immunotherapy is revolutionizing oncology and drug-resistant MM should be among the most fertile grounds to employ this strategy. Tran et al. (2016) elicited a polyclonal CD8+ T-cell response against mutant G12D *KRAS* expressed by metastatic colorectal cancer. The authors observed an objective regression of all lung metastases after the infusion of KRAS-directed tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte (TIL) clonotypes. This approach may constitute an effective strategy against *RAS*-mutant MM (Sect. 2.2). Moreover, promising results from ongoing clinical trials show that the prospects for checkpoint inhibition immunotherapy for MM are enticing, particularly when used in combination with "novel agents" (Badros et al. 2015; San Miguel et al. 2015) (Fig. 4). Future combinatorial immunotherapy approaches will test the efficacy and toxicity of combining checkpoint inhibitors with cellular therapies, e.g., CAR-T cells (see next paragraph).

CAR-T cell therapy has been investigated in MM (Maus et al. 2014). Ali et al. (2016) conducted a first-in-human clinical trial of CAR-T cells targeting B-cell maturation antigen (BCMA), expressed on MM plasma cells. Two patients were treated on the fourth dose level of $9 \times 10(6)$ CAR(+) T cells/kg body weight – both responded with long remissions, albeit at the expense of cytokine release syndrome and prolonged cytopenias.

Tumor vaccines seem to be a promising emerging therapy in MM. Cancer vaccines are designed to increase the frequency of antigen-specific T cells or antibodies through enhanced in vivo priming. To date, several vaccination approaches have been used for MM, such as idiotype vaccines, dendritic cell (DC)-based vaccines, and GM-CSF-based cellular vaccines (Hoyos and Borrello 2016). Based on this concept, Rosenblatt et al. (2011, 2013) developed an MM vaccine in which patient-derived tumor cells are fused with autologous dendritic cells, so that a variety of tumor antigens, including neo-antigens generated from mutational aberrations, are cross-presented to effector T-cells (Rosenblatt and Avigan 2016).

7 Concluding Remarks and Future Prospects

Treatment options for MM continue to develop at a rapid pace. It is becoming increasingly challenging to determine the optimal therapeutic approaches, since many years of follow-up are required to demonstrate a clear survival benefit. In the last 10–15 years, identification of a variety of molecules/signaling pathways with distinct modes of contribution to MM progression has opened new avenues for the development of novel targeted therapy strategies. The role of microenvironmental mechanisms in modulating treatment responses has recently begun to be systematically explored but several "black boxes" remain. In the light of the constantly evolving targeted therapy landscape, there is a call for a detailed, integrated, and multi-scaled approach for the analysis of the genomic, epigenomic, metabolomic, and immunophenotypic profile of MM cells, as well as a deeper insight into the role of cross-talk between MM cells and their microenvironment.

References

Alexandrakis MG, Goulidaki N, Pappa CA, Boula A, Psarakis F, Neonakis I, Tsirakis G (2015) Interleukin-10 induces both plasma cell proliferation and angiogenesis in multiple myeloma. Pathol Oncol Res 21(4):929–934. doi:10.1007/s12253-015-9921-z

Ali SA, Shi V, Maric I, Wang M, Stroncek DF, Rose JJ et al (2016) T cells expressing an anti-B-cell maturation antigen chimeric antigen receptor cause remissions of multiple myeloma. Blood 128(13):1688–1700. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-04-711903

Alonso S, Hernandez D, Chang YT, Gocke CD, McCray M, Varadhan R et al (2016) Hedgehog and retinoid signaling alters multiple myeloma microenvironment and generates bortezomib resistance. J Clin Invest 126(12):4460–4468. doi:10.1172/JCI88152

Alsayed Y, Ngo H, Runnels J, Leleu X, Singha UK, Pitsillides CM et al (2007) Mechanisms of regulation of CXCR4/SDF-1 (CXCL12)-dependent migration and homing in multiple myeloma. Blood 109(7):2708–2717. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-07-035857

Anderson KC, Carrasco RD (2011) Pathogenesis of myeloma. Annu Rev Pathol 6:249–274. doi:10.1146/annurev-pathol-011110-130249

Arroz M, Came N, Lin P, Chen W, Yuan C, Lagoo A et al (2016) Consensus guidelines on plasma cell myeloma minimal residual disease analysis and reporting. Cytometry B Clin Cytom 90 (1):31–39. doi:10.1002/cyto.b.21228

Asimakopoulos F, Kim J, Denu RA, Hope C, Jensen JL, Ollar SJ et al (2013) Macrophages in multiple myeloma: emerging concepts and therapeutic implications. Leuk Lymphoma 54 (10):2112–2121. doi:10.3109/10428194.2013.778409

Asimakopoulos F, Hope C, Johnson MG, Pagenkopf A, Gromek K, Nagel B (2017) Extracellular matrix and the "myeloid-in-myeloma" compartment: balancing tolerogenic and immunogenic inflammation in the myeloma niche. J Leukoc Biol. pii: jlb.3MR1116-468R. doi:10.1189/jlb.3MR1116-468R

Attal M, Harousseau JL (2001) Randomized trial experience of the Intergroupe francophone du Myelome. Semin Hematol 38(3):226–230

Attal M, Harousseau JL, Stoppa AM, Sotto JJ, Fuzibet JG, Rossi JF et al (1996) A prospective, randomized trial of autologous bone marrow transplantation and chemotherapy in multiple myeloma. Intergroupe Francais du Myelome. N Engl J Med 335(2):91–97. doi:10.1056/NEJM199607113350204

Attal M, Lauwers-Cances V, Marit G, Caillot D, Moreau P, Facon T et al (2012) Lenalidomide maintenance after stem-cell transplantation for multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 366 (19):1782–1791. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1114138

Attal M, Lauwers-Cances V, Marit G, Caillot D, Facon T, Hulin C et al (2013) Lenalidomide maintenance after stem-cell transplantation for multiple myeloma: follow-up analysis of the IFM 2005-02 trial. Blood 122(21)

Avet-Loiseau H, Facon T, Grosbois B, Magrangeas F, Rapp MJ, Harousseau JL et al (2002) Oncogenesis of multiple myeloma: 14q32 and 13q chromosomal abnormalities are not randomly distributed, but correlate with natural history, immunological features, and clinical presentation. Blood 99(6):2185–2191

Avet-Loiseau H, Attal M, Moreau P, Charbonnel C, Garban F, Hulin C et al (2007) Genetic abnormalities and survival in multiple myeloma: the experience of the Intergroupe francophone du Myelome. Blood 109(8):3489–3495. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-08-040410

Azab AK, Runnels JM, Pitsillides C, Moreau AS, Azab F, Leleu X et al (2009) CXCR4 inhibitor AMD3100 disrupts the interaction of multiple myeloma cells with the bone marrow microenvironment and enhances their sensitivity to therapy. Blood 113(18):4341–4351. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-10-186668

Badros AZ, Kocoglu MH, Ma N, Rapoport AP, Lederer E, Philip S et al (2015) A phase II study of anti PD-1 antibody Pembrolizumab, pomalidomide and dexamethasone in patients with relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma (RRMM). Blood 126(23):506

Barlogie B, Jagannath S, Vesole DH, Naucke S, Cheson B, Mattox S et al (1997) Superiority of tandem autologous transplantation over standard therapy for previously untreated multiple myeloma. Blood 89(3):789–793

Bataille R, Harousseau JL (1997) Multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 336(23):1657–1664. doi:10.1056/NEJM199706053362307

Benboubker L, Dimopoulos MA, Dispenzieri A, Catalano J, Belch AR, Cavo M et al (2014) Lenalidomide and dexamethasone in transplant-ineligible patients with myeloma. N Engl J Med 371(10):906–917. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1402551

Benjamin D, Park CD, Sharma V (1994) Human B cell interleukin 10. Leuk Lymphoma 12 (3–4):205–210. doi:10.3109/10428199409059591

Bergsagel PL, Kuehl WM (2001) Chromosome translocations in multiple myeloma. Oncogene 20 (40):5611–5622. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1204641

Bergsagel PL, Kuehl WM (2005) Molecular pathogenesis and a consequent classification of multiple myeloma. J Clin Oncol 23(26):6333–6338. doi:10.1200/JCO.2005.05.021

Bergsagel PL, Chesi M, Nardini E, Brents LA, Kirby SL, Kuehl WM (1996) Promiscuous translocations into immunoglobulin heavy chain switch regions in multiple myeloma. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(24):13931–13936

Bianchi G, Richardson PG, Anderson KC (2015) Promising therapies in multiple myeloma. Blood 126(3):300–310. doi:10.1182/blood-2015-03-575365

Bieghs L, Johnsen HE, Maes K, Menu E, Van Valckenborgh E, Overgaard MT et al (2016) The insulin-like growth factor system in multiple myeloma: diagnostic and therapeutic potential. Oncotarget 7(30):48732–48752. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.8982

Biomarkers Definitions Working Group (2001) Biomarkers and surrogate endpoints: preferred definitions and conceptual framework. Clin Pharmacol Ther 69(3):89–95. doi:10.1067/mcp.2001.113989

Bjorklund CC, Baladandayuthapani V, Lin HY, Jones RJ, Kuiatse I, Wang H et al (2014) Evidence of a role for CD44 and cell adhesion in mediating resistance to lenalidomide in multiple myeloma: therapeutic implications. Leukemia 28(2):373–383. doi:10.1038/leu.2013.174

Borrello I (2012) Can we change the disease biology of multiple myeloma? Leuk Res 36:S3–S12

Bustany S, Bourgeais J, Tchakarska G, Body S, Herault O, Gouilleux F, Sola B (2016) Cyclin D1 unbalances the redox status controlling cell adhesion, migration, and drug resistance in myeloma cells. Oncotarget 7(29):45214–45224. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.9901

Carrasco DR, Sukhdeo K, Protopopova M, Sinha R, Enos M, Carrasco DE et al (2007) The differentiation and stress response factor XBP-1 drives multiple myeloma pathogenesis. Cancer Cell 11(4):349–360. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2007.02.015

Cavo M, Tacchetti P, Patriarca F, Petrucci MT, Pantani L, Galli M et al (2010) Bortezomib with thalidomide plus dexamethasone compared with thalidomide plus dexamethasone as induction therapy before, and consolidation therapy after, double autologous stem-cell transplantation in newly diagnosed multiple myeloma: a randomised phase 3 study. Lancet 376 (9758):2075–2085. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61424-9

Challen GA, Little MH (2006) A side order of stem cells: the SP phenotype. Stem Cells 24 (1):3–12. doi:10.1634/stemcells.2005-0116

Chapman MA, Lawrence MS, Keats JJ, Cibulskis K, Sougnez C, Schinzel AC et al (2011) Initial genome sequencing and analysis of multiple myeloma. Nature 471(7339):467–472. doi:10.1038/nature09837. nature09837 [pii]

Chauhan D, Li G, Shringarpure R, Podar K, Ohtake Y, Hideshima T, Anderson KC (2003) Blockade of Hsp27 overcomes bortezomib/proteasome inhibitor PS-341 resistance in lymphoma cells. Cancer Res 63(19):6174–6177

Chauhan D, Tian Z, Nicholson B, Kumar KGS, Zhou B, Carrasco R et al (2012) A small molecule inhibitor of ubiquitin-specific protease-7 induces apoptosis in multiple myeloma cells and overcomes bortezomib resistance. Cancer Cell 22(3):345–358. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2012.08.007

Chen Q, Van der Sluis PC, Boulware D, Hazlehurst LA, Dalton WS (2005) The FA/BRCA pathway is involved in melphalan-induced DNA interstrand cross-link repair and accounts for melphalan resistance in multiple myeloma cells. Blood 106(2):698–705. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-11-4286

Chesi M, Bergsagel PL, Brents LA, Smith CM, Gerhard DS, Kuehl WM (1996) Dysregulation of cyclin D1 by translocation into an IgH gamma switch region in two multiple myeloma cell lines. Blood 88(2):674–681

Chesi M, Nardini E, Brents LA, Schrock E, Ried T, Kuehl WM, Bergsagel PL (1997) Frequent translocation t(4;14)(p16.3;q32.3) in multiple myeloma is associated with increased expression and activating mutations of fibroblast growth factor receptor 3. Nat Genet 16(3):260–264. doi:10.1038/ng0797-260

Chesi M, Bergsagel PL, Shonukan OO, Martelli ML, Brents LA, Chen T et al (1998a) Frequent dysregulation of the c-maf proto-oncogene at 16q23 by translocation to an Ig locus in multiple myeloma. Blood 91(12):4457–4463

Chesi M, Nardini E, Lim RS, Smith KD, Kuehl WM, Bergsagel PL (1998b) The t(4;14) translocation in myeloma dysregulates both FGFR3 and a novel gene, MMSET, resulting in IgH/MMSET hybrid transcripts. Blood 92(9):3025–3034

Child JA, Morgan GJ, Davies FE, Owen RG, Bell SE, Hawkins K, Medical Research Council Adult Leukaemia Working Party et al (2003) High-dose chemotherapy with hematopoietic stem-cell rescue for multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 348(19):1875–1883. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa022340

Cho HJ, Mei A, Fukui J, Tung K, Leshchenko VV, Lagana A et al (2016) MAGE-a mediate resistance to chemotherapy in multiple myeloma through regulation of Bcl-2 proteins. Blood 128(22):3277

Cornelissen JJ, Sonneveld P, Schoester M, Raaijmakers HG, Nieuwenhuis HK, Dekker AW, Lokhorst HM (1994) MDR-1 expression and response to vincristine, doxorubicin, and dexamethasone chemotherapy in multiple myeloma refractory to alkylating agents. J Clin Oncol 12 (1):115–119. doi:10.1200/jco.1994.12.1.115

Darce JR, Arendt BK, Wu X, Jelinek DF (2007) Regulated expression of BAFF-binding receptors during human B cell differentiation. J Immunol 179(11):7276–7286

De Bruyne E, Bos TJ, Schuit F, Van Valckenborgh E, Menu E, Thorrez L et al (2010) IGF-1 suppresses Bim expression in multiple myeloma via epigenetic and posttranslational mechanisms. Blood 115(12):2430–2440. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-07-232801

Decaux O, Lode L, Magrangeas F, Charbonnel C, Gouraud W, Jezequel P, Intergroupe Francophone du Myelome et al (2008) Prediction of survival in multiple myeloma based on gene expression profiles reveals cell cycle and chromosomal instability signatures in high-risk patients and hyperdiploid signatures in low-risk patients: a study of the Intergroupe francophone du Myelome. J Clin Oncol 26(29):4798–4805. doi:10.1200/JCO.2007.13.8545

Delmore JE, Issa GC, Lemieux ME, Rahl PB, Shi J, Jacobs HM et al (2011) BET bromodomain inhibition as a therapeutic strategy to target c-myc. Cell 146(6):904–917. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2011.08.017. S0092-8674(11)00943-3 [pii]

Di Raimondo F, Azzaro MP, Palumbo G, Bagnato S, Giustolisi G, Floridia P et al (2000) Angiogenic factors in multiple myeloma: higher levels in bone marrow than in peripheral blood. Haematologica 85(8):800–805

Dib IE, Gressier M, Salle V, Mentaverri R, Brazier M, Kamel S (2008) Multiple myeloma cells directly stimulate bone resorption in vitro by down-regulating mature osteoclast apoptosis. Leuk Res 32(8):1279–1287. doi:10.1016/j.leukres.2007.12.018

Dickens NJ, Walker BA, Leone PE, Johnson DC, Brito JL, Zeisig A et al (2010) Homozygous deletion mapping in myeloma samples identifies genes and an expression signature relevant to pathogenesis and outcome. Clin Cancer Res 16(6):1856–1864. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2831

Dimopoulos M, Spencer A, Attal M, Prince HM, Harousseau JL, Dmoszynska A et al (2007) Lenalidomide plus dexamethasone for relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 357(21):2123–2132. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa070594

Dimopoulos MA, Delforge M, Hajek R, Kropff M, Petrucci MT, Lewis P et al (2013) Lenalidomide, melphalan, and prednisone, followed by lenalidomide maintenance, improves health-related quality of life in newly diagnosed multiple myeloma patients aged 65 years or older: results of a randomized phase III trial. Haematologica 98(5):784–788. doi:10.3324/haematol.2012.074534

Dimopoulos MA, Oriol A, Nahi H, San-Miguel J, Bahlis NJ, Usmani SZ et al (2016) Daratumumab, lenalidomide, and dexamethasone for multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 375 (14):1319–1331. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1607751

Dinarello CA (2011) Interleukin-1 in the pathogenesis and treatment of inflammatory diseases. Blood 117(14):3720–3732. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-07-273417

Durie BG, Harousseau JL, Miguel JS, Bladé J, Barlogie B, Anderson K, International Myeloma Working Group et al (2006) International uniform response criteria for multiple myeloma. Leukemia 20(9):1467–1473. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2404284

Duyao MP, Buckler AJ, Sonenshein GE (1990) Interaction of an NF-kappa B-like factor with a site upstream of the c-myc promoter. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 87(12):4727–4731

Dziembowski A, Lorentzen E, Conti E, Séraphin B (2007) A single subunit, Dis3, is essentially responsible for yeast exosome core activity. Nat Struct Mol Biol 14(1):15–22. doi:10.1038/nsmb1184

Edwards BK, Brown ML, Wingo PA, Howe HL, Ward E, Ries LAG et al (2005) Annual report to the nation on the status of cancer, 1975-2002, featuring population-based trends in cancer treatment. J Natl Cancer Inst 97(19):1407–1427. doi:10.1093/jnci/dji289

Egan JB, Shi CX, Tembe W, Christoforides A, Kurdoglu A, Sinari S et al (2012) Whole-genome sequencing of multiple myeloma from diagnosis to plasma cell leukemia reveals genomic initiating events, evolution, and clonal tides. Blood 120(5):1060–1066. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-01-405977. blood-2012-01-405977 [pii]

Epstein J, Xiao H, Oba BK (1989) P-glycoprotein expression in plasma-cell myeloma is associated with resistance to Vad. Blood 74(3):913–917

Ertesvag A, Aasheim HC, Naderi S, Blomhoff HK (2007) Vitamin a potentiates CpG-mediated memory B-cell proliferation and differentiation: involvement of early activation of p38MAPK. Blood 109(9):3865–3872. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-09-046748

Fabre C, Mimura N, Bobb K, Kong SY, Gorgun G, Cirstea D et al (2012) Dual inhibition of canonical and noncanonical NF-kappaB pathways demonstrates significant antitumor activities in multiple myeloma. Clin Cancer Res 18(17):4669–4681. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-0779

Ferlin M, Noraz N, Hertogh C, Brochier J, Taylor N, Klein B (2000) Insulin-like growth factor induces the survival and proliferation of myeloma cells through an interleukin-6-independent transduction pathway. Br J Haematol 111(2):626–634

Fonseca R, Blood E, Rue M, Harrington D, Oken MM, Kyle RA et al (2003) Clinical and biologic implications of recurrent genomic aberrations in myeloma. Blood 101(11):4569–4575. doi:10.1182/blood-2002-10-3017

Fonseca R, Bergsagel PL, Drach J, Shaughnessy J, Gutierrez N, Stewart AK, International Myeloma Working Group et al (2009) International myeloma working group molecular classification of multiple myeloma: spotlight review. Leukemia 23(12):2210–2221. doi:10.1038/leu.2009.174

Forman MS, Lee VM, Trojanowski JQ (2003) "Unfolding" pathways in neurodegenerative disease. Trends Neurosci 26(8):407–410. doi:10.1016/S0166-2236(03)00197-8

Frassanito MA, Cusmai A, Iodice G, Dammacco F (2001) Autocrine interleukin-6 production and highly malignant multiple myeloma: relation with resistance to drug-induced apoptosis. Blood 97(2):483–489

Friedman AA, Letai A, Fisher DE, Flaherty KT (2015) Precision medicine for cancer with next-generation functional diagnostics. Nat Rev Cancer 15(12):747–756. doi:10.1038/nrc4015

Garand R, Avet-Loiseau H, Accard F, Moreau P, Harousseau JL, Bataille R (2003) T(11;14) and t(4;14) translocations correlated with mature lymphoplasmacytoid and immature morphology, respectively, in multiple myeloma. Leukemia 17(10):2032–2035. doi:10.1038/sj.leu.2403091

Garfall AL, Stadtmauer EA, Maus MV, Hwang W-T, Vogl DT, Cohen AD et al (2016) Pilot study of anti-CD19 chimeric antigen receptor T cells (CTL019) in conjunction with salvage autologous stem cell transplantation for advanced multiple myeloma. Blood 128(22):974

Gay F, Larocca A, Wijermans P, Cavallo F, Rossi D, Schaafsma R et al (2011) Complete response correlates with long-term progression-free and overall survival in elderly myeloma treated with novel agents: analysis of 1175 patients. Blood 117(11):3025–3031. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-09-307645

Ghiaur G, Yegnasubramanian S, Perkins B, Gucwa JL, Gerber JM, Jones RJ (2013) Regulation of human hematopoietic stem cell self-renewal by the microenvironment's control of retinoic acid signaling. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(40):16121–16126. doi:10.1073/pnas.1305937110

Grigorieva I, Thomas X, Epstein J (1998) The bone marrow stromal environment is a major factor in myeloma cell resistance to dexamethasone. Exp Hematol 26(7):597–603

Grogan TM, Spier CM, Salmon SE, Matzner M, Rybski J, Weinstein RS et al (1993) P-glycoprotein expression in human plasma-cell myeloma – correlation with prior chemotherapy. Blood 81(2):490–495

Gu ZJ, Costes V, Lu ZY, Zhang XG, Pitard V, Moreau JF et al (1996) Interleukin-10 is a growth factor for human myeloma cells by induction of an oncostatin M autocrine loop. Blood 88(10):3972–3986

Guttridge DC, Albanese C, Reuther JY, Pestell RG, Baldwin AS Jr (1999) NF-kappaB controls cell growth and differentiation through transcriptional regulation of cyclin D1. Mol Cell Biol 19(8):5785–5799

Hawley TS, Riz I, Yang W, Wakabayashi Y, Depalma L, Chang YT et al (2013) Identification of an ABCB1 (P-glycoprotein)-positive carfilzomib-resistant myeloma subpopulation by the pluripotent stem cell fluorescent dye CDy1. Am J Hematol 88(4):265–272. doi:10.1002/ajh.23387

Hazlehurst LA, Damiano JS, Buyuksal I, Pledger WJ, Dalton WS (2000) Adhesion to fibronectin via beta1 integrins regulates p27kip1 levels and contributes to cell adhesion mediated drug resistance (CAM-DR). Oncogene 19(38):4319–4327. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1203782

Hecht M, von Metzler I, Sack K, Kaiser M, Sezer O (2008) Interactions of myeloma cells with osteoclasts promote tumour expansion and bone degradation through activation of a complex signalling network and upregulation of cathepsin K, matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) and urokinase plasminogen activator (uPA). Exp Cell Res 314(5):1082–1093. doi:10.1016/j.yexcr.2007.10.021

Hideshima T, Chauhan D, Schlossman R, Richardson P, Anderson KC (2001a) The role of tumor necrosis factor alpha in the pathophysiology of human multiple myeloma: therapeutic applications. Oncogene 20(33):4519–4527. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1204623

Hideshima T, Nakamura N, Chauhan D, Anderson KC (2001b) Biologic sequelae of interleukin-6 induced PI3-K/Akt signaling in multiple myeloma. Oncogene 20(42):5991–6000. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1204833

Hideshima T, Mitsiades C, Tonon G, Richardson PG, Anderson KC (2007) Understanding multiple myeloma pathogenesis in the bone marrow to identify new therapeutic targets. Nat Rev Cancer 7(8):585–598. doi:10.1038/nrc2189

Hideshima T, Ikeda H, Chauhan D, Okawa Y, Raje N, Podar K et al (2009) Bortezomib induces canonical nuclear factor-kappaB activation in multiple myeloma cells. Blood 114 (5):1046–1052. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-01-199604

Holstein SA, Owzar K, Richardson PG, Jiang C, Hofmeister CC, Hassoun H et al (2015) Updated analysis of CALGB/ECOG/BMT CTN 100104: lenalidomide (Len) vs. placebo (PBO) maintenance therapy after single autologous stem cell transplant (ASCT) for multiple myeloma (MM). J Clin Oncol 33(15)

Hope C, Ollar SJ, Heninger E, Hebron E, Jensen JL, Kim J et al (2014) TPL2 kinase regulates the inflammatory milieu of the myeloma niche. Blood 123(21):3305–3315. doi:10.1182/blood-2014-02-554071. blood-2014-02-554071 [pii]

Hoyos V, Borrello I (2016) The immunotherapy era of myeloma: monoclonal antibodies, vaccines, and adoptive T-cell therapies. Blood 128(13):1679–1687. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-05-636357

Ikeda H, Hideshima T, Fulciniti M, Perrone G, Miura N, Yasui H et al (2010) PI3K/p110{delta} is a novel therapeutic target in multiple myeloma. Blood 116(9):1460–1468. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-06-222943

Ito T, Ando H, Suzuki T, Ogura T, Hotta K, Imamura Y et al (2010) Identification of a primary target of thalidomide teratogenicity. Science 327(5971):1345–1350. doi:10.1126/science.1177319

Jakubikova J, Adamia S, Kost-Alimova M, Klippel S, Cervi D, Daley JF et al (2011) Lenalidomide targets clonogenic side population in multiple myeloma: pathophysiologic and clinical implications. Blood 117(17):4409–4419. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-02-267344

Jakubowiak A, Offidani M, Pégourie B, De La Rubia J, Garderet L, Laribi K et al (2016) Randomized phase 2 study: elotuzumab plus bortezomib/dexamethasone vs bortezomib/dexamethasone for relapsed/refractory MM. Blood 127(23):2833–2840. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-01-694604

Jourdan M, De Vos J, Mechti N, Klein B (2000) Regulation of Bcl-2-family proteins in myeloma cells by three myeloma survival factors: interleukin-6, interferon-alpha and insulin-like growth factor 1. Cell Death Differ 7(12):1244–1252. doi:10.1038/sj.cdd.4400758

Kapoor P, Fonseca R, Rajkumar SV, Sinha S, Gertz MA, Stewart AK et al (2010) Evidence for cytogenetic and fluorescence in situ hybridization risk stratification of newly diagnosed

multiple myeloma in the era of novel therapie. Mayo Clin Proc 85(6):532–537. doi:10.4065/mcp.2009.0677

Keats JJ, Fonseca R, Chesi M, Schop R, Baker A, Chng WJ et al (2007) Promiscuous mutations activate the noncanonical NF-kappaB pathway in multiple myeloma. Cancer Cell 12 (2):131–144. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2007.07.003. S1535-6108(07)00202-4 [pii]

Keats JJ, Chesi M, Egan JB, Garbitt VM, Palmer SE, Braggio E et al (2012) Clonal competition with alternating dominance in multiple myeloma. Blood 120(5):1067–1076. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-01-405985. blood-2012-01-405985 [pii]

Kikuchi J, Koyama D, Wada T, Izumi T, Hofgaard PO, Bogen B, Furukawa Y (2015) Phosphorylation-mediated EZH2 inactivation promotes drug resistance in multiple myeloma. J Clin Invest 125(12):4375–4390. doi:10.1172/JCI80325

Kim D, Park CY, Medeiros BC, Weissman IL (2012) CD19-CD45 low/− CD38 high/CD138+ plasma cells enrich for human tumorigenic myeloma cells. Leukemia 26(12):2530–2537. doi:10.1038/leu.2012.140

Kim KH, Cheong H-J, Kim S-J, Kim SH, Yoon J, Kim HJ et al (2014) Side population of multiple myeloma and multiple myeloma stem cell. Blood 124(21):5786

Klein B, Zhang XG, Lu ZY, Bataille R (1995) Interleukin-6 in human multiple myeloma. Blood 85 (4):863–872

Klein B, Tarte K, Jourdan M, Mathouk K, Moreaux J, Jourdan E et al (2003) Survival and proliferation factors of normal and malignant plasma cells. Int J Hematol 78(2):106–113

Korthals M, Sehnke N, Kronenwett R, Bruns I, Mau J, Zohren F et al (2012) The level of minimal residual disease in the bone marrow of patients with multiple myeloma before high-dose therapy and autologous blood stem cell transplantation is an independent predictive parameter. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant 18(3):423–431.e423. doi:10.1016/j.bbmt.2011.07.002

Kortum KM, Mai EK, Hanafiah NH, Shi CX, Zhu YX, Bruins L et al (2016) Targeted sequencing of refractory myeloma reveals a high incidence of mutations in CRBN and Ras pathway genes. Blood 128(9):1226–1233. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-02-698092

Krönke J, Udeshi ND, Narla A, Grauman P, Hurst SN, McConkey M et al (2014) Lenalidomide causes selective degradation of IKZF1 and IKZF3 in multiple myeloma cells. Science 343 (6168):301–305. doi:10.1126/science.1244851

Kuehl WM, Bergsagel PL (2002) Multiple myeloma: evolving genetic events and host interactions. Nat Rev Cancer 2(3):175–187. doi:10.1038/nrc746

Kuhn DJ, Berkova Z, Jones RJ, Woessner R, Bjorklund CC, Ma W et al (2012) Targeting the insulin-like growth factor-1 receptor to overcome bortezomib resistance in preclinical models of multiple myeloma. Blood 120(16):3260–3270. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-10-386789

Kuiper R, Broyl A, de Knegt Y, van Vliet MH, van Beers EH, van der Holt B et al (2012) A gene expression signature for high-risk multiple myeloma. Leukemia 26(11):2406–2413. doi:10.1038/leu.2012.127

Kumar S, Vij R, Kaufman JL, Mikhael J, Facon T, Pegourie B et al (2016) Venetoclax monotherapy for relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma: safety and efficacy results from a phase I study. Blood 128(22):488

Kyle RA, Rajkumar SV (2008) Multiple myeloma. Blood 111(6):2962–2972. doi:10.1182/blood-2007-10-078022

Landgren O, Kyle RA, Pfeiffer RM, Katzmann JA, Caporaso NE, Hayes RB et al (2009) Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS) consistently precedes multiple myeloma: a prospective study. Blood 113(22):5412–5417. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-12-194241

Le Gouill S, Podar K, Harousseau JL, Anderson KC (2004) Mcl-1 regulation and its role in multiple myeloma. Cell Cycle 3(10):1259–1262. doi:10.4161/cc.3.10.1196

Li ZW, Chen H, Campbell RA, Bonavida B, Berenson JR (2008) NF-kappaB in the pathogenesis and treatment of multiple myeloma. Curr Opin Hematol 15(4):391–399. doi:10.1097/MOH.0b013e328302c7f4

Lin L, Yan F, Zhao D, Lv M, Liang X, Dai H et al (2016) Reelin promotes the adhesion and drug resistance of multiple myeloma cells via integrin beta1 signaling and STAT3. Oncotarget 7 (9):9844–9858. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.7151

Liu H, Tamashiro S, Baritaki S, Penichet M, Yu Y, Chen H et al (2012) TRAF6 activation in multiple myeloma: a potential therapeutic target. Clin Lymphoma Myeloma Leuk 12 (3):155–163. doi:10.1016/j.clml.2012.01.006

Lohr JG, Stojanov P, Carter SL, Cruz-Gordillo P, Lawrence MS, Auclair D et al (2014) Widespread genetic heterogeneity in multiple myeloma: implications for targeted therapy. Cancer Cell 25(1):91–101. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2013.12.015

Lonial S, Dimopoulos M, Palumbo A, White D, Grosicki S, Spicka I, ELOQUENT-2 Investigators et al (2015) Elotuzumab therapy for relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 373(7):621–631. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1505654

Lu ZY, Zhang XG, Rodriguez C, Wijdenes J, Gu ZJ, Morel-Fournier B et al (1995) Interleukin-10 is a proliferation factor but not a differentiation factor for human myeloma cells. Blood 85 (9):2521–2527

Lu G, Middleton RE, Sun H, Naniong M, Ott CJ, Mitsiades CS et al (2014) The myeloma drug lenalidomide promotes the cereblon-dependent destruction of Ikaros proteins. Science 343 (6168):305–309. doi:10.1126/science.1244917

Mackay F, Kalled SL (2002) TNF ligands and receptors in autoimmunity: an update. Curr Opin Immunol 14(6):783–790

Mackay F, Schneider P (2009) Cracking the BAFF code. Nat Rev Immunol 9(7):491–502. doi:10.1038/nri2572

Maclennan ICM, Chan EYT (1991) The origin of bone-marrow plasma-cells. In: Obrams GI et al (eds) Epidemiology and biology of multiple myeloma. Springer, Berlin/Heidelberg, pp 129–135

Mailankody S, Mena E, Yuan CM, Balakumaran A, Kuehl WM, Landgren O (2010) Molecular and biologic markers of progression in monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance to multiple myeloma. Leuk Lymphoma 51(12):2159–2170. doi:10.3109/10428194.2010.525725

Mailankody S, Korde N, Lesokhin AM, Lendvai N, Hassoun H, Stetler-Stevenson M, Landgren O (2015) Minimal residual disease in multiple myeloma: bringing the bench to the bedside. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 12(5):286–295. doi:10.1038/nrclinonc.2014.239

Markovina S, Callander NS, O'Connor SL, Kim J, Werndli JE, Raschko M et al (2008) Bortezomib-resistant nuclear factor-kappaB activity in multiple myeloma cells. Mol Cancer Res 6(8):1356–1364. doi:10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-08-0108

Markovina S, Callander NS, O'Connor SL, Xu G, Shi Y, Leith CP et al (2010) Bone marrow stromal cells from multiple myeloma patients uniquely induce bortezomib resistant NF-kappaB activity in myeloma cells. Mol Cancer 9:176. doi:10.1186/1476-4598-9-176. 1476-4598-9-176 [pii]

Martinez-Lopez J, Lahuerta JJ, Pepin F, González M, Barrio S, Ayala R et al (2014) Prognostic value of deep sequencing method for minimal residual disease detection in multiple myeloma. Blood 123(20):3073–3079. doi:10.1182/blood-2014-01-550020

Matsui W, Huff CA, Wang Q, Malehorn MT, Barber J, Tanhehco Y et al (2004) Characterization of clonogenic multiple myeloma cells. Blood 103(6):2332–2336. doi:10.1182/blood-2003-09-3064

Matsui W, Wang Q, Barber JP, Brennan S, Smith BD, Borrello I et al (2008) Clonogenic multiple myeloma progenitors, stem cell properties, and drug resistance. Cancer Res 68(1):190–197. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.Can-07-3096

Maus MV, Grupp SA, Porter DL, June CH (2014) Antibody-modified T cells: CARs take the front seat for hematologic malignancies. Blood 123(17):2625–2635. doi:10.1182/blood-2013-11-492231

McCarthy PL, Owzar K, Hofmeister CC, Hurd DD, Hassoun H, Richardson PG et al (2012) Lenalidomide after stem-cell transplantation for multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 366 (19):1770–1781. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1114083

McCarthy PL, Palumbo A, Holstein SA, Lauwers-Cances V, Petrucci MT, Richardson PG et al (2016) A meta-analysis of overall survival in patients with multiple myeloma treated with lenalidomide maintenance after high-dose melphalan and autologous stem cell transplant. Haematologica 101:2–3

Meng H, Yang C, Jin J, Zhou Y, Qian W (2008) Homoharringtonine inhibits the AKT pathway and induces in vitro and in vivo cytotoxicity in human multiple myeloma cells. Leuk Lymphoma 49 (10):1954–1962. doi:10.1080/10428190802320368

Mitsiades N, Mitsiades CS, Poulaki V, Chauhan D, Fanourakis G, Gu X et al (2002) Molecular sequelae of proteasome inhibition in human multiple myeloma cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99(22):14374–14379. doi:10.1073/pnas.202445099

Moalli PA, Pillay S, Weiner D, Leikin R, Rosen ST (1992) A mechanism of resistance to glucocorticoids in multiple myeloma: transient expression of a truncated glucocorticoid receptor mRNA. Blood 79(1):213–222

Moreaux J, Legouffe E, Jourdan E, Quittet P, Rème T, Lugagne C et al (2004) BAFF and APRIL protect myeloma cells from apoptosis induced by interleukin 6 deprivation and dexamethasone. Blood 103(8):3148–3157. doi:10.1182/blood-2003-06-1984

Munshi NC, Avet-Loiseau H, Rawstron AC, Owen RG, Child JA, Thakurta A et al (2016) Association of minimal residual disease with superior survival outcomes in patients with multiple myeloma: a meta-analysis. JAMA Oncol. doi: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2016.3160

Neri P, Ren L, Azab AK, Brentnall M, Gratton K, Klimowicz AC et al (2011) Integrin beta7-mediated regulation of multiple myeloma cell adhesion, migration, and invasion. Blood 117 (23):6202–6213. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-06-292243

Ng LG, Sutherland AP, Newton R, Qian F, Cachero TG, Scott ML et al (2004) B cell-activating factor belonging to the TNF family (BAFF)-R is the principal BAFF receptor facilitating BAFF costimulation of circulating T and B cells. J Immunol 173(2):807–817

Nico B, Mangieri D, Crivellato E, Vacca A, Ribatti D (2008) Mast cells contribute to vasculogenic mimicry in multiple myeloma. Stem Cells Dev 17(1):19–22. doi:10.1089/scd.2007.0132

Nijhof IS, Groen RW, Lokhorst HM, van Kessel B, Bloem AC, van Velzen J et al (2015) Upregulation of CD38 expression on multiple myeloma cells by all-trans retinoic acid improves the efficacy of daratumumab. Leukemia 29(10):2039–2049. doi:10.1038/leu.2015.123

Nijhof IS, Casneuf T, van Velzen J, van Kessel B, Axel AE, Syed K et al (2016) CD38 expression and complement inhibitors affect response and resistance to daratumumab therapy in myeloma. Blood 128(7):959–970. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-03-703439

Noborio-Hatano K, Kikuchi J, Takatoku M, Shimizu R, Wada T, Ueda M et al (2009) Bortezomib overcomes cell-adhesion-mediated drug resistance through downregulation of VLA-4 expression in multiple myeloma. Oncogene 28(2):231–242. doi:10.1038/onc.2008.385

Nojima M, Maruyama R, Yasui H, Suzuki H, Maruyama Y, Tarasawa I et al (2009) Genomic screening for genes silenced by DNA methylation revealed an association between RASD1 inactivation and dexamethasone resistance in multiple myeloma. Clin Cancer Res 15 (13):4356–4364. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-3336

Noonan K, Borrello I (2011) The immune microenvironment of myeloma. Cancer Microenviron 4 (3):313–323. doi:10.1007/s12307-011-0086-3

Obeng EA, Carlson LM, Gutman DM, Harrington WJ, Lee KP, Boise LH (2006) Proteasome inhibitors induce a terminal unfolded protein response in multiple myeloma cells. Blood 107 (12):4907–4916. doi:10.1182/blood-2005-08-3531

O'Connor R, Ooi MG, Meiller J, Jakubikova J, Klippel S, Delmore J et al (2013) The interaction of bortezomib with multidrug transporters: implications for therapeutic applications in advanced multiple myeloma and other neoplasias. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 71(5):1357–1368. doi:10.1007/s00280-013-2136-7

Oerlemans R, Franke NE, Assaraf YG, Cloos J, van Zantwijk I, Berkers CR et al (2008) Molecular basis of bortezomib resistance: proteasome subunit beta 5 (PSMB5) gene mutation and overexpression of PSMB5 protein. Blood 112(6):2489–2499. doi:10.1182/blood-2007-08-104950

Otsuki T, Yamada O, Yata K, Sakaguchi H, Kurebayashi J, Yawata Y, Ueki A (2000) Expression and production of interleukin 10 in human myeloma cell lines. Br J Haematol 111(3):835–842

Paiva B, Vidriales MB, Cervero J, Mateo G, Perez JJ, Montalban MA et al (2008) Multiparameter flow cytometric remission is the most relevant prognostic factor for multiple myeloma patients who undergo autologous stem cell transplantation. Blood 112(10):4017–4023. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-05-159624

Paiva B, Cedena MT, Puig N, Arana P, Vidriales MB, Cordon L, Grupo Espanol de Mieloma/Programa para el Estudio de la Terapeutica en Hemopatias Malignas Cooperative Study Groups et al (2016) Minimal residual disease monitoring and immune profiling in multiple myeloma in elderly patients. Blood 127(25):3165–3174. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-03-705319

Pak C, Callander NS, Young EW, Titz B, Kim K, Saha S et al (2015) MicroC(3): an ex vivo microfluidic cis-coculture assay to test chemosensitivity and resistance of patient multiple myeloma cells. Integr Biol (Camb) 7(6):643–654. doi:10.1039/c5ib00071h

Palumbo A, Bringhen S, Petrucci MT, Musto P, Rossini F, Nunzi M et al (2004) Intermediate-dose melphalan improves survival of myeloma patients aged 50 to 70: results of a randomized controlled trial. Blood 104(10):3052–3057. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-02-0408

Palumbo A, Hajek R, Delforge M, Kropff M, Petrucci MT, Catalano J et al (2012) Continuous lenalidomide treatment for newly diagnosed multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 366 (19):1759–1769. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1112704

Palumbo A, Rajkumar SV, San Miguel JF, Larocca A, Niesvizky R, Morgan G et al (2014a) International myeloma working group consensus statement for the management, treatment, and supportive care of patients with myeloma not eligible for standard autologous stem-cell transplantation. J Clin Oncol 32(6):587–600. doi:10.1200/JCO.2013.48.7934

Palumbo A, Cavallo F, Gay F, Di Raimondo F, Ben Yehuda D, Petrucci MT et al (2014b) Autologous transplantation and maintenance therapy in multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 371(10):895–905. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1402888

Palumbo A, Gay F, Cavallo F, Di Raimondo F, Larocca A, Hardan I et al (2015) Continuous therapy versus fixed duration of therapy in patients with newly diagnosed multiple myeloma. J Clin Oncol 33(30):3459–3466. doi:10.1200/JCO.2014.60.2466

Pardoll DM (2012) The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):252–264. doi:10.1038/nrc3239

Patel CG, Yee AJ, Scullen TA, Nemani N, Santo L, Richardson PG et al (2014) Biomarkers of bone remodeling in multiple myeloma patients to tailor bisphosphonate therapy. Clin Cancer Res 20(15):3955–3961. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-0434

Podar K, Anderson KC (2005) The pathophysiologic role of VEGF in hematologic malignancies: therapeutic implications. Blood 105(4):1383–1395. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-07-2909

Podar K, Mostoslavsky G, Sattler M, Tai YT, Hayashi T, Catley LP et al (2004) Critical role for hematopoietic cell kinase (Hck)-mediated phosphorylation of Gab1 and Gab2 docking proteins in interleukin 6-induced proliferation and survival of multiple myeloma cells. J Biol Chem 279 (20):21658–21665. doi:10.1074/jbc.M305783200

Podar K, Hideshima T, Chauhan D, Anderson KC (2005) Targeting signalling pathways for the treatment of multiple myeloma. Expert Opin Ther Targets 9(2):359–381. doi:10.1517/14728222.9.2.359

Puig N, Sarasquete ME, Balanzategui A, Martínez J, Paiva B, García H et al (2014) Critical evaluation of ASO RQ-PCR for minimal residual disease evaluation in multiple myeloma. A comparative analysis with flow cytometry. Leukemia 28(2):391–397. doi:10.1038/leu.2013.217

Pulido R, Elices MJ, Campanero MR, Osborn L, Schiffer S, Garcia-Pardo A et al (1991) Functional evidence for three distinct and independently inhibitable adhesion activities mediated by the human integrin VLA-4. Correlation with distinct alpha 4 epitopes. J Biol Chem 266(16):10241–10245

Qiang YW, Chen Y, Stephens O, Brown N, Chen B, Epstein J et al (2008) Myeloma-derived Dickkopf-1 disrupts Wnt-regulated osteoprotegerin and RANKL production by osteoblasts: a

potential mechanism underlying osteolytic bone lesions in multiple myeloma. Blood 112 (1):196–207. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-01-132134

Rajkumar SV, Witzig TE (2000) A review of angiogenesis and antiangiogenic therapy with thalidomide in multiple myeloma. Cancer Treat Rev 26(5):351–362. doi:10.1053/ctrv.2000.0188

Rajkumar SV, Harousseau JL, Durie B, Anderson KC, Dimopoulos M, Kyle R, International Myeloma Workshop Consensus Panel 1 et al (2011) Consensus recommendations for the uniform reporting of clinical trials: report of the international myeloma workshop consensus panel 1. Blood 117(18):4691–4695. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-10-299487

Rasmussen T, Haaber J, Dahl IM, Knudsen LM, Kerndrup GB, Lodahl M et al (2010) Identification of translocation products but not K-RAS mutations in memory B cells from patients with multiple myeloma. Haematologica 95(10):1730–1737. doi:10.3324/haematol.2010.024778

Rawstron AC, Davies FE, DasGupta R, Ashcroft AJ, Patmore R, Drayson MT et al (2002) Flow cytometric disease monitoring in multiple myeloma: the relationship between normal and neoplastic plasma cells predicts outcome after transplantation. Blood 100(9):3095–3100. doi:10.1182/blood-2001-12-0297

Rawstron AC, Orfao A, Beksac M, Bezdickova L, Brooimans RA, Bumbea H et al (2008) Report of the European myeloma network on multiparametric flow cytometry in multiple myeloma and related disorders. Haematologica 93(3):431–438. doi:10.3324/haematol.11080

Reagan MR, Ghobrial IM (2012) Multiple myeloma mesenchymal stem cells: characterization, origin, and tumor-promoting effects. Clin Cancer Res 18(2):342–349. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-2212. 1078-0432.CCR-11-2212 [pii]

Reece D, Song KW, Fu T, Roland B, Chang H, Horsman DE et al (2009) Influence of cytogenetics in patients with relapsed or refractory multiple myeloma treated with lenalidomide plus dexamethasone: adverse effect of deletion 17p13. Blood 114(3):522–525. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-12-193458

Restifo NP, Marincola FM, Kawakami Y, Taubenberger J, Yannelli JR, Rosenberg SA (1996) Loss of functional beta 2-microglobulin in metastatic melanomas from five patients receiving immunotherapy. J Natl Cancer Inst 88(2):100–108

Ri M, Iida S, Nakashima T, Miyazaki H, Mori F, Ito A et al (2010) Bortezomib-resistant myeloma cell lines: a role for mutated PSMB5 in preventing the accumulation of unfolded proteins and fatal ER stress. Leukemia 24(8):1506–1512. doi:10.1038/leu.2010.137

Rifkin RM, Abonour R, Shah JJ, Mehta J, Narang M, Terebelo H et al (2016) Connect MM (R) – the multiple myeloma disease registry: incidence of second primary malignancies in patients treated with lenalidomide. Leuk Lymphoma 57(9):2228–2231. doi:10.3109/10428194.2015.1132419

Robillard N, Avet-Loiseau H, Garand R, Moreau P, Pineau D, Rapp MJ et al (2003) CD20 is associated with a small mature plasma cell morphology and t(11;14) in multiple myeloma. Blood 102(3):1070–1071. doi:10.1182/blood-2002-11-3333

Roccaro AM, Sacco A, Purschke WG, Moschetta M, Buchner K, Maasch C et al (2014) SDF-1 inhibition targets the bone marrow niche for cancer therapy. Cell Rep 9(1):118–128. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2014.08.042

Roccaro AM, Mishima Y, Sacco A, Moschetta M, Tai YT, Shi J et al (2015) CXCR4 regulates extra-medullary myeloma through epithelial-mesenchymal-transition-like transcriptional activation. Cell Rep 12(4):622–635. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2015.06.059

Rosebeck S, Alonge MM, Kandarpa M, Mayampurath A, Volchenboum SL, Jasielec J et al (2016) Synergistic myeloma cell death via novel intracellular activation of Caspase-10-dependent apoptosis by carfilzomib and selinexor. Mol Cancer Ther 15(1):60–71. doi:10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-15-0488

Rosenblatt J, Avigan D (2016) Targeting the PD-1/PD-L1 axis in multiple myeloma: a dream or a reality. Blood. doi: 10.1182/blood-2016-08-731885

Rosenblatt J, Vasir B, Uhl L, Blotta S, Macnamara C, Somaiya P et al (2011) Vaccination with dendritic cell/tumor fusion cells results in cellular and humoral antitumor immune responses in patients with multiple myeloma. Blood 117(2):393–402. doi:10.1182/blood-2010-04-277137

Rosenblatt J, Avivi I, Vasir B, Uhl L, Munshi NC, Katz T et al (2013) Vaccination with dendritic cell/tumor fusions following autologous stem cell transplant induces immunologic and clinical responses in multiple myeloma patients. Clin Cancer Res 19(13):3640–3648. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-0282

Rosiñol L, Oriol A, Teruel AI, Hernández D, López-Jiménez J, de la Rubia J, Programa para el Estudio y la Terapéutica de las Hemopatías Malignas/Grupo Español de Mieloma (PETHEMA/GEM) Group et al (2012) Superiority of bortezomib, thalidomide, and dexamethasone (VTD) as induction pretransplantation therapy in multiple myeloma: a randomized phase 3 PETHEMA/GEM study. Blood 120(8):1589–1596. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-02-408922

Saha MN, Jiang H, Jayakar J, Reece D, Branch DR, Chang H (2010) MDM2 antagonist nutlin plus proteasome inhibitor velcade combination displays a synergistic anti-myeloma activity. Cancer Biol Ther 9(11):936–944

San Miguel JF, Almeida J, Mateo G, Bladé J, López-Berges C, Caballero D et al (2002) Immunophenotypic evaluation of the plasma cell compartment in multiple myeloma: a tool for comparing the efficacy of different treatment strategies and predicting outcome. Blood 99(5):1853–1856

San Miguel JF, Schlag R, Khuageva NK, Dimopoulos MA, Shpilberg O, Kropff M et al (2008) Bortezomib plus melphalan and prednisone for initial treatment of multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 359(9):906–917. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0801479

San Miguel J, Mateos M-V, Shah JJ, Ocio EM, Rodriguez-Otero P, Reece D et al (2015) Pembrolizumab in combination with lenalidomide and low-dose dexamethasone for relapsed/refractory multiple myeloma (RRMM): keynote-023. Blood 126(23):505

Sánchez-Vega B, Gandhi V (2009) Glucocorticoid resistance in a multiple myeloma cell line is regulated by a transcription elongation block in the glucocorticoid receptor gene (NR3C1). Br J Haematol 144(6):856–864. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2141.2008.07549.x

San-Miguel JF, Hungria VT, Yoon SS, Beksac M, Dimopoulos MA, Elghandour A et al (2014) Panobinostat plus bortezomib and dexamethasone versus placebo plus bortezomib and dexamethasone in patients with relapsed or relapsed and refractory multiple myeloma: a multicentre, randomised, double-blind phase 3 trial. Lancet Oncol 15(11):1195–1206. doi:10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70440-1

Scavelli C, Nico B, Cirulli T, Ria R, Di Pietro G, Mangieri D et al (2008) Vasculogenic mimicry by bone marrow macrophages in patients with multiple myeloma. Oncogene 27(5):663–674. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1210691. 1210691 [pii]

Shaughnessy J, Gabrea A, Qi Y, Brents L, Zhan F, Tian E et al (2001) Cyclin D3 at 6p21 is dysregulated by recurrent chromosomal translocations to immunoglobulin loci in multiple myeloma. Blood 98(1):217–223

Shaughnessy JD Jr, Zhan F, Burington BE, Huang Y, Colla S, Hanamura I et al (2007) A validated gene expression model of high-risk multiple myeloma is defined by deregulated expression of genes mapping to chromosome 1. Blood 109(6):2276–2284. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-07-038430

Smadja NV, Louvet C, Isnard F, Dutel JL, Grange MJ, Varette C, Krulik M (1995) Cytogenetic study in multiple myeloma at diagnosis: comparison of two techniques. Br J Haematol 90(3):619–624

Spanswick VJ, Craddock C, Sekhar M, Mahendra P, Shankaranarayana P, Hughes RG et al (2002) Repair of DNA interstrand crosslinks as a mechanism of clinical resistance to melphalan in multiple myeloma. Blood 100(1):224–229

Sprynski AC, Hose D, Caillot L, Réme T, Shaughnessy JD, Barlogie B et al (2009) The role of IGF-1 as a major growth factor for myeloma cell lines and the prognostic relevance of the expression of its receptor. Blood 113(19):4614–4626. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-07-170464

Stewart AK, Fonseca R (2005) Prognostic and therapeutic significance of myeloma genetics and gene expression profiling. J Clin Oncol 23(26):6339–6344. doi:10.1200/JCO.2005.05.023

Stewart AK, Jacobus S, Fonseca R, Weiss M, Callander NS, Chanan-Khan AA, Rajkumar SV (2015) Melphalan, prednisone, and thalidomide vs melphalan, prednisone, and lenalidomide

(ECOG E1A06) in untreated multiple myeloma. Blood 126(11):1294–1301. doi:10.1182/blood-2014-12-613927

Stuhmer T, Chatterjee M, Hildebrandt M, Herrmann P, Gollasch H, Gerecke C et al (2005) Nongenotoxic activation of the p53 pathway as a therapeutic strategy for multiple myeloma. Blood 106(10):3609–3617. doi:10.1182/blood-2005-04-1489

Su M, Alonso S, Jones JW, Yu J, Kane MA, Jones RJ, Ghiaur G (2015) All-trans retinoic acid activity in acute myeloid leukemia: role of cytochrome P450 enzyme expression by the microenvironment. PLoS One 10(6):e0127790. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0127790

Tai YT, de Weers M, Li XF, Song WH, Nahar S, Bakker JM et al (2009) Daratumumab, a novel potent human anti-CD38 monoclonal antibody, induces significant killing of human multiple myeloma cells: therapeutic implication. Blood 114(22):252–252

Takimoto M, Ogawa K, Kato Y, Saito T, Suzuki T, Irei M et al (2008) Close relation between 14q32/IGH translocations and chromosome 13 abnormalities in multiple myeloma: a high incidence of 11q13/CCND1 and 16q23/MAF. Int J Hematol 87(3):260–265. doi:10.1007/s12185-008-0039-x

Terpos E, Szydlo R, Apperley JF, Hatjiharissi E, Politou M, Meletis J et al (2003) Soluble receptor activator of nuclear factor kappaB ligand-osteoprotegerin ratio predicts survival in multiple myeloma: proposal for a novel prognostic index. Blood 102(3):1064–1069. doi:10.1182/blood-2003-02-0380

Tian E, Zhan F, Walker R, Rasmussen E, Ma Y, Barlogie B, Shaughnessy JD (2003) The role of the Wnt-signaling antagonist DKK1 in the development of osteolytic lesions in multiple myeloma. N Engl J Med 349(26):2483–2494. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa030847

Tran E, Robbins PF, Lu YC, Prickett TD, Gartner JJ, Jia L et al (2016) T-cell transfer therapy targeting mutant KRAS in cancer. N Engl J Med 375(23):2255–2262. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1609279

Turner JG, Gump JL, Zhang C, Cook JM, Marchion D, Hazlehurst L et al (2006) ABCG2 expression, function, and promoter methylation in human multiple myeloma. Blood 108(12):3881–3889. doi:10.1182/blood-2005-10-009084

Usmani SZ, Mitchell A, Waheed S, Crowley J, Hoering A, Petty N et al (2013) Prognostic implications of serial 18-fluoro-deoxyglucose emission tomography in multiple myeloma treated with total therapy 3. Blood 121(10):1819–1823. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-08-451690

van de Velde HJ, Liu X, Chen G, Cakana A, Deraedt W, Bayssas M (2007) Complete response correlates with long-term survival and progression-free survival in high-dose therapy in multiple myeloma. Haematologica 92(10):1399–1406. doi:10.3324/haematol.11534

Voges D, Zwickl P, Baumeister W (1999) The 26S proteasome: a molecular machine designed for controlled proteolysis. Annu Rev Biochem 68:1015–1068. doi:10.1146/annurev.biochem.68.1.1015

Vogl DT, Dingli D, Cornell RF, Huff CA, Jagannath S, Bhutani D et al (2016) Selinexor and low dose dexamethasone (Sd) in patients with lenalidomide, pomalidomide, bortezomib, carfilzomib and anti-CD38 Ab refractory multiple myeloma (MM): STORM study. Blood 128(22):491

Voorhees PM, Chen Q, Kuhn DJ, Small GW, Hunsucker SA, Strader JS et al (2007) Inhibition of interleukin-6 signaling with CNTO 328 enhances the activity of bortezomib in preclinical models of multiple myeloma. Clin Cancer Res 13(21):6469–6478. doi:10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-1293

Wang YD, De Vos J, Jourdan M, Couderc G, Lu ZY, Rossi JF, Klein B (2002) Cooperation between heparin-binding EGF-like growth factor and interleukin-6 in promoting the growth of human myeloma cells. Oncogene 21(16):2584–2592. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1205355

Xiong W, Wu X, Starnes S, Johnson SK, Haessler J, Wang S et al (2008) An analysis of the clinical and biologic significance of TP53 loss and the identification of potential novel transcriptional targets of TP53 in multiple myeloma. Blood 112(10):4235–4246. doi:10.1182/blood-2007-10-119123

Xu D, Hu J, De Bruyne E, Menu E, Schots R, Vanderkerken K, Van Valckenborgh E (2012) Dll1/notch activation contributes to bortezomib resistance by upregulating CYP1A1 in multiple myeloma. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 428(4):518–524. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2012.10.071

Xu Q, Hou YX, Langlais P, Erickson P, Zhu J, Shi CX et al (2016a) Expression of the cereblon binding protein argonaute 2 plays an important role for multiple myeloma cell growth and survival. BMC Cancer 16:297. doi:10.1186/s12885-016-2331-0

Xu X, He Y, Miao X, Wu Y, Han J, Wang Q et al (2016b) Cell adhesion induces overexpression of chromodomain helicase/ATPase DNA binding protein 1-like gene (CHD1L) and contributes to cell adhesion-mediated drug resistance (CAM-DR) in multiple myeloma cells. Leuk Res 47:54–62. doi:10.1016/j.leukres.2016.05.007

Yaccoby S, Ling W, Zhan F, Walker R, Barlogie B, Shaughnessy JD (2007) Antibody-based inhibition of DKK1 suppresses tumor-induced bone resorption and multiple myeloma growth in vivo. Blood 109(5):2106–2111. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-09-047712

Yasui H, Hideshima T, Anderson KC (2008) Inhibition of TGF-β signaling in multiple myeloma and its bone marrow microenvironment. In: Jakowlew SB (ed) Transforming growth factor-β in cancer therapy, volume II: cancer treatment and therapy. Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, pp 219–227

Young EW, Pak C, Kahl BS, Yang DT, Callander NS, Miyamoto S, Beebe DJ (2012) Microscale functional cytomics for studying hematologic cancers. Blood 119(10):e76–e85. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-10-384347

Zaretsky JM, Garcia-Diaz A, Shin DS, Escuin-Ordinas H, Hugo W, Hu-Lieskovan S et al (2016) Mutations associated with acquired resistance to PD-1 blockade in melanoma. N Engl J Med 375(9):819–829. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1604958

Zhou W, Yang Y, Xia J, Wang H, Salama ME, Xiong W et al (2013) NEK2 induces drug resistance mainly through activation of efflux drug pumps and is associated with poor prognosis in myeloma and other cancers. Cancer Cell 23(1):48–62. doi:10.1016/j.ccr.2012.12.001

Zhu YX, Braggio E, Shi CX, Bruins LA, Schmidt JE, Van Wier S et al (2011) Cereblon expression is required for the antimyeloma activity of lenalidomide and pomalidomide. Blood 118(18):4771–4779. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-05-356063

Zimprich A, Biskup S, Leitner P, Lichtner P, Farrer M, Lincoln S et al (2004) Mutations in LRRK2 cause autosomal-dominant parkinsonism with pleomorphic pathology. Neuron 44(4):601–607. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2004.11.005

Zingone A, Kuehl WM (2011) Pathogenesis of monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance and progression to multiple myeloma. Semin Hematol 48(1):4–12. doi:10.1053/j.seminhematol.2010.11.003

Zweegman S, van der Holt B, Mellqvist UH, Salomo M, Bos GM, Levin MD et al (2016) Melphalan, prednisone, and lenalidomide versus melphalan, prednisone, and thalidomide in untreated multiple myeloma. Blood 127(9):1109–1116. doi:10.1182/blood-2015-11-679415

Cancer Evolution as the New Frontier of Precision Medicine

Giuseppe Curigliano

Contents

1 Introduction 290
2 Background and Rationale 290
3 Molecular Screening Programs 292
4 Future Perspectives 296
References 296

Abstract

New experimental breast cancer therapies directed against novel targets are currently in clinical These experimental agents are likely to be effective for a niche of breast cancers with specific "driver mutations". The ability to perform comprehensive molecular profiling of individual tumors has rapidly expanded over the last few years, and new DNA sequencing technologies require relatively limited quantities of fresh or archived paraffin-embedded or snap-frozen tumor tissue and provide rapid turnaround of sequencing results within a few weeks or less. All these technologies provide an unprecedented opportunity to identify patients with rare "driver" molecular alternations that are candidates for proof-of-concept clinical trials with matched targeted therapy, in the context of basket trials. The aim of this chapter on molecular profiling is to summarize the known recurrent molecular alterations in breast cancer that are potentially amenable to investigational targeted therapy, to provide an overview of the existing technological platforms for molecular profiling and ongoing or planned institutional/national screening initiatives and to outline a vision for molecular screening that may be integrated into the future activities of breast cancer research.

G. Curigliano (✉)
Division of Experimental Cancer Medicine, Istituto Europeo di Oncologia, Milano, Italy
e-mail: Giuseppe.curigliano@ieo.it

M. Mandalà, E. Romano (eds.), *Mechanisms of Drug Resistance in Cancer Therapy*,
Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology 249, https://doi.org/10.1007/164_2018_147

Keywords
Breast cancer · Driver mutations · Personalized medicine

1 Introduction

There is an exciting array of experimental breast cancer therapies directed against novel targets that are currently in clinical development. These investigational agents are likely to be effective for small subsets of breast cancers with specific "driver mutations". The ability to perform comprehensive molecular profiling of individual tumours has rapidly expanded over the last few years, as the cost of DNA sequencing technologies that allow for targeted multiplex "hotspot" mutation testing or deeper targeted exome and whole genome DNA sequencing has become cheaper than traditional Sanger-based DNA sequencing methods. New DNA sequencing technologies require relatively limited quantities of fresh or archived paraffin-embedded or snap-frozen tumour tissue and provide rapid turnaround of sequencing results within a few weeks or less. These technological advances allow for the prospect of point-of-care molecular profiling that can be used to guide the development of personalized breast cancer medicine therapy. For an international collective of academic breast cancer researchers, this provides an unprecedented opportunity to identify patients with rare "driver" molecular alternations that are candidates for proof-of-concept clinical trials with matched targeted therapy. The aim of this report on molecular profiling is to review the known recurrent molecular alterations in breast cancer that are potentially amenable to investigational targeted therapy, to provide an overview of the existing technological platforms for molecular profiling and ongoing or planned institutional/national screening initiatives and to outline a vision for molecular screening that may be integrated into the future activities of breast cancer research.

2 Background and Rationale

Personalized Medicine and New Drug Development The "oncogene revolution" has led to an explosion of molecularly targeted therapeutics in preclinical and clinical development over the last decade (Hanahan and Weinberg 2000). It is estimated that there are more than 800 targeted anticancer therapies currently in various stages of clinical development. Disappointingly, historical data indicate that only 5% of these investigational therapies will ultimately progress to registration for widespread use. These high attrition rates have multiple causes, including lack of efficacy and excessive toxicity (Kola and Landis 2004). In particular, when patients are selected for phase III trials based on histopathology alone, a targeted drug with a 5–10% single-agent response rate runs a high risk of failure (Stewart and Kurzrock 2009). Recent efforts to systematically sequence cancer genomes have revealed

that individual tumours frequently harbour multiple "driver" somatic mutations that confer growth advantage and positive selection (Stratton et al. 2009).

The increasing identification of specific somatic mutations and other genetic aberrations that drive cancers leaves us on the threshold of a new era of "personalized cancer medicine", in which specific biomarkers will be used to direct targeted agents only to those patients deemed most likely to respond. The potential medical, scientific and economic benefits of such a personalized approach to cancer therapy are immense and self-evident. Yet despite some important advances, only a limited number of approved targeted agents have had their approvals predicated on specific biomarkers of sensitivity or resistance. The premises behind personalized cancer medicine include (1) genetic aberrations exist in human malignancies; (2) a subset of these aberrations, often present across multiple cancer types, have functional relevance as "drivers" for oncogenesis and tumour progression; (3) such genetic aberrations are potentially "druggable" targets; and (4) there are tolerable medicinal compounds that can effectively modulate such targets (Greenman et al. 2007). A key requirement of this new, personalized approach to anticancer therapy is that specific patients must be matched to a particular drug or combination of drugs. Molecular profiling of tumours to identify somatic mutations and/or other genetic aberrations are examples of enrichment strategies to assist in matching patients to drugs or treatments that have gained increasing interest in the oncology community (Callaway 2010). The true merits of such personalized medicine strategies remain to be established. However, proof-of-concept clinical trials that establish the value of matching targeted treatments to rare molecular alterations in breast cancer and other malignancies are beyond the scope of any single pharmaceutical sponsor, cancer treatment facility or national cancer agency and will ultimately require international collaboration. Recent examples demonstrate that sequential testing of infrequent genomic alterations to identify candidates for clinical trials with matched targeted is inefficient, expensive and wasteful of scarce archived tumour tissue resources. Comprehensive molecular screening programs, which provide simultaneous testing of multiple biomarkers early in the course of a patient's natural history of disease, are most likely to advance personalized cancer medicine.

Genomic Alterations in Breast Cancer Somatic mutations are responsible for approximately 90% of breast cancers. Although data from comprehensive, large-scale breast cancer DNA sequencing projects are still awaited (Ellis et al. 2007), key features of the genomic breast cancer landscape have begun to emerge. First, although multiple regions of copy gain are observed, none occurs as frequently as 17q12 which harbours *ERBB2/HER2*; second, there are high-frequency somatic point mutations in three "gene mountains" (Greenman et al. 2007) – *TP53* (44%), *PIK3CA* (26%) and *CDH1* (19%) – but low-frequency recurrent point mutations (<5%) are also seen in genes that are validated drug targets in other types of cancer (i.e. *KRAS*, *BRAF* and *EGFR*); third, genes with somatic point mutations are also frequently regions of copy number gain in independent tumour samples (i.e. *PIK3CA*, *ERBB2*), highlighting their importance as oncogenes; and fourth,

point mutations are observed in multiple components of a signalling pathway at a higher rate than expected by chance alone (i.e. *PIK3CA*, *PTEN*, *AKT1*) indicating the relevance of the signalling pathway as a therapeutic target in mutated tumours. Additional data from large-scale sequencing projects, such as the Cancer Genome Atlas (TGCA) and the International Cancer Genome Consortium (ICGC), should provide additional insight with regard to the characteristic genome alterations that define the intrinsic molecular subtypes of breast cancer.

3 Molecular Screening Programs

Clinical Application of Targeted Genomic Sequencing Recent advances in DNA sequencing technology allow for rapid testing of multiple hotspot mutations using limited quantities of tumour DNA isolated from archival paraffin-embedded tumour material at an affordable cost (MacConaill et al. 2009; Dias-Santagata et al. 2010; Thomas et al. 2007). Studies by Thomas et al., MacConaill et al. and Dias-Santagata et al. examined between 250 and 1,000 individual tumour specimens for 120–400 mutations in 13–33 known oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes. These studies found at least one mutation in 30–37% of tumour samples (Thomas et al. 2007; Dias-Santagata et al. 2010; MacConaill 2013). Recently, Sequist et al. published their experience at Massachusetts General Hospital (MGH) with molecular screening of 552 non-small cell lung cancer patients using the multiplex PCR-based SNaPshot assays, which detects ~50 mutations and 14 genes, and FISH for ALK translocations (Sequist et al. 2011). They identified $\geq$1 mutation in 51% of patients who underwent successful profiling and directed 70 (22%) of 353 patients with advanced disease to a genotype-directed therapy. There are two reported studies that have investigated if therapy matched to molecular profile (MP) improves outcome. Von Hoff et al. conducted a study of matching treatments to MP in 86 patients across 9 different centres in the United States (Von Hoff et al. 2010). Only 66 patients proceeded to MP, wherein 64 targets were examined using a combination of immunohistochemistry (IHC), FISH and gene expression microarrays. Each aberration was matched to a predefined treatment. In 18 of 66 patients, they demonstrated progression free survival (PFS) for matched treatment to be 1.3 times greater than PFS for the treatment patients received immediately prior. Tsimberidou et al. performed molecular analysis on 1,283 patients, with success in 1,144 (89%) (Tsimberidou et al. 2011). They used polymerase chain reaction (PCR), fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) and immunohistochemistry (IHC) in examining for 11 separate molecular aberrations. In their cohort, 40% of patients had at least one aberration. They matched each aberration to a targeted treatment when available and demonstrated that patients who received matched targeted therapy had better response rates and improved time to treatment failure.

Molecular Screening Platforms The advantage of multiplex PCR-based platforms such as Sequenom's Oncocarta or OncoMap and Applied Biosystem's SNaPshot assay is that they provide excellent coverage of frequently mutated "druggable"

oncogenes when mutations cluster in a limited number of DNA sequence regions, such as *KRAS* (9 bases account for >99% of all mutations), *BRAF* (15–18 bases account for >90% of all mutations) and *PIK3CA* (12–15 bases account for >80% of all mutations). However, for clinically relevant tumour suppressor genes, such as *TP53*, *PTEN*, *BRCA1* or *BRCA2*, where mutations are more widely distributed across a much larger DNA coding region, the ability to detect mutations is limited to a few selected hotspots. In addition, the published molecular screening panels using these platforms are only able to detect known base-pair substitutions and limited deletions or insertions (indels) and gene amplification. They do not include translocations, larger indels or novel base-pair substitutions. The Sequenom MassARRAY Analyzer has developed methods to evaluate copy number variation (CNV); however, this has not been validated for point-of-care molecular profiling using human tumour samples.

Next-Generation Sequencing Sequenom, SNaPshot and other PCR-based multiplex assays are constrained by bandwidth and throughput. Next-generation sequencing (NGS) refers to technological platforms that allow for massive parallel sequencing of millions of DNA templates. "Second"-generation deep sequencing refers to clonal amplification of DNA templates on a solid support matrix followed by cyclical sequencing with short reads. These instruments are currently used to sequence entire genomes, exomes, transcriptomes and methylomes that often require weeks for sample template preparation, sequence generation and data analyses. As a result, their use is largely confined to large genome centres. Since "second-generation" DNA sequencing instruments are not employed in diagnostic settings, additional validation of potential candidate mutations is required using clinical-grade sequencing assays in certified diagnostic laboratories. The advent of "third"-generation sequencers such as Pacific Biosciences PacBio RS and Life Technologies' Ion Torrent Personal Genome Machine (PGM) provides increased speed of sequencing due to their use of sensors that detect nucleotides as they are added to DNA molecules in synthesis, although parallelization and machine throughput currently is much lower than with second-generation technologies. In addition to the Ion Torrent PGM, other so-called "bench sequencing" machines have recently been released by Illumina (MiSeq) and Roche/454 (GS Junior), which are moderate-throughput platforms with fast run times, long DNA reads and automated library preparation that are well-suited to clinical applications. The appeal of these low-cost ($\leq$125,000€ per instrument) "bench sequencing" platforms is that they offer the opportunity to comprehensively test a large targeted panel of relevant cancer genes (1,000 or more) with 30–50$\times$ or greater coverage to identify rare (<5% prevalence) mutations and copy number alterations that are potentially relevant to clinical care with a rapid turnaround time to results of 1 week or less. One of the major obstacles to NGS for cancer diagnostics is the ability to assess DNA extracted from limited formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) material, such as archival tumour blocks or small core tumour biopsies. Preliminary experience suggests that NGS is feasible from FFPE core tumour biopsies, although the quality DNA isolated

from archival tumour material that is routinely stored for >5 years and the robustness of methods of sequence enrichments remain questionable.

Ongoing Molecular Screening Programs Recognizing that cancer genome sequencing is likely to be integrated in routine clinical decision-making in the near future, many leading cancer research institutions and national cancer agencies have recently launched or are soon to launch broadscale molecular screening programs for solid tumours, including breast cancer (Tuma 2011). Massachusetts General Hospital (MGH) has implemented a phased roll out of the SNaPshot testing (which now includes ~120 mutations in 16 oncogenes) using archival tumour tissue in four tumour types: lung, colon, breast and glioblastoma multiforme (GBM). The Vanderbilt-Ingram Cancer Center (VICC) also initiated a similar program of SNaPshot screening of archival tumour tissue in non-small cell lung cancer and melanoma in 2010 including ~40 mutations in 6–8 genes. They integrated the molecular screening results into the patient's electronic medical record. Their "My Cancer Genome" (www.mycancergenome.org) website includes information about common activating mutations in "druggable" oncogenes and includes links to clinical trials with molecular selection based upon molecular profiling. In July 2011, they expanded their program to include PI3-kinase pathway-specific mutation panel for breast cancer. The Dana-Farber Cancer Institute (DFCI) in partnership with the Brigham and Women's Hospital has recently announced an ambitious US$43-million program (PROFILE) to perform mutation profiling using OncoMap (which includes ~470 mutations in 41 genes) in selected tumours, including colon, lung, breast and some sarcomas and leukaemias. Their project will include patients with early stage and advanced disease, linking genomic information with clinical outcomes and response to matched targeted therapies. It has been estimated that the program will include up to 10,000 patients annually (Tuma 2011). In Canada, the Ontario Institute for Cancer Research (OICR) and Princess Margaret Hospital (PMH) opened a pilot feasibility with biopsy of metastatic lesions involving patients with advanced solid tumours for profiling using the Sequenom Oncocarta (v1.0) and the third-generation NGS platform PacBio RS analyser for the same 19 genes as are included on the Oncocarta v1.0 panel. The initial results for the first 30 patients accrued were presented at the 2011 AACR-NCI-EORTC Molecular Target and Cancer Therapeutics Meetings (Tran et al. 2011). PMH will soon launch its own internal program entitled the Integrated Molecular Profiling in Advanced Cancers Trial (IMPACT) to perform mutation profiling using a customized Sequenom panel that includes ~277 mutations in 25 genes for patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer, colorectal cancer, ovarian cancer, breast cancer and patients considered for phase I clinical trials. The IMPACT study will initially include 500 patients annually and will be expanded to include additional disease sites and NGS technology.

Investigators at the University of Michigan also recently published their pilot experience with real-time high-throughput whole exome sequencing for two patients enrolled in the MI-ONCOSEQ protocol (Roychowdhury et al. 2011).

They successfully performed whole exome sequencing of fresh tumour biopsies from two patients – with colorectal cancer and melanoma – on the Illumina HiSeq platform and reviewed the results at a Sequencing Tumour Board within 4 weeks from the time of tumour biopsy. There are plan to perform deep whole exome sequencing of approximately 100 patients with advanced solid tumours per year, with the aim of matching patients to investigational clinical trials with targeted therapies. In Europe, there are also molecular screening programs that are underway. At the Institut Gustavy Roussy (IGR) in Paris, the ongoing MOSCATO (Molecular Screening for Cancer Clinical Trial Optimization) clinical trial protocol will perform molecular profiling using array comparative genome hybridization (aCGH) and Sanger sequencing for selected mutation hotspots in 600 patients over 3 years who are candidates for phase I clinical trials. Similarly, the ZAFIR01 clinical trial protocol at IGR will perform aCGH and targeted Sanger sequencing (PIK3CA and AKT1) in 400 patients with advanced breast cancer who undergo tumour biopsies for molecular screening. Cancer Research UK has recently launched the "Stratified Medicine Program" across seven cancer research hospitals in the United Kingdom which will perform molecular profiling for ~20 alterations in 8 genes using archival tumour material from 9,000 patients with advanced melanoma, breast, prostate, ovarian, colorectal and non-small cell lung cancer over 2 years. The details of the platform that will be used for molecular profiling have not been publicly disclosed. In the Netherlands, hospitals from Amsterdam, Rotterdam and Utrecht have launched a molecular screening to perform next-generation sequencing of fresh tumour biopsies from patients who are candidates for phase 1 clinical trials. Approximately 1,200 patients will be enrolled over the next 3 years, with plans to profile approximately 2,000 genes per patient using targeted sequencing on the Illumina HiSeq platform. The Breast International Group is also running a molecular screening program in metastatic breast cancer named AURORA project. AURORA has two broad purposes:

1. To analyse breast cancer samples using techniques including but not limited to targeted DNA sequencing and RNA sequencing, in order to better understand the genetic aberrations related to breast cancer. This part of AURORA could help us understand breast cancer disease evolution (this will be done in all patients) and determine why some patients respond well to a certain treatment while others don't (this will only be done in a minority of patients). This may not provide you with any benefit directly, but your participation is likely to help us find answers to questions which could help to improve the treatment and/or quality of life of future breast cancer patients.
2. To identify patients potentially eligible to participate in approved studies testing new therapeutic strategies based on known breast cancer-related molecular aberrations found in the breast cancer samples. Such identification is done when the aberrations of your primary and/or metastatic tumour DNA found by targeted sequencing match an ongoing therapeutic clinical trial testing a drug against the aberration. These trials might not be available at the time being, but your treating physician shall inform you in case they become available. If you are found to be eligible for an ongoing trial, your treating physician will give you more

information and an additional informed consent form to sign, specific to that particular trial. Note that enrolment in one of these candidate trials is completely up to you. Please note that aberrations for which therapeutic clinical trials are available may be found only in a minority of patients. To start with, this research project will involve 1,300 patients from hospitals mainly located in Europe.

4 Future Perspectives

It is likely that future clinical trials in breast cancer with targeted therapies will be conducted in molecularly defined subpopulations of disease. Advances in high-throughput DNA sequencing technology allow for screening a large number of genes simultaneously at a relatively low cost to molecularly characterize individual tumours for triage of clinical trials with targeted therapies. These molecular screening programs are rapidly being developed by large cancer research hospitals and national cancer societies in North America and Europe. It is very unlikely that a single pharmaceutical sponsor will be able to support the large-scale molecular screening programs to identify relatively rare subpopulations ($\leq$5%) of breast cancer that are amenable to clinical trials with matched targeted therapies. The existing model of sequential prescreening for individual clinical trials – with separate informed consent forms, processes of tumour material retrieval and shipping and methods of laboratory testing and reporting – is expensive, inefficient and not well-suited to the current era of molecularly targeted drug development. We need to find new paths to access innovations to clinical research and daily practice. To ensure that continued innovation meets the needs of patients, the therapeutic alliance between patients and academic-led research should to be extended to include relevant pharmaceutical companies and drug regulators with a unique effort to bring innovation into clinical practice. We need to bring together major players from the world of breast cancer research to map out a coordinated strategy on an international scale, to address the disease fragmentation, to share financial resources and to integrate scientific data. The final goal will be to improve access to an affordable, best standard of care for all patients in each country.

References

Callaway E (2010) Cancer-gene testing ramps up. Nature 467(7317):766–767

Dias-Santagata D et al (2010) Rapid targeted mutational analysis of human tumours: a clinical platform to guide personalized cancer medicine. EMBO Mol Med 2(5):146–158

Ellis MJ et al (2007) A luminal breast cancer genome atlas: progress and barriers. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 106(1–5):125–129

Greenman C et al (2007) Patterns of somatic mutation in human cancer genomes. Nature 446(7132):153–158

Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2000) The hallmarks of cancer. Cell 100(1):57–70

Kola I, Landis J (2004) Can the pharmaceutical industry reduce attrition rates? Nat Rev Drug Discov 3(8):711–715

MacConaill LE (2013) Existing and emerging technologies for tumor genomic profiling. J Clin Oncol 31(15):1815–1824
MacConaill LE et al (2009) Profiling critical cancer gene mutations in clinical tumor samples. PLoS One 4(11):e7887
Roychowdhury S et al (2011) Personalized oncology through integrative high-throughput sequencing: a pilot study. Sci Transl Med 3(111):111ra121
Sequist LV et al (2011) Implementing multiplexed genotyping of non-small-cell lung cancers into routine clinical practice. Ann Oncol 22:2616–2624
Stewart DJ, Kurzrock R (2009) Cancer: the road to Amiens. J Clin Oncol 27(3):328–333
Stratton MR, Campbell PJ, Futreal PA (2009) The cancer genome. Nature 458(7239):719–724
Thomas RK et al (2007) High-throughput oncogene mutation profiling in human cancer. Nat Genet 39(3):347–351
Tran B et al (2011) Feasibility study of molecular profiling (MP) in patients (Pts) with advanced solid cancers using targeted mutation analysis and targeted exome sequencing. Mol Cancer Ther 10(Suppl 11):B48
Tsimberidou AM et al (2011) Personalized medicine in a phase I clinical trials program: the M. D. Anderson Cancer Center Initiative. J Clin Oncol 29(Suppl):Abstract CRA2500
Tuma RS (2011) Large-scale genome projects enter the clinic on both sides of the Atlantic. J Natl Cancer Inst 103(23):1730–1731
Von Hoff DD et al (2010) Pilot study using molecular profiling of patients' tumors to find potential targets and select treatments for their refractory cancers. J Clin Oncol Off J Am Soc Clin Oncol 28(33):4877–4883